



2025

# FACULTY OF HUMANITIES UNDERGRADUATE STUDIES

*Handbook 9a in this series of handbooks*



# UNIVERSITY OF CAPE TOWN

## FACULTY OF HUMANITIES (UNDERGRADUATE)

### 2025

**Postal Address:** University of Cape Town  
Private Bag X3  
7701 RONDEBOSCH

**Dean's & Faculty Offices:** Room 107, Beattie Building  
University Avenue  
Upper Campus

**Office Hours:** Mondays to Fridays: 08:30 to 12:30; 13:00 - 16:30

**Fax:** 021 686 9840

**Telephones:** Dean's Office 021 650 3059  
Faculty Office 021 650 2717  
Accounts and Fees 021 650 1704  
Admissions 021 650 5988

**Internet:** UCT's Home Page <http://www.uct.ac.za>  
Humanities Home Page <http://www.humanities.uct.ac.za>  
Dean's Office [hum-dean@uct.ac.za](mailto:hum-dean@uct.ac.za)  
Faculty Office [hum-ugrad@uct.ac.za](mailto:hum-ugrad@uct.ac.za)  
International Academic Programmes  
Office [iapo@uct.ac.za](mailto:iapo@uct.ac.za)

The Registrar's and General Enquiries offices are located in the Bremner Building and remain open during the lunch hour. The Admissions Office and Student Records Office are located in the Masingene Building, Middle Campus, and are open from 08h30 to 16h30. The Cashier's Office is located in Kramer Building, Middle Campus, and is open from 09h00 to 15h30.

**This handbook is part of a series that consists of**

- Book 1:** Undergraduate Prospectus
- Book 2:** Authorities and information of record
- Book 3:** General Rules and Policies
- Book 4:** Academic Calendar and Meetings
- Book 5:** Student Support and Services
- Book 6-11:** Handbooks of the Faculties of Commerce, Engineering & the Built Environment, Health Sciences, Humanities, Law, Science
- Book 12:** Student Fees
- Book 13:** Bursary and Loan Opportunities for Undergraduate Study
- Book 14:** Financial assistance for Postgraduate Study and Postdoctoral Research

The University has made every effort to ensure the accuracy of the information in its handbooks. However, we reserve the right at any time, if circumstances dictate (for example, if there are not sufficient students registered), to

- (i) make alterations or changes to any of the published details of the opportunities on offer; or
- (ii) add to or withdraw any of the opportunities on offer.

Our students are given every assurance that changes to opportunities will only be made under compelling circumstances and students will be fully informed as soon as possible.

# CONTENTS

<b>Guide to the usage of this Handbook .....</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>General Information .....</b>	<b>6</b>
Officers in the Faculty .....	6
Student Advisors.....	7
Humanities Students' Council.....	7
Undergraduate Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates awarded in the Faculty.....	7
Degree specialisations offered in the Faculty.....	9
Term Dates for 2025.....	9
Lecture periods.....	9
Abbreviations and Definitions.....	9
Structure of Course Codes.....	11
List of Departmental Letter Codes.....	12
<b>Faculty Rules for Undergraduate Students .....</b>	<b>13</b>
<b>Rules and Curricula for Qualifications and Programmes of Study.....</b>	<b>19</b>
Higher Certificate in Adult and Community Education in Adult Education and Training.....	19
Advanced Certificates in Teaching.....	23
<i>Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Teaching.....</i>	<i>23</i>
<i>Advanced Certificate in Intermediate Phase Teaching specialising in English First Additional Language &amp; Mathematics.....</i>	<i>23</i>
<i>Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Teaching specialising in English First Additional Language.....</i>	<i>23</i>
<i>Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Teaching specialising in Mathematics.....</i>	<i>24</i>
<i>Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Teaching specialising in Natural Sciences.....</i>	<i>24</i>
<i>Advanced Diplomas.....</i>	<i>24</i>
<i>Advanced Diploma in Adult &amp; Community Education and Training (ACET).....</i>	<i>24</i>
<i>Advanced Diploma in School Leadership and Management.....</i>	<i>26</i>
Bachelor of Arts/Bachelor of Social Science.....	28
<i>BA and BSocSc regular programme of study.....</i>	<i>33</i>
<i>Curriculum leading to the general BA and BSocSc - regular programme of study.....</i>	<i>33</i>
<i>BA and BSocSc extended programme of study.....</i>	<i>34</i>
<i>Except by permission of the Senate, candidates in the extended programme shall not register for more than the equivalent of three semester courses in any one semester.....</i>	<i>35</i>
<i>Curriculum leading to the general BA and BSocSc - extended programme of study.....</i>	<i>35</i>
<i>BA specialisations - BA in Film and Media Production.....</i>	<i>38</i>
Bachelor of Social Science in Philosophy, Politics and Economics.....	43
Bachelor of Social Work.....	45
Fine Art Qualifications.....	48
<i>Bachelor of Arts in Fine Art.....</i>	<i>48</i>
<i>Bachelor of Arts in Fine Art regular programme of study.....</i>	<i>51</i>
<i>Bachelor of Arts in Fine Art extended programme of study.....</i>	<i>54</i>
Music Qualifications.....	56
<i>Rules for students registered in the South African College of Music.....</i>	<i>56</i>
<i>Diploma in Music Performance.....</i>	<i>60</i>
<i>Diploma in Music Performance regular programme of study.....</i>	<i>61</i>
<i>Diploma in Music Performance extended programme of study.....</i>	<i>69</i>
<i>Advanced Diploma in Opera.....</i>	<i>74</i>
<i>Advanced Diploma in Music.....</i>	<i>75</i>
<i>Bachelor of Music.....</i>	<i>75</i>
<i>Bachelor of Music regular programme of study.....</i>	<i>76</i>
<i>Bachelor of Music extended programme of study.....</i>	<i>97</i>
Theatre and Performance Qualifications.....	107

<i>Diploma in Theatre and Performance</i> .....	109
<i>Advanced Diploma in Theatre</i> .....	111
<i>Bachelor of Arts In Theatre &amp; Performance</i> .....	115
<b>Summer/Winter Term Courses</b> .....	<b>119</b>
<b>Departments and Courses Offered</b> .....	<b>120</b>
Accounting, College of .....	120
African Feminist Studies.....	123
African Studies and Linguistics .....	127
Anthropology.....	135
Archaeology.....	140
Commercial Law .....	145
Computer Science .....	149
Economics, School of .....	156
Education, School of.....	167
Umthombo Centre for Student Success.....	182
English Literary Studies.....	186
English Language Centre .....	191
Environmental and Geographical Science.....	193
Film and Media Studies, Centre for .....	200
Finance and Tax.....	209
Fine Art, Michaelis School of.....	211
Geological Sciences .....	223
Historical Studies .....	225
<i>Isaac and Jessie Kaplan Centre for Jewish Studies and Research</i> .....	226
Information Systems .....	233
Knowledge & Information Stewardship.....	241
Languages and Literatures, School of .....	243
<i>African Languages and Literatures Section</i> .....	244
<i>Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies Section</i> .....	253
<i>Arabic Language and Literature Section</i> .....	256
<i>Chinese Language and Literature Section</i> .....	258
<i>Classics Section</i> .....	262
<i>French Language and Literature Section</i> .....	271
<i>German Language and Literature Section</i> .....	277
<i>Hebrew Language and Literature Section</i> .....	282
<i>Italian Studies Section</i> .....	284
<i>Portuguese Language and Literature Section</i> .....	287
<i>Spanish Language and Literature Section</i> .....	290
<i>Centre for Creative Writing</i> .....	293
Law .....	294
Management Studies, School of.....	298
Mathematics and Applied Mathematics .....	302
Music, South African College of.....	312
Philosophy .....	358
Political Studies .....	365
Psychology.....	373
Social Work and Social Development.....	382
Sociology .....	393
Statistical Sciences.....	402
Theatre, Dance and Performance Studies.....	410
The Study of Religions, Department for .....	424
<i>Institute, Centre and Research Chair in the Department</i> .....	424
<i>Centre for Contemporary Islam (CCI)</i> .....	425
<b>Additional Information</b> .....	<b>431</b>

Fellows in the Faculty..... 431  
Distinguished Teachers in the Faculty ..... 431  
UCT Book Award..... 432  
Scholarships and Prizes ..... 432

## Guide to the usage of this Handbook

The following is a general overview of the structure of this Handbook for the guidance of users. The contents are organised in a number of different sections (see below) each of which has a particular focus. The sections are interlinked by cross-references where relevant.

- (a) *General Information:* This section includes information on Faculty officers, the list of qualifications offered, a guide to terms and codes, and lists of the various prizes, medals and scholarships awarded on academic merit.
- (b) *Faculty and qualifications rules:* This section covers the Faculty rules and the rules which apply to each of the various qualifications and programmes offered by the Faculty. These rules should be read in conjunction with the general University rules in the General Rules and Policies Handbook (Handbook 3). Students are expected to acquaint themselves with the rules in both Handbooks and to check annually whether the rules or curriculum requirements have changed since the last edition.
- Important rules:* All students must familiarise themselves with the Qualification and Programme Rules in this Handbook. In addition, students must refer to Handbook 3, General Rules and Policies and particularly take note of the following:
- rules relating to registration and examinations;
  - rules relating to changes of curriculum;
  - rules relating to leave of absence;
  - rules on Academic Conduct, N.B. the rules concerning dishonest conduct and plagiarism.

Detailed information on the undergraduate entrance requirements can be found in the University Prospectus. The PhD Degree rules are published in *Handbook 3, General Rules and Policies*.

- (c) *Courses:* This section contains entries for each department, school or unit in the Faculty, and for departments outside the Faculty whose courses are frequently taken by Humanities students. Each lists members of staff, the structure of majors, and the courses which are offered by the department, school or unit. Course descriptions are set out in alpha-numeric order based on the course code prefix.

# GENERAL INFORMATION

## Officers in the Faculty

Dean	Professor S Kessi, PhD <i>LSE</i>
Executive Assistant	TBA
Deputy Dean: Research and Internationalisation	Associate Professor B Kar, MA PhD <i>JNU</i>
Deputy Dean: Staffing and Transformation	Professor J Raju, BA(Hons) MIS PhD <i>Natal</i>
Deputy Dean: Undergraduate Affairs	Associate Professor S Morreira, MSocSc PhD <i>Cape Town</i>
Deputy Dean: Postgraduate Studies and Funding	Associate Professor L Schrieff-Brown, PhD <i>Cape Town</i>
Faculty Manager: Academic Administration	Ms S Chetty, BSocSc(Hons) PGDipArts BBibl(Hons) <i>UKZN MPhil Cape Town</i>
Deputy Faculty Manager: Academic Administration	Ms D Chuter, BA HDE <i>Cape Town</i>
Administrative Officer	Mr A Magadla, MPhil <i>Cape Town</i>
Faculty Planning Manager	Ms Z Tennyson, BSocSc(Hons) <i>Cape Town</i>
Administrative Officer (Research, Funding Support and Postgraduate Academic Administration)	Ms N Regal, BSc <i>Cape Town</i>
Communication, Marketing, and Alumni Manager	Ms M Mothiba, BA <i>Unisa</i>
Director: Umthombo Centre for Student Success	Associate Professor S Daya, BA(Hons) <i>Cape Town</i> MA PhD <i>Durham</i>
Faculty Finance Manager	Ms V Seaton-Smith, BCom <i>UPE</i>
Human Resources Management:	
Senior HR Practitioner	Mr G Matthee, ND HRM <i>CPUT</i>
HR Practitioner	Ms U Maxhela, PGDip <i>UWC</i> BTech NDip <i>NMU</i>
Manager: Quality and Standards	Mrs B Aldersley, MSc <i>Witwatersrand</i>
Administrative Officer: Quality and Standards	Ms K-L Europa, BSocSc(Hons) <i>Cape Town</i>
Manager: Postgraduate Administration and Records	Mr C Esterhuizen, MSocSc <i>Cape Town</i>
Postgraduate Administrative Officer	Ms N Mdingi
Postgraduate Administrative Officer	Mrs I Jacobs-Ajam, BA(Hons) <i>Unisa</i>
Postgraduate Administrative Officer	Ms K Parfitt, BSocSc(Hons) <i>Cape Town</i>
Postgraduate Administrative Officer	TBA
Manager: Undergraduate Administration and Records	Ms S Laws, BSc <i>London Metropolitan University</i>
Undergraduate Administrative Officer	Ms S Weber
Undergraduate Administrative Officer	Ms L Little



Undergraduate Administrative Officer	Mr L Mincione, BMus(Hons) <i>Cape Town</i>
Undergraduate Administrative Officer	Mr J Ronnie, BA <i>Cape Town</i>
Undergraduate Administrative Officer	Ms A Thaver, Dip <i>IIE: Varsity College</i>
Undergraduate Administrative Officer	Mr N Wyngaard, Dip <i>CPUT</i>
Senior Secretary	Ms P Maharaj, BCom <i>Stell</i>
Senior Secretary	TBA
Information Technology Manager	Mr R Gachago, MPhil <i>Cape Town</i>

## Student Advisors

Dr J Claassen (School of Languages and Literatures – Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies Section)  
 Dr A de Melo (School of Languages and Literatures - Portuguese Language and Literature Section)  
 Associate Professor N Gama (Sociology Department)  
 Associate Professor H McDonald (Anthropology Department)  
 Associate Professor V Naidoo (Political Studies Department)  
 Ms M Potter (School of Languages and Literatures – Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies Section)  
 Ms C Reyneke (School of Languages and Literatures – Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies Section)  
 Dr I-M Rijdsijk (Centre for Film and Media Studies) (Semester 2 only)  
 Ms K Schmid (School of Languages and Literatures - French Language and Literature Section)  
 Dr M Thompson (African Studies and Linguistics Department)  
 Dr I van Rooyen (School of Languages and Literatures - Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies Section)  
 Associate Professor L van Sittert (Department of Historical Studies)  
 Dr T Wilks (Umthombo Centre for Student Success)

## Humanities Students' Council

The Humanities Students' Council (HSC) is elected annually by the students in the Faculty of Humanities. The HSC is concerned with the academic and social interests of Humanities students, and liaises with the Dean and other academic and administrative staff in the Faculty.  
 The HSC is housed in Room 27b, Beattie Building.

## Undergraduate Degrees, Diplomas and Certificates awarded in the Faculty

NQF exit level	Qualification	Code	Abbreviation	Minimum Duration	SAQA ID
<b>Higher Certificates</b>					
5	Higher Certificate in Adult and Community Education and Training	HU052	HCert (Adult and Community Education and Training)	1 year	112180
<b>Advanced Certificates</b>					
6	Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Teaching	HU048	AdvCert (Foundation Phase Teaching)	1 year	98936
6	Advanced Certificate in Intermediate Phase Teaching	HU045	AdvCert (Intermediate Phase Teaching)	1 year	98817
6	Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Teaching	HU043	AdvCert (Senior Phase Teaching)	1 year	96461

### Diplomas

6	Diploma in Music Performance	HU021	Dip (Music Performance)	3 years	10649
6	Diploma in Theatre and Performance	HU020	Dip (Theatre and Performance)	3 years	96640
<b>Advanced Diplomas</b>					
7	Advanced Diploma in Music ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )	HU046	AdvDip (Music)	1 year	97903
7	Advanced Diploma in Opera ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )	HU047	AdvDip (Opera)	1 year	97916
7	Advanced Diploma in Theatre ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )	HU050	AdvDip (Theatre)	1 year	101890
7	Advanced Diploma in Adult & Community Education & Training	HU051	AdvDip (Adult & Community Education & Training)	1 year	111274
7	Advanced Diploma in School Leadership & Management	HU053	AdvDip (School Leadership & Management)	1 year	109236
<b>Degrees (Bachelors)</b>					
7	Bachelor of Arts	HB003	BA	3 years	10577
7	Bachelor of Social Science	HB001	BSocSc	3 years	116425
7	Bachelor of Social Science in Philosophy, Politics and Economics	HB027	BSocSc (Philosophy, Politics and Economics)	3 years	15178
8	Bachelor of Arts in Fine Art	HB008	BA (Fine Art)	4 years	10585
8	Bachelor of Arts in Theatre and Performance	HB014	BA (Theatre and Performance)	4 years	14682
8	Bachelor of Music	HB010	BMus	4 years	59301
8	Bachelor of Social Work	HB063	BSW	4 years	96465

**Note:** By virtue of inclusion on the Institution's DHET approved Programme and Qualification Mix (PQM), all qualifications included in this Handbook are **accredited** by the Council on Higher Education's permanent sub-committee - the Higher Education Quality Committee. Where a SAQA ID has not been provided, the qualification is awaiting the SAQA ID. The higher education sector has undergone an extensive alignment to the Higher Education Qualification sub Framework and thus all institutions are awaiting the finalisation of the process and completion of the awarding of SAQA ID's. Please consult Handbook 2 or the HEQsF Programme and Qualification Mix (PQM) on the Institutional Planning Department's website, as approved by the Department of Higher Education and Training, for a list of all UCT's accredited qualifications.

## Degree specialisations offered in the Faculty

Bachelor of Arts specialising in Film and Media Production [HB054]

## Extended programmes of study offered in the Faculty

Bachelor of Arts (BA) [HB061]

Bachelor of Social Science (BSocSc) [HB062]

Bachelor of Arts in Fine Art (BA(FA)) [HB064] *(No new intake in 2025. For continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.)*

Bachelor of Music (BMus) [HB034] *(No new intake in 2025. For continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.)*

Diploma in Music Performance (DMP) [HU035] *(No new intake in 2025. For continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 4 years funded by NSFAS.)*

## Requirements for Recognition of University Degrees for Teaching Purposes

Students wishing to become school teachers are advised to consult the admission requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Education (PGCE) which may be found in the School of Education entry in this Handbook. Full rules and curricular details for the PGCE may be found in the Faculty of Humanities Postgraduate Handbook.

Students are required to first complete an undergraduate degree.

## Term Dates for 2025

Please refer to the UCT website: <https://www.uct.ac.za/main/calendar/terms>.

## Lecture periods

1	08:00 to 08:45	The meridian	13.00 to 14:00
2	09:00 to 09:45	6	14:00 to 14:45
3	10:00 to 10:45	7	15:00 to 15:45
4	11:00 to 11:45	8	16:00 to 16:45
5	12:00 to 12:45	9	17:00 to 17:45

## Abbreviations and Definitions

### Augmenting course:

Augmenting courses are linked to a standard semester subject course and are co-requisite to the semester subject course for students undertaking particular programmes of study. Augmenting courses provide students in these programmes with extra academic support.

### Co-requisite course:

A subject course for which a student must be registered concurrently with another course.

### DP requirements:

The classwork and test results which must be achieved in order to be allowed to write the examination in a course (DP = duly performed; DPR = duly performed refused).

### Exemption:

Exemption from a course means a student is not required to take the course. This may be granted where a student has demonstrated learning outcomes/ mastery of content required for the qualification. Exemption from a course does not confer exemption from the course, credit or attendance requirements for qualification and students will be required to take an alternative course in lieu (normally at the same academic level as the exempted course and with an equivalent credit-

weight). Exemption can also be used to meet pre-requisite requirements for entry to a higher level course in a particular discipline/ subject.

**Extended degree and diploma programmes of study:**

Structured programmes of study towards a qualification for students selected on the basis of admissions criteria who show the potential to succeed on a programme of study with additional academic support. Students registered for extended programmes of study take additional courses for academic support and complete their qualifications over an extra year.

**Finalist:**

A student who is expected to complete all requirements for their degree in the year of registration.

**Introductory Humanities courses:**

A course providing a general orientation to language, numeracy, learning practices and key concepts in the Humanities. These courses introduce concepts and skills relevant across the Arts and Social Sciences. These courses carry DOH or MAM course codes.

**Major:**

A sequence of subject courses at first, second and third year levels defined by the Department teaching the course as a major in that subject.

**NQF credits, HEQSF qualification levels and HEQSF course levels:**

All South African tertiary institutions are required to align their qualifications with the prescriptions of the national Higher Education Qualifications Sub-Framework, which forms part of the National Qualifications Framework (NQF). Each qualification has an exit level and is required to have a minimum number of HEQSF credits at that level. One credit equals 10 notional hours of learning. The HEQSF requires the following credits per qualification:

- Higher Certificate (exit level 5): Minimum 120 credits.
- Advanced Certificate (exit level 6): Minimum 120 credits.
- Diploma (exit level 6): Minimum 240 credits.
- Advanced Diploma (exit level 7): Minimum 120 credits.
- Bachelor's degree of 3 years (exit level 7): Minimum of 360 credits. Minimum credits at level 7 (i.e. third year level): 120. Also includes level 5 (1<sup>st</sup> year) and level 6 (2<sup>nd</sup> year) credits.
- Bachelor's degree of four years (exit level 8): Minimum of 480 credits. Minimum credits at level 7 (i.e. third year level): 120; minimum credits at level 8 (fourth year level and above): 96.

**Part-time student:**

A *bona fide* part-time student in a postgraduate course of study.

**Prerequisite course:**

A subject course which a student must have completed in order to gain admission to a senior or subsequent course.

**Programme of study:**

A structured and purposeful set of learning experiences that leads to a qualification, e.g. the extended degree programme leading to the Bachelor of Arts qualification. **Qualification:** Certification awarded by an accredited institution in formal recognition of learning achievement. The Faculty offers Higher Certificates, Advanced Certificates, Diplomas, Advanced Diplomas, Postgraduate Diplomas, Bachelor's Degrees, Honours Degrees, Master's Degrees, and Doctoral Degrees.

All qualifications are accredited nationally by the Council for Higher Education (CHE) and are registered by the South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA).

**Semester course:**

A course which runs for the duration of a single semester, and which is equivalent to half of a full-year course. A course with a duration of one semester is usually coded F or S; a course covering a semester's work but spread over the year is usually coded H. A whole-year course (usually coded W) is equivalent to two semester courses.

**Subject course:**

A course situated in a particular subject area or discipline.

**Senior course:**

A subject course which requires prerequisite(s) to be completed in a previous year and which the Faculty of Humanities has recognised as having senior status.

**Specialisation:**

A structured curriculum within a qualification, e.g. the Bachelor of Arts specialising in Film and Media Production.

**Stream:**

A subject focus within a qualification or programme of study. Streams have specific curriculum requirements.

## Structure of Course Codes

The code structure is uniform and it gives important information about the course. Each code has eight characters, as follows: AAA1nnnS, where

AAA	is a 3 alpha-character group identifying the department
1	is a number representing the year of study in which the course is usually taken
nnn	is a 3 character number that identifies the course uniquely
S	is a single alpha-character suffix, giving information about the duration and semester placement of the course

Suffixes which are most frequently used in the Faculty are:

F	First semester course
S	Second semester course
W	Whole-year course
H	Half-course taught throughout the year
Z	Non-standard period

Summer/Winter Term courses:

P	November - December
U	November - January
L	June -July

The following examples show how the codes work:

ELL1013F English Literary Studies

ELL designates an English course

1 designates a first year course

013 serves to distinguish this course from other first year English courses

F designates a first semester course

HST2047S	Gender and History
HST	designates a History course
2	designates a second year course
047	serves to distinguish this course from other second year History courses
S	designates a second semester course

### List of Departmental Letter Codes

In numerous instances courses are referred to through use of their codes. To assist students a list of departmental letter codes is given below. This is not a comprehensive list, but includes those teaching courses most frequently taken by students in this Faculty. In cases where a code is not understood, the department should be identified from the list, and then the departmental entry in this Handbook, or the Department itself, should be consulted.

DEPARTMENT/SECTION	ABBREVIATION
African Feminist Studies	AFS
African Languages and Literatures	SLL
African Studies and Linguistics	ASL
Afrikaans	SLL
Anthropology	ANS
Arabic Language and Literature	SLL
Archaeology	AGE
Art Historical Studies	FIN
Classics	SLL
Criminal Justice	PBL
Dance	TDP
Education	EDN
English Literary Studies	ELL
Environmental and Geographical Science	EGS
Film and Media	FAM
Fine Art	FIN
French Language and Literature	SLL
German Language and Literature	SLL
Hebrew Language and Literature	SLL
Historical Studies	HST
Italian Studies	SLL
Knowledge & Information Stewardship	LIS
Management Studies	BUS
Music	MUZ
Organisational Psychology	BUS
Philosophy	PHI
Political Studies	POL
Psychology	PSY
Social Work & Social Development	SWK
Sociology	SOC
Spanish	SLL
Theatre	TDP
The Study of Religions	REL

---

# FACULTY RULES FOR UNDERGRADUATE STUDENTS

## Notices

- F1 All students registered for any courses given in the Faculty are required to consult the notice boards and Vula regularly. Students are further required to check their UCT email for official communication regarding courses and registration.

## Right of admission

- F2 The right of admission to lectures, classes and seminars is restricted to students in good standing who are specifically registered for the respective courses concerned. Guests may be admitted at the invitation of the teachers in charge.

## Use of premises

- F3 The Faculty and Departmental premises shall not, without permission from the Dean or Head of the relevant Department, be used for the sale or distribution of books, papers, or other articles, or for the display of notices or announcements, or for the making of collections for charitable or other purposes, or as an address for personal mail.

## Duly performed certificates (DP)

- F4 Candidates may not sit the examination in a course if they have been refused a duly performed certificate for the course (see General Rules for Students GB9.1, 9.2 and 9.3). Conditions for the award of a duly performed certificate are set out in the course description for the course concerned in this handbook.

## Repeating courses

- F5.1 Except with the permission of the Senate, students registered in the Faculty of Humanities who fail a University course twice will not be allowed to register for the same course for a third time.
- F5.2 Should a required course be failed twice (including DPR for the course INC [incomplete] or AB [absent from the final examination or supplementary examination]), the student will have to transfer to a programme of study in which the same course is not required, in order to complete the qualification.
- F5.3 Students are not permitted to repeat a course that has been passed.

## Prerequisites for courses

- F6 Except with the permission of the Senate, no student shall be admitted to a stipulated course in a subject if they have not satisfied the prerequisites for that course.

## Completion of practical work

- F7 Candidates shall not be credited with having completed any course, or portion of a course, unless they have satisfactorily performed such practical work as may be prescribed.

## Programme and qualification choice

- F8 Students may change their qualification and/ or programme of study with the permission of the Programme Convener and Dean. Not all courses passed may be credited towards a new qualification.

**Transferring students**

- F9.1 Students who have not been excluded from another faculty may transfer to the Faculty of Humanities for the purpose of taking the BA, BA(FA), BMus, BSocSc or BSW degree, provided that such students satisfy the requirements for admission as a candidate for that degree. Students excluded from another faculty will not be accepted by the Faculty of Humanities without the permission of the Faculty's Readmission Appeal Committee.
- F9.2 Students transferring to the Faculty of Humanities from another university may be granted credit or exemption or both for up to a maximum of eight semester courses (or equivalent) towards the BA, BSocSc or BSW degree. Such transferring students will be required to complete the remaining required full courses (or equivalent in half-courses) prescribed for the degree, including, where applicable, all 3000-level courses required for the major, at this University over a period of not less than two years.
- 9.2.1 In the case of students wishing to transfer into the BA(FA) degree, no more than four full courses (or equivalent in half courses) in studio/work subjects, two full courses (or equivalent in half courses) in Discourse of Art (or equivalent) and a further one full course (or equivalent in half courses) in other Humanities subjects, may be offered for credit or exemption, on recommendation of the Director of the Michaelis School of Fine Art.
- 9.2.2 In the case of students transferring into the BMus degree or Music diplomas, no more than one half of the credits required for the degree or diploma, and in addition no more than one half of the core courses required by the programme stream, may be offered for credit or exemption.

**Credits towards second UCT degree**

- F10 Students who have completed any course or courses for which credit may be given towards one or more degrees in the University and have obtained one of these degrees may be granted credit(s) and/or exemption(s) in respect of such course(s) towards another degree in the University; provided that no such students shall be admitted to such other degree unless they have, in respect of that degree:
- (a) for a three-year degree: registered for at least two years and while so registered, completed at least one half of the courses prescribed for the degree including the final course(s) in their major subject(s);
  - (b) provided further that the Senate may, in a case considered by it to be exceptional, and on the recommendation of the Board of the Faculty, admit to the degree a student who has only partially complied with the requirements of clause (a).

**Concurrent registration**

- F11.1 *At another university:*  
 Except with the permission of the Senate, students may not register for any course taken at another university in the same year during which such students are registered at the University of Cape Town.
- F11.2 *For two succeeding courses:*  
 Except with the permission of the Senate, concurrent registration for two succeeding courses will not be permitted.

For further information on concurrent registration, see the *Guideline to the taking of courses at other institutions as part of a UCT degree* at the end of this section.



**Recognition of credits for courses taken at other institutions**

F12 Students who are not transferring students will not be allowed to bring credits from elsewhere if they have not attempted the full curriculum at UCT.

**Guidelines to the taking of courses at other institutions as part of a UCT degree** (also see rules F10 and F11 above)

Under limited circumstances, a concession may be granted to complete a course at another institution (concurrent registration). These circumstances include:

- (a) a timetable clash that has occurred as a result of a change made after the student has embarked on study/curriculum;
- (b) a course which is not part of the student’s major that has been failed twice before and which cannot be replaced by another elective.

In all cases, students must obtain permission in advance. In the case of (a) above, consideration will only be given if the course is not offered in Summer Term or Winter Term, or can be taken in another year of full-time study.

**Requirements for distinction**

*Distinction in a subject/programme specialisation*

F13 Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.

F13.1 *Bachelor of Arts specialising in Film and Media Production*  
*Bachelor of Social Science in Philosophy, Politics and Economics*  
*Bachelor of Social Work*

With the exception of the subjects listed below, and where the rules for a specialisation in a programme or a programme stream require completion, under normal circumstances, of two 2000-level and two 3000-level courses in a sequence of courses from one subject or from various subjects, the above degrees will be awarded with a distinction in a programme specialisation if a candidate has attained an average of 75% in at least four senior semester courses including at least two 3000-level courses required for a major, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%, with each 3000-level course receiving a mark of at least 70%. Where the rules for a specialisation in a programme or a programme stream require completion of more than four senior semester courses (or the equivalent) in a particular programme specialisation, the Programme Convener shall determine which courses up to a maximum of four senior semester courses shall be considered for distinction in that programme specialisation, as long as at least two of those courses are at 3000-level.

- Economics
- Law
- Organisational Psychology
- Psychology

**Distinction in the qualification as a whole**

F14 Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.

*Qualification-specific rules for the award of a distinction are covered under the corresponding section for each qualification.*

## Awards

### *Class awards*

- F15.1 A list of class awardees is published every year, once approved by the Faculty Examinations Committee.
- F15.2 Only students registered for an undergraduate Bachelor's degree are eligible for a class award. Any students taking a course for the second time are ineligible for any award or prize in that course. Occasional students are ineligible for class awards.
- F15.3 Awards may be conferred only on those students who have shown special ability.
- F15.4 Only one award will be conferred in a course, irrespective of the number of students in the class, or how many sessions of the course exist (first semester, second semester or summer/winter term).
- F15.5 Class awards may be given to the best academic performing student in any single course, combination of, or selection of courses approved by the Senate in any subject recognised in the Faculty of Humanities.

*Further rules for the conferral of class awards in specific qualifications are covered under the corresponding qualification rules.*

## Dean's merit list

- F16 The Dean's merit list is published annually. It contains the names of students whose academic performance over the year is meritorious (70% average on full course load) and hence worthy of recognition. Students who qualify for inclusion in the list will receive a letter of commendation from the Dean. "Full course load" is interpreted to mean:
- (a) in the case of qualifications with structured curricula, the minimum course load prescribed for a particular year of study;
  - (b) in the case of the regular programmes of study leading to the award of the BA and BSocSc, the first year of registration for the degree must include the top 8 semester courses, the second year of registration must include the top 6 semester courses (including the courses for the majors and at least 5 senior semester courses), and the third year of registration must include the remaining courses necessary for the degree.
  - (c) in the case of the extended programme in the general degree, the first year of registration for the degree must include the top 6 semester courses, the second year of registration must include the top 6 semester courses (including the courses for at least one major and at least 2 senior courses), the third year of registration must include the top 6 semester courses (including the courses for at least one major and at least 4 senior courses), and the fourth year of registration must include the remaining courses necessary for the degree.
  - (d) in the case of students in the general degree who are forced to extend their degree over a four-year pattern to accommodate either the Mathematics/Statistics preparation for the Psychology or Economics majors or an unavoidable timetable clash, the first year of registration for the degree must include the top 6 semester courses, the second year of registration must include the top 6 semester courses (including the courses for the majors and at least 4 senior courses), the third year of registration must include the top 4 senior semester courses, and the fourth year of registration must include the remaining courses necessary for the degree.

- (e) in the case of students in the general degree who choose to extend their degree over a four-year pattern to accommodate an additional major or a Science major with heavy co-requisite demands, the first year of registration for the degree must include the top 8 semester courses, the second year of registration must include 6 semester courses (including the courses for the majors and at least 5 senior courses), the third year of registration must include the top 6 senior semester courses, and the fourth year of registration must include the remaining courses necessary for the degree.
- (f) in the case of students who move into a Humanities programme after a year or more in another programme or faculty, the full load for their programme regardless of whether or not they transfer credits from their previous programme. Students transferring less than the full first-year course load from another programme may be deemed to be in their first year of study in their new programme for the purposes of DML load calculation.
- (g) in any programme of study, a full load minimum taken over the first or second semesters. While available Winter or Summer Term course marks may be added to the calculation if they increase the overall average, they may only do so if they represent credits over and above the prescribed minimum (as defined above).

F16.1

Enriched curriculum waivers:

In accordance with UCT's Student Fees Handbook rule 2.6, students on the Dean's merit list in their preceding year of study may apply for the waiver of the course fee on course(s) taken in addition to the full standard curriculum - that is, students will graduate with more than the maximum number of courses required by the degree programme. Humanities students access this waiver under the following restrictions:

- (a) a maximum of one course will be rebated per year per student
- (b) if multiple courses could be considered as additional to the full curriculum, the additional course will be taken to be that with the least expensive course fee
- (c) waivers will not be applied to final-year core, major or specialisation courses even when such courses are in excess of the minimum programme requirement for such
- (d) Dean's merit list status does not guarantee the award of a fee waiver. If limited University funds are available for rebates, waivers will be allocated in order of merit by average for the DML year.

## **Minimum requirements for readmission and promotion**

*NOTE:*

*What this means is that where students have not met the requirements for their qualification or programme, the Faculty Examinations Committee will consider whether or not to re-admit them in the following year. The Faculty Examinations Committee may decide not to re-admit such a student, in which case the student will need to appeal via the Faculty Readmission Appeal Committee; or the Faculty Examination Committee may decide to re-admit the student on certain conditions. Each case is unique and considered individually, and the student's full academic record is considered in reaching the decision.*

*Specific requirements for re-admission are covered under the corresponding qualification rules.*

### Maximum registration period

- F17.1 Except with the permission of the Senate, students who have not completed the requirements for the qualification shall not be permitted to register at the University for more than the following periods:
- |   |            |
|---|------------|
| BA and BSocSc students following the regular programme of study:  | four years |
| <i>This includes the BA specialisations.</i>                      |            |
| BA and BSocSc students following the extended programme of study: | five years |
| BSocSc(PPE) students:   | four years |
| BSW students:   | five years |
| BA(FA) students following the regular programme of study:         | five years |
| BA(FA) students following the extended programme of study:        | five years |
| BA(T&P) students:   | five years |
| BMus students following the regular programme of study:           | five years |
| BMus students following the extended programme of study:          | five years |
| DMP students following the regular programme of study:            | four years |
| DMP students following the extended programme of study:           | four years |
| Dip(T&P) students:  | four years |
- F17.2 Students who are refused permission to re-register in the Faculty may appeal to the Faculty Readmission Appeal committee in accordance with procedures laid down by that committee. The decision of the Readmission Appeal Committee shall be final.
- F17.3 The registration of students transferring from another faculty or another post-secondary education institution, or who are permitted to register by Senate and who have not met the minimum requirements of Rule 17.1 above, shall be subject to such special conditions as the Senate may prescribe. Except by permission of the Senate, students who fail to satisfy these conditions shall not be permitted to renew registration in the Faculty.

### Supplementary examinations and re-examination for all qualifications offered by the Faculty (see also Rule GB11 in Handbook 3)

- F18.1 The Faculty will not normally award supplementary examinations.
- F18.2 The Head of the Department may require, on academic grounds, the student to undertake further tests or examinations during the period between the completion of the internal marking process and the finalisation of the results by the external examiner. These further tests or examinations may include the following:
- (a) an oral examination;
  - (b) a further written examination covering specific sections only of the work of the course;
  - (c) a further written assignment.

### Absence from examination

- F19 If students do not take a written or practical examination for a course for which they are registered in the scheduled and published time, then they will be recorded as having been absent (AB) from the examination.

# **RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY**

## **HIGHER CERTIFICATE IN ADULT AND COMMUNITY EDUCATION AND TRAINING [HU052]**

### **Distinction in the Higher Certificate in Adult and Community Education and Training**

FGE1      The certificate may be awarded with distinction. For the certificate to be awarded with distinction, candidates must obtain an overall average of 75% or more.

### **Prerequisites for courses and promotion**

FGE2      All courses are compulsory. Students must pass both modules: Introduction to Adult Learning and Citizenship and Social Justice Education before they can progress to the module Designing and Facilitating a Learning Programme. Students who are permitted to repeat a failed course will only be able to do so in an alternate year as not all courses are offered concurrently. Students may be refused permission to repeat a course if their record is poor and, except with permission of Senate, no student will be permitted to repeat a second time. Students have to pass each course to be awarded the qualification.

### **Award of the certificate**

FGE3      Candidates must pass each course within the curriculum to be awarded the certificate.  
*NOTE: The programme is not offered by correspondence. Participants will need to be resident within travelling distance of Cape Town.*

### **Admission requirements**

FGE4      Persons shall not be admitted as candidates for the certificate unless they:

- (a)      have a National Senior Certificate or a Level 4 National Certificate (Vocational) or an appropriate Level 4 Certificate in Adult Education and Training
- (b)      have in any other manner attained a measure of competence which, in the opinion of Senate, is adequate for purposes of admission as candidates.

NOTE: Preference will be given to persons with two years' experience in adult education.

### **Length of curriculum**

FGE5      One-year full time and two years part-time.

### **Criteria for continued progression in the programme**

FGE6      Candidates must attend at least 80% of all classes and complete all assessments both oral and written. Absence for medical reasons must be reported to the Administrative Assistant of the department and must be substantiated by a doctor's certificate for periods in excess of two classes.

## Curriculum leading to the Higher Certificate in Adult and Community Education and Training [HU052]

*Note: The Higher Certificate in ACET is offered part-time over two years. There is a new intake every second year (next intake 2026). No new intake in 2025 - offered to continuing students only.*

### Programme Convener:

L Pottier

### General introduction:

The Higher Certificate in Adult and Community Education and Training is an entry level qualification intended to enable further professional study in adult and community education and training (ACET). The qualification includes a work integrated learning component.

### General aims of the qualification:

The qualification aims at developing:

- (1) a grasp of the fields of adult and community education and training as they have developed within a broader social and historical context of South Africa;
- (2) basic familiarity with some of the theoretical traditions in the field of adult education, as well as theories of citizenship and social justice;
- (3) practical skills necessary for competent practice of adult education and training; and
- (4) communicative competence to meet the formal academic criteria necessary to undertake further university study.

### Times of classes:

Classes will be held in the late afternoon or at another time to be determined by the course conveners.

### Core Modules

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a) EDN1031FS	Introduction to Adult Learning <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	30	5
(b) EDN1030FS	Citizenship and Social Justice Education <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	30	5
(c) EDN1032FS	Designing and Facilitating a Learning Programme .....	60	5
<b>Total NQF credits for the higher certificate.....</b>		<b>120</b>	

## ADVANCED CERTIFICATES

The following rules shall be read in conjunction with the University General Rules and Policies in Handbook 3.

### Certificates offered

FC1	NQF exit level	Qualification	Code	Minimum duration	SAQA Qual ID
	6	Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Teaching	HU048	1 year	98936
	6	Advanced Certificate in	HU045	1 year	98817

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 22

	Intermediate Phase			
6	Teaching Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Teaching	HU043	1 year	96461

### Admission requirements

- FC2.1 Admission is on the recommendation, and at the discretion, of the Head of Department.
- FC2.2 Admission is subject to meeting the rules and requirements laid down by the University (see *General Rules and Policies*).
- FC2.3 Unless otherwise specified, any one of the following may be admitted by Senate as a candidate for the Advanced Certificate in the specialisations listed below.

#### 2.3.1 Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Teaching

- a) University General Rules apply.
  - b) Programme admission requirements:
    - a professional BEd degree, or
    - an Advanced Diploma in Education (or a PGCE or a Higher Diploma Postgraduate), or
    - a three-year Diploma in Education, or
    - a three-year Teachers' Diploma, or
    - a National Professional Diploma in Education (NPDE – Level 5)
- AND
- at least three years approved teaching experience
- c) Acceptance is on the recommendation of the Head of Department.

#### 2.3.2 Advanced Certificate in Intermediate Phase Teaching

- a) University General Rules apply.
  - b) Programme admission requirements:
    - a professional BEd degree, or
    - an Advanced Diploma in Education (or a PGCE or a Higher Diploma Postgraduate), or
    - a three-year Diploma in Education, or
    - a three-year Teachers' Diploma, or
    - a National Professional Diploma in Education (NPDE – Level 5)
- AND
- at least three years approved teaching experience
- c) Acceptance is on the recommendation of the Head of Department.

#### 2.3.3 Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Teaching

- The programmes are intended for in-service primary and secondary school teachers who hold an M+3 qualification. They are intended to broaden and/or upgrade their subject teaching and professional competence.
- a) University General Rules apply.
  - b) Programme admission requirements:
    - a professional BEd degree, or
    - an Advanced Diploma in Education (or a PGCE or a Higher Diploma Postgraduate), or
    - a three-year Diploma in Education, or
    - a three-year Teachers Diploma, or

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 23

- a National Professional Diploma in Education (NPDE – Level 5)

AND

- at least three years approved teaching experience

c) Acceptance is on the recommendation of the Head of Department.  
*NOTE - The programmes may be offered in response to demand by the Western Cape and/or national Departments of Education. Please note that this means that applicants must normally be selected by the Western Cape Education Department (but may apply individually) in order to register for them and that they are not offered when there is no demand for them.*

### Award of the Advanced Certificate

- FC3.1 Candidates must pass each course within their curriculum to be awarded the certificate.
- FC3.2 The certificate may be awarded with distinction where (i) an overall average result of at least 75% is obtained AND (ii) a minimum grade of 65% in each course of the certificate is obtained.

### Progress through the certificate

- FC4 Candidates must complete all the prescribed courses.

### Minimum requirements for readmission

- FC5.1 Except by permission of the Senate, part-time students shall not be permitted to renew their registration in the Faculty unless they have passed:
- (a) by the end of the second year of registration, two semester courses or equivalent qualifying for the certificate;
  - (b) by the end of the third year of registration, six semester courses or equivalent qualifying for the certificate.
- FC5.2 Except by permission of the Senate, full-time students shall not be permitted to renew their registration in the Faculty unless they have passed, by the end of the first year of registration, two semester courses or equivalent qualifying for the certificate.
- FC5.3 Candidates who fail to pass a course after two years of study will be excluded from further registration for such a course.

## Advanced Certificates in Teaching (120-132 NQF Credits)

### Prescribed curriculum:

Candidates must complete all the prescribed courses.

## Advanced Certificate in Foundation Phase Teaching

[HU048]

### Compulsory (core) courses:

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
EDN2521W	Beginning Knowledge FP .....	16	6
EDN2522W	English Classroom Proficiency .....	8	6
EDN2523W	English 1st Additional Language FP .....	12	6
EDN2524W	Language & Literacy FP .....	12	6
EDN2525W	Learning in the Foundation Phase .....	12	6
EDN2526W	Number & Algebra FP .....	20	6



## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 24

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
EDN2527W	Space, Measurement & Data Handling FP.....	20	6
EDN2528W	Teachers as Readers & Writers .....	8	6
EDN2529W	Teaching in the Foundation Phase.....	12	6
EDN1536W	Introduction to ICT for Teachers.....	12	5

### Advanced Certificate in Intermediate Phase Teaching specialising in English First Additional Language & Mathematics

[HU045]

#### Compulsory (core) courses:

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
EDN2522W	English Classroom Proficiency .....	8	6
EDN2528W	Teachers as Readers & Writers .....	8	6
EDN2530W	Curriculum & Assessment IP .....	10	6
EDN2531W	English 1st Additional Language IP.....	18	6
EDN2532W	Teaching Language IP.....	18	6
EDN2533W	Learning & Teaching IP.....	10	6
EDN2534W	Number & Algebra IP .....	24	6
EDN2535W	Space, Measurement & Data Handling IP.....	24	6
EDN1536W	Introduction to ICT for Teachers.....	12	5

### Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Teaching specialising in English First Additional Language

[HU043]

#### Programme Convener:

K Hassan

#### Compulsory (core) courses:

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
EDN2500W	English Communicative Competence SP ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ) ...	24	6
EDN2501W	Literacies SP ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ) .....	24	6
EDN2502W	Listening and Speaking SP ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ).....	24	6
EDN2503W	English FAL Assessment SP ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ).....	24	6
EDN2504W	Language and Grammar SP ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ) .....	8	6
EDN2505W	English FAL Communication and Learning SP ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ).....	8	6
EDN2506W	English FAL Practicum SP ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ) .....	8	6

### Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Teaching specialising in Mathematics

[HU043]

#### Programme Convener:

Y Johnson

#### Compulsory (core) courses:

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
EDN2507W	Number SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ).....	24	6
EDN2508W	Algebra SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ).....	24	6
EDN2509W	Euclidean Geometry and Measurement SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ).....	24	6

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 25

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
EDN2510W	Data Handling and Statistics SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ).....	24	6
EDN2511W	Mathematics Assessment SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ).....	8	6
EDN2512W	Curriculum research in Mathematics Education SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ).....	8	6
EDN2513W	Mathematics Practicum SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ) .....	8	6

### Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Teaching specialising in Natural Sciences [HU043]

#### Programme Convener:

G Dolo

#### Compulsory (core) courses:

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
EDN2514W	Natural Sciences Instruction SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ) .....	4	6
EDN2515W	Matter and Materials SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ).....	26	6
EDN2516W	Energy and Change SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ).....	26	6
EDN2517W	Life and Living SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ).....	26	6
EDN2518W	Earth and Beyond SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ) .....	26	6
EDN2519W	Natural Science Practical Work SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> )..	4	6
EDN2520W	Natural Sciences Practicum SP ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> ) .....	8	6

## ADVANCED DIPLOMAS

### ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN ADULT & COMMUNITY EDUCATION AND TRAINING (ACET) [HU051]

*Note: The AdvDip in ACET is offered part-time over two years. There is a new intake every second year (next intake 2026). No new intake in 2025 - offered to continuing students only.*

#### Admission requirements

- FAD1 Candidates shall be admitted to the Advanced Diploma in ACET, provided they meet the minimum requirements which are:
- (a)
    - an approved and recognized level 6 Diploma in Adult and Community Education and Training, or
    - an Advanced Diploma in Adult and Community Education and Training Teaching, or
    - a level 7 Postgraduate Certificate in Education, or
    - a Bachelor of Education degree in Adult and Community Education and Training, or
    - an historically equivalent qualification from another subfield in education, for example, schooling or lecturing in technical and vocational education and training.

In addition, an Advanced Certificate in Adult and Community Education and Training on level 6 which followed a Diploma in ACET as well as a National Professional Diploma in Education could be used for admission.
  - (b) At least two years of experience as adult community educators and trainers.
  - (c) Or, by means of assessment- as may be prescribed by the Faculty Board- satisfies Senate that he or she has attained a level of competence which, in Senate's opinion, is adequate for admission to the programme.

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 26

### Duration of curriculum

FAD2 The Advanced Diploma is offered over 2 years part-time only.

### Readmission

FAD3 Except by permission of Senate, candidates who fail to complete any course prescribed for the Advanced Diploma in ACET after four years of registration for the part-time programme shall not be permitted to re-register for the course.

### Criteria for continued progress in the programme

FAD4 Candidates must:

- (a) attend at least 80% of all classes and complete all assessments, both oral and written,
- (b) report absence for medical reasons to the Administrative Assistant of the department, which must be substantiated by a doctor's certificate for periods in excess of two classes. Those who, for any reason whatsoever, miss a noticeable proportion of their classes may be deemed not to have completed sufficient coursework to justify continuing the programme.

### Distinction

FAD6 The diploma may be awarded with distinction. For the diploma to be awarded with distinction, candidates must obtain an overall average of 75% or more and not less than 70% in any one component of the programme.

## Curriculum leading to the Advanced Diploma in ACET

### [HU051]

*In 2024/25, the qualification will only be offered part-time over two years*

*The Advanced Diploma in ACET is specifically intended for candidates who wish to undertake professional studies and make careers in the Adult & Community Education and Training field. The purpose of the qualification is to strengthen and enhance an existing specialisation in a subject or field, or to develop a new role or practice to support teaching and learning in ACET. It thus prepares graduates for specialised professional employment and to progress into further study.*

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	EDN3700FS	Approaches to Adult Learning Theory and Practice <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	30	7
(b)	EDN3702FS	Curriculum Studies and Design <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> ....	30	7

#### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	EDN3701FS	Policy and Development towards Social Change .....	30	7
(b)	EDN3703FS	Leading and Managing an Education Project .....	30	7
		<b>Total NQF credits for advanced diploma</b> .....	<b>120</b>	

#### Notes for candidates for the Advanced Diploma in ACET:

Candidates are advised that this programme requires ICT competency and it is assumed to be in place. If candidates are not ICT competent then they will be required to take an additional 12 credits at level 5 offered in the School of Education to develop this competency. Candidates are required to be resident in Cape Town.

## **ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN SCHOOL LEADERSHIP AND MANAGEMENT**

**[HU053]**

### **Admission requirements**

- FAD7
- (a) University general rules apply
  - (b) Minimum admission requirements for Advanced Diplomas (as per Revised Policy on MRTEQ, February 2015)
    - (i) a professional BEd degree, or
    - (ii) a general first degree or diploma plus a PGCE, or
    - (iii) a Higher Diploma in Education (Postgraduate), or
    - (iv) a four-year Higher Diploma in Education, or
    - (v) a former NQF level 6 Advanced Certificate in Education or a former Further Diploma in Education which follows a former professional teaching qualification, or
    - (vi) a new Advanced Certificate which followed a former Diploma in Education.
  - (c) Programme admission requirements:
    - (i) priority will be given to serving or aspirant principals who meet the criteria below as well as to SMT members wishing to enrol as a group/team to develop a community of practice in school leadership
    - (ii) candidates should have a formal professional teacher qualification at REQV level 14 or above
    - (iii) candidates should have at least three years' teaching experience
    - (iv) candidates should be employed at Post level 2 and above. (However, in exceptional cases a candidate with Post Level 1 and related experience and competence could be considered)
    - (v) Preferably, the principal and/or School Governing Body should endorse all applications
    - (vi) to meet the systemic objective of 50% of school principals being female, at least 50% of candidates for the AdvDip (School Leadership & Management) programme should be female.
    - (vii) if the applicant's immediate accounting officer refuses to endorse the application, the applicant has the right to appeal such refusal with the appropriate/relevant accounting officer in the system.

## **Curriculum leading to the Advanced Diploma in School Leadership and Management**

### **Management**

**[HU053]**

The Advanced Diploma in School Leadership and Management, AdvDip(SLM), is a national qualification developed by the Department of Basic Education (DBE). This is an NQF level 7 qualification for School Management Team (SMT) members offered over a 24-month part-time period. The programme is required to be completed outside of school teaching time, as the students (SMT members) are in full-time employment, hence certain Saturdays (some used for school extra-curricular activities) and school holidays are utilised for classes, followed by Communities of Practice (CoPs) as support. This qualification facilitates the implementation of an entry level qualification for school principals. According to the implementation guidelines 'the qualification is to be offered through a national programme, delivered by accredited HEIs under the auspices of the DBE and in conjunction with provincial education departments' (DBE, 2018). The first intake for the programme is either in the first or second semester, with candidates reregistering each subsequent year until programme completion.

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 28

### FIRST SEMESTER INTAKE:

#### Core Modules: Year 1

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	EDN3704W	Professional Portfolio and Workplace Project .....	30	7
(b)	EDN3705W	Leading and Managing Teaching and Learning in the School.....	18	7
(c)	EDN3706W	Leading and Managing Extra-curricular & Co-curricular Activities .....	9	7
(d)	EDN3707W	Leading and Managing People and Change .....	18	7

#### Core Modules: Year 2

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	EDN3711W	Professional Portfolio and Workplace Project – continued .....	30	7
(d)	EDN3712W	Leading and Managing People and Change – continued	18	7
(e)	EDN3708W	Working with and for the Community .....	9	7
(f)	EDN3709W	Leading & Managing the School as an Organisation .....	18	7
(g)	EDN3710W	Working within and for the School System .....	18	7
<b>NQF credits (part-time over two years) .....</b>			<b>120</b>	

### SECOND SEMESTER INTAKE:

#### Core Modules: Year 1

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	EDN3704W	Professional Portfolio and Workplace Project .....	30	7
(b)	EDN3705W	Leading and Managing Teaching and Learning in the School.....	18	7

#### Core Modules: Year 2

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	EDN3711W	Professional Portfolio and Workplace Project – continued .....	30	7
(b)	EDN3713W	Leading and Managing Teaching and Learning in the School - continued .....	18	7
(c)	EDN3706W	Leading and Managing Extra-curricular & Co-curricular Activities .....	9	7
(d)	EDN3707W	Leading and Managing People and Change .....	18	7
(e)	EDN3708W	Working with and for the Community .....	9	7

#### Core Modules: Year 3

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	EDN3711W	Professional Portfolio and Workplace Project – continued .....	30	7
(f)	EDN3709W	Leading & Managing the School as an Organisation .....	18	7
(g)	EDN3710W	Working within and for the School System .....	18	7
<b>NQF credits (part-time over two years) .....</b>			<b>120</b>	

## Bachelor of Arts (BA) [HB003]

## Bachelor of Social Science (BSocSc) [HB001]

These rules must be read in conjunction with the General Rules for degrees in Book 3 of this series.

*NOTE: For the purposes of relating the following rules to curricula, it is important to note that a full course carries the same credit as two semester courses or two half courses. In consequence, rules expressed in terms of full courses may be re-expressed in terms of semester or half courses, and vice*

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 29

*versa. For the purposes of relevant rules, a whole year full course is regarded as being equivalent to a semester course per semester and a whole year half course as equivalent to half a semester course per semester.*

### Requirements for distinction

FB1 The degree may be awarded with distinction (see Faculty Rules F13 and F14).

### Distinction in a subject/ programme specialisation

FB1.1 With the exception of the subjects listed below, the general BA or BSocSc degrees may be awarded with a distinction in a subject taken at first attempt, if the candidate has attained an average of 75% in at least four senior semester courses including at least two 3000-level courses required for a major, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70%, and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%. Where the major rules for a subject require the completion of more than four senior semester courses (or the equivalent), the Head of Department shall determine which courses up to a maximum of four senior semester courses shall be considered for distinction in that subject, as long as at least two of those courses are at 3000-level.

FB1.2 The following courses which may be taken as major subjects in the BA and BSocSc degrees are subject to the rules for distinction as determined by those departments:  
**Economics:** An average of 80% or more across ECO3020F and two other 3000-level ECO courses, with first-class passes in at least two of these three courses.  
**Informatics:** An average of 75% or above in INF3011F, INF3014F, INF2011S and INF2010S/INF3012S, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70%, and the average of INF3011F and INF3014F being at least 75%.  
**Law:** A weighted average of 75% in all six law courses taken towards the degree, the weight being in proportion to the credits accruing to those six courses.  
**Organisational Psychology:** First-class passes in two 2000-level and two 3000-level courses required for the major subject or programme specialisation.  
**Psychology:** First-class passes in the following four courses: PSY2015F and one other second-year Psychology course, PSY3007S and one other third-year Psychology course.

FB1.3 Additional majors offered by departments in the Faculty of Science and recognised towards the BA and BSocSc degrees but not specified in FB1.2 above are subject to the rules for distinctions as determined by those departments and as reflected in Rule FB8.1 in the official handbook of the Faculty of Science.

FB1.4 **Distinction in the qualification as a whole**  
Candidates may be awarded the BA or BSocSc degree with distinction if they obtain first-class passes in a minimum of ten semester courses (or the equivalent), including eight senior semester courses (or the equivalent) and including, under normal circumstances, the courses which gained the student distinction in at least one subject, according to Rules FB1.1, FB1.2 and FB1.3 above.

### Regular programme of study

FB2 Any students following the regular programme of study who fail three or more courses in the first semester of their first year of study will be advised to transfer to the extended programme of study in the second semester of their first year of study.

### Major subjects

FB3 (a) The curriculum shall include at least two major subjects, each of which consists of at least two semester courses or equivalent (at the 3000-level)

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 30

and all the prerequisite and co-requisite courses, provided that none of the 2000- or 3000-level courses have been recognised as parts of another major subject. Courses required at 1000-level may be recognised as part of more than one major subject.

- (b) Students must complete at least one major offered by departments established in the Faculty of Humanities (including the School of Economics).
- (c) Recognition of a major subject passed at another university: see Rule F12 above.
- (d) Students who select both majors from the list of Bachelor of Arts majors (see table below) will register for a Bachelor of Arts degree. Students who select both majors from the list of Bachelor of Social Science majors (see table below) will register for a Bachelor of Social Science degree. Students who select one major from each list will choose to register for either a Bachelor of Arts degree or a Bachelor of Social Science degree. Students who select a major from departments outside the Faculty (see table below) will register for the Bachelor's degree (Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Social Science) of the Humanities Faculty major.

<b><u>HUMANITIES MAJORS</u></b>	
<b>(At least one major MUST be selected from this category)</b>	
<b>Subjects that lead to a Bachelor of Arts degree are the following:</b>	
<b>MAJOR</b>	<b>DEPARTMENT</b>
<b>Afrikaans</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>African Languages and Literature</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>Arabic Language and Literature</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>Art History and Discourse of Art</b>	Michaelis School of Fine Art
<b>Business French</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>Chinese Studies</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>Classical Studies</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>English Literary Studies</b>	English Literary Studies
<b>Film and Television Studies</b>	Centre for Film and Media Studies
<b>French</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>German</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>Hebrew Language and Literature</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>History</b>	Historical Studies
<b>Italian</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>Linguistics</b>	African Studies and Linguistics
<b>Media and Writing</b>	Centre for Film and Media Studies
<b>Music</b>	South African College of Music
<b>Portuguese</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>Spanish</b>	School of Languages and Literatures
<b>Theatre &amp; Dance Studies</b>	Centre for Theatre, Dance & Performance Studies
<b>Xhosa Communication</b>	School of Languages and Literatures

Subjects that lead to a Bachelor of Social Science degree are the following:	
<b>African Studies</b>	African Studies and Linguistics
<b>Anthropology</b>	Anthropology
<b>Economics</b>	School of Economics
<b>Gender Studies</b>	African Feminist Studies
<b>Industrial Sociology</b>	Sociology
<b>Philosophy</b>	Philosophy
<b>Politics &amp; Governance</b>	Political Studies
<b>Psychology</b>	Psychology
<b>Social Development</b>	Social Development
<b>Sociology</b>	Sociology
<b>The Study of Religions</b>	The Study of Religions

NON-HUMANITIES MAJORS	
MAJOR	DEPARTMENT AND FACULTY
<b>Applied Mathematics*</b>	Mathematics & Applied Mathematics (Science)
<b>Applied Statistics</b>	Statistical Sciences (Science)
<b>Archaeology</b>	Archaeology (Science)
<b>Computer Science*</b>	Computer Science (Science)
<b>Environmental &amp; Geographical Science</b>	Environmental & Geographical Science (Science)
<b>Informatics</b>	Information Systems (Commerce)
<b>Law</b>	Faculty of Law
<b>Mathematical Statistics*</b>	Statistical Sciences (Science)
<b>Mathematics*</b>	Mathematics & Applied Mathematics (Science)
<b>Organisational Psychology</b>	School of Management Studies (Commerce)

Students will not be permitted to offer the following combinations of majors:

- French and Business French**
- Sociology and Industrial Sociology**
- Economics and Organisational Psychology**
- Economics and Informatics**
- Organisational Psychology and Informatics**

### Required senior semester subject courses

FB4 Candidates shall complete at least **ten** senior semester subject courses (or equivalent) selected from courses offered by departments established in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce, Law or Science (including courses offered by the Department of Human Biology through the Faculty of Science), provided they meet the entrance requirements of the courses concerned and subject to the rules below.

### Required Humanities courses

FB5 Except by permission of the Senate, the curriculum shall include at least 12 semester subject courses (or equivalent) offered by departments established in the Faculty of Humanities, including the School of Economics. The remaining courses may include any course offered in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce, Law or Science (including courses offered by the Department of Human Biology through the Faculty of Science), subject to



## **RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 32**

- the rules of the faculty concerned
- rule FB4 (above)
- Notes 1 – 10 in this rule (below).

### **Courses undertaken in a student's first year of study**

FB5.1 With the exception of the first-year courses required by those non-Humanities majors which are recognised by the Faculty of Humanities, no non-Humanities courses may be taken by students in their first year of study.

### **Courses offered by the Centre for Theatre, Dance & Performance Studies**

FB5.2 TDP1017H and TDP1018H will be recognised as part of the curriculum of the general BA and BSocSc degrees. All other 1000, 2000, and 3000-level Professional Theatre and Dance Training courses will not be recognised for such purposes.

### **Courses offered by the Department of Social Work and Social Development**

FB5.3 Only the courses in the Social Development major will be recognised towards the general BA and BSocSc degrees; all other Social Work and Field Practicum courses will not be recognised as part of the general BA and BSocSc degrees.

### **Courses offered by the Michaelis School of Fine Art**

FB5.4 The following courses will be recognised as part of the general BA and BSocSc degrees:

1000-level courses:

- (a) FIN1005W Fine Art Foundation
- (b) FIN1006F Introduction to African Art
- (c) FIN1009S Approaches to Art History
- (d) FIN1001W Studiowork 1

2000 and 3000-level courses:

- (e) FIN2027F Art Narrative: Traditions and Tensions OR FIN2029F Envisioning the Body: Representation of the Human in Art and Visual Culture
- (f) FIN2028S Discursive Strategies
- (g) FIN3026F New Art: New Perspectives OR FIN3028F Race, Gender and Decolonial Praxis
- (h) FIN3027S Curatorial Praxes OR FIN3029S Borders and Social Justice in the Arts

All 2000, 3000 and 4000-level Studiowork courses will not be recognised for such purposes.

### **Courses offered by the South African College of Music**

FB5.5 No more than four 1000-level courses, four 2000-level courses and two 3000-level courses offered by the South African College of Music may be recognised towards the general BA and BSocSc degrees.

Students wishing to take courses established in the College of Music must fulfil the entrance requirements laid out in rules FS11, FBS1, and FUD1 and 2.

### **Courses offered through the School of Education and the Centre for Extra-Mural Studies**

FB5.6 These courses will not be recognised as part of the curriculum of the general BA and BSocSc degrees.

### **Courses offered by the Faculty of Commerce**

FB5.7 The following courses will not be recognised as part of the general BA and BSocSc degrees:

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 33

- (a) BUS1033F Professional Communication
- (b) BUS1034S Professional Communication (Actuarial Science)
- (c) BUS1035S Professional Communication

### Courses offered by the Faculty of Science

- FB5.8 For the purposes of this rule, the following courses will be recognised as Humanities courses for the award of the BA or BSocSc degrees:
- (a) MAM1014F/S /MAM1022F
  - (b) MAM1016S
  - (c) AGE1002S
  - (d) AGE2012F
  - (e) AGE3011F
  - (f) EGS1003S/EGS1007S
  - (g) EGS2015S
  - (h) EGS3022S

### Courses offered by the Faculty of Law

- FB5.9 For the purpose of this rule, the following course will be recognised as a Humanities course for the award of the BA or BSocSc degrees:
- (a) PBL2800F

### Communication skills courses offered in the Faculty of Health Sciences

- FB5.10 No professional communication skills courses (SLL codes) offered by the School of Languages in the Faculty of Health Sciences as part of the Health Sciences programmes of study will be counted as credits towards a Humanities degree.

### Specialisations leading to the BA and BSocSc degrees

- FB6.1 The following specialised curriculum leads to the BA degree:  
Film and Media Production
- FB6.2 The curriculum requirements for each specialised qualification and programme of study are published in this handbook. No deviations from these requirements are permitted except in exceptional circumstances and only with permission of Senate.

## BACHELOR OF ARTS (BA) AND BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE (BSOCSC) REGULAR PROGRAMMES OF STUDY

### Minimum requirements for readmission

- FB7 Except with the permission of the Senate, full-time students following the regular programme of study shall be excluded from the Faculty either as a full-time or part-time student, if they have not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:
- (a) **First year:**  
at least five semester courses;
  - (b) **Second year:**  
at least nine semester courses;
  - (c) **Third year:**  
at least thirteen semester courses, including at least two senior semester courses;
  - (d) **Fourth year:**  
met the requirements of the degree.

### Curriculum structure

- FB8 Except by permission of the Senate, candidates shall not register for:
- more than four full courses or eight semester courses in any one academic year;
  - more than the equivalent of four and a half semester courses in any one semester;
  - fewer than two full courses, or four semester courses, in their first year of study which will lead, under normal circumstances, to major subjects offered through the Faculty of Humanities.

#### Recommended curriculum structure

- First year:** 8 semester courses (144 NQF credits)  
**Second year:** 6-8 semester courses (132 to 144 NQF credits)  
**Third year:** 4-6 semester courses (156 to 168 NQF credits)

### Curriculum leading to the general BA and BSocSc - regular programme of study [HB003 & HB001]

*NOTE: A list of curriculum advisers is available from Humanities Undergraduate Reception, Beattie Building.*

#### Minimum requirements for the award

Below are the minimum requirements for the award of the Bachelor of Arts or Bachelor of Social Science for those pursuing the regular programme of study. Refer to Rules FB2 through FB6 for complete details.

- Minimum duration: 3 years.
- Minimum number of courses: 20 semester courses (or equivalent).
- Minimum number of senior courses: 10 semester courses (or equivalent).
- Minimum number of majors: 2.
- At least 12 semester courses offered by departments established in the Faculty of Humanities, including the School of Economics.

#### Majors and Degrees

- Choose at least **two** majors from the lists in tables for FB3.
- At least one must come from a department established in the Faculty of Humanities (including the School of Economics). Majors from departments outside the Faculty of Humanities are listed separately in tables for FB3.
- If both majors come from the **Bachelor of Arts** list, the degree is a BA and the student will register for HB003.
- If both majors come from the **Bachelor of Social Science** list, the degree is a BSocSc and the student will register for HB001.
- If one major comes from the BA list and one from the BSocSc list, the degree is **either** a BA or a BSocSc.
- If a major comes from outside the Faculty of Humanities, the degree corresponds to the Humanities major.

For further details on these majors, consult the departmental entries of this Handbook.

### BACHELOR OF ARTS AND BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE EXTENDED PROGRAMMES OF STUDY

- Bachelor of Arts (BA) [HB061]
- Bachelor of Social Science (BSocSc) [HB062]

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 35

The extended programmes of study in Humanities lead to Bachelor of Arts (BA) or Bachelor of Social Science (BSocSc) qualifications. They are for students selected on the basis of admissions criteria, who show the potential to succeed on a four-year programme.

Students on the regular programmes of study may request transfer to the extended programmes of study if they meet the faculty admissions criteria for those programmes and are in their first- or second-year of study.

### Minimum requirements for readmission

- FB9      Except with the permission of the Senate, full-time students following the four-year programme of study leading to the BA/BSocSc shall be excluded from the Faculty either as full-time or part-time students, if they have not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:
- (a)    **First year:**  
at least four semester courses;
  - (b)    **Second year:**  
at least eight semester courses;
  - (c)    **Third year:**  
at least twelve semester courses, including at least two senior semester courses;
  - (d)    **Fourth year:**  
at least fifteen semester courses; including at least four senior semester courses;
  - (e)    **Fifth year:**  
met the requirements for the degree.

### Curriculum structure

- FB10      Except by permission of the Senate, candidates in the extended programme shall not register for more than the equivalent of three semester courses in any one semester.

#### Recommended curriculum structure

<b>First year:</b>	4 semester courses + 2 Introductory Humanities courses (DOH or MAM codes) + available Augmenting courses (148 – 214 NQF credits)
<b>Second year:</b>	6 semester courses + available Augmenting courses (130 – 140 NQF credits)
<b>Third year:</b>	6 semester courses (144 NQF credits)
<b>Fourth year:</b>	4 semester courses (108 NQF credits)

*See details below for Introductory and Augmenting courses, as well as course descriptions in various sections.*

## Curriculum leading to the general BA and BSocSc - extended programme of study [HB061 & HB062]

*NOTE: A list of curriculum advisers is available from the Humanities Faculty Reception, Beattie Building.*

### Minimum requirements for the award

Below are the minimum requirements for an extended programme of study leading to the award of BA or BSocSc. Refer to Rules FB2 through FB6 for complete details.

- 
- (1)    Minimum duration: 4 years
  - (2)    •    Minimum curriculum requirements:

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 36

- 
- 20 semester subject courses (or equivalent)
  - 10 senior semester courses (or equivalent)
  - 2 majors
  - 12 semester subject courses offered by departments established in the Faculty of Humanities.
- (3) Additional minimum programme requirements:
- Two of the following Introductory Humanities Courses:\* DOH1002F, MAM1022F, DOH1009S, DOH1010S
  - At least three Augmenting courses that are co-requisite to three of the chosen twenty subject courses.

\*See Handbook entries under the Umthombo Centre for Student Success for details of these Introductory Humanities courses. These Introductory Humanities courses are excluded from class medal calculations. DOH1002F is compulsory for extended degree BA and BSocSc candidates who took NSC English as First Additional Language or who achieved less than 60% (grade 5) for NSC English Home Language, or who are identified on the basis of their NBT AL score as requiring additional language support.

### Majors and Degrees

- Students who select both majors from the list of **Bachelor of Arts majors** will register for HB061. [See list of majors in tables for FB3].
- Students who select both majors from the list of **Bachelor of Social Science majors** will register for HB062. [See list of majors in tables for FB3].
- Students who select one major from each list will choose to register for **either** HB061 **or** HB062.
- Students who select a major from departments outside the Faculty will register for the Bachelor's degree of the Humanities Faculty major. Students must take at least one major offered by a department established in the Faculty of Humanities.

### Augmenting courses

Students on the 4-year extended programmes, in their first and second years of the degree, are required to take the co-requisite Augmenting courses wherever these are available. Students must take a minimum of 3 Augmenting courses over the duration of their degree. Augmenting courses provide extra teaching input, usually in the form of Plus Tutorials. Augmenting courses are denoted with + after the course title. Augmenting courses are graded based on participation and submissions on a pass/fail basis. Augmenting courses are excluded from class medal calculations.

Students are required to register for both the regular course together with the augmenting course as a co-requisite. Below is a list of all Augmenting courses with their regular course co-requisite.

Augmenting course list						
1000-level subject course		NQF credits	1000-level co-requisite augmenting course		NQF credits	Course level
ANS1401S	Introduction to Anthropology	18	ANS1403S	Introduction to Anthropology +	10	5
ASL1201S	Representations of Africa	18	ASL1202S	Representations of Africa +	10	5
ASL1300F	Introduction to Language Studies	18	ASL1304F	Introduction to Language Studies +	10	5
ASL1301S	Introduction to Sociolinguistics	18	ASL1305S	Introduction to Sociolinguistics +	10	5
BUS1007S	Introduction to Organisational Psychology	18	DOH1017S	Introduction to Organisational Psychology +	10	5

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 37

ELL1016S	Image, Voice, Word	18	ELL1010S	Image, Voice, Word +	10	5
FAM1000S	Analysing Film and TV	18	FAM1010S	Analysing Film and TV +	10	5
HST1013F	Connections and Interruptions, 1500 - 1800	18	HST1015F	Connections and Interruptions, 1500 - 1800 +	10	5
PHI1010S	Ethics	18	PHI1011S	Ethics +	10	5
POL1005S	Introduction to Politics B	18	POL1010S	Introduction to Politics B +	10	5
PSY1004F	Intro to Psychology Part 1	18	PSY1006F	Intro to Psychology Part 1 +	10	5
PSY1005S	Intro to Psychology Part 2	18	PSY1007S	Intro to Psychology Part 2 +	10	5
REL1002F	Religions Past and Present	18	REL1015F	Religions Past and Present +	10	5
REL1006S	Judaism, Christianity and Islam	18	REL1016S	Judaism, Christianity and Islam +	10	5
SOC1001F	Introduction to Sociology	18	SOC1006F	Introduction to Sociology +	10	5
SOC1005S	Individual and Society	18	SOC1007S	Individual and Society +	10	5
SWK1013F	Community Connections	18	SWK1014F	Community Connections +	10	5
TDP1027F	Introduction to Theatre & Performance A	18	TDP1029F	Introduction to Theatre & Performance A +	10	5

2000-level subject		NQF credits	2000-level co-requisite augmenting course		NQF credits	Course Level
ASL2202F	African Political Thought	24	ASL2203F	African Political Thought +	10	6
BUS2024F	Psychology of Human Resource Management	18	DOH2024F	Psychology of Human Resource Management +	10	6
ELL2000F	Cultures of Empire, Resistance and Postcoloniality	24	ELL2016F	Cultures of Empire, Resistance and Postcoloniality +	10	6
ELL2001S	Literature and the Work of Memory	24	ELL2017S	Literature and the Work of Memory +	10	6
FAM2000F	Writing & Editing in Media	24	FAM2015F	Writing & Editing in Media +	10	6
FAM2003S	Media Power and Culture	24	FAM2016S	Media Power and Culture +	10	6
HST2040FS	Historical Methods	24	HST2041FS	Historical Methods +	10	6
PSY2015F	Research in Psychology I	24	PSY2012F	Research in Psychology I +	10	6

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 38

REL2047F	Religion, Sexuality and Gender	24	REL2054F	Religion, Sexuality and Gender +	10	6
SOC2030F	Poverty Development & Globalisation	24	SOC2034F	Poverty Development & Globalisation +	10	6
SOC2015S	Comparative Industrialisation & Labour Study	24	SOC2035S	Comparative Industrialisation & Labour Study +	10	6
SWK2001F	Introduction to Social Development	24	SWK2002F	Introduction to Social Development +	10	6
SWK2013S	Community and Youth Development	24	SWK2014S	Community and Youth Development +	10	6
TDP2010F	Global Performances: Mutations and Migrations	24	TDP2042F	Global Performances: Mutations and Migrations +	10	6
TDP2011S	Analysis and Criticism	24	TDP2013S	Analysis and Criticism +	10	6

3000-level subject		NQF credits	3000-level co-requisite augmenting course		NQF credits	Course Level
BUS3003F	Research Design in Organisational Psychology	18	DOH3003F	Research Design in Organisational Psychology +	10	7
BUS3004S	Research Data Analysis in Organisational Psychology	18	DOH3004S	Research Data Analysis in Organisational Psychology +	10	7

*Note: Please consult the course entry under the relevant department to see the full course details, as well as whether the augmenting course is offered in a particular year.*

## BACHELOR OF ARTS SPECIALISATIONS

NOTES:

- Students wishing to register for a general BA or BSocSc degree should refer to Rules FB6 through FB8 and to the rules and curricula for the Bachelor of Arts and Bachelor of Social Science qualifications above.
- Not all courses are offered every year. Check the relevant departmental entries to see which are on offer each year.
- Students must make sure that they meet the **entrance requirements** for all courses in their programmes and/ or qualification.

## BACHELOR OF ARTS IN FILM AND MEDIA PRODUCTION (BA) [HB054]

Convener: Dr L Maasdorp (Centre for Film and Media Studies)

*With the exception of rules for award of the degree (below) with distinction, this specialisation is subject to the rules and regulations for the Bachelor of Arts qualification.*

**Requirements for distinction in Bachelor of Arts specialising in Film and Media Production**

- FB11 Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.  
See also rule F13, F14 and FB1.2.

**Award of the degree with distinction**

- FB11.1 Candidates may be awarded the degree of BA specialising in Film and Media Production with distinction if they obtain first-class passes in a minimum of ten semester courses (or the equivalent), including eight senior semester courses (or the equivalent), at least four of which are the senior courses which gained the student distinction in Film and Television Studies and/or Media and Writing and/or Studies in Film & Media Production.

**Award of the degree with distinction in Film and Television Studies**

- FB11.2 The BA will be awarded with a distinction in Film and Television Studies if candidates attain an average of at least 75% in FAM2004S, FAM2013F, FAM3005F and FAM3003S, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%.

**Award of the degree with distinction in Media and Writing**

- FB11.3 The BA will be awarded with a distinction in Media and Writing if candidates attain an average of at least 75% in FAM2000F, FAM2003S, FAM3000F and FAM3001S, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%.

**Award of the degree with distinction in Studies in Film and Media Production**

- FB11.4 The BA will be awarded with a distinction in Studies in Film and Media Production if candidates attain an average of at least 75% in FAM2000F, FAM2003S, FAM2004S or FAM2013F, one 2000-level production course, one 3000-level production course and one 3000-level Senior research project, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%.

**Award of the degree with distinction in an additional subject specialisation**

- FB11.5 The BA may be awarded with distinction in an additional, recognised Humanities specialisation not offered by the Centre for Film and Media Studies, provided candidates have completed as electives in the Film & Media Production programme the courses required for that subject's major, and provided their marks in those courses conform to the distinction requirements specified in Rules FB1.1-1.3.

**Curriculum structure**

- FB12 Except by permission of the Senate, candidates shall not register for:
- (a) more than four full courses or eight semester courses in any one academic year;
  - (b) more than the equivalent of four and a half semester courses in any one semester;

***Notes for students intending to pursue the Film and Media Production specialisation:***

1. Applicants will not be admitted into the Film and Media Production specialisation in their first year. All intending F&MP students are advised to



register for the first year of a general Bachelor of Arts degree with double majors in Film and Television Studies and Media and Writing.

NOTE: If they wish to be admitted to the stream for Digital Media and Informatics, students must register for FAM1001F and one of the introductory Information Systems or Computer Science courses INF1002F/S OR CSC1015F.

2. Final selection for this programme is made by a panel and only occurs at the end of the first semester of the second year. Entry is competitive and applicants will be judged on the basis of their academic records and portfolios. Candidates may also be interviewed. (Further details about the selection process are available from the Centre for Film and Media Studies.) Students whose applications for the Production programme are successful will move into the Production programme and their registration will be updated. Students who are not selected for admission to one of these programmes will remain registered in the general bachelor's degree and, providing they have passed the relevant first- and second-year courses, are eligible to continue in the Film and Television Studies and/or Media and Writing majors.
3. Students who wish to be considered for selection for the production stage of the specialisation must apply to the Centre for Film and Media Studies by the stipulated date towards the end of semester one of their second year. Students in the Extended Degree programme can apply in either their second or third year. To be considered for admission, students are required to submit an approved portfolio containing:
  - (a) the applicant's academic transcript indicating a pass in at least six 1000-level semester courses including:  
FAM1001F Media and Society AND, if they wish to be considered for the Digital Media and Informatics Stream, INF1002F/S Information I OR CSC1015F Computer Science 1015. An average of 65% across all courses is advisable.
  - (b) a letter of motivation
  - (c) examples of creative workThey must also have successfully completed:  
FAM2000F Writing and Editing in the Media, if applying to production courses in Multimedia Production or Digital Media and Informatics, OR FAM2013F Introduction to Screen Genres, if applying to production courses in Screen Production.  
Any concessions regarding these stream-specific pre-requisites must be negotiated with the relevant stream convener.  
A workshop is held in the first semester of the second year of study to give students guidance in the submission of their application.
4. The programme must include at least 10 senior semester courses.

## **Curriculum leading to the Bachelor of Arts specialising in Film and Media Production [HB054]**

The following three programmes of study, or streams are offered within the Bachelor of Arts specialising in Film and Media Production:

- Screen Production
- Multimedia Production
- Digital Media and Informatics Stream

The required curriculum for each stream in every year of study is set out below.

## Screen Production

### [HB054]

#### First year: 8 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FAM1000S	Analysing Film and TV .....	18	5
(b)		Seven 1000-level semester courses.....	7 x 18	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>144</b>	

#### Note:

- (a) Students in the Extended Degree will be subject to the six-course limitation of that programme. It is advised that students in the Extended Degree apply for Production in their third year.
- (b) Students are advised to take FAM1001F as it keeps their Production options open at second-year level.

#### Second year: 6 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FAM2013F	Introduction to Screen Genres .....	24	6
(b)	FAM2014S	Screen Production I .....	24	6
(c)	FAM2004S	Cinema Histories and Movements .....	24	6
(d)		Any other semester course or courses as required (3 x 18 HEQF or 3 x 24 NQF credits). .....		
		<b>Second year total.....</b>	<b>126-144</b>	

**Note:** Only students selected for the production stage of the specialisation will be admitted to the production course (FAM2014S).

#### Third year: 6 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FAM3016F	Screen Production II .....	30	7
(b)	FAM3017S	Senior Research Project: Screen .....	30	7
(c)	FAM3005F	Film in Africa .....	30	7
(d)	FAM3003S	Advanced Film Studies.....	30	7
(e)		Any other semester course or courses as required to complete the degree, at least one of which must be a senior course if an elective course taken in second year is a 1000-level course.....		
		<b>Third year total.....</b>	<b>156-180</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>	<b>426-468</b>	

**Note:** Students wishing to take a Media course in place of a Film and Television course must apply to the Production Stream convener for permissions.

## Multimedia Production

### [HB054]

#### First year: 8 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FAM1001F	Media and Society .....	18	5
(b)		Seven 1000-level semester courses.....	7 x 18	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>144</b>	

#### Note:

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 42

- (a) Students in the Extended Degree will be subject to the six-course limitation of that programmes. It is advised that students in the Extended Degree apply for Production in their third year.
- (b) Students are advised to take FAM1000S as it keeps their Production options open at second-year level.

### Second year: 6 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FAM2000F	Writing and Editing in the Media.....	24	6
(b)	FAM2017S	Multimedia Production I.....	24	6
(c)	FAM2003S	Media, Power and Culture .....	24	6
(d)		Any other semester course or courses as required (3 x 18 HEQF or 3 x 24 NQF credits) .....		
		<b>Second year total.....</b>	<b>126-144</b>	

*Note:* Only students selected for the production stage of the specialisation will be admitted to the production course (FAM2017S).

### Third year: 6 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FAM3018F	Multimedia Production II.....	30	7
(b)	FAM3019S	Multimedia Production III .....	30	7
(c)	FAM3000F	The Media in South Africa.....	30	7
(d)	FAM3001S	Advanced Media Studies .....	30	7
(e)		Any other semester course, or courses, as required to complete the degree, at least one of which must be a senior course if an elective course taken in second year is a 1000-level course.....		
		<b>Third year total.....</b>	<b>156-180</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree .....</b>	<b>426-468</b>	

*Note:*

- (a) Students wishing to take a Film and Television course in place of a Media course must apply to the Production Stream convener for permission.
- (b) REL3042S Religion and Media is a recommended, but not compulsory, elective for this year.

## Digital Media and Informatics

### [HB054]

#### First year: 8 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FAM1001F	Media and Society .....	18	5
(b)		At least one of the following.....		
	INF1002F/S	Information Systems I.....	18	5
	CSC1015F	Computer Science 1015.....	18	5
(c)		Six 1000-level semester courses .....	6 x 18	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>144</b>	

*Note:*

- (a) Students in the Extended Degree will be subject to the six-course limitation of that programme. It is advised that students in the Extended Degree apply for Production in their third year.
- (b) Students intending to do Digital Media and Informatics must be accepted into Multimedia Production. Completion of First year FAM courses and INF/CSC courses does not guarantee acceptance into the stream.

**Second year: 7 semester courses**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FAM2000F	Writing and Editing in the Media .....	24	6
(b)	FAM2017S	Multimedia Production I.....	24	6
(c)	FAM2003S	Media, Power and Culture .....	24	6
(d)	INF1003F	Commercial Programming.....	18	5
(e)	INF2009F	Systems Analysis.....	18	6
(f)	INF2008F	Database Systems .....	18	6
(g)	INF2011S	Systems Design and Development.....	18	7
		<b>Second year total.....</b>	<b>144</b>	

**Note:**

- (a) Only students selected for the production stage of the programme will be admitted to the production course (FAM2017S). INF2008F is a merger of Commerce Faculty courses INF2006F and INF2007F.
- (b) Students wishing to take a Film and Television course in place of a Media course must apply to the Production Stream convener for permission.

**Third year: 6 semester courses**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FAM3018F	Multimedia Production II.....	30	7
(b)	FAM3019S	Multimedia Production III .....	30	7
(c)	FAM3000F	The Media in South Africa .....	30	7
(d)	FAM3001S	Advanced Media Studies .....	30	7
(e)	INF3011F	IT Project Management .....	18	7
(f)	INF3014F	Electronic Commerce .....	18	7
(g)		Any other semester course to total six for the year .....		
		<b>Third year total.....</b>	<b>156-180</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>	<b>444-486</b>	

**Note:** Students wanting to enter software development careers should complete INF2010S in second year and should do INF3003W instead of INF3011F in their third year.

## **BACHELOR OF SOCIAL SCIENCE IN PHILOSOPHY, POLITICS AND ECONOMICS (BSocSc(PPE)) [HB027]**

**Convener:** Associate Professor V Naidoo (Department of Political Studies)

**Minimum requirements for readmission**

FB13 Except with the permission of the Senate, full-time students shall be excluded from the Faculty either as full-time or part-time students, if they have not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:

- (a) **First year:**  
at least five semester courses;
- (b) **Second year:**  
at least ten semester courses;
- (c) **Third year:**  
at least fourteen semester courses, including at least two senior semester courses;
- (d) **Fourth year:**  
met the requirements for the degree.

**Requirements for distinction**

FB14 See also F13.1

**Distinction in a subject**

FB14.1 With the exception of the subjects listed below, and where the rules for a specialisation in a programme or a programme stream require completion, under normal circumstances, of two 2000-level and two 3000-level courses in a sequence of courses from one subject or from various subjects, the BSocSc(PPE) degree will be awarded with a distinction in a programme specialisation if candidates attain an average of 75% in at least four senior semester courses including at least two 3000-level courses required for a major, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%, with each 3000-level course receiving a mark of at least 70%. Where the rules for a specialisation in a programme or a programme stream require completion of more than four senior semester courses (or the equivalent) in a particular programme specialisation, the Programme Convener shall determine which courses up to a maximum of four senior semester courses shall be considered for distinction in that programme specialisation, as long as at least two of those courses are at 3000-level.

FB14.2 The following courses which may be taken as programme specialisations in the BSocSc (PPE) degree are subject to the rules for distinction as determined by those departments:

**Economics:** An average of 80% or more across ECO3020F and two other 3000-level ECO courses, with first-class passes in at least two of these three courses.

**Distinction in the degree as a whole**

FB14.3 Candidates may be awarded the BSocSc(PPE) degree with distinction if they obtain first-class passes in a minimum of ten semester courses (or the equivalent), including eight senior semester courses (or the equivalent) and including, under normal circumstances, the courses which gained the student distinction in at least one programme specialisation, according to Rules FB1.1, FB1.2 and FB1.3 above.

**Curriculum structure**

FB15 Except by permission of the Senate, candidates shall not register for:

- (a) more than four full courses or eight semester courses in any one academic year;
- (b) more than the equivalent of four and a half semester courses in any one semester.

**Curriculum leading to the Bachelor of Social Science in Philosophy, Politics and Economics**

[HB027]

**First year: 8 semester courses**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	ECO1010F	Microeconomics .....	18	5
(b)	ECO1011S	Macroeconomics.....	18	5
(c)	PHI1010S	Ethics.....	18	5
(d)	PHI1024F	Introduction to Philosophy .....	18	5
(e)	POL1004F	Introduction to Politics .....	18	5
(f)	POL1005S	Introduction to Politics B.....	18	5
(g)	STA1000S	Introductory Statistics.....	18	5
(h)	MAM1010F	Mathematics 1010 .....	18	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>144</b>	

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 45

All possible second year options are listed below, but please note that available options will vary each year, depending on course timetables. In any given year, it is unavoidable that **some options will be unavailable** because of timetable clashes with required courses.

### Second year: 8 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	ECO2003F	Microeconomics II.....	18	6
(b)	ECO2004S	Macroeconomics II.....	18	6
(c)	ECO2007S	Cooperation and Competition.....	18	6
(d)	PHI2041S	Great Philosophers.....	24	6
(e)	PHI2042F	Political Philosophy.....	24	6
(f)	POL2038F	Comparative Politics.....	24	6
(g)		At least one of the following:.....		
	POL2002F	Political Theory.....	24	6
	POL2039F	International Political Economy.....	24	6
	POL2042S	Comparative Public Institutions.....	24	6
	POL2043S	South African Politics.....	24	6
(h)		If there is a remaining course, it is to be chosen from the following:.....		
	ECO2008S	Development Economics.....	18	6
	PHI2012F	Philosophy of Psychology and Mind.....	24	6
	PHI2016S	Philosophy of Art and Literature.....	24	6
	PHI2037F	Applied Ethics.....	24	6
	PHI2040S	Philosophy of Science.....	24	6
	PHI2043F/S	Business Ethics.....	18	6
	PHI2044F	Philosophy of Mathematics.....	24	6
	PHI2045S	Philosophy of Race.....	24	6
		<b>Second year total.....</b>	<b>168-174</b>	

All possible third year options are listed below, but please note that available options will vary each year, depending on course timetables. In any given year, it is unavoidable that **some options will be unavailable** because of timetable clashes with required courses.

### Third year: 6 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	ECO3025S	Applied International Trade Bargaining.....	18	7
(b)		One of the following:.....		
	PHI3023F	Logic and Language.....	30	7
	PHI3024S	Metaphysics and Epistemology.....	30	7
(c)		At least one of the following:.....		
	POL3029F	Politics of Africa and the Global South.....	30	7
	POL3030F	Conflict in World Politics.....	30	7
	POL3037F	South African Public Policy Analysis.....	30	7
	POL3038S	Urban Politics and Administration.....	30	7
	POL3045S	Global Governance.....	30	7
	POL3046S	South African Political Thought.....	30	7
(d)		At least one of the following:.....		
	ECO3009F	Natural Resource Economics.....	18	7
	ECO3016F	History of Economic Thought.....	18	7
	ECO3020F	Advanced Macro and Microeconomics.....	18	7
	ECO3021S	Quantitative Methods in Economics.....	18	7
	ECO3022S	Advanced Labour Economics.....	18	7
	ECO3023S	Public Sector Economics.....	18	7

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
ECO3024F	International Trade and Finance .....	18	7
	<b>Third year total.....</b>	<b>132-168</b>	
	<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>	<b>444-486</b>	

## **BACHELOR OF SOCIAL WORK (BSW) [HB063]**

**Convener:** Dr F Williams (Department of Social Work and Social Development)

### **Curriculum structure**

- FBW1 Except by permission of the Senate, candidates shall not register for:
- more than four full courses or eight semester courses in any one academic year;
  - more than the equivalent of four and a half semester courses in any one semester.

### **Distinction in the Bachelor of Social Work**

- FBW2 See also F13.1

### **Award of the degree with distinction**

- FBW2.1 Candidates may be awarded the BSW degree with distinction if they obtain first-class passes in a minimum of ten semester courses (or the equivalent), including eight senior semester courses (or the equivalent), and including, under normal circumstances, the courses which gained the student distinction in at least one programme/programme stream specialisation.

### **Award of the degree with distinction in Sociology**

- FBW2.2 The BSW will be awarded with a distinction in Sociology if candidates attain an average of at least 75% in two 2000-level Sociology courses, and in SOC3007F and SOC3031S, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%.

### **Award of the degree with distinction in Industrial Sociology**

- FBW2.3 The BSW will be awarded with a distinction in Industrial Sociology if candidates attain an average of at least 75% in SOC2015S and one other 2000-level Sociology courses, and in SOC3027F and SOC3029S, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%.

### **Award of the degree with distinction in Psychological Studies**

- FBW2.4 The BSW will be awarded with a distinction in Psychological Studies if candidates attain an average of at least 75% in two 2000-level and two 3000-level Psychology courses, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%.

### **Award of the degree with distinction in Studies in Social Work**

- FBW2.5 The BSW will be awarded with a distinction in Studies in Social Work if candidates attain an average of at least 75% in two 3000-level and two 4000-level Social Work courses, with no course receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%.

### **Minimum requirements for readmission**

- FBW3 Except with the permission of Senate, students in the Bachelor of Social Work degree programme shall be excluded from the Faculty unless they:

- (a) have passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:
  - (i) **First year:**  
at least four semester courses;
  - (ii) **Second year:**  
at least eight semester courses, including two first-year Psychology courses and one first-year Sociology course;
  - (iii) **Third year:**  
at least twelve semester courses, including at least two senior semester courses and two field practice courses;
  - (iv) **Fourth year:**  
at least sixteen semester courses;
  - (v) **Fifth year:**  
met the requirements for the degree.
- (b) have in the most recent year of study been professionally assessed as performing social work tasks in an ethical and professional manner as required by the South African Council for Social Service Professions.

**Curriculum leading to the Bachelor of Social Work**

**[HB063]**

**First year: 6 semester courses**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	PSY1004F	Introduction to Psychology Part 1 (or PSY1006F if taken before 2016).....	18	5
(b)	PSY1005S	Introduction to Psychology Part 2 (or PSY1007S if taken before 2016).....	18	5
(c)	SOC1001F	Introduction to Sociology .....	18	5
(d)	SOC1005S	Individual and Society .....	18	5
(e)	SWK1006S	Basic Professional Interaction .....	18	5
(f)	SWK1005S	Field Practice I.....	0	5
(g)	SWK1013F	Community Connections .....	18	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>108</b>	

**Second year: 7 semester courses**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	SWK2001F	Introduction to Social Development .....	24	6
(b)	SWK2060F	Social Work Assessment .....	24	6
(c)	SWK2065S	Social Work Intervention.....	24	6
(d)	SWK2070F	Field Practice II .....	12	6
(e)	SWK2075S	Field Practice III .....	12	6
(f)		<b>EITHER:</b> .....		
	PSY2013F	Social and Developmental Psychology <b>AND</b> .....	24	6
	PSY2014S	Cognitive Neuroscience and Abnormal Psychology .....	24	6
		<b>OR 2 x SOC2000-level courses.....</b>	<b>48(24x2)</b>	<b>6</b>
		<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>144</b>	

**Third year: 6 semester courses**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	SWK3061F	Social Work Research .....	18	7
(b)	SWK3066S	Contemporary Social Work Issues.....	30	7
(c)	SWK3070F	Field Practice IV .....	12	7
(d)	SWK3075S	Field Practice V .....	12	7
(e)		<b>EITHER:</b> .....		
	PSY3005F	Critical Psychology <b>AND</b> .....	30	7
	PSY3011S	Clinical Psychology II (was PSY3004S) .....	30	7



## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 48

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	<b>OR two of:</b> .....		
SOC3007F	Social Research .....	30	7
	<b>OR</b> .....		
SOC3027F	Social Research (Industrial Sociology).....	30	7
SOC3031S	Social Justice and Inequality.....	30	7
SOC3029S	Industrial Society & Change (was SOC3028S) .....	30	7
	<b>Third year total</b> .....	<b>132</b>	

### Fourth year: 6 semester courses

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	SWK4015F	Social Work Research II.....	22	8
(b)	SWK4016S	Social Work Research Project Paper .....	16	8
(c)	SWK4030F	Contemporary Families in a Changing Society.....	22	8
(d)	SWK4031S	Psychosocial Functioning & Empowerment .....	22	8
(e)	SWK4032S	Social Policy & Management .....	22	8
(f)	SWK4033F	Field Practice VI.....	22	8
		<b>Fourth Year Total</b> .....	<b>126</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits to degree</b> .....	<b>510</b>	

Professional registration requires a full specialisation in either Sociology or Psychology. Students must complete either two second-year and two third-year Sociology courses, or two second-year and two third-year Psychology courses.

## FINE ART QUALIFICATIONS

### BACHELOR OF ARTS IN FINE ART (BA Fine Art) [HB008]

The following rules apply to all students registered for this degree, regardless of the particular curriculum they undertake:

#### Duration of degree

FBN1 The curriculum of the degree shall extend over a minimum of four academic years of study.

#### Studiowork courses

FBN2

#### Selection of Studiowork Courses

FBN2.1 In the second year of study candidates are required to take two courses, one of which will form the major subject to be carried through into third year. Please note that entry into particular streams is competitive – please see the course entries for details.

#### Core Practice

FBN2.2 Candidates must complete FIN2026W Core Practice 2 in the second year. Core Practice 2 is a full studiowork course for promotion and distinction purposes.

#### Studiowork 3 Elective

FBN2.3 In the third year of study students are required to take one Studiowork course which will be the major subject carried to the fourth (final) year of study, and two Studiowork 3 Electives which will be the senior subject. The major Studiowork course will take up two-thirds of the available studiowork time and the senior, one-

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 49

third of the available studiowork time. Two from the following, subject to availability:

- Videography,
- Sound Art,
- Environmental Interventions,,
- Curatorship,
- Social responsibility,
- Computer-aided design,
- Historical photographic processes

### Examinations

FBN3 There is an ordinary University examination at the end of each course. First-, second- and third-year projects will be allocated marks at the mid-year assessment. In first and second year, these marks will count 45% towards the final examination mark. In third year, these marks will count 40% towards the final examination mark. 10% of the final mark will comprise of an attendance and participation mark.

### Publication or exhibition of work

FBN4 Students

- (a) wishing to exhibit in a public or private gallery, enter in a competition, or publish any work must consult the Director of the Michaelis School of Fine Art or their nominee before doing so;
- (b) may not exhibit in a public or private gallery, enter in a competition, or publish any work done at the School as part of the work of the course, or under supervision, or that is to be submitted for examination, without the prior written approval of the Director of the School;
- (c) may not without the permission of Senate submit for examination any work that has been exhibited, published or submitted as an entry in a competition without such prior written permission; and
- (d) may not exhibit in a public or private gallery, enter in a competition, or publish any work done at the School as part of the course, or under supervision, or that has been submitted for examination, within a two-year period of obtaining the degree without making due acknowledgements to the University and School.

No publication or exhibition by candidates may, without prior permission of the University, contain a statement that the published or exhibited material was or is to be submitted in part or full for this degree.

### Degree specific requirements for selection

FBN5 Admission to the programme is limited. Students are admitted on the basis of a portfolio of creative work and NSC results, and NBT scores. Details of the selection criteria are published annually.

### Degree specific requirements for promotion

FBN6.1 Candidates must complete FIN1001W Studiowork 1 and have permission of the Director of the School before admission to any second-year Studiowork course. A minimum of 55% is required in any FIN1001W studiowork subject area in order for a student to proceed with the second year studiowork course option in that area. Candidates who fail to meet this requirement will require special permission from the Programme Convener and from the Director of the School to proceed in that area.

FBN6.2 Candidates must complete FIN1005W Fine Art Foundation and all Studiowork courses of the second year before admission to the third year.

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 50

- FBN6.3 Candidates must complete both Studiowork courses of the third year and both Art History and Discourse of Art courses of the second year before admission to the fourth year.
- FBN6.4 Candidates must achieve a pass mark of 55% for the Studiowork option at the end of the second year in order to be admitted to a majoring course in the third year. Candidates who pass in a prospective major area with less than 55% will be required to submit a supplementary body of work as specified by the School which will be assessed before registration in the following year.

### Degree specific minimum requirements for readmission

- FBN7 Candidates who do not fulfil the following requirements will not be readmitted to this degree or another degree, except with the permission of the Senate:
- FBN7.1 Minimum requirements for readmission for students pursuing the BAFA programme of study.  
Except with the permission of Senate, full-time students following the BAFA programme of study shall be excluded from the Faculty if they have not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:
- (a) **First year:**
- FIN1001W;
  - FIN1005W;
  - FIN1006F or FIN1009S.
- (b) **Second year:**
- FIN1006F AND FIN1009S;
  - FIN2027F or FIN2029F or FIN2028S;
  - Two from:  
FIN2026W Core Practice 2,  
FIN2011W Painting 2,  
FIN2012W Sculpture 2,  
FIN2013W Photography 2,  
FIN2024W Printmedia 2  
FIN2025W New Media 2
  - 1 x 1000/2000-level Humanities Elective
- (c) **Third year:**
- FIN2028S;
  - FIN2027F or FIN2029F
  - One from:  
FIN3026F  
FIN3028F  
FIN3027S  
FIN3029S
  - One from:  
FIN2026W Core Practice 2,  
FIN2011W Painting 2,  
FIN2012W Sculpture 2,  
FIN2013W Photography 2,  
FIN2024W Printmedia 2,  
FIN205W New Media 2
  - 2 x 1000/2000-level Humanities Electives
- (d) **Fourth year:**
- One from:  
FIN3026F or FIN3028F; AND

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 51

FIN3027S or FIN3029S

- FIN3030W Studiowork 3 Electives
- One from:
  - FIN3011W Painting 3,
  - FIN3012W Sculpture 3,
  - FIN3013W Photography 3,
  - FIN3024W Printmedia 3,
  - FIN3025W New Media 3

**(e) Fifth year:**

- FIN4015W;
- FIN4012W;
- Met the requirements for the degree.

Failure to fulfil these requirements will mean that candidates will not be readmitted to the Faculty and candidates will be required to pass courses from an external institution which the Director of the Michaelis School of Fine Art has determined to be equivalent in credit weighting and content to FIN1005F, FIN1006F and FIN1009S before being considered for readmission to the Faculty. If there are extenuating circumstances, Senate may permit candidates to renew their registration on the condition that they, after consultation with the Director of the Michaelis School of Fine Art, register for either:

- FIN1006F and FIN1009S at the University; or
- concurrently with their UCT registration, courses from an external tertiary institution which the Director of the Michaelis School of Fine Art has determined to be equivalent in credit weighting and content.

Failure to complete the course by the end of the year for which readmission was granted would mean that candidates would not be permitted to renew their registration in the Faculty until such time as evidence has been submitted that they have completed FIN1006F and FIN1009S or equivalent.

- FBN7.2 Subject to the provisions of Rule F5, candidates who fail in Art History and Discourse of Art 2 course(s) or a BA subject in two consecutive years will only be considered for readmission once they have passed the equivalent failed course(s) through an external institution.

### **Degree specific rules for distinction**

- FBN8 Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.

#### *Award of degree with distinction in Studiowork*

FBN8.1 This shall be awarded to candidates who achieve:

- (i) an average of at least 75% in all Studiowork courses in the second year with no Studiowork course receiving a mark of less than 70%;
- (ii) an average of at least 75% in all Studiowork courses in the third year with no Studiowork course receiving a mark of less than 70%; and
- (iii) a first-class pass (i.e., at least 75%) in the major Studiowork course in the fourth year.

The degree will be awarded as BA(FA) with distinction in Studiowork.

#### *Award of degree with distinction in Fine Art 4.*

- FBN8.2 This shall be based on a mark of 85% or higher in the major Studiowork option taken in the fourth year of study. The degree will be awarded as BA(FA) with distinction in Fine Art 4.

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 52

### *Award of degree with distinction in Art History and Discourse of Art*

FBN8.3 A distinction in the Art History and Discourse of Art specialisation shall be awarded if a candidate has attained an average of 75% in two 2000-level and two 3000-level semester courses required by the major in Art History and Discourse of Art, with none of the four courses receiving a mark of less than 70% and the average of the marks awarded for the 3000-level courses being at least 75%.

### *Award of degree with distinction in Theory and Practice of Art*

FBN8.4 This shall be awarded to candidates who obtain an average mark of at least 85% in FIN4012W Theory and Practice of Art. The degree will be awarded as BA(FA) with distinction in Theory and Practice of Art.

## **Awards**

FBN9 Class medals may be awarded to the best student in studiowork in all years of study, or in a combination of courses recognised by the Senate for the degree of BA(FA) in the Faculty of Humanities.  
*See also rule F15.*

## **BACHELOR OF ARTS IN FINE ART REGULAR PROGRAMME OF STUDY [HB008]**

### **Programme Convener:**

Associate Professor S Josephy

### **Curriculum:**

The Curriculum requires a minimum of 27 semester subject courses or the equivalent.

### **Humanities qualifying courses:**

- (a) Approved non-FIN Humanities courses may be taken at any time before, during or after Fine Art courses are taken. However candidates are advised to enrol for their non-FIN Humanities qualifying courses concurrently with their Fine Arts Studiowork courses during their first three years of study thus allowing them to complete all the non-Studiowork qualifying subjects by the end of their third year of study.
- (b) FIN courses listed below are compulsory. In exceptional circumstances where possible by the timetable and where appropriate to a particular career outcome (for instance art therapy, medical illustration, etc.), application may be made to the Director of the Michaelis School of Fine Art for permission to enrol for courses other than the non-FIN courses, with the Dean's approval.

### **Fine Art programme:**

- (a) In the second year of study candidates are required to take two Studiowork courses, one of which will be carried through into third year.
- (b) In the third year of study students are required to take one Studiowork course and the Studiowork elective course (Studiowork 3 Elective) which will be the senior subject. The Studiowork course will take up two thirds of the available Studiowork time and the senior subject one third of the available Studiowork time.
- (c) Candidates must complete FIN2026W Core Practice 2 in the second year over and above the Studiowork options they elect to take in these years. Core Practice 2 is a full Studiowork course for promotion purposes.

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 53

### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FIN1001W	Studiowork I .....	72	5
(b)	FIN1005W	Fine Art Foundation .....	36	5
(c)	FIN1006F	Introduction to African Art.....	18	5
(d)	FIN1009S	Approaches to Art History.....	18	5
(e)		One recommended Humanities 1000-level course.....		
		(Options available at registration) .....	18	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>162</b>	

### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		Two from: .....		
	FIN2011W	Painting 2 .....	24	6
	FIN2012W	Sculpture 2 .....	24	6
	FIN2013W	Photography 2 .....	24	6
	FIN2024W	Printmedia 2 .....	24	6
	FIN2025W	New Media 2 ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ).....	24	6
(b)	FIN2026W	Core Practice 2 .....	36	6
(c)	FIN2027F	Art Narrative: Traditions and Tensions ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ) .....	24	6
		or .....		
	FIN2029F	Envisioning the Body: Representation of the Human in Art and Visual Culture .....	24	6
(d)	FIN2028S	Discursive Strategies .....	24	6
(e)		Two recommended 1000/2000-level Humanities courses.18/24 (Options available at registration) .....		5/6
		<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>168-180</b>	

### Third year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		One from: .....		
	FIN3011W	Painting 3 .....	60	7
	FIN3012W	Sculpture 3 .....	60	7
	FIN3013W	Photography 3 .....	60	7
	FIN3024W	Printmedia 3 .....	60	7
	FIN3025W	New Media 3 ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ).....	60	7
(b)	FIN3030W	Studiowork 3 Electives.....	36	7
(c)	FIN3026F	New Art: New Perspectives.....	30	7
		or .....		
	FIN3028F	Race, Gender and Decolonial Praxis .....	30	7
(d)	FIN3027S	Curatorial Praxes .....	30	7
		or .....		
	FIN3029S	Borders and Social Justice in the Arts .....	30	7
		<b>Third year total .....</b>	<b>156</b>	

### Fourth year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FIN4015W	Fine Art 4 .....	108	8
(b)	FIN4012W	Theory and Practice of Art .....	48	8
		<b>Fourth year total.....</b>	<b>156</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>	<b>642-654</b>	

**Course information:**

**Studio courses:**

---

1. *Studio Times*  
Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.
2. *DP requirements for all Studio courses*
  - 2.1 Satisfactory attendance of studio classes and critiques
  - 2.2 Submission of completed projects for mid-year examination
  - 2.3 Completion of all projects for the year
3. *DP requirements for all Theory of Art courses and Discourse of Art*  
The submission of satisfactory assignments and satisfactory participation in the work of the class.
4. *Examination Rules for all Studio courses*  
There will be an examination for each Studiowork option in first, second and third year, Core Practice 2 and Studiowork 3 Elective, in both the June and November examination cycles. Fourth year studiowork will be assessed in June and examined in November.
5. Attendance and Participation Mark  
Active participation and attendance in Studiowork accounts for a formative assessment mark of 10%.

**BACHELOR OF ARTS IN FINE ART EXTENDED PROGRAMME OF STUDY [HB064]  
[HB064]**

*No new intake in 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.*

This is a five-year curriculum for students selected on the basis of admissions criteria who show potential to succeed in an extended programme of study with additional academic support. Students will be given guidance and academic support throughout the programme through special tutorial/workshop facilities and regular consultation with an academic adviser.

Rules F13, F14 and FNB1 - 9 apply.

**FBN10 Minimum requirements for readmission for students pursuing the extended programme of study leading to the BA(FA) award.**

Except with the permission of Senate, full-time students following the extended programme of study shall be excluded from the Faculty if they have not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:

- (a) **First year**
  - FIN1001W;
  - DOH1005F.
- (b) **Second year**
  - FIN1008W;
  - FIN1006F or FIN1009S;
  - Two of the following:
    - FIN2026W Core Practice 2;
    - FIN2011W Painting 2;
    - FIN2012W Sculpture 2;
    - FIN2013W Photography 2;
    - FIN2024W Printmedia 2;
    - FIN2025W New Media 2.
- (c) **Third year**
  - FIN1006F AND FIN1009S;
  - FIN2027F or FIN2029F or FIN2028S;

- One of the following:
  - FIN2026W Core Practice 2;
  - FIN2011W Painting 2;
  - FIN2012W Sculpture 2;
  - FIN2013W Photography 2;
  - FIN2024W Printmedia 2;
  - FIN2025W New Media 2.
- (d) **Fourth year**
  - One of FIN2027F or FIN2029F;
  - FIN2028S;
  - One of the following:
    - FIN3026F or FIN3028F;
    - FIN3027S or FIN3029S;
  - FIN3030W Studiowork 3 Electives;
  - One of the following:
    - FIN3011W Painting 3;
    - FIN3012W Sculpture 3;
    - FIN3013W Photography 3;
    - FIN3024W Printmedia 3;
    - FIN3025W New Media 3.
- (e) **Fifth year**
  - FIN3026F or FIN3028F;
  - FIN3027S or FIN3029S;
  - FIN4015W;
  - FIN4012W;

Met the requirements of the degree.

**Curriculum**

The curriculum requires a minimum of 27 semester courses or the equivalent.

The FIN courses listed below are compulsory (core).

- (a) In the second year of study candidates are required to take two Studiowork courses, one of which will be carried into third year.
- (b) Candidates must complete FIN2026W Core Practice 2 in the second year over and above the Studiowork options they elect to take in these years. Core Practice 2 is a full Studiowork course for promotion purposes.
- (c) In the third year of study students are required to take one Studiowork course which will be the major in the fifth (final) year of study.

**First year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FIN1001W	Studiowork 1 .....	72	5
(b)	FIN1008W	Foundations of Visual Literacy ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ).....	36	5
(c)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts .....	28	5
		<b>First year total.....</b>	<b>136</b>	

**Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FIN1006F	Introduction to African Art.....	18	5
(b)	FIN1009S	Approaches to Art History.....	18	5
(c)	FIN2026W	Core Practice 2 .....	36	6
(d)		Two from: .....		
	FIN2011W	Painting 2 .....	24	6
	FIN2012W	Sculpture 2 .....	24	6
	FIN2013W	Photography 2 .....	24	6



## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 56

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
FIN2024W	Printmedia 2 .....	24	6
FIN2025W	New Media 2 ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ).....	24	6
	<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>120</b>	

### Third year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FIN2027F	Art Narratives: Traditions and Tensions ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ) .....	24	6
	FIN2029F	Envisioning the Body: Representation of the Human in Art and Visual Culture.....	24	6
(b)	FIN2028S	Discursive Strategies .....	24	6
(c)		One from: .....		
	FIN3011W	Painting 3 .....	60	7
	FIN3012W	Sculpture 3 .....	60	7
	FIN3013W	Photography 3 .....	60	7
	FIN3024W	Printmedia 3 .....	60	7
	FIN3025W	New Media 3 ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ).....	60	7
(d)		1 x 1000-level Humanities semester course <sup>1</sup> .....	18	5
		1 x 1000-level Humanities co-requisite augmenting course <sup>1</sup> .....	10	
		<b>Third year total.....</b>	<b>136</b>	

### Fourth year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FIN3030W	Studiowork 3 Electives.....	36	7
(b)	FIN3026F	New Art: New Perspectives.....	30	7
		or .....		
	FIN3028F	Race, Gender and Decolonial Praxis .....	30	7
(c)	FIN3027S	Curatorial Praxes .....	30	7
		or .....		
	FIN3029S	Borders and Social Justice in the Arts .....	30	7
(d)		1 x 1000-level Humanities <sup>1</sup> .....	18	5
		1 x 1000-level Humanities co-requisite augmenting course <sup>1</sup> .....	10	5
		<b>Fourth year total.....</b>	<b>124</b>	

### Fifth year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	FIN4015W	Fine Art 4 .....	108	8
(b)	FIN4012W	Theory and Practice of Art .....	48	8
		<b>Fifth year total .....</b>	<b>156</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>	<b>672</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Students are recommended to complete at least one augmenting course.

## MUSIC QUALIFICATIONS

### RULES FOR STUDENTS REGISTERED IN DEGREE OR DIPLOMA PROGRAMMES IN THE SOUTH AFRICAN COLLEGE OF MUSIC

#### Minimum requirements for readmission

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 57

- FS1 Except by permission of Senate, students shall not be permitted to renew their registration in the Faculty unless they
- (a) complete at least two core courses including the principal practical course prescribed for each year of the curriculum; and
  - (b) if a curriculum does not have a practical instrument in its final year (for example the Music Technology specialisation), students must complete at least two core courses; and
  - (c) can complete the requirements for the relevant programme in a period not exceeding the minimum duration of the programme (N) by more than one year. The N + 1 period for the BMus is 5 years; the N + 1 period for the DMP is 4 years; and
  - (d) should the student fail only the practical study, consideration will be given to the student's academic record as a whole with regard to other courses, as well as the likelihood of success if the practical study course year is repeated. Should the student have a second practical study, an audition would be necessary to ascertain whether a change of stream could be recommended; and
  - (e) pass a specified number of courses that they are registered for in each year of study, as per the table below:

Number of courses registered for in any academic year	Number of courses that must be passed for that academic year
1	1
2	2
3	2
4	3
5	3
6	4
7	4
8	5
9	6
10	6
11	7
12	8
13	8

### Rules for distinction

- FS2 Courses considered for purposes of distinction must have been taken at UCT or at an exchange partner institution. Courses passed for credit from other tertiary institutions are not considered for purposes of distinction.
- FS2.1 All undergraduate degrees and diplomas in the SA College of Music may be awarded with distinction, or with distinction in individual subjects, or both.

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 58

- FS2.2 To qualify for the award of a degree or diploma with distinction, undergraduates must obtain an average of at least 75% from the second year of study onwards for all courses in the curriculum.
- FS2.3 Degrees and diplomas must be completed in the minimum required time (i.e. students must carry and pass the full load of courses for each year of study).
- FS2.4 To qualify for the award of distinction in a subject, undergraduates must obtain
- in a subject that extends over four years, no fewer than two passes in the first class and two in the second class (first division); provided that candidates shall obtain at least 80% in the fourth year of that subject;
  - in a subject that extends over three years, no fewer than two passes in the first class and one in the second class (first division); provided that candidates shall obtain at least 80% in the third year of that subject.

### Awards

- FS3 Class medals may be awarded to the best student in each stream (African Music, Jazz, Opera and Classical) in each year of study for degrees and diplomas in Music.  
*See also rule F15.*

### Public engagements

- FS4 Candidates for a degree or diploma in the SA College of Music shall consult their instrumental or vocal studies teacher and obtain the permission of the Director before undertaking any public engagement or audition, or entering any competition or outside examination, while registered as candidates. Non-compliance with this rule may result in the refusal of a DP certificate for a student's first practical study. Notwithstanding the above, SA College of Music productions shall take precedence over all other events.

### Duly performed certificates

- FS5 Candidates may not sit the examination in a course if they have been refused a duly performed certificate for the course (see General Rules for Students GB9.1, GB9.2 and GB9.3). Conditions for the award of a duly performed certificate are set out in the course description for the course concerned in this Handbook. 80% attendance is required for all instrumental and vocal studies. Students who at the end of the first semester have already failed to attend 20% of the year's classes will not be allowed to continue in the second semester and will be deregistered.

### Public performances

- FS6 Except by permission of Senate, candidates will not be permitted to renew their registration in the Faculty unless:
- as Music or Opera candidates, they take part, at the Director's instruction, in performers classes, orchestras, bands, choirs, or operatic productions of the College; and
  - they perform all back-stage work assigned by the Director.
- NOTE: No candidates are guaranteed, nor may they demand or refuse, a part in any production of the Faculty.*

### Physical examination

- FS7.1 Candidates may be required by the Director to provide evidence that they are medically and physically fit, as a condition of registration or renewal of registration

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 59

in the Faculty, and may be refused permission by Senate to register or renew registration if a medical doctor advises unfavourably.

- FS7.2 Candidates shall inform the Director of any aspect of their health that may be an impediment to full participation in the courses for which they are registered.

### **Piano requirements for non-keyboard students**

FS8.1 For the Diploma in Music Performance in Jazz Studies and BMus in Jazz Studies curricula: on admission to the course, jazz instrumentalists who are not taking piano as a first or second instrument are required to satisfy the course convener that they have reached a standard equivalent to a pass in Jazz Piano D1 [MUZ1255H]. Students who have not attained this standard must complete Jazz Piano D1. Jazz singers are required to complete two years of piano: either MUZ1281H Secondary Piano I and MUZ1255H Jazz Piano D1 or MUZ1255H Jazz Piano D1 and MUZ2255H Jazz Piano D2.

FS8.2 For the Diploma in Music Performance (Classical Stream) and the Bachelor of Music (all Classical Streams): on admission to the course students who are not taking piano as a first instrument are required to satisfy the course convener that they have reached a standard equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H). Students who have not attained this standard must complete Secondary Piano I and II or Secondary Piano II.

### **Concurrent registration for courses from consecutive years of study**

FS9 Students shall not be permitted to register concurrently for courses properly belonging to consecutive years of study in the curriculum of any degree or diploma without the permission of the course convener.

### **Permission to reregister for the Opera Stream**

FS10 Candidates enrolling for the Opera Stream of the Bachelor of Music or the Diploma in Music Performance do so on the understanding that if the Senate, on the advice of the Director of the Opera School after consultation with relevant staff members, deems at any time that a student is unfit for a career as an opera singer (owing, for example, to personality, temperament or vocal ability), the Senate may refuse the student permission to reregister.

### **Entry requirements for students registered for other qualifications, and SSA students**

FS11 Students registered for qualifications other than the Bachelor of Music, Advanced Diploma in Opera, Advanced Diploma in Music or Diploma in Music Performance, as well as SSA (Semester Study Abroad) students, who wish to take courses established in the South African College of Music must fulfil the following entrance requirements:

- (i) One of the following:
  - (a) 60% (HG) or 70% (SG) in Music (SC), or Music at level 5 in the NSC, or equivalent examination;
  - (b) a pass in the Grade V Theory of Music examination and Grade VII practical examination of the University of South Africa or in examinations recognised by Senate as equivalent;
  - (c) satisfy the Admission Board of the SA College of Music by practical audition and theory examination that they can register for the degree with a reasonable expectation of successfully completing the prescribed curriculum in the period required in terms of Faculty rules.

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 60

- (ii) Students must pass a Theory of Music Entrance Test.
- (iii) For entrance to practical courses (Instrument B1 or B2 or B3, and Jazz Improvisation I), an audition will be required.

### Notes on individual music courses

1. Courses are listed numerically. For a numerical list of instrumental and vocal studies practical course codes please see the table at the end of this book
2. Candidates may take courses in addition to those prescribed for the degree or diploma for which they are registered, subject to the approval of the Director and on payment of the prescribed additional fee.
3. Lecture times are according to the timetable of the South African College of Music.

### Permission to take a sole remaining course elsewhere

FS12 In cases where students have one remaining non-major course to complete the degree requirements and such course has been attempted and failed previously, permission may be given to complete such a course elsewhere to prevent hardship that may arise from having to return especially to complete the sole remaining course. Permission to take a sole remaining elsewhere must be obtained in advance.

## DIPLOMA IN MUSIC PERFORMANCE [HU021]

### Admission

FUD1 Persons shall not be admitted as candidates for a diploma unless they are the holder of a senior certificate or a qualification recognised by Senate as equivalent.

FUD2 Except by permission of Senate, persons shall not be admitted as candidates for the diploma (regular programme) unless they have obtained at least a National Senior Certificate (NSC) (with Diploma endorsement) or equivalent; and:

- (a) 50% (HG) or 60% (SG) in Music (SC), or Music at level 4 in the NSC, or equivalent examination; or
- (b) a pass in the Grade V Theory of Music examination and Grade VII Practical examination of the University of South Africa or in examinations recognised by Senate as equivalent; or
- (c) satisfied the Admission Board of the SA College of Music by practical audition, interview and theory examination that they can register for the diploma with a reasonable expectation of successfully completing the prescribed curriculum in the period required in terms of Faculty rules.

Candidates with a National Senior Certificate (NSC) (with Diploma endorsement) or equivalent who demonstrate proficiency in an instrument will be considered for admissions to the extended programme of the Diploma in Music Performance.

FUD3 Candidates may obtain the diploma in one of the following programmes and shall follow the relevant curriculum for the field of their choice: Diploma in Music Performance (Classical, Jazz Studies, African Music, World Music, Opera).

FUD4 Candidates for the Diploma in Music Performance, excluding Jazz Studies and Opera, shall perform a public recital in their final year of study.

FUD5 Candidates may apply for transfer into a stream of the Bachelor of Music (BMus) at the end of their first year. Students on financial aid please note that a maximum of 4 years will be funded by NSFAS. Transferring students must complete the requirements for the programme in n+1 (where n is the 3-year duration of the diploma).

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 61

Transfer from the Diploma in Music Performance (DMP) to the BMus is conditional on candidates:

- (a) having passed the first year in the DMP (regular study) with an average of at least 65%, and
- (b) having achieved a mark of at least 60% in any two of the following courses (one from each category): 1. MUZ1375H African Music Theory I, MUZ1385H Introduction to Jazz Theory And Aural, MUZ1363H Theory of Jazz I, MUZ1337H Foundation Music Theory or MUZ1350H Music Theory I; and 2. MUZ1322F African Music I, MUZ1367F Worlds of Music I, MUZ1339H Jazz in Context I or MUZ1340H History of Western Music I.

Consideration may be given later than the first year to candidates who hold an endorsement for Bachelor's degree studies, and who passed some degree courses from their first year, provided they meet the above requirements.

*Note: Candidates who transfer in this manner and who do not have endorsement for Bachelor's degree studies on their school-leaving certificate will need to apply for Senate Discretionary Exemption.*

### **DIPLOMA IN MUSIC PERFORMANCE - REGULAR PROGRAMME OF STUDY [HU021]**

**Programme Convener:** Director: SACM

Students registered for the Diploma in Music Performance (DMP) may choose one of the following areas of subject specialisation (stream):

African Music  
Jazz Studies  
Opera  
Classical  
World Music

These streams are similar to the practical streams of the BMus, but exclude some of the academic subjects prescribed for the BMus and are of three years' duration only. They are designed to prepare students for careers in each of the various areas. Prior to being admitted to the Diploma students must audition to satisfy the programme convener that their proficiency on their chosen instrument is of the standard required eventually to cope with the demands normally placed upon performing musicians.

### **Curriculum leading to the Diploma in Music Performance - regular programme of study [HU021]**

The required curriculum for each stream in every year of study is set out below.

#### **Stream 1: World Music [MUZ14]**

**Programme Convener:**

Associate Professor S Bruinders

##### **First year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5
(b)	MUZ1403H	World Music Instrument I.....	21	5
(c)		One of the following: .....		

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 62**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ1337H	<b>Foundation Music Theory</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1350H	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1375H	<b>African Music Theory 1</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)		One of the following.....		
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>1</sup> .....	6	5
	MUZ1374H	Secondary Marimba 1 .....	6	5
(e)	MUZ1338S	<b>Music in Society</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(f)	MUZ1366H	World Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
(g)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory.....	15	5
	MUZ1380H	African Aural 1 .....	15	5
(h)	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble 1 .....	12	5
(i)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>3</sup> .....	28	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>120-152</b>	

**Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ2367S	<b>Worlds of Music II</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
(b)	MUZ2403H	<b>World Music Instrument II</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>6</b>
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1350H	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ2350H	<b>Music Theory II</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2375H	<b>African Music Theory II</b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>6</b>
(d)		One of the following.....		
	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II <sup>1</sup> .....	6	6
	MUZ2374H	Secondary Marimba II.....	6	6
(e)	MUZ1322F	African Music 1.....	18	5
(f)	MUZ2366H	World Music Ensemble II .....	12	6
(g)	MUZ2323H	African Music Ensemble II .....	12	6
(h)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
	MUZ2380H	African Aural II.....	15	6
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>142-144</b>	

**Third year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ3403H	<b>World Music Instrument III</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>7</b>
(b)	MUZ3324F	<b>Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3</b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>7</b>
(c)	MUZ2322S	<b>African Music II</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
(d)	MUZ3366H	World Music Ensemble III .....	12	7
(e)	MUZ3323H	African Music Ensemble III .....	18	7
(f)		One of the following.....		
	MUZ2350H	Music Theory II <sup>2</sup> .....	22	6
	MUZ3375H	African Music Theory III .....	27	7
		<b>Third Year Total</b> .....	<b>151-156</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for diploma</b> .....	<b>413-452</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Only for instrumentalists who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in the Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano I (MUZ1281H).

<sup>2</sup> For candidates who did not complete Music Theory II in their second year of study

<sup>3</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F.

## Stream 2: African Music [MUZ02]

### Programme Convener:

Associate Professor S Bruinders

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1322F	African Music I.....	18	5
(b)	MUZ1201H	African Instrument B1.....	30	5
(c)	MUZ1375H	African Music Theory I.....	21	5
(d)		One of the following: <sup>1</sup> .....		
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I.....	6	5
	MUZ1374H	Secondary Marimba I.....	6	5
(e)	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
(f)	MUZ1380H	African Aural I.....	15	5
(g)	MUZ1338S	Music in Society.....	18	5
(h)	MUZ1366H	World Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
(i)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>2</sup> .....	28	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>132-160</b>	

#### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ2322S	African Music II.....	21	6
(b)	MUZ2201H	African Instrument B2.....	30	6
(c)	MUZ2375H	African Music Theory II.....	24	6
(d)	MUZ2323H	African Music Ensemble II.....	12	6
(e)	MUZ2380H	African Aural II.....	15	6
(f)	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5
(g)	MUZ2366H	World Music Ensemble II.....	12	6
(h)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II.....	6	6
	MUZ2374H	Secondary Marimba II.....	6	6
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>138</b>	

#### Third year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ3201H	African Instrument B3.....	36	7
(b)	MUZ3323H	African Music Ensemble III.....	18	7
(c)	MUZ3324F	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3.....	24	7
(d)	MUZ3375H	African Music Theory III.....	27	7
(e)	MUZ3366H	World Music Ensemble III.....	12	7
(f)	MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II.....	21	6
		<b>Third Year Total</b> .....	<b>144</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for diploma</b> .....	<b>414-442</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Only students with basic keyboard skills who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in the Faculty Rule FS8 may register for Secondary Piano I.

<sup>2</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F.



### Stream 3: Classical

[MUZ12]

Programme Convener:

Associate Professor F du Toit

*Core courses in each stream are indicated in bold, and students are required to pass these courses in order to meet the minimum requirements for re-admission.*

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1309H	<b>Accordion B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1207H	<b>Bassoon B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1211H	<b>Cello B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1215H	<b>Clarinet B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1386H	<b>Classical Saxophone B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1223H	<b>Double Bass B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1229H	<b>Euphonium B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1233H	<b>Flute B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1237H	<b>Guitar B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1241H	<b>Harp B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1245H	<b>Harpichord B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1249H	<b>Horn B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1257H	<b>Oboe B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1261H	<b>Organ B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1265H	<b>Percussion B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1269H	<b>Piano B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1274H	<b>Recorder B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1283H	<b>Singing B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1287H	<b>Trombone B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1291H	<b>Trumpet B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1294H	<b>Tuba B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1298H	<b>Viola B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1302H	<b>Violin B1</b> .....	30	5
(b)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1337H	<b>Foundation Music Theory</b> .....	18	5
	MUZ1350H	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	22	5
(c)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory .....	15	5
	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5
(d)	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>1</sup> .....	6	5
(e)	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A <sup>2</sup> .....	12	5
(f)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1333H	Ensemble I <sup>3</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1320H	Accompanying I <sup>4</sup> .....	12	5
(g)	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I <sup>7</sup> .....	18	5
(h)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>10</sup> .....	28	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>157-161</b>	

#### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ2308H	<b>Accordion A2</b> .....	36	6
	MUZ2206H	<b>Bassoon A2</b> .....	36	6

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 65**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ2210H	Cello A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2214H	Clarinet A2.....	36	6
	MUZ22385H	Classical Saxophone A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2222H	Double Bass A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2228H	Euphonium A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2232H	Flute A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2236H	Guitar A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2240H	Harp A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2244H	Harpichord A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2248H	Horn A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2256H	Oboe A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2260H	Organ A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2264H	Percussion A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2268H	Piano A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2273H	Recorder A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2282H	Singing A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2286H	Trombone A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2290H	Trumpet A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2402H	Tuba A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2297H	Viola A2.....	36	6
	MUZ2301H	Violin A2.....	36	6
(b)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ1350H	Music Theory I.....	22	5
	MUZ2350H	Music Theory II.....	22	6
(c)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
	MUZ2324H	Aural II.....	15	6
(d)	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II <sup>1</sup> .....	6	6
(e)	MUZ2328H	Chamber Music I.....	21	6
(f)	MUZ1377H	Lyric Diction I <sup>2</sup> .....	18	5
(g)	SLL1092H	German for Musicians A <sup>2</sup> .....	12	5
(h)	SLL1096H	Italian for Musicians B <sup>2</sup> .....	12	5
(i)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ2356H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies I OR.....	18	6
	MUZ2346H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies II <sup>5</sup> .....	18	6
	MUZ2365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire I <sup>2</sup> .....	9	6
(j)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ2333H	Ensemble II <sup>3</sup> .....	12	6
	MUZ2320H	Accompanying II <sup>4</sup> .....	12	6
(k)	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I.....	18	5
		<b>Second year total.....</b>	<b>184</b>	

**Third year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ3308H	Accordion A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3206H	Bassoon A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3210H	Cello A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3214H	Clarinet A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3385H	Classical Saxophone A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3222H	Double Bass A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3228H	Euphonium A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3232H	Flute A3.....	48	7

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 66**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ3236H	Guitar A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3240H	Harp A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3244H	Harpsichord A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3248H	Horn A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3256H	Oboe A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3260H	Organ A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3264H	Percussion A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3268H	Piano A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3273H	Recorder A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3282H	Singing A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3286H	Trombone A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3290H	Trumpet A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3402H	Tuba A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3297H	Viola A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3301H	Violin A3 .....	48	7
(b)	MUZ2377H	Lyric Diction II <sup>2</sup> .....	21	6
(c)	MUZ3360H	Teaching Method <sup>5</sup> .....	24	7
(d)	MUZ3328H	Chamber Music II .....	24	7
(e)	MUZ1335H	Figured Bass and Score Reading <sup>6</sup> .....	9	5
(f)	SLI1091H	French for Musicians A <sup>2</sup> .....	12	5
(g)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ2356H	<b>Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies I OR .....</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2346H	<b>Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies II<sup>5</sup> .....</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ3365H	<b>Teaching Method &amp; Repertoire II<sup>2</sup> .....</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>7</b>
(h)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ3333H	Ensemble III <sup>3</sup> .....	12	7
	MUZ3320H	Accompanying III <sup>4</sup> .....	12	7
(i)	MUZ2324H	Aural II <sup>8</sup> .....	15	6
(j)	MUZ2350H	Music Theory II <sup>9</sup> .....	22	6
(k)	MUZ2340H	History of Western Music II .....	21	6
		<b>Third Year Total .....</b>	<b>193</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for diploma .....</b>	<b>534-538</b>	

<sup>1</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H)

<sup>2</sup> For singers only

<sup>3</sup> For orchestral instruments only

<sup>4</sup> For keyboard majors only

<sup>5</sup> For instrumentalists only.

<sup>6</sup> For organists and harpsichordists only

<sup>7</sup> For keyboard majors and instrumentalists only

<sup>8</sup> For candidates who did not complete Aural II in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of study

<sup>9</sup> For candidates who did not complete Music Theory II in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of study.

<sup>10</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F.

**Stream 4: Jazz Studies**  
**[MUZ07]**

**Programme Convener:**  
 Associate Professor A Tiffin

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 67**

**First year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1339H	Jazz in Context I.....	18	5
(b)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ1385W	Introduction to Jazz Theory and Aural.....	36	5
	MUZ1363H	Theory of Jazz I1.....	21	5
(c)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ1204H	Bass Guitar B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1226H	Drum Set B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1391H	Jazz Clarinet B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1389H	Jazz Bass B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1393H	Jazz Flute B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1252H	Jazz Guitar B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1254H	Jazz Piano B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1306H	Jazz Singing B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1395H	Jazz Trombone B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1397H	Jazz Trumpet B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1278H	Saxophone B1.....	30	5
(d)	MUZ1342H	Jazz Ensemble I.....	12	5
(e)	MUZ1343H	Jazz Improvisation I.....	18	5
(f)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I.....	18	5
(g)	MUZ1379H	Jazz Ear Training II.....	15	5
(h)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>2</sup> .....	6	5
	MUZ1255H	Jazz Piano D1 <sup>2</sup> .....	6	5
(i)	MUZ1405H	Jazz Vocal Techniques <sup>3</sup> .....	6	5
(j)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>4</sup> .....	28	5
		<b>First year total.....</b>	<b>120-172</b>	

**Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ1363H	Theory of Jazz I.....	21	5
	MUZ2363H	Theory of Jazz II.....	24	6
(b)	MUZ2339H	Jazz in Context II.....	21	6
(c)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ2204H	Bass Guitar B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2226H	Drum Set B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2391H	Jazz Clarinet B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2389H	Jazz Bass B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2393H	Jazz Flute B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2252H	Jazz Guitar B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2254H	Jazz Piano B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2306H	Jazz Singing B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2395H	Jazz Trombone B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2397H	Jazz Trumpet B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2278H	Saxophone B2.....	30	6
(d)	MUZ2342H	Jazz Ensemble II.....	12	6
(e)	MUZ2343H	Jazz Improvisation II.....	24	6
(f)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II.....	21	6
	MUZ2322S	African Music II.....	21	6

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 68

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(g)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1379H	Jazz Ear Training I .....	15	5
	MUZ2379H	Jazz Ear Training II .....	18	6
(h)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1255H	Jazz Piano D1 <sup>2</sup> .....	6	5
	MUZ2255H	Jazz Piano D2 <sup>3</sup> .....	6	6
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>150-156</b>	

### Third year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ3379H</b>	<b>Jazz Styles &amp; Analysis</b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>7</b>
(b)	MUZ3381H	Jazz Masterclass .....	24	7
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	<b>MUZ3204H</b>	<b>Bass Guitar B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3226H</b>	<b>Drum Set B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3391H</b>	<b>Jazz Clarinet B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3389H</b>	<b>Jazz Bass B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3393H</b>	<b>Jazz Flute B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3252H</b>	<b>Jazz Guitar B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3254H</b>	<b>Jazz Piano B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3306H</b>	<b>Jazz Singing B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3395H</b>	<b>Jazz Trombone B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3397H</b>	<b>Jazz Trumpet B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	<b>MUZ3278H</b>	<b>Saxophone B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
(d)	MUZ3342H	Jazz Ensemble III .....	12	7
(e)	<b>MUZ3343H</b>	<b>Jazz Improvisation III</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
(f)	MUZ2379H	Jazz Ear Training II <sup>5</sup> .....	18	6
(g)	MUZ2363H	Theory of Jazz II <sup>6</sup> .....	24	6
		<b>Third Year Total</b> .....	<b>132-174</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for diploma</b> .....	<b>423-514</b>	

<sup>1</sup> For students in the first year, who have been placed into Theory of Jazz I and Jazz Ear Training I, after completing the Jazz Theory & Aural placement test.

<sup>2</sup> Non-pianists only: D-level studies subject to an audition, students who have not met the admission requirements for Jazz Piano D1 must complete Secondary Piano I before enrolling in Jazz Piano D1.

<sup>3</sup> For singers only.

<sup>4</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F.

<sup>5</sup> For students who did not complete Jazz Ear Training II in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of study

<sup>6</sup> For students who did not complete Theory of Jazz II in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of study.

## Stream 5: Opera

[MUZ23]

### Programme Convener:

Professor J Silver

### First year:

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1305H</b>	<b>Vocal Studies I</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	<b>MUZ1337H</b>	<b>Foundation Music Theory</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1350H</b>	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 69

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(c)	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>1</sup> .....	6	5
(d)	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A .....	12	5
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory .....	15	5
	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5
(f)	<b>MUZ1404H</b>	<b>Opera Training I</b> .....	<b>12</b>	<b>5</b>
(g)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>4</sup> .....	28	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>129-133</b>	

### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1377H</b>	<b>Lyric Diction I</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ2305H</b>	<b>Vocal Studies II</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
(c)		One of the following: .....		
	<b>MUZ1350H</b>	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ2350H</b>	<b>Music Theory II</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>6</b>
(d)	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II <sup>1</sup> .....	6	6
(e)	SLL1096H	Italian for Musicians B .....	12	5
(f)	SLL1092H	German for Musicians A .....	12	5
(g)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5
	MUZ2324H	Aural II .....	15	6
(h)	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I .....	18	5
(i)	<b>MUZ2404H</b>	<b>Opera Training II</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
(j)	MUZ2365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire I .....	9	6
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>166</b>	

### Third year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ2377H</b>	<b>Lyric Diction II</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ3305H</b>	<b>Vocal Studies III</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
(c)	SLL1091H	French for Musicians A .....	12	5
(d)	SLL1095H	German for Musicians B .....	12	5
(e)	<b>MUZ3404H</b>	<b>Opera Training III</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>7</b>
(f)	MUZ3365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire II .....	9	7
(g)	MUZ2324H	Aural II <sup>2</sup> .....	15	6
(h)	MUZ2350H	Music Theory II <sup>3</sup> .....	22	6
(i)	MUZ2340H	History of Western Music II .....	21	6
		<b>Third Year Total</b> .....	<b>175</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for diploma</b> .....	<b>470-474</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Only for candidates who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in the Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2381H)

<sup>2</sup> For candidates who did not complete Aural II in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of study

<sup>3</sup> For candidates who did not complete Music Theory II in their second year of study.

<sup>4</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F.

## DIPLOMA IN MUSIC PERFORMANCE (DMP) - EXTENDED PROGRAMME OF STUDY [HU035]

Programme Convener: Director: SACM

*No new intake in 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 4 years funded by NSFAS.*

This programme of study is linked to Classical, Jazz Studies, African Music, World Music and Opera streams of the DMP and it has been designed primarily for students selected on the basis of admissions criteria who show potential to succeed in an extended programme of study with additional academic support. The programme is designed so that the DMP takes four years, with the first two years an intensive structured programme of academic support. Candidates must complete the prescribed courses for the first two years and may not register for any other MUZ courses.

Candidates with a school-leaving (senior) certificate and who demonstrate proficiency in an instrument will be considered for admission to this programme.

The required curriculum for every year in each stream of study is set out below.

*Core courses in each stream are indicated in bold, and students are required to pass these courses in order to meet the minimum requirements for re-admission.*

### Curriculum leading to the Diploma in Music Performance - extended programme of study

#### Stream I: World Music

##### [MUZ14]

*No new intake in 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 4 years funded by NSFAS.*

##### First year:

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1337H	<b>Foundation Music Theory</b> .....	18	5
(b)	MUZ1338S	<b>Music in Society</b> .....	18	5
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> <sup>1</sup> .....		
	MUZ1399H	<b>African Music Practical Study</b> ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ) ...	18	5
	MUZ1401H	<b>Western Classical Music Practical Study</b> ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ) .....	18	5
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory .....	15	5
(e)		One of the following: <sup>2</sup> .....		
	MUZ1374H	Secondary Marimba I .....	6	5
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I .....	6	5
(f)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>3</sup> .....	28	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>103</b>	

##### Second year:

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
(b)	MUZ1403H	<b>World Music Instrument I</b> .....	21	5
(c)	MUZ1350H	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	22	5
(d)	MUZ1367F	<b>Worlds of Music I</b> .....	18	5
(e)	MUZ1366H	World Music Ensemble I .....	12	5
(f)	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 71

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(g)	MUZ1203H	African Instrument D1.....	12	5
		<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>118</b>	

<sup>1</sup> May include ensemble work

<sup>2</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H)

<sup>3</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

**After completing these components, follow the DMP World Music curriculum that is labelled Second year – Third year**

### Stream 2: African Music

#### [MUZ02]

*No new intake in 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 4 years funded by NSFAS.*

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1337H	Foundation Music Theory .....	18	5
(b)	MUZ1322F	African Music I.....	18	5
(c)	MUZ1399H	African Music Practical Study (Not offered in 2025) ...	18	5
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory.....	15	5
(e)		One of the following: <sup>1</sup> .....		
	MUZ1374H	Secondary Marimba I.....	6	5
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I.....	6	5
(f)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>2</sup> .....	28	5
(g)	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>115</b>	

#### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5
(b)	MUZ1201H	African Instrument B1.....	30	5
(c)	MUZ1375H	African Music Theory I.....	21	5
(d)	MUZ1380H	African Aural I.....	15	5
(e)	MUZ1338S	Music in Society.....	18	5
(f)	MUZ1366H	World Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
(g)		One of the following: <sup>1</sup> .....		
	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II.....	6	6
	MUZ2374H	Secondary Marimba II.....	6	6
		<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>120</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Only students with basic keyboard skills who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rule FS8 may register for secondary piano.

<sup>2</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

**After completing these components, follow the DMP African Music curriculum that is labelled Second year – Third year**



**Stream 3: Classical**

**[MUZ12]**

*No new intake in 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 4 years funded by NSFAS.*

**First year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1337H	<b>Foundation Music Theory</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	MUZ1338S	<b>Music in Society</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	MUZ1401H	<b>Western Classical Music Practical Study<sup>1</sup></b> <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory .....	15	5
(e)	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>2</sup> .....	6	5
(f)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>3</sup> .....	28	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>103</b>	

**Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1309H	<b>Accordion B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1207H	<b>Bassoon B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1211H	<b>Cello B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1215H	<b>Clarinet B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1386H	<b>Classical Saxophone B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1223H	<b>Double Bass B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1229H	<b>Euphonium B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1233H	<b>Flute B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1237H	<b>Guitar B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1241H	<b>Harp B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1245H	<b>Harpsichord B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1249H	<b>Horn B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1257H	<b>Oboe B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1261H	<b>Organ B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1265H	<b>Percussion B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1269H	<b>Piano B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1274H	<b>Recorder B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1283H	<b>Singing B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1287H	<b>Trombone B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1291H	<b>Trumpet B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1294H	<b>Tuba B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1298H	<b>Viola B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1302H	<b>Violin B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	MUZ1350H	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5
(d)	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A <sup>4</sup> .....	12	5
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1333H	Ensemble I <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1320H	Accompanying I <sup>6</sup> .....	12	5
(f)	MUZ1340H	<b>History of Western Music I</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(g)	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I <sup>7</sup> .....	18	5
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>127</b>	

<sup>1</sup> May include ensemble work

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 73

<sup>2</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H)

<sup>3</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

<sup>4</sup> For singers only

<sup>5</sup> For orchestral instrumentalists only

<sup>6</sup> For keyboard majors only

<sup>7</sup> For keyboard majors and instrumentalists only.

**After completing these components, follow the DMP Classical curriculum that is labelled Second year – Third year**

### Stream 4: Jazz Studies

#### [MUZ07]

*No new intake in 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 4 years funded by NSFAS.*

#### First year:

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1385W <b>Introduction to Jazz Theory &amp; Aural</b> .....	36	5
	MUZ1337H <b>Foundation Music Theory</b> .....	18	5
(b)	MUZ1338S <b>Music in Society</b> .....	18	5
(c)	MUZ1400H <b>Jazz Practical Study (May not be offered in 2025)</b> .....	18	5
(d)	MUZ1281H <b>Secondary Piano I<sup>1</sup></b> .....	6	5
(e)	DOH1005F <b>Writing in the Performing Arts<sup>2</sup></b> .....	28	5
	<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>88-103</b>	

#### Second year:

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1204H <b>Bass Guitar B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1226H <b>Drum Set B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1391H <b>Jazz Clarinet B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1389H <b>Jazz Bass B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1393H <b>Jazz Flute B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1252H <b>Jazz Guitar B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1254H <b>Jazz Piano B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1306H <b>Jazz Singing B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1395H <b>Jazz Trombone B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1397H <b>Jazz Trumpet B1</b> .....	30	5
	MUZ1278H <b>Saxophone B1</b> .....	30	5
(b)	MUZ1339H <b>Jazz in Context I</b> .....	18	5
(c)	MUZ1363H <b>Theory of Jazz I</b> .....	21	5
(d)	MUZ1342H <b>Jazz Ensemble I</b> .....	12	5
(e)	MUZ1343H <b>Jazz Improvisation I</b> .....	18	5
(f)	MUZ1379H <b>Jazz Ear Training I</b> .....	15	5
(g)	MUZ1255H <b>Jazz Piano D1<sup>1</sup></b> .....	6	5
(h)	MUZ1367F <b>Worlds of Music I</b> .....	18	5
(i)	MUZ1405H <b>Jazz Vocal Techniques<sup>3</sup></b> .....	6	5
	<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>138-144</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Non-pianists only.

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 74

<sup>2</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F.

<sup>3</sup> For singers only.

After completing these components, follow the DMP Jazz Studies curriculum that is labelled Second year – Third year.

### Stream 5: Opera

#### [MUZ23]

No new intake in 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 4 years funded by NSFAS.

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1337H</b>	<b>Foundation Music Theory</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ1338S</b>	<b>Music in Society</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	<b>MUZ1401H</b>	<b>Western Classical Music Practical Study</b> (Not offered in 2025) .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory .....	15	5
(e)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>1</sup> .....	28	5
(f)	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A .....	12	5
(g)	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano 1 <sup>2</sup> .....	6	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>115</b>	

#### Second year:

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1305H</b>	<b>Vocal Studies I</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ1350H</b>	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano 2 <sup>2</sup> .....	6	6
(d)	SLL1096H	Italian for Musicians B .....	12	5
(e)	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5
(f)	<b>MUZ1404H</b>	<b>Opera Training I</b> .....	<b>12</b>	<b>5</b>
(g)	<b>MUZ1340H</b>	<b>History of Western Music I</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>115</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

<sup>2</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rules FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H).

After completing these components, follow the DMP Opera curriculum that is labelled Second year – Third year

## ADVANCED DIPLOMAS

### Admission criteria for advanced diplomas

- FBU1
- (a) University general rules apply.
  - (b) Programme admission requirements:
    - (i) Candidates for the diploma would normally hold the Diploma in Music Performance or equivalent qualification with an average of 65% or above.
    - (ii) Acceptance is at the discretion of the HoD.

- (iii) Candidates must have at least a first class pass in the performance requirements for the undergraduate diploma/degree, or pass an audition.

### Distinction for Advanced Diploma in Music and Advanced Diploma in Opera

FBU2 For the diploma to be awarded with distinction, candidates must obtain an overall weighted average of 75% or more, and not less than 70% in any one component of the programme.

## ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN OPERA

[HU047]

*(Not offered in 2025)*

### Curriculum leading to the Advanced Diploma in Opera

Candidates must complete the following courses:

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ3377H	Lyric Diction III .....	24	7
(b)	MUZ3702H	Advanced Vocal Studies <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	48	7
(c)	MUZ3704W	Advanced Opera Workshop <i>(May not be offered in 2025)</i> .....	60	7
(d)	SLL1094H	French for Musicians B .....	12	5
		<b>Total NQF credits for diploma .....</b>	<b>144</b>	

## ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN MUSIC

[HU046]

*(Not offered in 2025)*

### Curriculum leading to the Advanced Diploma in Music

Candidates must complete the following courses:

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ3705H	Advanced Instrumental/Vocal Studies A <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	48	7
(b)	MUZ3706H	Advanced Instrumental/Vocal Studies B <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	48	7
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ3707H	Advanced Transcription Methods (African Music) <sup>1</sup> ..	24	7
	MUZ3708H	Advanced Repertoire Studies (Jazz) <sup>2</sup> .....	24	7
	MUZ3709H	Advanced Repertoire (Western Classical) <sup>3</sup> <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	24	7
		<b>Total NQF credits for diploma .....</b>	<b>120</b>	

<sup>1</sup> For students studying African instruments

<sup>2</sup> For students studying Jazz

<sup>3</sup> For students studying Classical instruments.

## **BACHELOR OF MUSIC (BMus) [HB010]**

### **Requirement for admission**

- FBS1.1 Except by permission of Senate, persons shall not be admitted as candidates for the Bachelor of Music unless they have at least:
- (a) obtained matriculation endorsement or the NSC endorsed for degree studies
  - (b) written the NBT and achieved at least lower intermediate
  - (c) passed an audition.
- FBS1.2 To qualify for admission to any stream of the regular programme of study leading to the Bachelor of Music, candidates must have:
- (a) music at C (60%) at Higher Grade or B (70%) at Standard Grade in Music (Senior Certificate); or Music at level 5 in the NSC; or Grade V Theory of Music examination and Grade VII practical examination of University of South Africa (Unisa) or the equivalent examination; or equivalent examination or
  - (b) satisfied the Admission Board of the SA College of Music by practical audition, interview and theory examination that they can register for the degree with a reasonable expectation of successfully completing the prescribed curriculum in the period required in terms of Faculty rules.
- FBS1.3 To qualify for admission to the extended programme of study leading to the award of the Bachelor of Music, candidates must meet the minimum requirements for admission to the Bachelor of Music.

### **Duration of degree**

- FBS2 The curriculum for the regular programme of study leading to the award of the degree shall extend over four years. The extended programme of study leading to the award of the degree shall extend over five years.

### **Programmes of study (stream)**

- FBS3.1 Candidates may obtain the degree in one of the following programmes of study (or streams) and shall follow the relevant curriculum for the field of their choice:
- African Music Performance
  - General
  - Jazz Studies
  - Music Technology
  - Opera
  - Classical Composition
  - Classical Performance
- The curricula for each stream are set out below.
- FBS3.2 Except for the stream in Jazz, candidates for the Performance streams shall perform a public recital in their final year of study.

## **BACHELOR OF MUSIC REGULAR PROGRAMME OF STUDY [HB010]**

**Programme Convener:**

Director: SACM

### **NOTES:**

*(1) Core courses in each stream are indicated in bold, and students are required to pass these courses in order to meet the minimum requirements for re-admission.*

(2) *The Bachelor of Music degree does not qualify graduates to teach in schools. Those who intend to proceed to study for a PGCE following the completion of the BMus are advised to register for the BMus General Stream and take the courses MUZ2349H Music Education I, MUZ3349H Music Education II and MUZ3360H Teaching Method as electives.*

The Bachelor of Music is offered through a series of programmes of study referred to as streams. The requirements and curriculum structure of each stream is laid out below.

## Curriculum leading to the Bachelor of Music (BMus) regular programme of study [HB010]

### Stream 1: General [MUZ33]

#### Programme Convener:

Associate Professor F du Toit

This programme is intended to provide a broad musical training at degree level.

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1322F	African Music I <sup>7</sup> .....	18	5
	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I <sup>8</sup> .....	18	5
(b)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1350H	Music Theory I .....	22	5
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I .....	21	5
	MUZ1375H	African Music Theory I <sup>7</sup> .....	21	5
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1309H	Accordion B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1201H	African Instrument B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1207H	Bassoon B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1211H	Cello B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1215H	Clarinet B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1386H	Classical Saxophone B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1219H	Conducting B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1223H	Double Bass B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1229H	Euphonium B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1233H	Flute B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1237H	Guitar B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1241H	Harp B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1245H	Harpsichord B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1249H	Horn B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1257H	Oboe B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1261H	Organ B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1265H	Percussion B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1269H	Piano B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1274H	Recorder B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1283H	Singing B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1287H	Trombone B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1291H	Trumpet B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1294H	Tuba B1 .....	30	5

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 78**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	<b>MUZ1298H</b>	<b>Viola B1</b> ..... <sup>5</sup>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1302H</b>	<b>Violin B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1403H</b>	<b>World Music Instrument B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory.....	15	5
	MUZ1380H	African Aural I <sup>7</sup> .....	15	5
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1320H	Accompanying I <sup>2</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble I <sup>7</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1366H	World Music Ensemble I <sup>8</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1333H	Ensemble I <sup>1</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1404H	Opera Training I <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(f)		One of the following: <sup>3</sup> .....		
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I.....	6	5
	MUZ1374H	Secondary Marimba I.....	6	5
(g)		Two of the following:.....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> <b>AND</b> .....	12	5
	SLL1092H	German for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I.....	21	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA.....	18	5
	MUZ1338S	Music in Society.....	18	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>126-142</b>	

**Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	<b>MUZ2322S</b>	<b>African Music II<sup>7</sup></b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2340H</b>	<b>History of Western Music II</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2367F</b>	<b>Worlds of Music II</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
(b)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	<b>MUZ2375H</b>	<b>African Music Theory II<sup>7</sup></b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ1351H</b>	<b>Music Theory and Analysis I</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ2351H</b>	<b>Music Theory and Analysis II</b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>6</b>
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	<b>MUZ2308H</b>	<b>Accordion B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2201H</b>	<b>African Instrument B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2207H</b>	<b>Bassoon B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2211H</b>	<b>Cello B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2215H</b>	<b>Clarinet B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2386H</b>	<b>Classical Saxophone B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2219H</b>	<b>Conducting B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2223H</b>	<b>Double Bass B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2229H</b>	<b>Euphonium B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2233H</b>	<b>Flute B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2237H</b>	<b>Guitar B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2241H</b>	<b>Harp B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2245H</b>	<b>Harpsichord B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 79**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ2249H	<b>Horn B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2257H	<b>Oboe B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2261H	<b>Organ B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2265H	<b>Percussion B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2269H	<b>Piano B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2274H	<b>Recorder B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2283H	<b>Singing B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2287H	<b>Trombone B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2291H	<b>Trumpet B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2294H	<b>Tuba B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2298H	<b>Viola B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2302H	<b>Violin B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	MUZ2403H	<b>World Music Instrument B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
	MUZ2324H	Aural II.....	15	6
	MUZ1380H	African Aural I <sup>7</sup> .....	15	5
	MUZ2380H	African Aural II <sup>7</sup> .....	15	6
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2320H	Accompanying II <sup>2</sup> .....	12	6
	MUZ2323H	African Music Ensemble I <sup>7</sup> .....	12	6
	MUZ2366H	World Music Ensemble II <sup>8</sup> .....	12	6
	MUZ2333H	Ensemble II <sup>1</sup> .....	12	6
(f)		One of the following: <sup>3</sup> .....		
	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II.....	6	6
	MUZ2374H	Secondary Marimba II.....	6	6
(g)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2356H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies I <b>OR</b> .....	18	6
	MUZ2346H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies II <sup>4</sup> .....	18	6
	MUZ2365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire I <sup>5</sup> .....	9	6
	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble I <sup>9</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1366H	World Music Ensemble I <sup>10</sup> .....	12	5
(h)		Two of the following: .....		
	SLL1096H	Italian for Musicians B <b>AND</b> .....	12	5
	SLL1095H	German for Musicians B <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA.....	18	5
	MUZ2322S	African Music II.....	21	6
	MUZ2340H	History of Western Music II.....	21	6
	MUZ2349H	Music Education I.....	21	6
	MUZ2351H	Music Theory and Analysis II.....	24	6
	MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II.....	21	6
	MUZ2372H	Music Technology IIA.....	24	6
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>150-165</b>	

**Third year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ3324F	<b>Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3<sup>7</sup></b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3340H	<b>Music in History and Society III</b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>7</b>
(b)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ3375H	<b>African Music Theory III<sup>7</sup></b> .....	<b>27</b>	<b>7</b>



**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 80**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ2351H	Music Theory and Analysis II .....	24	6
	MUZ3351H	Music Theory and Analysis III .....	27	7
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ3308H	Accordion B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3201H	African Instrument B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3207H	Bassoon B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3211H	Cello B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3215H	Clarinet B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3386H	Classical Saxophone B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3219H	Conducting B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3223H	Double Bass B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3229H	Euphonium B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3233H	Flute B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3237H	Guitar B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3241H	Harp B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3245H	Harpsichord B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3249H	Horn B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3257H	Oboe B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3261H	Organ B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3265H	Percussion B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3269H	Piano B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3274H	Recorder B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3283H	Singing B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3287H	Trombone B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3291H	Trumpet B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3294H	Tuba B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3298H	Viola B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3302H	Violin B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3403H	World Music Instrument B3 .....	36	7
(d)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ3320H	Accompanying III <sup>2</sup> .....	12	7
	MUZ3323H	African Music Ensemble III <sup>7</sup> .....	18	7
	MUZ3333H	Ensemble III <sup>1</sup> .....	12	7
	SLL1091H	French for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(e)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ2356H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies I <b>OR</b> .....	18	6
	MUZ2346H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies II <sup>4</sup> .....	18	6
	MUZ3365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire II <sup>5</sup> .....	9	7
	MUZ2323H	African Music Ensemble II .....	12	6
	MUZ2366H	World Music Ensemble II .....	12	6
(f)		<b>Two of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ2322S	African Music II .....	21	6
	MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II .....	21	6
	MUZ2372H	Music Technology IIA .....	24	6
	MUZ3324F	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3 .....	24	7
	MUZ3707H	Advanced Transcription Methods (African Music) .....	24	7
	MUZ3340H	Music in History and Society III .....	24	7
	MUZ2349H	Music Education I .....	21	6
	MUZ3349H	Music Education II .....	24	7
	MUZ3351H	Music Theory and Analysis III .....	27	7
	MUZ3371H	Music Technology IIIA .....	24	7

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 81**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(g)	MUZ3360H	Teaching Method .....	24	7
		One of the following: <sup>6</sup> .....		
	MUZ2324H	Aural II .....	15	6
	MUZ2380H	African Aural II <sup>7</sup> .....	15	6
		<b>Third year total</b> .....	<b>162-195</b>	

**Fourth year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ4309W	Accordion B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4201W	African Instrument B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4207W	Bassoon B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4211W	Cello B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4215W	Clarinet B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4386W	Classical Saxophone B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4219W	Conducting B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4223W	Double Bass B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4229W	Euphonium B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4233W	Flute B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4237W	Guitar B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4241W	Harp B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4245W	Harpsichord B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4249W	Horn B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4257W	Oboe B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4261W	Organ B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4265W	Percussion B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4269W	Piano B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4274W	Recorder B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4283W	Singing B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4287W	Trombone B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4291W	Trumpet B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4294W	Tuba B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4298W	Viola B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4302W	Violin B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4403H	World Music Instrument B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4372W	Musicology .....	60	8
(b)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ4323H	African Music Ensemble IV <sup>7</sup> .....	18	8
	MUZ4366H	World Music Ensemble IV <sup>8</sup> .....	18	8
	MUZ4333H	Ensemble IV1 .....	12	8
	SLL1094H	French for Musicians B <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(c)		<b>Two of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ4340H	Music in History and Society IV .....	36	8
	MUZ4324S	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 4 .....	36	8
	MUZ3707H	Advanced Transcription Methods (African Music) ....	24	7
	MUZ4351H	Music Theory and Analysis IV .....	36	8
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ3324F	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3 .....	24	7
	MUZ3371H	Music Technology IIIA .....	24	7
	MUZ3340H	Music in History and Society III .....	24	7
	MUZ3351H	Music Theory and Analysis III .....	27	7
		<b>Fourth Year Total</b> .....	<b>144-177</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree</b> .....	<b>582-679</b>	

<sup>1</sup> For all orchestral instruments

<sup>2</sup> For all keyboard instruments

<sup>3</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in the Faculty Rule FSS, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H). The Secondary Marimba option is open only to students registered for African instrument

<sup>4</sup> For Classical Music instrumentalists only. These courses are offered in alternation. Students register for one course in their second year and the other one in their third year.

<sup>5</sup> Not for instrumentalists; compulsory for singers

<sup>6</sup> For students who did not complete Aural II/African Aural II in the second year of study

<sup>7</sup> For students registered for African instrument

<sup>8</sup> For students registered for World Music Instrument

<sup>9</sup> For students taking World Music Instrument

<sup>10</sup> For students taking African Instrument

## **Stream 2: African Music Performance** **[MUZ44]**

### **Programme Convener:**

Associate Professor S Bruinders

This stream is designed for those who wish to specialise in African Music practice. It leads progressively through individual and group/ensemble lessons to the preparation and execution of the final recital programme, which must be approved by the programme convener.

### **First year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1322F</b>	<b>African Music I.....</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ1375H</b>	<b>African Music Theory I.....</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	<b>MUZ1201H</b>	<b>African Instrument B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1380H	African Aural I.....	15	5
(e)	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
(f)	MUZ1366H	World Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
(g)		One of the following: .....		
		A non-music first-year semester course.....	18	5
	MUZ1338S	Music in Society.....	18	5
(h)		One of the following: <sup>1</sup> .....		
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I.....	6	5
	MUZ1374H	Secondary Marimba I.....	6	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>132</b>	

### **Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ2322S</b>	<b>African Music II.....</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ2375H</b>	<b>African Music Theory II.....</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>6</b>
(c)	<b>MUZ2200H</b>	<b>African Instrument A2.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>6</b>
(d)	MUZ2380H	African Aural II.....	15	6
(e)	MUZ2323H	African Music Ensemble II.....	12	6
(f)	MUZ2366H	World Music Ensemble II.....	12	6
(g)	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5
(h)		A non-music first-year semester course.....	24	6
(i)		One of the following: <sup>1</sup> .....		
	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II.....	6	6
	MUZ2374H	Secondary Marimba II.....	6	6

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 83

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
<b>Second year total .....</b>		<b>144</b>	
<b>Third year</b>			
Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a) MUZ3324F	<b>Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3 .....</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>7</b>
(b) MUZ3375H	<b>African Music Theory III .....</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>7</b>
(c) MUZ3200H	<b>African Instrument A3.....</b>	<b>48</b>	<b>7</b>
(d) MUZ3323H	African Music Ensemble III .....	18	7
(e) MUZ3366H	World Music Ensemble III .....	12	7
(f) MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II .....	21	6
<b>Third year total .....</b>		<b>156</b>	
<b>Fourth year</b>			
Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a) MUZ4324S	<b>Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 4.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>8</b>
(b) MUZ4200W	<b>African Instrument A4.....</b>	<b>60</b>	<b>8</b>
(c) MUZ4323H	African Music Ensemble IV .....	18	8
(d) MUZ4366H	World Music Ensemble IV .....	18	8
(e) MUZ3707H	<b>Advanced Transcription Methods (African Music)....</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>7</b>
<b>Fourth Year Total .....</b>		<b>156</b>	
<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>		<b>630</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Only students with basic keyboard skills who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rule FS8 may register for Secondary Piano I.

### **Stream 3: Classical Performance** **[MUZ42]**

#### **Programme Convener:**

Associate Professor F du Toit

This stream is designed for those who wish to specialise in instrumental or vocal studies, including accompaniment and chamber music. It leads progressively through individual lessons to the preparation and execution of the final recital programme, which must be approved by the programme convener. Entry to the performance stream is at the beginning of the second year. Auditions are held at the end of the first year for acceptance into the second year of the performance studies programme.

Students who wish to audition for entrance to this stream at the end of their first year of study, must complete the first year of the **BACHELOR OF MUSIC [HB010] General (MUZ33)** curriculum:

<b>Second year</b>			
Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a) MUZ2340H	<b>History of Western Music II.....</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
(b)	<b>One of the following: .....</b>		
MUZ1351H	<b>Music Theory and Analysis I.....</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
MUZ2351H	<b>Music Theory and Analysis II .....</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>6</b>
(c)	<b>One of the following: .....</b>		
MUZ2308H	<b>Accordion A2.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>6</b>
MUZ2206H	<b>Bassoon A2.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>6</b>
MUZ2210H	<b>Cello A2.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>6</b>
MUZ2214H	<b>Clarinet A2.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>6</b>
MUZ2385H	<b>Classical Saxophone A2 .....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>6</b>
MUZ2218H	<b>Conducting A2.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>6</b>

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 84**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ2222H	Double Bass A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2228H	Euphonium A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2232H	Flute A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2236H	Guitar A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2240H	Harp A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2244H	Harpichord A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2248H	Horn A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2256H	Oboe A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2260H	Organ A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2264H	Percussion A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2268H	Piano A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2273H	Recorder A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2282H	Singing A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2286H	Trombone A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2290H	Trumpet A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2402H	Tuba A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2297H	Viola A2 .....	36	6
	MUZ2301H	Violin A2 .....	36	6
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5
	MUZ2324H	Aural II .....	15	6
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2320H	Accompanying II <sup>2</sup> .....	12	6
	MUZ2333H	Ensemble II <sup>1</sup> .....	12	6
(f)	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II <sup>3</sup> .....	6	6
(g)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2356H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies I <b>OR</b> .....	18	6
	MUZ2346H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies II <sup>4</sup> .....	18	6
	MUZ2365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire I <sup>5</sup> .....	9	6
(h)	SLL1096H	Italian for Musicians B <b>AND</b> .....	12	5
	SLL1095H	German for Musicians B <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(i)	MUZ2328H	Chamber Music I .....	21	6
		<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>165-168</b>	

**Third year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ3340H	Music in History and Society III .....	24	7
(b)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2351H	Music Theory and Analysis II .....	24	6
	MUZ3351H	Music Theory and Analysis III .....	27	7
(c)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ3308H	Accordion A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3206H	Bassoon A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3210H	Cello A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3214H	Clarinet A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3385H	Classical Saxophone A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3218H	Conducting A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3222H	Double Bass A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3228H	Euphonium A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3232H	Flute A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3236H	Guitar A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3240H	Harp A3 .....	48	7
	MUZ3244H	Harpichord A3 .....	48	7

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 85**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ3248H	Horn A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3256H	Oboe A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3260H	Organ A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3264H	Percussion A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3268H	Piano A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3273H	Recorder A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3282H	Singing A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3286H	Trombone A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3290H	Trumpet A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3402H	Tuba A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3297H	Viola A3.....	48	7
	MUZ3301H	Violin A3.....	48	7
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1335H	Figured Bass and Score Reading <sup>6</sup> .....	9	5
	MUZ3320H	Accompanying III <sup>2</sup> .....	12	7
	MUZ3333H	Ensemble IIII.....	12	7
	SLL1091H	French for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2356H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies I <b>OR</b> .....	18	6
	MUZ2346H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies II <sup>4</sup> .....	18	6
	MUZ3365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire II <sup>5</sup> .....	9	7
(f)	MUZ3328H	Chamber Music II.....	24	7
(g)	MUZ3360H	Teaching Method <sup>4</sup> .....	24	7
(h)	MUZ2324H	Aural II <sup>7</sup> .....	15	6
		<b>Third year total</b> .....	<b>177-183</b>	

**Fourth year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ4309W	Accordion A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4206W	Bassoon A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4210W	Cello A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4214W	Clarinet A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4385W	Classical Saxophone A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4218W	Conducting A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4222W	Double Bass A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4228W	Euphonium A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4232W	Flute A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4236W	Guitar A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4240W	Harp A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4244W	Harpsichord A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4248W	Horn A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4256W	Oboe A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4260W	Organ A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4264W	Percussion A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4268W	Piano A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4273W	Recorder A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4282W	Singing A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4286W	Trombone A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4290W	Trumpet A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4402H	Tuba A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4297W	Viola A4.....	60	8
	MUZ4301W	Violin A4.....	60	8

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 86

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(b)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ4333H	Ensemble IV <sup>1</sup> .....	12	8
	SLL1094H	French for Musicians B <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(c)	<b>MUZ4328H</b>	<b>Chamber Music III.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>8</b>
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	<b>MUZ4340H</b>	<b>Music in History and Society IV.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>8</b>
	<b>MUZ4351H</b>	<b>Music Theory and Analysis IV.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ3351H	Music Theory and Analysis III <sup>8</sup> .....	27	7
		<b>Fourth year total.....</b>	<b>171-195</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>	<b>513-546</b>	

<sup>1</sup> For all orchestral instruments

<sup>2</sup> For all keyboard instruments

<sup>3</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in the Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H)

<sup>4</sup> For instrumentalists only. The Repertoire courses are offered in alternation. Students register for one course in their second year and the other one in their third year.

<sup>5</sup> Not for instrumentalists; compulsory for singers

<sup>6</sup> For organ and harpsichord majors only

<sup>7</sup> For students who did not complete Aural II in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of study

<sup>8</sup> For students who did not complete Music Theory and Analysis III in their 3<sup>rd</sup> year of study. These students may not register for Music Theory and Analysis IV

### Stream 4: Jazz Studies

#### [MUZ07]

#### Programme Convener:

Associate Professor A Tiffin

This stream is designed for those who wish to specialise in Jazz Studies. The degree offers a range of options for specialisation within the discipline of Jazz, and will provide a broad musical training through a comprehensive programme of study. Before being accepted into the programme applicants must pass an audition in order to satisfy the Director that they will be able to successfully engage the course material.

#### First year:

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1339H</b>	<b>Jazz in Context I.....</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)		One of the following: .....		
	<b>MUZ1385W</b>	<b>Introduction to Jazz Theory and Aural.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1363H</b>	<b>Theory of Jazz I.....</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)		One of the following: .....		
	<b>MUZ1204H</b>	<b>Bass Guitar B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1226H</b>	<b>Drum Set B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1391H</b>	<b>Jazz Clarinet B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1389H</b>	<b>Jazz Bass B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1393H</b>	<b>Jazz Flute B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1252H</b>	<b>Jazz Guitar B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1254H</b>	<b>Jazz Piano B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1306H</b>	<b>Jazz Singing B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1395H</b>	<b>Jazz Trombone B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ1397H</b>	<b>Jazz Trumpet B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 87**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	<b>MUZ1278H</b>	<b>Saxophone B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1379H	Jazz Ear Training I <sup>5</sup> .....	15	5
(e)	MUZ1342H	Jazz Ensemble I.....	12	5
(f)	<b>MUZ1343H</b>	<b>Jazz Improvisation I</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(g)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory & Analysis I .....	21	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA.....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second -semester course.....	18	5
(h)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>1</sup> .....	6	5
	MUZ1255H	Jazz Piano D1 <sup>1</sup> .....	6	5
(i)	MUZ1405H	Jazz Vocal Techniques <sup>2</sup> .....	6	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>120-147</b>	

**Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ2339H</b>	<b>Jazz in Context II</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
(b)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	<b>MUZ1363H</b>	<b>Theory of Jazz I</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ2363H</b>	<b>Theory of Jazz II</b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>6</b>
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	<b>MUZ2204H</b>	<b>Bass Guitar B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2226H</b>	<b>Drum Set B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2391H</b>	<b>Jazz Clarinet B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2389H</b>	<b>Jazz Bass B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2392H</b>	<b>Jazz Flute B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2252H</b>	<b>Jazz Guitar B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2254H</b>	<b>Jazz Piano B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2306H</b>	<b>Jazz Singing B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2395H</b>	<b>Jazz Trombone B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2397H</b>	<b>Jazz Trumpet B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
	<b>MUZ2278H</b>	<b>Saxophone B2</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1379H	Jazz Ear Training I .....	15	5
	MUZ2379H	Jazz Ear Training II.....	18	6
(e)	MUZ2342H	Jazz Ensemble II .....	12	6
(f)	<b>MUZ2343H</b>	<b>Jazz Improvisation II</b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>6</b>
(g)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1255H	Jazz Piano D1 <sup>1</sup> .....	6	5
	MUZ2255H	Jazz Piano D2 <sup>3</sup> .....	6	6
(h)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA.....	18	5
	MUZ2372H	Music Technology IIA .....	24	6
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory & Analysis I .....	21	5
	MUZ2351H	Music Theory & Analysis II.....	24	6
	MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II .....	21	6
	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ2322S	African Music II.....	21	6
	MUZ2349H	Music Education I .....	21	6
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>159</b>	



**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 88**

**Third year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ3204H	<b>Bass Guitar B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3226H	<b>Drum Set B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3391H	<b>Jazz Clarinet B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3389H	<b>Jazz Bass B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3393H	<b>Jazz Flute B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3252H	<b>Jazz Guitar B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3254H	<b>Jazz Piano B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3306H	<b>Jazz Singing B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3395H	<b>Jazz Trombone B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3397H	<b>Jazz Trumpet B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
	MUZ3278H	<b>Saxophone B3</b> .....	<b>36</b>	<b>7</b>
(b)	MUZ3342H	Jazz Ensemble III .....	12	7
(c)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ3343H	Jazz Improvisation III .....	36	7
	MUZ3355H	Orchestration I .....	18	7
	MUZ3324F	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3 .....	24	7
	MUZ3349H	Music Education II .....	24	7
(d)	<b>MUZ3379H</b>	<b>Jazz Styles &amp; Analysis</b> .....	<b>24</b>	<b>7</b>
(e)		Two of the following: .....		
	MUZ2372H	Music Technology IIA .....	24	6
	MUZ3371H	Music Technology IIIA .....	24	7
	MUZ3384H	Jazz Arranging A .....	36	7
	MUZ2351H	Music Theory & Analysis II .....	24	6
	MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II .....	21	6
	MUZ2322S	African Music II .....	21	6
	MUZ3324F	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3 .....	24	7
	MUZ3707H	Advanced Transcription Methods (African Music) .....	24	7
	MUZ3349H	Music Education II .....	24	7
	MUZ3339H	Jazz in Context III .....	24	7
(f)	MUZ2379H	Jazz Ear Training II <sup>3</sup> .....	18	6
(g)	MUZ2363H	Theory of Jazz II <sup>4</sup> .....	24	6
		<b>Third year total</b> .....	<b>180-216</b>	

**Fourth year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ4204W	<b>Bass Guitar B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4226W	<b>Drum Set B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4391W	<b>Jazz Clarinet B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4389W	<b>Jazz Bass B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4394W	<b>Jazz Flute B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4252W	<b>Jazz Guitar B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4254W	<b>Jazz Piano B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4306W	<b>Jazz Singing B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4395W	<b>Jazz Trombone B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4397W	<b>Jazz Trumpet B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4278W	<b>Saxophone B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
(b)	MUZ4342H	Jazz Ensemble IV .....	12	8
(c)		Two of the following: .....		
	MUZ4384H	Jazz Arranging B .....	48	8
	MUZ4382W	Jazz Improvisation IV .....	48	8

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 89

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ4355H	Orchestration II .....	24	8
	MUZ3324F	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3 .....	24	7
	MUZ4324S	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 4 .....	36	8
	MUZ3707H	Advanced Transcription Methods (African Music) .....	24	7
	MUZ3371H	Music Technology IIIA .....	24	7
	MUZ3339H	Jazz in Context III .....	24	7
(d)	MUZ3381H	Jazz Masterclass .....	24	7
(e)	MUZ3380H	Jazz Pedagogy .....	12	7
		<b>Fourth Year Total .....</b>	<b>144-192</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree .....</b>	<b>618-720</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Non-pianists only: D-level studies subject to an audition, students who have not met the admission requirements for Jazz Piano D1 must complete Secondary Piano I before enrolling in Jazz Piano D1.

<sup>2</sup> For singers only.

<sup>3</sup> For candidates who did not complete Jazz Ear Training II in the second year of study.

<sup>4</sup> For candidates who did not complete Theory of Jazz II in the second year of study.

<sup>5</sup> For students in the first year, who have been placed into Theory of Jazz I and Jazz Ear Training I, after completing the Jazz Theory & Aural placement test.

### **Stream 5: Opera** **[MUZ23]**

#### **Programme Convener:**

Professor J Silver

This stream is designed for those who wish to pursue a career in operatic performance. Entry into the second year of the Opera stream is at the discretion of the Director of the Opera School. Candidates who do not gain entrance to the Opera stream may continue their studies in one of the other BMus streams.

Students who wish to qualify for entrance to the second year of this stream must complete the first year of the **BACHELOR OF MUSIC [HB010] General (MUZ33)** curriculum:

#### **Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ2340H</b>	<b>History of Western Music II.....</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
(b)		<b>One of the following: .....</b>		
	<b>MUZ1351H</b>	<b>Music Theory and Analysis I.....</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
	<b>MUZ2351H</b>	<b>Music Theory and Analysis II .....</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>6</b>
(c)	<b>MUZ2305H</b>	<b>Vocal Studies II .....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>6</b>
(d)		<b>One of the following: .....</b>		
	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
	MUZ2324H	Aural II.....	15	6
(e)	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II <sup>1</sup> .....	6	6
(f)	MUZ2365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire I.....	9	6
(g)	SLL1096H	Italian for Musicians B .....	12	5
(h)	SLL1095H	German for Musicians B .....	12	5
(i)	<b>MUZ1377H</b>	<b>Lyric Diction I .....</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(j)	<b>MUZ2404H</b>	<b>Opera Training II.....</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>6</b>
		<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>165-168</b>	

#### **Third year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ3340H</b>	<b>Music in History and Society III .....</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>7</b>

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 90

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(b)	MUZ3305H	Vocal Studies III .....	36	7
(c)	MUZ3365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire II .....	9	7
(d)	MUZ2377H	Lyric Diction II.....	21	6
(e)	SLL1091H	French for Musicians A.....	12	5
(f)	MUZ3404H	Opera Training III.....	48	7
(g)	MUZ2324H	Aural II <sup>2</sup> .....	15	6
(h)	MUZ2351H	Music Theory and Analysis II <sup>3</sup> .....	24	6
		<b>Third year total .....</b>	<b>189</b>	

### Fourth year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ3377H	Lyric Diction III.....	24	7
(b)	MUZ4305W	Vocal Studies IV .....	48	8
(c)	SLL1094H	French for Musicians B .....	12	5
(d)	MUZ4404H	Opera Training IV.....	60	8
		<b>Fourth Year Total.....</b>	<b>144</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>	<b>498-501</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Only for students who do not satisfy the requirements as laid out in the Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H)

<sup>2</sup> For students who did not complete Aural II in the second year of study

<sup>3</sup> For students who did not complete Music Theory and Analysis II in the second year of study.

## Stream 6: Classical Composition

[MUZ45]

### Programme Convener:

Associate Professor M Watt

This stream is intended to develop the skills of students who wish to specialise in composition. Entry to the Composition stream at the beginning of the second year is at the discretion of the Head of Music Theory and Composition.

Students who qualify for entrance to this stream at the end of their first year of studies, must complete the first year of the **BACHELOR OF MUSIC [HB010] General (MUZ33)** curriculum.

### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ2340H	History of Western Music II.....	21	6
(b)	MUZ2351H	Music Theory and Analysis II .....	24	6
(c)		<b>One of the following: .....</b>		
	MUZ2308H	Accordion B2 .....	30	6
	MUZ2207H	Bassoon B2 .....	30	6
	MUZ2211H	Cello B2 .....	30	6
	MUZ2215H	Clarinet B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2386H	Classical Saxophone B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2219H	Conducting B2 .....	30	6
	MUZ2223H	Double Bass B2 .....	30	6
	MUZ2229H	Euphonium B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2233H	Flute B2 .....	30	6
	MUZ2237H	Guitar B2 .....	30	6
	MUZ2241H	Harp B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2245H	Harpsichord B2 .....	30	6
	MUZ2249H	Horn B2.....	30	6

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 91**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ2257H	Oboe B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2261H	Organ B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2265H	Percussion B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2269H	Piano B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2274H	Recorder B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2283H	Singing B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2287H	Trombone B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2291H	Trumpet B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2294H	Tuba B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2298H	Viola B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2302H	Violin B2.....	30	6
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
	MUZ2324H	Aural II.....	15	6
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2320H	Accompanying II <sup>2</sup> .....	12	6
	MUZ2333H	Ensemble III.....	12	6
	SLL1096H	Italian for Musicians B <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
	SLL1095H	German for Musicians B <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(f)	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II <sup>3</sup> .....	6	6
(g)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2356H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire I <b>OR</b> .....	18	6
	MUZ2346H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire II <sup>4</sup> .....	18	6
	MUZ2365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire I <sup>5</sup> .....	9	6
(h)	<b>MUZ2330H</b>	<b>Composition I.....</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>6</b>
(i)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1322F	African Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA.....	18	5
	MUZ2322S	African Music II.....	21	6
	MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II.....	21	6
	MUZ2372H	Music Technology IIA.....	24	6
		<b>Second year total.....</b>	<b>153-159</b>	

**Third year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ3340H</b>	<b>Music in History and Society III.....</b>	<b>24</b>	<b>7</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ3351H</b>	<b>Music Theory and Analysis III.....</b>	<b>27</b>	<b>7</b>
(c)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ3308H	Accordion B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3207H	Bassoon B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3211H	Cello B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3215H	Clarinet B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3386H	Classical Saxophone B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3219H	Conducting B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3223H	Double Bass B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3229H	Euphonium B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3233H	Flute B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3237H	Guitar B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3241H	Harp B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3245H	Harpsichord B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3249H	Horn B3.....	36	7
	MUZ3257H	Oboe B3.....	36	7

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 92**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ3261H	Organ B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3265H	Percussion B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3269H	Piano B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3274H	Recorder B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3283H	Singing B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3287H	Trombone B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3291H	Trumpet B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3294H	Tuba B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3298H	Viola B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3302H	Violin B3 .....	36	7
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ3320H	Accompanying III <sup>2</sup> .....	12	7
	MUZ3333H	Ensemble III1 .....	12	7
	SLL1091H	French for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2356H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies I <b>OR</b> .....	18	6
	MUZ2346H	Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies II <sup>4</sup> .....	18	6
	MUZ3365H	Teaching Method & Repertoire II <sup>5</sup> .....	9	7
(f)	MUZ3330H	<b>Composition II</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>7</b>
(g)	MUZ3355H	<b>Orchestration I</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>7</b>
(h)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2322S	African Music II .....	21	6
	MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II .....	21	6
	MUZ2372H	Music Technology IIA .....	24	6
	MUZ3324F	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3 .....	24	7
	MUZ3707H	Advanced Transcription Methods (African Music) .....	24	7
	MUZ3371H	Music Technology IIIA .....	24	7
(i)	MUZ2324H	Aural II <sup>6</sup> .....	15	6
		<b>Third year total</b> .....	<b>180-183</b>	

**Fourth year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ4309W	<b>Accordion B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4207W	<b>Bassoon B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4211W	<b>Cello B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4215W	<b>Clarinet B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4386W	<b>Classical Saxophone B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4219W	<b>Conducting B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4223W	<b>Double Bass B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4229W	<b>Euphonium B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4233W	<b>Flute B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4237W	<b>Guitar B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4241W	<b>Harp B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4245W	<b>Harpsichord B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4249W	<b>Horn B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4257W	<b>Oboe B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4261W	<b>Organ B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4265W	<b>Percussion B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4269W	<b>Piano B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4274W	<b>Recorder B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4283W	<b>Singing B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	MUZ4287W	<b>Trombone B4</b> .....	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 93

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ4291W	Trumpet B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4294W	Tuba B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4298W	Viola B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4302W	Violin B4.....	48	8
(b)	MUZ4351H	Music Theory and Analysis IV.....	36	8
(c)	MUZ4330H	Composition III.....	24	8
(d)	MUZ4355H	Orchestration II.....	24	8
(e)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ3371H	Music Technology IIIA.....	24	7
	MUZ3324F	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3.....	24	7
	MUZ4324S	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 4.....	36	8
	MUZ3707H	Advanced Transcription Methods (African Music).....	24	7
	MUZ4340H	Music in History and Society IV.....	36	8
		<b>Fourth Year Total.....</b>	<b>156-168</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>	<b>489-510</b>	

<sup>1</sup> For all orchestral instruments

<sup>2</sup> For all keyboard instruments

<sup>3</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirements as laid out in Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H)

<sup>4</sup> For instrumentalists only. These courses are offered in alternation. Students register for one course in their second year and the other one in their third year.

<sup>5</sup> Not for instrumentalists; compulsory for singers

<sup>6</sup> For candidates who did not complete Aural II in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of study.

### Stream 7: Music Technology [MUZ41]

#### Programme Convener:

T Herbst

Students who wish to qualify for entrance to the second year of this stream must complete the first year of the **BACHELOR OF MUSIC [HB010] General (MUZ33)** OR Jazz Studies (MUZ07) curriculum and register for Music Technology IA.

#### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ2372H	Music Technology IIA.....	24	6
(b)	MUZ2373H	Music Technology IIB.....	24	6
(c)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I.....	21	5
	MUZ2351H	Music Theory and Analysis II.....	24	6
	MUZ2375H	African Music Theory II <sup>6</sup> .....	24	6
	MUZ1363H	Theory of Jazz I <sup>8</sup> .....	21	5
	MUZ2363H	Theory of Jazz II <sup>8</sup> .....	24	6
(d)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ2308H	Accordion B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2201H	African Instrument B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2207H	Bassoon B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2211H	Cello B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2215H	Clarinet B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2386H	Classical Saxophone B2.....	30	6
	MUZ2223H	Double Bass B2.....	30	6

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 94**

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
MUZ2229H	Euphonium B2	30	6
MUZ2233H	Flute B2	30	6
MUZ2237H	Guitar B2	30	6
MUZ2241H	Harp B2	30	6
MUZ2245H	Harpsichord B2	30	6
MUZ2249H	Horn B2	30	6
MUZ2257H	Oboe B2	30	6
MUZ2261H	Organ B2	30	6
MUZ2265H	Percussion B2	30	6
MUZ2269H	Piano B2	30	6
MUZ2274H	Recorder B2	30	6
MUZ2283H	Singing B2	30	6
MUZ2287H	Trombone B2	30	6
MUZ2291H	Trumpet B2	30	6
MUZ2294H	Tuba B2	30	6
MUZ2298H	Viola B2	30	6
MUZ2302H	Violin B2	30	6
MUZ2204H	Bass Guitar B2	30	6
MUZ2226H	Drum Set B2	30	6
MUZ2391H	Jazz Clarinet B2	30	6
MUZ2389H	Jazz Bass	30	6
MUZ2393H	Jazz Flute B2	30	6
MUZ2252H	Jazz Guitar B2	30	6
MUZ2254H	Jazz Piano B2	30	6
MUZ2306H	Jazz Singing B2	30	6
MUZ2395H	Jazz Trombone B2	30	6
MUZ2278H	Saxophone B2	30	6
(e)	One of the following:		
MUZ1324H	Aural I	15	5
MUZ2324H	Aural II	15	6
MUZ1380H	African Aural I <sup>6</sup>	15	5
MUZ2380H	African Aural II <sup>6</sup>	15	6
MUZ1379H	Jazz Ear Training I <sup>8</sup>	15	5
MUZ2379H	Jazz Ear Training II <sup>8</sup>	18	6
(f)	One of the following:		
MUZ2320H	Accompanying II <sup>2</sup>	12	6
MUZ2323H	African Music Ensemble II <sup>6</sup>	12	6
MUZ2333H	Ensemble II <sup>1</sup>	12	6
MUZ2342H	Jazz Ensemble II <sup>8</sup>	12	6
SLL1096H	Italian for Musicians B <sup>4</sup>	12	5
SLL1095H	German for Musicians B <sup>4</sup>	12	5
(g)	One of the following:		
MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II <sup>3</sup>	6	6
MUZ2374H	Secondary Marimba II	6	6
MUZ1255H	Jazz Piano D1	6	5
MUZ2255H	Jazz Piano D2 <sup>9</sup>	6	6
(h)	One of the following:		
MUZ2322S	African Music II	21	6
MUZ2340H	History of Western Music II	21	6
MUZ2351H	Music Theory and Analysis II	24	6
MUZ2367S	Worlds of Music II	21	6
MUZ2343H	Jazz Improvisation II	24	6
(i)	MUZ2405H Jazz Vocal Techniques II <sup>9</sup> ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )	12	6

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 95**

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>165-174</b>	
<b>Third year</b>			
Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ3371H Music Technology IIIA .....	24	7
(b)	MUZ3372H Music Technology IIIB .....	24	7
(c)	One of the following: .....		
	MUZ2351H Music Theory and Analysis II .....	24	6
	MUZ3375H African Music Theory III <sup>6</sup> .....	27	7
	MUZ3351H Music Theory and Analysis III.....	27	7
	MUZ2363H Theory of Jazz II .....	24	6
	MUZ3379H Jazz Styles and Analysis <sup>8</sup> .....	24	7
(d)	One of the following: .....		
	MUZ3308H Accordion B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3201H African Instrument B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3207H Bassoon B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3211H Cello B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3215H Clarinet B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3386H Classical Saxophone B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3223H Double Bass B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3229H Euphonium B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3233H Flute B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3237H Guitar B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3241H Harp B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3245H Harpsichord B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3249H Horn B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3257H Oboe B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3261H Organ B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3265H Percussion B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3269H Piano B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3274H Recorder B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3283H Singing B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3287H Trombone B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3291H Trumpet B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3294H Tuba B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3298H Viola B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3302H Violin B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3204H Bass Guitar B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3226H Drum Set B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3391H Jazz Clarinet B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3389H Jazz Bass .....	36	7
	MUZ3392H Jazz Flute B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3352H Jazz Guitar B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3254H Jazz Piano B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3306H Jazz Singing B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3395H Jazz Trombone B3 .....	36	7
	MUZ3278H Saxophone B3 .....	36	7
(e)	One of the following: .....		
	MUZ3320H Accompanying III <sup>2</sup> .....	12	7
	MUZ3323H African Music Ensemble III <sup>6</sup> .....	18	7
	MUZ3333H Ensemble III <sup>1</sup> .....	12	7
	MUZ3342H Jazz Ensemble III <sup>8</sup> .....	12	7
	SLL1091H French for Musicians A <sup>4</sup> .....	12	5



**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 96**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(f)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ3340H	Music in History and Society III .....	24	7
	MUZ3351H	Music Theory and Analysis III .....	27	7
	MUZ3324F	Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3 .....	24	7
	MUZ3384H	Jazz Arranging A.....	36	7
	MUZ3343H	Jazz Improvisation III.....	36	7
	MUZ3339H	Jazz in Context III .....	24	7
(g)		One of the following: <sup>5</sup> .....		
	MUZ2324H	Aural II.....	15	6
	MUZ2380H	African Aural II.....	15	6
	MUZ2379H	Jazz Ear Training II.....	18	6
		<b>Third year total .....</b>	<b>165-189</b>	

**Fourth year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ4371H</b>	<b>Music Technology IV.....</b>	<b>72</b>	<b>8</b>
(b)		<b>One of the following: .....</b>		
	<b>MUZ4340H</b>	<b>Music in History and Society IV.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>8</b>
	<b>MUZ4324S</b>	<b>Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 4.....</b>	<b>36</b>	<b>8</b>
	<b>MUZ4384H</b>	<b>Jazz Arranging B.....</b>	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
	<b>MUZ4382W</b>	<b>Jazz Improvisation IV.....</b>	<b>48</b>	<b>8</b>
(c)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ4309W	Accordion B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4201W	African Instrument B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4207W	Bassoon B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4211W	Cello B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4215W	Clarinet B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4386W	Classical Saxophone B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4223W	Double Bass B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4229W	Euphonium B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4233W	Flute B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4237W	Guitar B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4241W	Harp B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4245W	Harpsichord B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4249W	Horn B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4257W	Oboe B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4261W	Organ B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4265W	Percussion B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4269W	Piano B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4274W	Recorder B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4283W	Singing B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4287W	Trombone B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4291W	Trumpet B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4294W	Tuba B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4298W	Viola B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4302W	Violin B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4204W	Bass Guitar B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4226W	Drum Set B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4391W	Jazz Clarinet B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4389W	Jazz Bass .....	48	8
	MUZ4392W	Jazz Flute B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4352W	Jazz Guitar B4 .....	48	8
	MUZ4254W	Jazz Piano B4 .....	48	8

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 97

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ4306W	Jazz Singing B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4395W	Jazz Trombone B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4278W	Saxophone B4.....	48	8
	MUZ4372W	Musicology.....	60	8
	MUZ4351H	Music Theory and Analysis IV.....	36	8
	MUZ3707H	Advanced Transcription Methods (African Music).....	24	7
(d)		One of the following: <sup>7</sup> .....		
	MUZ3351H	Music Theory and Analysis III.....	27	7
	MUZ3379H	Jazz Styles and Analysis.....	24	7
		<b>Fourth Year Total</b> .....	<b>156-231</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for degree</b> .....	<b>486-594</b>	

<sup>1</sup> For all orchestral instruments.

<sup>2</sup> For all keyboard instruments.

<sup>3</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirements as laid out in Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H).

<sup>4</sup> Not for instrumentalists; compulsory for classical singers.

<sup>5</sup> For students who did not complete Aural II, Jazz Ear Training II or African Aural II in the 2<sup>nd</sup> year of study.

<sup>6</sup> For students registered for African Instrument.

<sup>7</sup> For students who did not complete Music Theory and Analysis III or Jazz Styles and Analysis in their 3<sup>rd</sup> year of study.

<sup>8</sup> For students registered for Jazz instruments.

<sup>9</sup> For Jazz singers only.

### **BACHELOR OF MUSIC EXTENDED PROGRAMME OF STUDY [HB034]**

**Programme Convener:**

Director: SACM

*No new intake for 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.*

This programme of study leads to the award of the Bachelor of Music and is linked to the Classical Music, Jazz Studies, African Music and Opera streams of the qualification. It has been designed primarily for students selected on the basis of admission criteria who show potential to succeed in an extended degree programme with additional academic support. The programme is designed so that the BMus degree takes five years, with the first two years an intensive structured programme. Candidates must complete the prescribed courses for the first two years and may not register for any other MUZ courses. Candidates who qualify for Bachelors Endorsement for Matriculation Exemption and who demonstrate proficiency in an instrument will be considered for admission to this programme.

*Core courses are indicated in bold and students are required to pass these courses in order to meet the minimum requirements for re-admission.*

### **Curriculum leading to the Bachelor of Music (BMus): extended programme of study**

**Streams:**

**African Music Performance [MUZ44]**

**General [MUZ33]**

**Jazz Studies [MUZ07]**

**Music Technology [MUZ41]**

**Opera [MUZ23]**

Classical Composition [MUZ45]

Classical Performance [MUZ42]

### Stream 1: General

#### [MUZ33]

No new intake for 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.

##### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1350H	Music Theory I .....	22	5
(b)	MUZ1338S	Music in Society .....	18	5
(c)		One of the following: <sup>1</sup> .....		
	MUZ1399H	African Music Practical Study (Not offered in 2025) ...	18	5
	MUZ1401H	Western Classical Music Practical Study (Not offered in 2025) .....	18	5
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory.....	15	5
(e)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>3</sup> .....	28	5
(f)		One of the following: .....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA.....	18	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>113-119</b>	

##### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1322F	African Music I <sup>7</sup> .....	18	5
	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I.....	18	5
(b)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I.....	21	5
	MUZ1375H	African Music Theory I <sup>7</sup> .....	21	5
(c)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1309H	Accordion B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1201H	African Instrument B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1207H	Bassoon B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1211H	Cello B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1215H	Clarinet B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1386H	Classical Saxophone B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1219H	Conducting B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1223H	Double Bass B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1229H	Euphonium B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1233H	Flute B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1237H	Guitar B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1241H	Harp B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1245H	Harpsichord B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1249H	Horn B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1257H	Oboe B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1261H	Organ B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1265H	Percussion B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1269H	Piano B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1274H	Recorder B1 .....	30	5

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 99

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ1283H	<b>Singing B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1287H	<b>Trombone B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1291H	<b>Trumpet B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1294H	<b>Tuba B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1298H	<b>Viola B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1302H	<b>Violin B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1380H	African Aural I <sup>7</sup> .....	15	5
	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1320H	Accompanying I <sup>6</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble <sup>7</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1333H	Ensemble I <sup>8</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1404H	Opera Training I <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(f)		One of the following <sup>2</sup> : .....		
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I .....	6	5
	MUZ1374H	Secondary Marimba I .....	6	5
(g)		One of the following: .....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
	SLL1092H	German for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA .....	18	5
	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I .....	21	5
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>114-123</b>	

<sup>1</sup> May include ensemble work

<sup>2</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUS2281H)

<sup>3</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

<sup>4</sup> For instrumentalists only

<sup>5</sup> Compulsory for singers, not for instrumentalists

<sup>6</sup> For all keyboard instruments

<sup>7</sup> For students registered for African Instrument

<sup>8</sup> For all orchestral instruments

**After completing these components, follow the BMus General curriculum that is labelled Second year – Fourth year**

### **Stream 2: African Music Performance**

#### **[MUZ44]**

*No new intake for 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.*

#### **First year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1350H	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	MUZ1338S	<b>Music in Society</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	MUZ1399H	<b>African Music Practical Study</b> ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> ) ...	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory .....	15	5
(e)		One of the following: <sup>1</sup> .....		

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 100

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I.....	6	5
	MUZ1374H	Secondary Marimba I.....	6	5
(f)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>2</sup> .....	28	5
(g)		One of the following: <sup>3</sup> .....		
	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
	MUZ1366H	World Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>119</b>	

### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1322F</b>	<b>African Music I.....</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ1375H</b>	<b>African Music Theory I.....</b>	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	<b>MUZ1201H</b>	<b>African Instrument B1.....</b>	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
(e)	MUZ1380H	African Aural I.....	15	5
(f)		One of the following: <sup>3</sup> .....		
	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
	MUZ1366H	World Music Ensemble I.....	12	5
(g)		A non-music first-year first-semester course.....	18	5
(h)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano II.....	6	6
	MUZ2374H	Secondary Marimba II.....	6	6
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>135</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Only students with basic keyboard skills who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in the Faculty Rule FS8, may register for Secondary Piano I.

<sup>2</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

<sup>3</sup> Both of these courses are required for the BMus African Music Performance degree, but in the extended version of the degree, the student completes one in the first year, and completes the other in the second year.

**After completing these components, follow the BMus African Music Performance curriculum that is labelled Second year – Fourth year**

### Stream 3: Classical Performance

#### [MUZ42]

*No new intake for 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.*

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1350H</b>	<b>Music Theory I.....</b>	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ1338S</b>	<b>Music in Society.....</b>	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	<b>MUZ1401H</b>	<b>Western Classical Music Practical Study<sup>1</sup></b>		
		<i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory.....	15	5
(e)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>3</sup> .....	28	5
(f)		One of the following:.....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 101**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA.....	18	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>113-119</b>	
<b>Second year</b>				
	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I .....	18	5
(b)	MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I.....	21	5
(c)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1309H	Accordion B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1207H	Bassoon B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1211H	Cello B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1215H	Clarinet B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1386H	Classical Saxophone B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1219H	Conducting B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1223H	Double Bass B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1229H	Euphonium B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1233H	Flute B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1237H	Guitar B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1241H	Harp B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1245H	Harpichord B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1249H	Horn B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1257H	Oboe B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1261H	Organ B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1265H	Percussion B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1269H	Piano B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1274H	Recorder B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1283H	Singing B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1287H	Trombone B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1291H	Trumpet B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1294H	Tuba B1.....	30	5
	MUZ1298H	Viola B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1302H	Violin B1 .....	30	5
(d)	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1320H	Accompanying I <sup>6</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1333H	Ensemble I <sup>7</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1404H	Opera Training I <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(f)	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>2</sup> .....	6	5
(g)		One of the following: .....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
	SLL1092H	German for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA.....	18	5
	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I .....	21	5
		<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>114-123</b>	

<sup>1</sup> May include ensemble work

<sup>2</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rules FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H)

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 102

<sup>3</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

<sup>4</sup> For instrumentalists only

<sup>5</sup> Compulsory for singers, not for instrumentalists

<sup>6</sup> For all keyboard instruments

<sup>7</sup> For all orchestral instruments

After completing these components, follow the BMus Classical Performance curriculum that is labelled Second year – Fourth year

### Stream 4: Jazz Studies

#### [MUZ07]

No new intake for 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.

#### First year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1385H	Introduction to Jazz Theory and Aural .....	18	5
(b)	MUZ1338S	Music in Society .....	18	5
(c)	MUZ1400H	Jazz Practical Study (Not offered in 2025) .....	18	5
(d)	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>1</sup> .....	6	5
(e)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>2</sup> .....	28	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>106</b>	

#### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1204H	Bass Guitar B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1226H	Drum Set B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1391H	Jazz Clarinet B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1389H	Jazz Bass B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1393H	Jazz Flute B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1252H	Jazz Guitar B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1254H	Jazz Piano B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1306H	Jazz Singing B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1395H	Jazz Trombone B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1397H	Jazz Trumpet B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1278H	Saxophone B1 .....	30	5
(b)	MUZ1339H	Jazz in Context I .....	18	5
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1363H	Theory of Jazz I .....	21	5
(d)	MUZ1342H	Jazz Ensemble I .....	12	5
(e)	MUZ1343H	Jazz Improvisation I .....	18	5
(f)	MUZ1379H	Jazz Ear Training I .....	15	5
(g)	MUZ1255H	Jazz Piano D1 <sup>1</sup> .....	6	5
(h)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1350H	Music Theory and Analysis I .....	22	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA .....	18	5
(i)	MUZ1405H	Jazz Vocal Techniques <sup>3</sup> .....	6	5
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>138-148</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Non-pianists only.

<sup>2</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F.

<sup>3</sup> For singers only.

**After completing these components, follow the BMus Jazz Studies curriculum that is labelled Second year – Fourth year**

### **Stream 5: Opera**

#### **[MUZ23]**

*No new intake for 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.*

**First year:**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1350H</b>	<b>Music Theory I</b> .....	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ1338S</b>	<b>Music in Society</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	<b>MUZ1401H</b>	<b>Western Classical Music Practical Study</b> <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory .....	15	5
(e)	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>2</sup> .....	6	6
(f)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>1</sup> .....	28	5
(g)		One of the following: .....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA .....	18	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>125</b>	

**Second year:**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	<b>MUZ1340H</b>	<b>History of Western Music I</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	<b>MUZ1351H</b>	<b>Music Theory and Analysis I</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	<b>MUZ1305H</b>	<b>Vocal Studies I</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5
(e)	MUZ2281H	Secondary Piano 2 <sup>2</sup> .....	6	6
(f)	SLL1092H	German for Musicians A .....	12	5
(g)	<b>MUZ1404H</b>	<b>Opera Training I</b> .....	<b>12</b>	<b>5</b>
(h)	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A .....	12	5
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>126</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

<sup>2</sup> For students who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rule FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H).

**After completing these components, follow the BMus Opera curriculum that is labelled Second year – Fourth year**

### **Stream 6: Classical Composition**

#### **[MUZ45]**

*No new intake for 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.*

**First year**



**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 104**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1350H	<b>Music Theory I</b> ..... <sup>5</sup>	<b>22</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	MUZ1338S	<b>Music in Society</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)	MUZ1401H	<b>Western Classical Practical Study<sup>1</sup></b> <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory.....	15	5
(e)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>3</sup> .....	28	5
(f)		One of the following:.....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I.....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA.....	18	5
	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>113-119</b>	

**Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1340H	<b>History of Western Music I</b> .....	<b>18</b>	<b>5</b>
(b)	MUZ1351H	<b>Music Theory and Analysis I</b> .....	<b>21</b>	<b>5</b>
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1309H	<b>Accordion B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1207H	<b>Bassoon B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1211H	<b>Cello B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1215H	<b>Clarinet B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1386H	<b>Classical Saxophone B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1219H	<b>Conducting B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1223H	<b>Double Bass B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1229H	<b>Euphonium B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1233H	<b>Flute B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1237H	<b>Guitar B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1241H	<b>Harp B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1245H	<b>Harpsichord B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1249H	<b>Horn B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1257H	<b>Oboe B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1261H	<b>Organ B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1265H	<b>Percussion B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1269H	<b>Piano B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1274H	<b>Recorder B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1283H	<b>Singing B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1287H	<b>Trombone B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1291H	<b>Trumpet B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1294H	<b>Tuba B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1298H	<b>Viola B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
	MUZ1302H	<b>Violin B1</b> .....	<b>30</b>	<b>5</b>
(d)	MUZ1324H	Aural I.....	15	5
(e)		One of the following:.....		
	MUZ1320H	Accompanying I <sup>6</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1333H	Ensemble I <sup>7</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1404H	Opera Training I <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(f)	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I <sup>2</sup> .....	6	5
(g)		One of the following:.....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 105

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I .....	18	5
MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I .....	21	5
MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I .....	18	5
MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA .....	18	5
SLL1092H	German for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
<b>Second year total .....</b>		<b>114-123</b>	

<sup>1</sup> May include ensemble work

<sup>2</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rules FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H).

<sup>3</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

<sup>4</sup> For instrumentalists only

<sup>5</sup> Compulsory for singers, not for instrumentalists

<sup>6</sup> For all keyboard instruments

<sup>7</sup> For all orchestral instruments.

**After completing these components, follow the BMus Classical Composition curriculum that is labelled Second year – Fourth year**

### **Stream 7: Music Technology**

#### **[MUZ41]**

*No new intake for 2025; for continuing students only. NOTE: Students on financial aid will have a maximum of 5 years funded by NSFAS.*

#### **First year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	MUZ1350H	Music Theory I .....	22	5
(b)	MUZ1338S	Music in Society .....	18	5
(c)		One of the following: <sup>1</sup> .....		
	MUZ1399H	African Music Practical Study (Not offered in 2025) ...	18	5
	MUZ1401H	Western Classical Music Practical Study (Not offered in 2025) .....	18	5
	MUZ1400H	Jazz Practical Studies (Not offered in 2025) .....	18	5
(d)	MUZ1325H	Aural Introductory .....	15	5
(e)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts <sup>3</sup> .....	28	5
(f)		One of the following: .....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA .....	18	5
	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
		<b>First year total .....</b>	<b>113-119</b>	

#### **Second year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1322F	African Music I <sup>7</sup> .....	18	5
	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I .....	18	5
(b)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I .....	21	5
	MUZ1375H	African Music Theory I <sup>7</sup> .....	21	5

**RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 106**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(c)		<b>One of the following:</b> .....		
	MUZ1309H	Accordion B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1201H	African Instrument B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1207H	Bassoon B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1211H	Cello B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1215H	Clarinet B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1386H	Classical Saxophone B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1219H	Conducting B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1223H	Double Bass B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1229H	Euphonium B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1233H	Flute B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1237H	Guitar B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1241H	Harp B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1245H	Harpsichord B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1249H	Horn B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1257H	Oboe B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1261H	Organ B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1265H	Percussion B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1269H	Piano B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1274H	Recorder B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1283H	Singing B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1287H	Trombone B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1291H	Trumpet B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1294H	Tuba B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1298H	Viola B1 .....	30	5
	MUZ1302H	Violin B1 .....	30	5
(d)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1380H	African Aural I <sup>7</sup> .....	15	5
	MUZ1324H	Aural I .....	15	5
(e)		One of the following: .....		
	MUZ1320H	Accompanying I <sup>6</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1323H	African Music Ensemble <sup>7</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1333H	Ensemble I <sup>8</sup> .....	12	5
	MUZ1404H	Opera Training I <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
(f)		One of the following: <sup>2</sup> .....		
	MUZ1281H	Secondary Piano I .....	6	5
	MUZ1374H	Secondary Marimba I .....	6	5
(g)		One of the following: .....		
		Any non-music first-year first-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
		Any non-music first-year second-semester course <sup>4</sup> .....	18	5
	MUZ1322F	African Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1340H	History of Western Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1351H	Music Theory and Analysis I .....	21	5
	MUZ1367F	Worlds of Music I .....	18	5
	MUZ1381H	Music Technology IA .....	18	5
	SLL1093H	Italian for Musicians A <sup>5</sup> .....	12	5
		<b>Second year total .....</b>	<b>114-123</b>	

<sup>1</sup> May include ensemble work

<sup>2</sup> For non-keyboard majors only who do not satisfy the requirement as laid out in Faculty Rules FS8, i.e. that they have reached a standard in piano equivalent to a pass in Secondary Piano II (MUZ2281H). The Secondary Marimba option is only open to students registered for African Instrument.

<sup>3</sup> Students whose NBT score for English is below 60, who took English as a second language in Matric or have a mark below C for English as a first language are required to register for DOH1005F

<sup>4</sup> For instrumentalists only

<sup>5</sup> Compulsory for singers, not for instrumentalists

<sup>6</sup> For all keyboard instruments

<sup>7</sup> For students registered for African Instrument

<sup>8</sup> For all orchestral instruments.

**After completing these components, follow the BMus Music Technology curriculum that is labelled Second year – Fourth year**

## **THEATRE & PERFORMANCE QUALIFICATIONS**

### **DIPLOMA IN THEATRE & PERFORMANCE (DipT&P) [HU020]**

### **ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN THEATRE [HU050]**

### **BACHELOR OF ARTS IN THEATRE & PERFORMANCE (BA(T&P)) [HB014]**

### **DIPLOMA IN THEATRE & PERFORMANCE (DipT&P) [HU020]**

*The Diploma in Theatre and Performance admits very restricted numbers of students and is specifically intended for candidates who wish to take professional studies in Theatre and Performance and make careers in the theatre/dance and related industries.*

**Convener: Associate Professor J Job**

#### **Admission requirements**

FGT1 Candidates shall be admitted to the Diploma in Theatre & Performance, provided they

- (a) have Matriculated, or
- (b) have a National Senior Certificate endorsed for Diploma study, approved by the Senate on the recommendation of the Head of Section, and
- (c) have attended an audition arranged by the Centre for Theatre, Dance and Performance Studies and has demonstrated, in the audition, marked talent as a potential performer or performance maker.

FGT2 Candidates may apply for transfer into a stream of the four-year BA in Theatre & Performance at the end of their first year. Students on financial aid please note that a maximum of 4 years will be funded by NSFAS. Transferring students must complete the requirements for the programme in n+1 (where n is the 3-year duration of the diploma).

Transfer from the Diploma in Theatre & Performance to the BA (T&P) is conditional on the candidates having:

- (a) passed the first year in the Diploma in Theatre & Performance (regular programme) with an average of at least 65%; and
- (b) achieved a mark of at least 65% in the following courses: TDP1027F Introduction to Theatre & Performance A, TDP1046W T&P Studiowork 1, TDP1045S South African Performance Genealogies, TDP1017H Theatrical Production & Stagecraft A, and DOH1005F Writing in the Performing Arts.
- (d) conducted a successful interview and scored at least 65% for their interview assessment task.

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 108

*Note: Candidates who transfer in this manner and who do not have endorsement for Bachelor's degree studies on their school-leaving certificate will need to apply for Senate Discretionary Exemption.*

### Duration of curriculum

FGT3 The curriculum for the diploma shall extend over three years of full-time study.

### Curriculum

FGT4 The Diploma in Theatre & Performance is offered in the areas of:

- (a) Acting (*unilingually* in English, or *bilingually* in English and Afrikaans or Xhosa); (TDP01)
- (b) Dance Performance (TDP04)
- (c) Performance Making (TDP05)
- (d) Applied Performance/ Pedagogy (TDP06)
- (e) Scenography (TDP07)

All areas will not necessarily be offered to new students every year.

Upon application for admission, candidates must indicate which concentration they prefer. During the course of the second year of study, students will audition for their area of concentration. No student is guaranteed their first choice of concentration.

### Readmission

- FGT5
- (a) Candidates who fail T&P Studiowork in any year will not be permitted to renew their registration for the Diploma in Theatre & Performance without the permission of the Senate. Where such permission is given, candidates will be required to attend all the classes in T&P Studiowork for that year of study.
  - (b) Except by permission of the Senate, candidates who fail to complete any course prescribed for the Diploma in Theatre & Performance after two years of registration for that course shall not be permitted to re-register for the course.
  - (c) Candidates are required to complete the qualification in a maximum period of 4 years.
  - (d) Except with the permission of the Senate, full-time students shall be excluded from the Faculty either as full-time or part-time students, if they have not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:
    - (i) **First year:**  
at least four courses, including TDP1027F, TDP1046W and DOH1005F
    - (ii) **Second year:**  
at least eight courses, including TDP1045S, TDP1017H, TDP1018H, TDP2011S and their second-year Studiowork course
    - (iii) **Third year:**  
at least ten courses, including TDP2010F, TDP3044H, TDP3045H and their third-year Studiowork course.
    - (iv) **Fourth year:**  
met the requirements of the diploma.

### **Duly performed certificates (DP)**

- FGT6 Candidates may be refused a duly performed (DP) certificate in courses in T&P Studiowork, Professional Practice or Stagecraft, if they fail to meet any of the following requirements:
- (a) candidates shall attend all classes, tutorials, rehearsals and complete such other duties on stage, backstage or elsewhere, as determined by the Head of Section. Absence from classes or rehearsals, unless for medical reasons, is not permitted without the written permission of the Head of Section. Absence for medical reasons must be reported to the Administrative Assistant of the centre, and must be substantiated by a doctor's certificate for periods in excess of two days.
  - (b) candidates who, for any reason whatsoever, miss a noticeable proportion of their classes in any of the professional training courses may be deemed not to have completed sufficient coursework to justify the granting of a DP certificate.
  - (c) candidates in any year of study who have a DP removed for their T&P Studiowork, thereby making it impossible to advance to the next year of study or to graduate from the programme (see relevant curriculum constraints above), will be required to withdraw from the other Professional Training courses in that year. The decision to allow such candidates to repeat that year of training will be at the discretion of the Head of Section.
  - (d) candidates for the programme in Theatre & Performance shall perform any part in a production and/or any backstage work assigned to them. Candidates are not guaranteed, nor may they demand or refuse, a part assigned to them.
  - (e) The theatrical profession demands discipline. Candidates shall accept the discipline and procedures expected in the professional theatre.

### **Distinction**

- FGT7 The diploma may be awarded with distinction.  
For the diploma to be awarded with distinction, candidates must obtain first-class passes in:
- TDP3043W T&P Studiowork 3B: Acting Prac or
  - TDP3041W T&P Studiowork 3F: Performance Making Prac or
  - TDP3047W T&P Studiowork 3D: Dance Performance Prac or
  - TDP3050W T&P Studiowork 3I: Applied/Pedagogy Prac or
  - TDP3051W T&P Studiowork 3G: Scenography Prac
- AND
- TDP2040W T&P Studiowork 2
- AND a first class pass in at least two other senior courses not listed above.

### **Awards**

- FGT8 Class medals may be awarded to the best student for each course in the degree and the diploma in Theatre & Performance.  
*See also rule F15.*

## **Diploma in Theatre & Performance (DipT&P)**

[HU020]

Diploma in Theatre & Performance (DipT&P) [HU020]

First year

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 110

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
		<b>Professional Theatre training courses:</b> .....		
(a)	TDP1046W	T&P Studiowork I.....	54	5
(b)	TDP1017H	Theatrical Production & Stagecraft A.....	18	5
		<b>Introductory academic courses:</b> .....		
(c)	TDP1027F	Introduction to Theatre and Performance A.....	18	5
(d)	TDP1045S	South African Performance Genealogies.....	18	5
(e)	TDP1029F	Introduction to Theatre and Performance A + .....	10	5
(f)	DOH1005F	Writing in the Performing Arts.....	28	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>146</b>	

### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
		<b>Academic Courses:</b> .....		
(a)	TDP2010F	Global Performances: Mutations and Migrations .....	24	6
(b)	TDP2011S	Analysis and Criticism .....	24	6
(c)	TDP2042F	Global Performances: Mutations and Migrations + .....	10	6
(d)	TDP2013S	Analysis and Criticism + .....	10	6
		<b>Professional Theatre training courses:</b> .....		
(e)	TDP1018H	Stagecraft B .....	18	5
(f)	TDP2040W	T&P Studiowork 2.....	72	6
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>158</b>	

### Third year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
		<b>Professional Theatre training courses:</b> .....		
(a)	TDP3044H	Professional Practice A.....	12	7
(b)	TDP3045H	Professional Practice B.....	12	7
(c)		<b>Students are required to register for ONE of the following courses (depending on their area of specialisation):</b> .....		
	TDP3043W	T&P Studiowork 3B: Acting Prac .....	96	7
	TDP3047W	T&P Studiowork 3D: Dance Performance Prac.....	96	7
	TDP3041W	T&P Studiowork 3F: Performance Making Prac .....	96	7
	TDP3050W	T&P Studiowork 3I: Applied/Pedagogy Prac .....	96	7
	TDP3051W	T&P Studiowork 3G: Scenography Prac .....	96	7
		<b>Third year Total</b> .....	<b>120</b>	
		<b>Total NQF credits for diploma</b> .....	<b>466</b>	

### Curriculum constraints:

- In the first year of study candidates registered for the Diploma in Theatre and Performance must achieve at least 60% in T&P Studiowork in order to advance to the second year of study. Candidates who do not obtain the sub-minimum of 60% will be entitled to repeat T&P Studiowork for one more year.

### Physical examination:

- Candidates shall, at registration for each year of study, formally inform the Head of Section of any aspect of their health that may be an impediment to full participation in the courses for which they are registered, and shall support such a notification with medical documentation if required.
- Candidates wishing to register for a physically demanding course under circumstances of medical constraint may be advised against such a registration if the department judges that the course presents some degree of physical risk.
- Candidates who register for physically demanding courses against the advice of the department do so at their own risk, and in the understanding that, with every effort made to accommodate

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 111

their physical constraints, they may nonetheless be unable to benefit from a full experience of the course.

### *Notes for candidates for the Diploma in Theatre and Performance:*

The normal timetable pattern followed in this programme is academic courses are studied in the mornings on Upper Campus in Rondebosch, the professional theatre/dance training courses are studied thereafter at Hiddingh Campus in Cape Town city centre or the Dance Campus, Lower Campus Rondebosch and rehearsals are conducted in the evenings and over weekends on both campuses. The University supplies a limited shuttle service for students to travel between campuses and residence.

Candidates are advised that this programme demands attendance at rehearsals and other meetings outside of normal university teaching hours and should make sure that other commitments do not clash with the requirements of this programme.

Candidates are required to provide the following equipment and services:

- Textbooks and rehearsal notebooks;
  - Rehearsal wear: normally tracksuits, tights and leotards and rehearsal skirts for women;
  - Haircuts/hair dressing;
  - Black or brown conventional leather shoes for wear in play productions.
- Scripts of plays for public performances will be prepared by the Little Theatre. Students may be required to purchase these scripts. Production costs are borne by the Little Theatre.

## **ADVANCED DIPLOMA IN THEATRE [HU050]**

*(Not offered in 2025)*

### **Admission requirements**

- FAD1 Candidates shall be admitted to the Advanced Diploma in Theatre, provided they
- (a) have a Diploma in Theatre and Performance with an average of 65% in third year Studiowork and 60% average in second year Drama/Theatre and Dance Studies major courses (TDP2010F and TDP2011S), **OR**
  - (b) have a qualification from another Higher Education institution deemed equivalent by the HoD and have attended/submitted an audition is required by the HoD.

### **Duration of curriculum**

- FAD2 The curriculum for the advanced diploma shall extend over one year of full-time study.

### **Curriculum aims**

- FAD3 The primary aim of the Advanced Diploma in Theatre is to cap the undergraduate diploma qualification by offering students an opportunity to acquire practical skills not offered in the three year undergraduate Diploma in Theatre and Performance. Students will be able to focus their study specifically on an area of practice offered by the department. Not all areas will be available to students in every year.

### **Readmission**

- FAD4 Except by permission of the Senate, candidates who fail to complete any course prescribed for the Advanced Diploma in Theatre after two years of registration for that course shall not be permitted to re-register for the course.



**Duly performed certificates (DP)**

FAD5 Candidates may be refused a duly performed (DP) certificate in courses in Studiowork, in any practice area, if they fail to meet any of the following requirements:

- (a) candidates shall attend all classes, tutorials, rehearsals and complete such other duties on stage, backstage or elsewhere, as determined by the Head of Section. Absence from classes or rehearsals, unless for medical reasons, is not permitted without the written permission of the Head of Section. Absence for medical reasons must be reported to the Administrative Assistant of the centre, and must be substantiated by a doctor's certificate for periods in excess of two days.
- (b) candidates who, for any reason whatsoever, miss a noticeable proportion of their classes in any of the professional training courses may be deemed not to have completed sufficient coursework to justify the granting of a DP certificate.
- (c) candidates for the Advanced Diploma in Theatre shall perform any part in a production and/or any backstage work assigned to them and/or participate in any project relevant to their studies. Candidates are not guaranteed, nor may they demand or refuse, a part assigned to them.
- (d) the theatrical profession demands discipline. Candidates shall accept the discipline and procedures expected in the professional theatre.

**Distinction**

FAD6 The diploma may be awarded with distinction.  
 For the diploma to be awarded with distinction, candidates must obtain an overall average of 75% or more and not less than 70% in any one component of the programme.

**Advanced Diploma in Theatre  
 [HU050]**

**Convener:**

Associate Professor J Job

**First year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
(a)	TDP3010F	Contemporary Performance.....	30	7
(b)	TDP3018S	Production Processes.....	30	7
(c)	TDP3902W	T&P Studiowork 3D: Advanced Practice.....	60	7
<b>Total NQF credits for Advanced Diploma.....</b>			<b>120</b>	

**Physical examination:**

- a. Candidates shall, at registration, formally inform the Head of Department of Section of any aspect of their health that may be an impediment to full participation in the courses for which they are registered, and shall support such a notification with medical documentation if required.
- b. Candidates wishing to register for a physically demanding course under circumstances of medical constraint may be advised against such a registration if the department judges that the course presents some degree of physical risk.
- c. Candidates who register for physically demanding courses against the advice of the centre do so at their own risk, and on the understanding that, with every effort made to accommodate their physical constraints, they may nonetheless be unable to benefit from a full experience of the course.

***Notes for candidates for the Advanced Diploma in Theatre:***

Candidates are advised that this programme demands attendance at rehearsals and other meetings outside of normal university teaching hours and should make sure that other commitments do not clash with the requirements of this programme.

Candidates are required to provide the following equipment and services:

- Textbooks and rehearsal notebooks;
- Rehearsal wear: normally tracksuits, tights and leotards and rehearsal skirts for women;
- Haircuts/hair dressing;
- Black or brown conventional leather shoes for wear in play productions.

Scripts of plays for public performances will be prepared by the Little Theatre. Students may be required to purchase these scripts. Production costs are borne by the Little Theatre.

**BACHELOR OF ARTS IN THEATRE & PERFORMANCE (BA(T&P)) [HB014]**

*The degree programme in Theatre & Performance admits a restricted number of students and is specifically intended for candidates who wish to pursue professional studies in Theatre and Performance and make careers in the theatre and related industries, and theatre education.*

**Convener: Associate Professor J Job**

**Admission requirements**

- FBT1 Candidates shall be admitted to the BA in Theatre & Performance provided they have
- (a) been admitted into the Faculty of Humanities;
  - (b) matriculated with full exemption, or have a National Senior Certificate endorsed for Bachelor's study;
  - (c) attended an audition arranged by the Centre for Theatre, Dance and Performance Studies, demonstrated marked talent as a performer or potential performance-maker, and consequentially been offered a place in the programme.

**Status of the degree**

- FBT2 The BA in Theatre & Performance is a four-year qualification with HEQSF exit level 8.

**Duration of the curriculum**

- FBT3 The curriculum shall extend over four years of full-time study.

**Curriculum**

- FBT4 The degree in Theatre & Performance is offered in five areas of specialisation:
- (a) Acting (TDP01)
  - (b) Dance Performance (TDP04)
  - (c) Performance Making (TDP05)
  - (d) Applied Performance/ Pedagogy (TDP06)
  - (e) Scenography (TDP07)

All areas will not necessarily be offered to new students every year.

Upon application for admission, candidates must indicate which concentration they prefer. During the course of the second year of study, students will audition for their area of concentration. No student is guaranteed their first choice of concentration.

### Readmission

- FBT5
- (a) Candidates who fail T&P Studiowork in any year will not be permitted to renew their registration for the degree in Theatre and Performance without the permission of the Senate. Where such permission is given, candidates will be required to attend all the classes in T&P Studiowork for that year of study.
  - (b) Except by permission of the Senate, candidates who fail to complete any course prescribed for the degree in Theatre and Performance after two years of registration for that course shall not be permitted to re-register for the course.
  - (c) Candidates are required to complete the qualification in a maximum period of 5 years.
  - (d) Except with the permission of the Senate, full-time students shall be excluded from the Faculty either as full-time or part-time students, if they have not passed the following courses by the end of each year of registration:
    - (i) **First year:**  
at least five courses including TDP1027F, TDP1017H, TDP1046W and one first-year elective.
    - (ii) **Second year:**  
at least eight courses, including TDP1045S, TDP1018H, TDP2010F, TDP2011S and their second-year Studiowork course.
    - (iii) **Third year:**  
at least eleven courses, including TDP3010F, TDP3018S, TDP3044H and their third-year Studiowork course.
    - (iv) **Fourth year:**  
at least thirteen courses, including all three electives, TDP3045H; TDP4000H and their fourth-year Studiowork course.
    - (v) **Fifth year:**  
met the requirements of the degree.

### Duly performed certificates (DP)

- FBT6
- Candidates may be refused a duly performed (DP) certificate in any of the Professional Theatre Training courses [T&P Studiowork, Professional Practice or Stagecraft] if they fail to meet any of the following requirements:
- (a) Candidates shall attend all classes, tutorials, rehearsals and complete such other duties on stage, backstage or elsewhere, as determined by the Head of Section. Absence from classes or rehearsals, unless for medical reasons, is not permitted without the written permission of the Head of Section. Absence for medical reasons must be reported to the Administrative Assistant of the Centre, and must be substantiated by a doctor's certificate for periods in excess of two days.
  - (b) Candidates who, for any reason whatsoever, miss a noticeable proportion of their classes in any of the professional training courses may be deemed not to have completed sufficient coursework to justify the granting of a DP certificate.
  - (c) Candidates, in any year of study who have a DP removed for their Studiowork course, thereby making it impossible to advance to the next year of study or to graduate from the programme (see relevant curriculum constraints above), will be required to withdraw from the other Professional Training courses in that year. The decision to allow such

- candidates to repeat that year of training will be at the discretion of the Head of Section.
- (d) Candidates for the programme in Theatre & Performance shall perform any part in a production and/or any backstage work assigned to them. No candidates are guaranteed, nor may they demand or refuse, a part assigned to them.
  - (e) The theatrical profession demands discipline. Candidates shall accept the discipline and procedures expected in the professional theatre.

**Distinction**

FBT7

The degree may be awarded with distinction.  
 For the degree to be awarded with distinction, candidates must obtain first-class passes in at least THREE senior courses not listed below, and must have obtained a first-class pass in:  
 TDP4040W T&P Studiowork 4A: Acting or  
 TDP4041W T&P Studiowork 4E: Performance Making or  
 TDP4045W T&P Studiowork 4C: Dance Performance or  
 TDP4046W T&P Studiowork 4G: Scenography or  
 TDP4047W T&P Studiowork 4H: Applied/Pedagogy  
 and obtained a first class pass in the following:  
 TDP3040W T&P Studiowork 3E: Performance Making or  
 TDP3042W T&P Studiowork 3A: Acting or  
 TDP3046W T&P Studiowork 3C: Dance Performance or  
 TDP3048W T&P Studiowork 3G: Scenography or  
 TDP3049W T&P Studiowork 3H: Applied/Pedagogy  
 and TDP4000H Theatre and Research.

**Awards**

FBT8

Class medals may be awarded to the best student for each course in the degree and the diploma in Theatre & Performance.  
*See also rule F15*

**Bachelor of Arts in Theatre & Performance (BA<sup>1</sup>(T&P))**

**[HB014]**

**First year**

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
		<b>Professional Theatre training courses:</b> .....		
(a)	TDP1046W	T&P Studiowork I .....	54	5
(b)	TDP1017H	Theatrical Production & Stagecraft A .....	18	5
		<b>Introductory academic courses:</b> .....		
(c)	TDP1027F	Introduction to Theatre and Performance A .....	18	5
(d)	TDP1045S	South African Performance Genealogies .....	18	5
		<b>Electives:</b> .....		
(e)		Any non-TDP first year course <sup>1</sup> .....	18	5
(f)		Any non-TDP first year course <sup>1</sup> .....	18	5
		<b>First year total</b> .....	<b>144</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Choice of elective courses must be approved by the Head of Section and cannot clash with the timetable requirements of Theatre and Performance courses. (Students intending to pursue the Applied/Pedagogy stream from their third year should select courses aligned to a single major of their choosing).

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 116

### Second year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
		<b>Academic courses:</b> .....		
(a)	TDP2010F	Global Performances: Mutations and Migrations .....	24	6
(b)	TDP2011S	Analysis and Criticism .....	24	6
		<b>Professional Theatre training courses:</b> .....		
(c)	TDP1018H	Stagecraft B .....	18	5
(d)	TDP2040W	T&P Studiowork 2.....	72	6
		<b>Electives:</b> .....		
(e)		Any non-TDP second year course <sup>1</sup> .....	24	6
(f)		Any non-TDP second year course <sup>2</sup> .....	24	6
		<b>Second year total</b> .....	<b>162-186</b>	

<sup>1</sup> Choice of elective courses must be approved by the Head of Section and cannot clash with the timetable requirements of Theatre and Performance courses. (Students intending to pursue the Applied/Pedagogy stream from their third year should select courses aligned to a single major of their choosing).

<sup>2</sup>For Applied/Pedagogy stream students only. Choice of elective courses must be aligned to a single major of their choosing, be approved by the Head of Section, and cannot clash with the timetable requirements of Theatre and Performance courses.

### Third year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
		<b>Academic courses:</b> .....		
(a)	TDP3010F	Contemporary Performance.....	30	7
(b)	TDP3018S	Production Processes.....	30	7
		<b>Professional Theatre training courses:</b> .....		
(c)	TDP3044H	Professional Practice A.....	12	7
(d)		<b>Students are required to register for ONE of the following courses (depending on their area of specialisation):</b> .....		
	TDP3042W	T&P Studiowork 3A: Acting.....	72	7
	TDP3046W	T&P Studiowork 3C: Dance Performance.....	72	7
	TDP3040W	T&P Studiowork 3E: Performance Making.....	72	7
	TDP3048W	T&P Studiowork 3G: Scenography .....	72	7
	TDP3049W	T&P Studiowork 3H: Applied/Pedagogy .....	42	7
		<b>Electives:</b> .....		
(e)		Any non-TDP third year course <sup>2</sup> .....	30	7
(f)		Any non-TDP third year course <sup>2</sup> .....	30	7
		<b>Third year total</b> .....	<b>144-174</b>	

<sup>2</sup>For Applied/Pedagogy stream students only. Choice of elective courses must be aligned to a single major of their choosing, be approved by the Head of Section, and cannot clash with the timetable requirements of Theatre and Performance courses.

### Fourth year

	Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
		<b>Academic courses:</b> .....		
(a)	TDP4000H	Theatre and Dance Research .....	30	8
		<b>Professional Theatre training courses:</b> .....		
(b)	TDP3045H	Professional Practice B.....	12	7
(c)		<b>Students are required to register for ONE of the following courses (depending on their area of specialisation):</b> .....		
	TDP4040W	T&P Studiowork 4A: Acting.....	96	8
	TDP4045W	T&P Studiowork 4C: Dance Performance.....	96	8

## RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 117

Code	Course	NQF Credits	NQF Level
TDP4041W	T&P Studiowork 4E: Performance Making.....	96	8
TDP4046W	T&P Studiowork 4G: Scenography .....	96	8
TDP4047W	T&P Studiowork 4H: Applied/Pedagogy .....	96	8
	<b>Fourth year total .....</b>	<b>138</b>	
	<b>Total NQF credits for degree.....</b>	<b>588-642</b>	

### Curriculum constraints:

- In the first year of study candidates registered for the BA in Theatre and Performance must achieve at least 60% in T&P Studiowork in order to advance to the second year of study. Candidates who do not obtain the sub-minimum of 60% will be entitled to repeat T&P Studiowork for one more year or to shift across to the general BA Theatre and Dance Studies if they qualify.
- Candidates may not register for the third-year professional theatre training courses T&P Studiowork 3, unless they have passed at least two of the academic Theatre and Dance Studies courses at a second-year level and two courses in their academic elective.
- Candidates must indicate their choice of specialisation upon commencement, but the Head of Section's selection of concentration will be final. There is a limit to the number of students who can be accepted into any one area.
- Candidates may not register for the professional theatre training courses in their fourth year unless they have successfully passed at least both third-year semester courses in Theatre and Dance Studies, or three semester courses of their academic elective.
- Admission into academic courses in Theatre and Dance Studies in subsequent years is dependent upon successfully completing one of the academic Theatre and Dance Studies courses prescribed for the current year.

### Fitness for physically demanding courses:

- a. Candidates shall, at registration for each year of study, formally inform the Director of the Centre for Theatre, Dance and Performance Studies of any aspect of their health that may be an impediment to full participation in the courses for which they are registered, and shall support such a notification with medical documentation if required.
- b. Candidates wishing to register for a physically demanding course under circumstances of medical constraint may be advised against such a registration if the department judges that the course presents some degree of physical risk.
- c. Candidates who register for physically demanding courses against the advice of the department do so at their own risk, and in the understanding that, with every effort made to accommodate their physical constraints, they may nonetheless be unable to benefit from a full experience of the course.

### Additional electives:

*Provided the timetable allows*, candidates who can provide justifiable grounds for wishing to take additional elective academic courses, may receive permission to do so from the Head of Section.

### Transferring to other programmes:

Candidates who find after all that they are unsuited to the Programme in Theatre and Performance, may transfer to the BA or BSocSc general degrees or to other programmes at the beginning of the second semester of first year, and at the end of the first year. Permission must be granted by the Humanities Faculty Office before students are allowed to change to any of the degrees above. Transferring students may receive credit towards their new programme at the discretion of the programme convener of the newly chosen programme.

### Notes for candidates for the BA in Theatre and Performance

The normal timetable pattern followed in this programme is academic courses are studied in the mornings on Upper Campus in Rondebosch, the professional theatre/dance training courses are

## **RULES AND CURRICULA FOR QUALIFICATIONS AND PROGRAMMES OF STUDY 118**

studied thereafter at Hiddingh Campus in Cape Town city centre or the Dance Campus, Lower Campus Rondebosch and rehearsals are conducted in the evenings and over weekends on both campuses. The University supplies a limited shuttle service for students to travel between campuses and residence.

Candidates are advised that this programme demands attendance at rehearsals and other meetings outside of normal University teaching hours and should make sure that other commitments do not clash with the requirements of this programme.

Candidates are required to provide the following equipment and services:

- Textbooks and rehearsal notebooks;
- Rehearsal wear: normally tracksuits, tights and leotards and rehearsal skirts for women;
- Haircuts/hair dressing;
- Black or brown conventional leather shoes for wear in play productions.

Scripts of plays for public performances will be provided by the Little Theatre. Students may be required to purchase these scripts. Production costs are borne by the Little Theatre.

## SUMMER/WINTER TERM COURSES

A number of Humanities courses may also be offered in Winter Term (June/July) or Summer Term (November/December). Please confirm directly with the department concerned whether the course will be offered before you register for the course. Descriptions of these courses can be found under the standard semester course entries for each department.

Winter Term courses:

L June - July

Summer Term courses:

P November – December

The following courses MAY be offered (please confirm with the department):

### Winter Term

Subject	Catalogue	Description	NQF Credits	HEQF level
ANS	2401L	Introduction to Medical Anthropology	24	6
FAM	1000L	Analysing Film And TV	18	5
HST	2045L	Genocide: African Experiences	24	6
PHI	2043L	Business Ethics	18	6
POL	1004L	Introduction to Politics	18	5
POL	2038L	Comparative Politics	24	6
REL	2047L	Religion, Sexuality and Gender	24	6
SLL	1002L	Word Power	18	5
SLL	1062L	German Studies IA	18	5

### Summer term

Subject	Catalogue	Description	NQF Credits	HEQF level
AFS	2100P	Gender, Sexuality, Politics	24	6
FAM	1001P	Media and Society	18	5
FAM	2003P	Media, Power and Culture	24	6
HST	2034P	Africa: Colonial & Post-Colonial Encounters	24	6
PHI	1010P	Ethics	18	5
PHI	2043P	Business Ethics	18	6
POL	1004P	Introduction to Politics	18	5
POL	1005P	Introduction to Politics B	18	5
POL	2038P	Comparative Politics	24	6
REL	2048P	Psychology of Religion	24	6
SLL	1002P	Word Power	18	5



---

## ACCOUNTING, COLLEGE OF

The College of Accounting is housed in the Leslie Commerce Building. Reception: Room No. 4.50.

The letter code for the College of Accounting is ACC.

Telephone number: (021) 650 2269.

Departmental website: [www.accounting.uct.ac.za/](http://www.accounting.uct.ac.za/)

### Head of College and Professor:

I Lubbe, BCom(Hons) *UJ* HDTE MPhil PhD (Higher Education Studies) *Cape Town* CA(SA)

### KW Johnston Chair and Professor:

GD Willows, BAcc *Stell* BCompt(Hons) *Unisa* MCom (Financial Management) PhD *Cape Town* CA(SA)

### Associate Professors:

R Carpenter, BBusSc MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

L E Derbyshire, BCom(Hons) MCom PhD *North West* CA(SA)

S Herbert, BCom(Hons) MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

J Kew, BCom HDE MBA *Cape Town*

T Miller, BCom (Hons) MCom PhD *Cape Town* CA(SA)

G Modack, BCom PGDip Tax Law MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

S Parsons, BBusSc PGDip Tax Law *Cape Town* MPhil (Applied Theology) *Pret* MCom, PhD *Cape Town* CA(SA)

N S Sewpersadh, BCompt(Hons), MCom *UKZN* CA(SA) ACMA CGMA

J Winfield, BBusSc BCom(Hons) *Cape Town* MA *Oxon*

### Senior Lecturers:

J Allie, BBusSc MCom MBA *Cape Town* CA(SA)

M Barden, BCom MPhil (Higher Education Studies) *Cape Town* CA(SA)

N Daniels, BCom *Cape Town* MCom *Pret* CA(SA)

R Davids, BBusSc *Cape Town* MCom *Pret* CA(SA)

C de Jesus, BBusSc MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

J Dean, BCom PGDip (Tax Law) MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

A Dhansay, BCom MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

S Fakier, BCom *Cape Town* MCom *Pret* CA(SA)

S Gwadiso, BCom *Cape Town* MCom *Pret* CA(SA)

R Hoch, BMus PGDip Man MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

D McGregor, BBusSc MPhil (Commercial Law) *Cape Town* CA(SA)

M Phaswana, BBusSc MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

S Shamsoodien, BCom MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

### Lecturers:

T Adams, BCom *Western Cape* CA(SA)

JP Du Plessis BAcc BCom(Hons) *UFS* PGDip(App. Acc. Sc.) *Unisa* CA(SA)

S Esack, BBusSc *Cape Town* CA(SA)

M Gajewski, BCom PGDip(Higher Education Studies) *Cape Town* CA(SA)

D Govender, BCom(Hons) *Cape Town* CA(SA)

Z Jhaveri, BCom *UKZN* CA(SA)

T Prince, BCom *NMU* MCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

P Thusini, BCom *Cape Town* CA(SA)

M Tshingilane, BAccSc *WSU* PGDip *Fort Hare* CA(SA)

M West, Bcom(Hons) *Unisa* BA *Madinah* CA(SA)

K Whitehorn, BCom(Hons) *Pret MCom Cape Town CA(SA)*  
K Williams, BCom *Cape Town CA (SA)*  
Z Wormald, BBusSc *Cape Town CA(SA)*

**Student Advisors (Undergraduate):**

E-mail: [accstudentadvice@uct.ac.za](mailto:accstudentadvice@uct.ac.za)

**Distinguished Teacher Awards**

C Fourie (2009)  
J Kew (2015)  
J Winfield (2016)

**Duly Performed Certificates**

Students must comply with the DP requirements set for each course.

For DP purposes class tests exclude objective tests.

For DP purposes, assignments include projects, essays etc., but no tutorial hand-ins.

The College reserves the right to set deferred class tests for students who miss class tests.

More than one exemption from an independent assessment may result in a DPR for the course concerned.

**ENTRY TO ACC SPECIFIC COURSES**

**ACC1021F ACCOUNTING FOR BUSINESS I**

This course aims to introduce non-accounting students to the basic principles of accounting that would benefit them in management and other roles they may fill in business in the future.

The course includes a basic introduction to financial accounting and published financial statements. This course is available as a first-year course for non-commerce students, management accounting.

Entry requirements: Admission to degree. NSC level 5 in Mathematics and level 4 in English HL (or level 5 in English FAL).

**ACC1022Z ACCOUNTING FOR BUSINESS II**

Entry requirements: ACC1021F

Note: Admission to any other ACC course includes registration for a BCom Accounting, BBusSci Finance with Accounting, or Actuarial Science degree, or by permission of the department.

**Course outlines:**

**NB: Accounting courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by a general BA or BSocSc.**

---

**ACC1021F ACCOUNTING FOR BUSINESS I**

15 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Magon Gajewski

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to degree. NSC level 5 in Mathematics and level 4 in English HL (or level 5 in English FAL).

**Co-requisites:** None.

**Objective:** This course aims to introduce non-accounting students to the basic principles of accounting that would benefit them in management and other roles they may fill in business in the future. The course includes a basic introduction to financial accounting and published financial

statements, and management accounting. The course forms the first part of a two course pairing for non-accounting Commerce students.

**Course outline:**

This is an introductory course in accounting aimed at all Commerce students who are not required to complete the specialised accounting courses. The course aims to provide Commerce graduates with the necessary acumen to engage in a managerial context with the accounting function within their organisations. Commerce students are also required to complete ACC1022Z. The course is also open to students in other faculties seeking an introduction to the accounting discipline.

**Lecture times:** 4 lectures a week, for 12 weeks. Tutorials: 2 periods a week, for 11 weeks.

**DP requirements:** 75% course participation and a minimum of 38% for the April test.

**Assessment:** One class test in April. One final exam as part of the June exam block.

---

**ACC1022Z ACCOUNTING FOR BUSINESS II**

9 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Magon Gajewski

**Course entry requirements:** ACC1021F.

**Co-requisites:** None.

**Objective:** This course aims to introduce non-accounting students to the basic principles of accounting that would benefit them in management and other roles they may fill in business in the future. The course continues from ACC1021F and introduces non-accounting Commerce students to the concepts of taxation and good governance. The course forms the second part of a two course pairing for Commerce students.

**Course outline:**

This course continues from ACC1021F and aims to provide Commerce graduates with an overview of cash flows, taxation, and governance principles.

**Lecture times:** 4 lectures a week, for 5 weeks. Tutorials: 2 periods a week, for 5 weeks.

**DP requirements:** 75% course participation.

**Assessment:** One final exam before/after the September vacation.

---

## AFRICAN FEMINIST STUDIES

The Department of African Feminist Studies is housed in the Harry Oppenheimer Institute Building, Engineering Mall, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [afs@uct.ac.za](mailto:afs@uct.ac.za) or telephone: 021 650 2970/4207.

The letter code for the Department is AFS.

Departmental website: <http://www.agi.uct.ac.za/>

The Department of African Feminist Studies (AFS) runs teaching, research and development programmes in the broad area of gender, African feminism and transformation. In working to develop knowledge and strategies for the advancement of gender equality, sexual diversity and democracy, the Department of African Feminist Studies builds links between scholars, researchers and practitioners across the African continent. Research specialisations at AFS for 2025 include Childhood, Culture, Decoloniality, Development, Epistemologies, Family, Geographies, Higher Education, Islam, Law, Masculinity, Mental Health, Narrative, Polygyny, Psychology, Religion, Schools, Sexuality, STEM, Tradition, Trauma and Violence.

### **Associate Professor and Head of Department:**

F Seedat, BA(Hons) *Toronto* MSocSc *Cape Town* PhD *McGill*

### **Associate Professor:**

B Moolman, BSocSc *Cape Town* MPhil *UWC* PhD *Davis*

### **Senior Lecturer:**

Z Mkhize, BA *Florida* BA(Hons) MA PhD *UKZN*

### **Lecturer:**

N Titi, BPsych MResearch *UWC* PhD(DPsy) *Unisa*

### **Academic Programme Administrator:**

W Daniels, BSocSc *Cape Town*

### **Senior Secretary:**

K Flowers

## AFRICAN GENDER INSTITUTE

### **Associate Professor and Director:**

F Seedat, BA(Hons) *Toronto* MSocSc *Cape Town* PhD *McGill*

### **Associate Professor:**

B Moolman, BSocSc *Cape Town* MPhil *UWC* PhD *Davis*

### **Senior Lecturer:**

Z Mkhize, BA *Florida* BA(Hons) MA PhD *UKZN*

### **Lecturer:**

N Titi, BPsych MResearch *UWC* PhD(DPsy) *Unisa*

### **Project Manager:**

V Ludwig, BA (Hons) *UWC*

**Online Communications Officer:**I Masitha, (Hons) *Cape Town***Research Assistant:**F Parks, BSc, BSocSc (Hons) *Cape Town***Administrator:**

H Ferguson

**Senior Secretary:**

K Flowers

The African Gender Institute (AGI) is a feminist research institute located within the Department of African Feminist Studies in the Faculty of Humanities at the University of Cape Town (UCT). We are committed to connecting with African feminist thinkers and activists across disciplinary, institutional and geographic borders. We have aimed to make the boundaries between research, pedagogy and activism porous, so that these arenas can become epistemologically coherent. Two core principles have informed AGI's work: first, the simple understanding of knowledge production as organic and people-centred; second, a respect for the generative and transformative power of collective processes. AGI has lead research projects on: gender justice, sexuality and human rights; peace and conflict studies; religion and sexuality; and capacity building in relation to gender and women's studies knowledges.

**Requirements for a major in Gender Studies****[AFS01]****First Year courses**

Code	Title
AFS1100S	Understanding Gender

**Second Year courses**

Code	Title
AFS2100F	Gender, Sexuality and Politics

**ONE of the following:**

AFS2102S	Gender and the Politics of Development
HST2047FS	Gender & History *
REL2047F	Gender, Sexuality and Religion *
ANS2402S	Anthropology of Power and Wealth *
ANS2401F	Introduction to Medical Anthropology *
SOC2004S	Race, Class, Gender & Sexuality

**Third Year courses**

Code	Title
AFS3100F	Theories, Politics and Action
AFS3101S	Politics of Gendered Knowledge

\* See entries under *Departments for the Study of Religions, Historical Studies, Sociology and Anthropology* for descriptions of REL2047F, HST2047FS, ANS2402S, ANS2401F, and SOC2004S. If any of these courses are taken as part of the requirements for a Major in Gender Studies, the course may not be credited as part of a Major in the Study of Religions, History, Anthropology or Sociology.

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For AFS1100S: None. *Please note that this course is capped at 450 students for 2025.*
- (ii) For AFS2100F, AFS2102S: 2<sup>nd</sup> year status

- (iv) For **AFS3100F**: AFS2100F, and one other course in list of electives in second year above, or permission of the Head of Department
- (v) For **AFS3101S**: AFS3100F, or permission of the Head of Department.

### Course outlines:

---

#### **AFS1100S UNDERSTANDING GENDER**

*This course is capped at 450 students for 2025*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr N Titi

**Course entry requirements:** None. This course is a requirement for students majoring in Gender Studies, but is also open as an elective to students in all other faculty disciplines.

**Course outline:**

The aims of this course include increasing students' awareness of the relevance of gender issues to their lives and developing a critical understanding of the multiple and contested meanings of gender in contemporary African and international contexts. It introduces key concepts concerning gender and sexuality, culture and identity, context and the dynamics of masculinity and femininity. It explores connections between gender, 'race', class, generation and location and draws on a number of different resource materials: including visual materials such as documentaries, film and media, art.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to attend all classes, and to submit all required assignments by deadlines identified in the course curriculum.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

#### **AFS2100F GENDER, SEXUALITY, POLITICS**

*This course may also be offered in Summer Term – please consult the Department.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** 2<sup>nd</sup> year status

**Course outline:**

This course explores debates around gender and sexualities as a way both of deepening knowledge about the politics of gender continentally, and of exploring the complexity of different African contexts' engagement with broad discussions on sexual rights. The course is divided into two sections which broadly focus on South Africa, Kenya and Uganda. The first section addresses concepts on gender and sexualities through an examination of how sexualities were remade as a result of colonial conquest as well as how debates over gender and sexualities shifted post-'independence'. The second section looks at contemporary debates in gender politics and sexualities. These include debates of the (de)criminalisation of sex work, culture and sexuality, reproductive health rights and sexual rights, and gender and the media.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to attend all classes, and to submit all required assignments by deadlines identified in the course curriculum.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

#### **AFS2102S GENDER & THE POLITICS OF DEVELOPMENT**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr Z Mkhize

**Course entry requirements:** 2<sup>nd</sup> year status

**Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to enable students to understand and analyse the impact of development practices, particularly as they have affected women and men in different contexts. The course will offer an introduction to debates around the gendered impact of different economic and political development trajectories, and policies, such as industrialisation, agricultural transformations,

democratisation, and contemporary structural adjustment programmes. Case studies drawn from different regions and contexts will be used to illustrate the theoretical debates, including those distinguishing “women in development” approaches from “gender and development” approaches.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all semester coursework by deadlines as specified on the course curriculum.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **AFS3100F THEORIES, POLITICS AND ACTION**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor B Moolman

**Course entry requirements:** AFS2100F and one of the following electives: AFS2102S, HST2047S, REL2047F, ANS2402S, ANS2401F, SOC2004S, or permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

In this course we will examine how women's movements have emerged in the context of struggles against other forms of social injustice and have informed theories about gendered oppression. Focusing on women's and feminist movements mainly in the South and East, the course examines how feminist theories have not only been shaped by the specificities of the local contexts and struggles; but also how they have been shaped by the global flow of information about women's and queer movements elsewhere. In addition, we examine how the questions that feminists and women activists have raised have destabilised the taken-for-granted assumptions about masculinities. We will also take a brief look at the construction and multiple meanings of sexuality and masculinities, especially in African contexts. The course is designed to acquaint students with literature about women's and feminist movements in the non-western world. It encourages students to think critically about the relationship between theories and practice, as well as about the applicability of feminist theoretical concepts across diverse contexts. Coursework is also designed to develop students' writing and seminar presentation skills.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written coursework by deadlines as specified on course curriculum.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **AFS3101S THE POLITICS OF GENDERED KNOWLEDGE**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor B Moolman

**Course entry requirements:** AFS3100F, or permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course offers senior students an opportunity to develop feminist/queer research skills through study and by designing and undertaking research. It also explores some of the key challenges of engendering knowledge, feminist and queer perspectives on research and a range of questions - political, theoretical and methodological - pertinent to African feminists and African-based researchers in the social sciences.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all semester coursework and research assignments by deadlines as specified within the course curriculum.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

## AFRICAN STUDIES AND LINGUISTICS

The Department of African Studies and Linguistics is housed in Harry Oppenheimer Building and can be contacted by e-mail at: [ASL@uct.ac.za](mailto:ASL@uct.ac.za), or telephone at: 021 650 4034.

The letter code for all courses offered in the Department is ASL.  
Departmental website: [www.asl.uct.ac.za](http://www.asl.uct.ac.za)

### Professor and Head of Department:

S Pillay, BA(Hons) MA *UWC* MPhil PhD *Columbia*

### Emeritus Professors:

R Lass, PhD *Yale*

N Love, DPhil *Oxon*

K McCormick, PhD *Cape Town*

R Mesthrie, DST/NRF Chair in Migration, Language and Social Change, BPaed *UDW* BA(Hons) *Cape Town* BA(Hons) *Unisa* MA *Texas* PhD *Cape Town*

L Ntsebeza MA *Natal* PhD *Rhodes*

### Professors:

H Chitonge, MA PhD *UKZN*

A Deumert, MA *Freiburg* PhD *Cape Town*

### Senior Lecturers:

D Jethro, MA *Cape Town* PhD *Utrecht*

S Mpendukana, BA(Hons) MA PhD *UWC*

M Thompson, BA(Hons) MA *UWC* PhD *Stell*

### Lecturers:

J Brown, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town*

Z Msomi, MPhil *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*

### Administrative Assistants:

F Steffenson

Y Isaacs

## Requirements for a major in African Studies

### [ASL01]

The major proposed here offers students a coherent multi- and inter-disciplinary introduction to African Studies that will cover core content and theoretical contributions to the field. By drawing on the intellectual resources of Africa, the curriculum of the major will affirm student agency; promote engagement, social and cultural awareness, self-reflexivity, multi- and inter-disciplinarity. We intend to provide an enriched distinctive pedagogy that will develop in students' high levels of criticality and creativity through the use of interactive learning, multi-media and project work.

### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
ASL1201S	Representations of Africa

### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
ASL2202F	African Political Thought

ONE of the following:



---

ASL2200S	Culture, Identity and Globalisation in Africa
AFS2100F	Gender, Sexuality and Politics*
AFS2102S	Gender and the Politics of Development*

### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
ASL3200F	Political Economy of Africa
ASL3201S	Language, Power and Freedom in Africa - Practices and Ideologies

*\*Note: see entries under African Feminist Studies department. If any of these courses are taken as part of the requirements for the major in Gender Studies, the course may not also be credited as part of a major in African Studies*

### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **2000-level courses**: second-year status
- (ii) For **3000-level courses**: third-year status

## Requirements for a major in Linguistics

### [ASL02]

The development by human beings of the power to communicate with one another by means of language, and their subsequent and continuing co-operative use of that power in transforming the world they live in, are among the most significant determinants of the human condition. Scholars have been inquiring into the origins, history, mechanism, structure and social roles of language and languages since the very beginnings of the intellectual tradition. Courses in this section not only offer an introduction to the range of such inquiries and an opportunity to participate in them, but above all foster the idea that an attempt to grasp the nature of language is an indispensable part of any serious attempt to understand what it is to be human.

### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
ASL1300F	Introduction to Language Studies
	<b>OR</b>
ASL1301S	Introduction to Sociolinguistics

### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
ASL2300F	Understanding Language: Meaning and Structure A
ASL2301S	Understanding Language: Meaning and Structure B

### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
ASL3300F	Language: Theoretical and Applied Perspectives A
ASL3301S	Language: Theoretical and Applied Perspectives B

### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **ASL2300F**: ASL1300F or ASL1301S or at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (ii) For **ASL2301S**: ASL1300F or ASL1301S and ASL2300F or at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (iii) For **ASL3300F**: ASL2300F and ASL2301S or at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (iv) For **ASL3301S**: ASL3300F or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

## RESEARCH CHAIRS AND CENTRES IN THE DEPARTMENT

### CENTRE FOR AFRICAN STUDIES

**Director and Professor:**

S Pillay, BA(Hons) MA *UWC* MPhil PhD *Columbia*

**Professor:**

H Chitonge, MA PhD *UKZN*

**Emeritus Professor:**

L Ntsebeza MA *Natal* PhD *Rhodes*

**Honorary Professor:**

S Vawda, BA *UDW* MA *Queens, Belfast* PhD *UKZN*

**Lecturer:**

Z Msomi, MPhil *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*

**Gallery Curator:**

TBA

**Research Assistant:**

N Maseti

The Centre was constituted in 1976 and built on the work of the School of African Studies which had been in existence for over fifty years and was one of the oldest in the world. Current scholarship takes place within the context of the mission of CAS, which promotes scholarship in the various fields concerned with people in Africa. The brief remains focused on providing a critical comparative perspective between Southern Africa, Africa, and the globalizing world. The mission remains urgent, given the longstanding and continuing dominance of Western models and discourses. The Centre houses research projects, organizes a range of seminars, conferences, and talks, and runs a gallery open to a wide variety of cultural performances.

### RESEARCH CHAIRS

**AC Jordan Chair:**

Professor S Pillay, BA(Hons) MA *UWC* MPhil PhD *Columbia*

**Archie Mafeje Chair:**

TBA

### Course Outlines:

---

**ASL1201S REPRESENTATIONS OF AFRICA**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**

This course will focus on the ways in which Africa has been imagined and represented across the ages. Drawing on key texts from the creative and performing arts, the course will explore specific depictions of Africa and Africans in each era and open up questions about the relationship between arts and society. It will examine African self-representations alongside representations that focus on Africa as

a site of difference or 'othering'. Topics include: Introduction - What is representation?; Images of Slavery; Travel writing and tourism; Visual Arts; Anti-colonialism/ nationalism in film.

**Lecture times:** Monday and Tuesday, 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** Coursework: tutorial hand-ins (20%), 1<sup>st</sup> essay (20%), 2<sup>nd</sup> essay (30%).

---

### **ASL1202S REPRESENTATIONS OF AFRICA +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** ASL1201F

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: ASL1201FS Representations of Africa. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** 6th period.

**DP requirements:** 80% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** This course will be assessed on a Pass/Fail basis. In order to receive a pass grade, students will be required to complete: coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessment, other written work and participation.

---

### **ASL1203S WRITING ACROSS BORDERS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr A Hunma

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

The course aims to introduce students to requisite academic literacies in preparation for their second year of study in the Humanities. This includes argumentative essay writing and the basics of research writing. These literacies are taught through the topical concepts of identity and mobility in an ever-changing world. The course's blended feature enables students to exchange their ideas of these issues with participants across the globe doing the MOOC, Writing Your World. The global flavour of the course gives students exposure to other cross-border perspectives and experiences.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Wednesday, 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 80% lecture attendance, MOOC completion, submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework – 3 academic essays. Weightage: 60%. Exam – section A short writing tasks, Section B essay. Weightage 40%.

---

### **ASL1300F INTRODUCTION TO LANGUAGE STUDIES**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** J Brown

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course provides an introduction to the main branches of Linguistics. On completion of the course students would have covered topics such as: phonetics (the production and classification of speech sounds, the International Phonetic Alphabet, suprasegmentals); phonology (how speech sounds are organised in language; the phoneme-allophone distinction); morphology (form–meaning pairs; morphemes and word-formation); syntax (the rules that govern the phrase, structures of language; elements of generative grammar); and semantics relations, semantic features; an introduction to psychological and neurobiological aspects of how humans acquire language.

**Lecture times:** 3<sup>rd</sup> period, Monday – Wednesday.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **ASL1301S INTRODUCTION TO SOCIOLINGUISTICS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr M Thompson

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course focuses on the study of language in its social context, a branch of Linguistics that is referred to as sociolinguistics. The course includes topics such as: introduction (basic concepts and issues in sociolinguistics); regional variation; social variation; language change, language and social media; multilingualism; language and interaction; gender and language; language contact; pidgins, creoles and new Englishes; language planning and policy; language and education; the sociolinguistics of sign language.

**Lecture times:** 3<sup>rd</sup> period, Monday – Wednesday.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **ASL1304F INTRODUCTION TO LANGUAGE STUDIES +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** J Brown

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** ASL1300F

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: ASL1300F (Introduction to Language Studies). It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tutorials that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**DP requirements:** No DP requirements.

**Assessment:** This course will be assessed on a Pass/Fail basis. In order to receive a pass grade, students will be required to complete at least 80% of all course requirements (attendance at tutorials, submission of exercises, etc.)

---

### **ASL1305S INTRODUCTION TO SOCIOLINGUISTICS +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr M Thompson

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** ASL1301S.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: ASL1301S (Introduction to Applied Language Studies). It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tutorials that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**DP requirements:** No DP requirements.

**Assessment:** This course will be assessed on a Pass/Fail basis. In order to receive a pass grade, students will be required to complete at least 80% of all course requirements (attendance at tutorials, submission of exercises, etc.)

---

**ASL2200S CULTURE, IDENTITY & GLOBALISATION IN AFRICA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6; Three lectures and one compulsory tutorial per week.

**Convener:** Professor H Chitonge

**Course entry requirements:** Students must be in their second or subsequent year of study.

**Course outline:**

In the context of the current level of globalisation, this course explores Africa's position in and relations with other parts of the globalising world. The course highlights Africa's experience of globalization, focusing on the challenges and opportunities which globalisation presents, particularly on cultures and identities in the continent.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at lectures and tutorials is compulsory, failing which students' papers may not be marked.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**ASL2202F AFRICAN POLITICAL THOUGHT**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr D Jethro

**Course entry requirements:** Second-year status.

**Course outline:**

This course explores African political systems and thought, from precolonial Africa through to postcolonial political systems. In so doing, the course examines the forms of African political thought that emerged across three periods: the pre-colonial; the era of colonisation and political forms of resistance against it; and the postcolonial/neo-colonial period. The course ends with current critiques of postcolonial governance, which argue that, in many important ways, decolonisation of our political systems has not yet occurred.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%

---

**ASL2203F AFRICAN POLITICAL THOUGHT +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** ASL2202F

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: ASL2202F African Political Thought. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** 6th period.

**DP requirements:** 80% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** This course will be assessed on a Pass/Fail basis. In order to receive a pass grade, students will be required to complete: coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessment, other written work and participation.

---

**ASL2300F UNDERSTANDING LANGUAGE – MEANING AND STRUCTURE A**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr S Mpendukana

**Course entry requirements:** This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ASL1300F or ASL1301S (b) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head

of Department, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (b) should arrange to see the Head of Department as early as possible.

**Course outline:**

The course consolidates and extends the work of first year linguistics and focuses on the more advanced and detailed study of structural linguistics and sociolinguistics. The aim of the course is to introduce students to on-going debates about language as a meaningful sign, as well as language as a structured and rule-governed system. Topics may include: morphology and syntax; phonetics and phonology; sociolinguistics and/or semantics. The discussion will draw on a wide range of languages and linguistic situations within South Africa, on the continent, and in the world.

**Lecture times:** 5th period, Tuesday – Wednesday. Lab session Thursday 5th period.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in. Attendance at lectures, lab sessions and tutorials as indicated by the department.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

**ASL2301S UNDERSTANDING LANGUAGE – MEANING AND STRUCTURE B**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor A Deumert

**Course entry requirements:** This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ASL1300F or ASL1301S and ASL2300F or (b) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (b) should arrange to see the Head of Department as early as possible.

**Course outline:**

The course builds on ASL2300F and further consolidates the work of the first semester, delving deeper into the study of structural linguistics and sociolinguistics. Topics may include more advanced work in: morphology and syntax; phonetics and phonology; sociolinguistics; and/or semantics. The discussion will draw on a wide range of languages and linguistic situations, within South Africa, on the continent and in the world.

**Lecture times:** 5th period, Tuesday – Wednesday. Lab session Thursday 5th period.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in. Attendance at lectures, lab sessions and tutorials as indicated by the department.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

**ASL3200F POLITICAL ECONOMY OF AFRICA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor H Chitonge

**Course entry requirements:** Third-year status.

**Course outline:**

This course will focus on critical debates on the political economy of Africa, with specific reference to Sub-Saharan Africa. It will be anchored in the works of Archie Mafeje.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

**ASL3201S LANGUAGE, POWER AND FREEDOM IN AFRICA - PRACTICES AND IDEOLOGIES**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr Z Msomi

**Course entry requirements:** Third-year status.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to the field of critical linguistics which addresses the linguistic effects of political and cultural oppression, marginalization, colonialism and coloniality. It is also a field interested in articulating a new view of language that emphasizes the experience of language as

intimate and lived, implied in structures of hegemony of power, as well as its potential for liberation, freedom and creativity.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**ASL3300F LANGUAGE: THEORETICAL AND APPLIED PERSPECTIVES A**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor A Deumert

**Course entry requirements:** This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ASL2300F and ASL2301S, or (b) successfully completed the now discontinued LIN200W, or (c) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (c) should arrange to see the Head of Department as early as possible.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces more advanced work in selected areas of linguistics. The topics cover structural/ formal linguistics, as well as sociolinguistics and linguistic anthropology. The particular focus of the course is on the interplay between theory and application, thus also introducing students to the field of (critical) applied language studies and consolidating the work covered in first and second year. The discussion will draw on a wide range of languages and linguistic situations within South Africa, on the continent and in the world.

**Lecture times:** 8th period, Monday – Tuesday. Lab session Wednesday 8th period.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in. Attendance at lectures, lab sessions and tutorials as indicated by the department.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**ASL3301S LANGUAGE: THEORETICAL AND APPLIED PERSPECTIVES B**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr S Mpendukana

**Course entry requirements:** This course is open to students who either (a) have successfully completed ASL3300F or (b) are deemed by Senate, on the recommendation of the Head of Department, to be equivalently qualified. Students wishing to be considered for admission to the course under (b) should arrange to see the Head of Department as early as possible.

**Course outline:**

This course builds on ASL3300F and further consolidates the work of the first semester, delving deeper into the study of, especially, formal linguistics and critical sociolinguistics/linguistic anthropology. As in the first semester, the focus of the course is on the interplay between theory and applications, and students will be introduced to advanced work in the field of linguistics. The discussion will draw on a wide range of languages and linguistic situations, within South Africa, on the continent and in the world.

**Lecture times:** 8th period, Monday – Tuesday. Lab session Wednesday 8th period.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in. Attendance at lectures, lab sessions and tutorials as indicated by the department.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

## ANTHROPOLOGY

The Department of Anthropology is housed in the AC Jordan Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [san-admin@uct.ac.za](mailto:san-admin@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 3678.

The letter code for all courses offered in the Department of Anthropology is ANS.

### Associate Professor and Head of Department:

D Fuh, BSc(Hons) *Buea MA Botswana PhD Basel*

### Professors:

S L Levine, BA *Bard MA PhD Temple*

F B Nyamnjoh, BA MA *Yaounde PhD Leicester*

F C Ross, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

### Emeritus Professor:

N Ndebele, MA *Cantab PhD Denver*

### Associate Professor:

H Macdonald, BA BCom MA *Otago PhD London*

### Emeritus Associate Professor:

A D Spiegel, MA PhD *Cape Town*

### Senior Lecturers:

K Mohamed, BA(Hons) *UWC MA Chicago PhD UWC*

N Solomon, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

M Swai, BSc(Hons) *Cape Town PhD New York*

### Honorary Professor:

R Boswell, SARCHI, *NMU*

### Honorary Research Associates:

S Gomes, BA *Barnard MA SOAS PhD St Andrews*

M Pentecost, MBChB *Cape Town PhD Oxon*

A Versfeld, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

### Administrative Officer:

C Machelm-Peters

### Senior Secretary:

J Knipe, BSocSc(Hons) MA *Cape Town*

## Requirements for a major in Anthropology

### [ANS01]

#### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
------	-------

#### ONE of the following:

ANS1400F	Words, Deeds, Bones and Things
ANS1401S	Introduction to Anthropology



**Second Year courses**

Code	Title
ANS2402S	Anthropology of Power and Wealth
<b>ONE of the following:</b>	
ANS2401F	Medical Anthropology
ANS2404S	Anthropology of Rural Environment ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )

**Third Year courses**

Code	Title
ANS3400F	The Challenge of Culture
ANS3401S	Anthropology through Ethnography
<b>Additional compulsory (core) course for the major (not credit bearing):</b>	
ANS2400Z	Anthropological Fieldwork (normally taken in third year of study)

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **ANS2401F**: one of ANS1401S, ANS1400F, or by permission of the Head of Department;
- (ii) For **ANS2402S** and **ANS2404S**: two of ANS1401S, ANS1400F, ANS2401F, or by permission of the Head of Department;
- (iii) For **ANS3400F**: two of ANS2402S, ANS2404S, ANS2401F, or by permission of the Head of Department;
- (iv) For **ANS3401S**: ANS3400F and two of ANS2401F, ANS2402S, ANS2404S, or by permission of the Head of Department;
- (v) For **ANS2400Z**: declared intention to major in Anthropology and admission to, but preferably completion of, at least two of ANS2401F, ANS2402S, ANS2404S, ANS3400F, ANS3401S;
- (vi) Semester Study Abroad students intending to register for ANS2000 and ANS3000 level courses must be able to demonstrate prior understanding of the basic principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.

*NOTE: All students planning to major in Anthropology MUST complete ANS2400Z in their third year of study.*

**Course outlines:**

*NOTE: Research Methods components are integrated into all undergraduate courses in the form of small research projects, culminating in the non-credit bearing course, ANS2400Z for students planning to major in Anthropology.*

**ANS1400F WORDS, DEEDS, BONES & THINGS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr M Swai

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course is an introduction to Anthropology. Anthropology is explored through four contingent entry points: "Words" focuses on intra- and cross-cultural meaning making; "Deeds" examines the individual's agency within social contexts; "Things" analyses interaction with objects and "Bones" introduces basic principles of archaeology. The course privileges hands-on immersion into anthropology and provides an overview of its complex history. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' life worlds and is cognisant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including multilingual pedagogies and digital literacy, which allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Wednesday, Thursday, Friday 1<sup>st</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at tutorials and submission of all written work, plus class test.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 100%.

---

**ANS1401S INTRODUCTION TO ANTHROPOLOGY**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr N Solomon

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

Examining social phenomena comparatively allows us to understand that what we take for granted is the result of complex processes that produce different social forms in different places over time. An introduction to anthropology's comparative perspective, the course explores anthropology's theoretical underpinnings and methodological approaches. It includes a small research project that will enable students to think about methodological and ethical issues in research.

**Lecture times:** Wednesday, Thursday, Friday 1<sup>st</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at tutorials and submission of all written work, plus class test.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 100%.

---

**ANS1403S INTRODUCTION TO ANTHROPOLOGY +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr N Solomon

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** ANS1401S.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: ANS1401S (Introduction to the Anthropology of Development and Difference). It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tutorials that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**DP requirements:** No DP requirements.

**Assessment:** This course will be assessed on a Pass/Fail basis. In order to receive a pass grade, students will be required to complete at least 70% of all course requirements (attendance at tutorials, submission of exercises, etc.)

---

**ANS2400Z ANTHROPOLOGICAL FIELDWORK**

*NOTE: This is a non-credit bearing course, compulsory for the major in Anthropology.*

0 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor H Macdonald

**Course entry requirements:** Declared intention to major in Anthropology and admission to, but preferably completion of, at least two of ANS2401F, ANS2402S, ANS2404S, ANS3400F, ANS3401S.

**Course outline:**

This course comprises participation in a short, supervised fieldwork trip resulting in a compulsory written report. A co- and/or pre-requisite for participation in this fieldwork is the successful completion of small fieldwork exercises, and reports on each, as required by the other courses taken towards the major in Anthropology. (Students who complete an independent supervised ethnographic study for the elective course ANS3402FS may be exempted from the requirement to complete ANS2400Z for purposes of the major in Anthropology.)

**DP requirements:** Participation.

**Assessment:** To pass the course, students must participate fully in the fieldwork project and complete a written report.

---

**ANS2401F INTRODUCTION TO MEDICAL ANTHROPOLOGY**

*NOTE: This course may also be offered in Winter Term - please consult the Faculty.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor H Macdonald

**Course entry requirements:** ANS1400F; ANS1401S; ANS1402F; ANS1403S; AFS1100S or any first-year cognate discipline including African Studies, Gender Studies, or Social Science courses or by permission of the Head of Department. Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the basic principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.

**Course outline:**

Comparative anthropological approaches to the social-cultural aspects of health, disease and health care; health-related beliefs and behaviour in a range of different social contexts and global health formations; 'traditional' healers and the transmission of health-related knowledge. The course is particularly concerned with comparative social-cultural understandings of HIV/AIDS and TB, and includes a small field research/exercise project that is likely to focus on that issue as it manifests in southern Africa.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 100%.

### ANS2402S ANTHROPOLOGY OF POWER & WEALTH

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor H Macdonald

**Course entry requirements:** ANS1400F; ANS1401S; ANS1402F; ANS1403S; ANS2401F; AFS1100S or any first-year cognate discipline including African Studies, Gender Studies, or any Social Science course or by permission of the Head of Department. Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the basic principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.

**Course outline:**

This course examines the symbiotic relationship between power and wealth. Part I explores power, how it is produced, the way it works and its relationship with inequality; Part II examines the production and circulation of wealth through the lens of economic anthropology; Part III focuses on neoliberalism through an anthropological critique of colonisation and development. The course includes a short ethnographic project.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 100%.

### ANS3400F THE CHALLENGE OF CULTURE

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr K Mohamed

**Course entry requirements:** Two of ANS2401FS, ANS2402FS, ANS2404S, ANS3401F; or by permission of the Head of Department. Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.

**Course outline:**

The course explores theories of culture and their historical development, examining how they have been applied in specific contexts and tracing epistemological limitations. Spanning a range of approaches and critical perspectives, the course interrogates how we understand human world-making practices and the relations, connections and schisms between people, environments and things. It uses a range of comparative ethnographic examples, drawn from around the world to demonstrate how theory has been applied. It includes at least one small field research project/exercise.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 50%; one three-hour examination counts 50%, provided a sub-minimum mark of 50% is attained for the examination **and**

that at least half the examination questions required to be answered have been awarded marks of 50% or more.

---

**ANS3401S ANTHROPOLOGY THROUGH ETHNOGRAPHY**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor F Nyamnjoh

**Course entry requirements:** ANS2401F; ANS2402S; ANS3400F; or by permission of the Head of Department. Semester Study Abroad students must be able to demonstrate understanding of the principles of the comparative approach of Social-Cultural Anthropology, including Cultural Relativism and its limitations.

**Course outline:**

The course analyses ethnographic praxis to teach practical research skills and engage critically with disciplinary knowledge practices and their legacies. Students develop and refine an ethnographic research project by drawing on critical traditions within anthropology. The course uses individual and collaborative approaches to enable students to understand knowledge-power relations and to develop an ethical critical epistemology.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** All essays, assignments and projects, plus a satisfactory tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, class tests) counts 100%.

---

## ARCHAEOLOGY

The Department is housed in the Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [lynn.cable@uct.ac.za](mailto:lynn.cable@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2353.

The letter code for the Department is AGE.

Departmental website: <http://www.archaeology.uct.ac.za>

**Associate Professor and Head of Department:**

D D Stynder, MA PhD *Cape Town*

**Professor and South African Research Chair in Stable Isotopes in Archaeology and Paleo-environmental Studies:**

J C Sealy, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

**Professor:**

R R Ackermann, MA *Arizona* PhD *Wash U St Louis*

**Adjunct Professor:**

S Chirikure, MA PhD *London*

**Associate Professor:**

A Esterhuysen PhD *Witwatersrand* HdipEd *Unisa*

**Senior Research Scholars:**

J E Parkington, MA PhD *Cantab*

S L Hall, MA *Witwatersrand* DPhil *Stell*

**Senior Lecturers:**

V Hare, MSc PhD *Oxon*

Y Sahle, MA *Addis Ababa* PhD *Cape Town*

**Lecturer:**

V Lupuwana, MA PhD *Cape Town*

**Research Officer:**

J Luyt, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

**Chief Scientific Officer:**

L Hutten, BSc(Hons) MSc *Pret*

**Laboratory Assistant:**

M Januarie

**Departmental Assistant:**

M Kanye

**Administrative Officer:**

L J Cable

**Requirements for a major in Archaeology**

**[AGE01]**

**Second Year courses**

---

AGE2012F      The First People

---

AGE2011S Human Evolution

**Third Year courses**

---

AGE3013H Archaeology in Practice

**ONE of the following:**

AGE3011F The Roots of Recent African Identities

AGE3012S Global Interaction and the Archaeology of the Historical Past

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **AGE2012F**: any first-year Science course; or any one of AXL1400F or AGE1002S or equivalent first-year semesters; or AGE2011S; or any first-year Humanities course from cognate disciplines such as Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology; or by permission of the Head of Department
- (ii) For **AGE2011S**: AGE1002S or AXL1400F; or any first-year Science course; or any first-year Humanities course from cognate disciplines such as Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology; or by permission of the Head of Department
- (iii) For **AGE3013H**: AGE2012F and AGE2011S, or by permission of the Head of Department
- (iv) For **AGE3011F** and **AGE3012S**: AGE2011S or AGE2012F, or by permission of the Head of Department

*NOTE:*

*Lectures are usually given four times a week, but the fifth day may also be used and should therefore be kept free.*

**Course outlines:**

**NB: Archaeology courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by a general BA or BSocSc, except for the courses specified in Rule FB5.8.**

**Undergraduate Courses**

*Lectures are usually held four times a week, but the fifth day may also be used and should therefore be kept free.*

**First-Year Courses**

---

**AGE1002S THE HUMAN PLANET: PREHISTORY TO PRESENT**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr V J Hare

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This aim of this course is to introduce the study of archaeology, and the study of human origins. Archaeology is defined as the study of the human past through material culture. Over the second semester, this course presents an overview of prehistory leading up to the modern day, as well as the broader climatic, geographic, ecological, social, and cultural contexts which made modern humans. In particular, it looks at the past through the lens of what people leave behind - the archaeological record.

What you can expect to take away from this course:

- A broad understanding of the timescales of human prehistory, and our interactions with the Earth System, from the Early Pleistocene through to the Historical period, and the emergence of present day societies (the "Anthropocene").
- An understanding of current concepts in archaeological thought, and the complexities of relationships between archaeologists, science, and society today.

- Familiarity with the foundational skills and terminology necessary for present-day archaeological research and investigation.

This broad course is suitable for all undergraduate students in the sciences and humanities; but particularly for those wishing to major in Archaeology, Environmental & Geographical Science, or cognate subjects.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 5th period

**DP requirements:** Attendance at lectures and tutorials and completion of assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments and class tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour examination written in November counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the examination.

## AGE1005L TOWARDS A DECOLONISED SCIENCE IN SOUTH AFRICA

*(offered during winter term)*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor R Ackermann

### **Course outline:**

This course addresses some key topics relevant to the decolonization of science in South Africa. Course objectives are as follows: (1) to contrast the science behind human diversity (e.g. skin colour variation, sex) with socially-constructed categories (e.g. race, gender binary); (2) to demonstrate how the history of racism and gender bias has limited the focus of scientific enquiry; (3) to highlight the importance of diversity and diverse voices in the production of scientific knowledge, (4) to show how African voices in particular have shaped and are continuing to shape the trajectory of science. The approach is a blended learning environment which combines online lectures, tutorials, tasks, and assessments. Guests both within UCT and from further afield will be brought in to supplement material through lectures, interviews and/or short case studies.

**Assessment:** Class participation (workshops/tutorials and online discussions) 20%, online tests 20%, final exam 30%, final project 30%. NOTE: The allocation of 30% to the final exam breaks with the traditional 50% threshold. Given the format and intense interactive nature of the courses, the decision has been made that a large component of student assessment should be a course project which allows them to engage with and reflect on their changing understanding of decolonisation and race in the course. This project will be equal weight to the exam, and will be externally examined.

## Second-Year Courses

### AGE2011S HUMAN EVOLUTION

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor R Ackermann

**Course entry requirements:** Any first-year Science course, or any first-year Humanities course from a related discipline such as Social Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology, etc or by permission of the Head of Department.

### **Course outline:**

In AGE2011S we examine the record of primate and human evolution, showing how fossil skeletons and artefacts are interpreted in terms of human behaviour and evolutionary processes. We also consider genetic and other comparative evidence that are increasingly providing insight into the origin of our lineage. We answer questions such as: Why did our ancestors evolve in Africa? How did we evolve such large and complex brains? What advantage does bipedalism provide? When do humans begin to make tools? Why is human skin colour so variable? What makes humans unique? The syllabus for AGE2011S includes practical sessions for the study of primate and human, fossil and recent skeletal material and the artefacts associated with our ancestors.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 3rd period, Practicals: One 2-hour practical per week, at times to be arranged

**DP requirements:** Attendance at lectures and practicals and completion of assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments and tests count 50%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the examination.

---

**AGE2012F THE FIRST PEOPLE**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr Y Sahle

**Course entry requirements:** Any first-year Science course; or any one of AXL1400F (was SAN1015F.) or AGE1002S or equivalent first-year semesters; or AGE2011S; or any first-year Humanities course from cognate disciplines such as Anthropology, Historical Studies, Sociology; or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

All humans living today have a common African origin. The first humans were hunter-gatherers, as were their descendants. Indeed, our ancestors were hunter-gatherers for at least 99% of our evolutionary history, which means that our physical, psychological and social selves have been shaped by this way of life. We learn about the origin and evolution of our hunter-gatherer ancestors from genetic, fossil, archaeological and ethnographic evidence. Studies of Khoesan peoples of southern Africa have contributed significantly to our understanding of such societies. In this course we focus on the hunter-gatherer way of life over the past few hundreds of thousands of years. Specific topics covered include modern human origins, the Middle and Later Stone Age, ethnographic studies of Khoesan, the origins of pastoralism, coastal vs. arid environment adaptations, rock art and symbolic interpretation, genetics and biology, revisionism, and contemporary socio-politics and identity. In the weekly practical sessions, students will conduct hands-on, problem-solving exercises with archaeological materials.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 3rd period, Practicals: One 2-hour practical per week, at times to be arranged

**DP requirements:** Attendance at lectures and practicals, completion of assignments and participation in a one-day museum trip.

**Assessment:** Assignments and practical tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour examination written in June counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the examination.

### Third-Year Courses

---

**AGE3006H DIRECTED READING & RESEARCH**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Course entry requirements:** Only for students specialising in Archaeology, with permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

A flexible intensive study course in a specific area customised to the needs of individual students.

**Lecture times:** By arrangement

**DP requirements:** Completion of assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments count 20%; a long paper counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 40%.

---

**AGE3011F THE ROOTS OF RECENT AFRICAN IDENTITIES**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Esterhuysen

**Course entry requirements:** AGE2011S or AGE2012F, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

In this course we explore the history of Africa's people over the past 2000 years with special reference to southern Africa. Why are southern African populations so diverse? What lies behind the linguistic map that we see today? What social, technological and palaeoenvironmental systems shaped the evolution of societies? Did Africa have any civilisations? Who did Africa interact with? We discuss the archaeological record of artefacts, settlement systems, food waste, environmental contexts and human skeletons. We deploy historical, material science, molecular science, anthropological and palaeoclimatic techniques to explore this rich and diverse heritage of the last two thousand years.



**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 4th period, Practicals: One 2-hour practical per week, at times to be arranged

**DP requirements:** Attendance at lectures and practicals, completion of assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments and class tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour examination written in June counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the examination.

### **AGE3012S** ARCHAEOLOGIES OF DOMINANCE AND RESISTANCE IN THE LAST-500 YEARS

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr V Lupuwana

**Course entry requirements:** AGE2011S or AGE2012F, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The period of the last-500 years greatly impacted the social lives and economies of indigenous communities in southern Africa. Preceding this period, the importance of the African continent and its products had led to increased movements and travel from both the East and the West, and from the 16th century, these movements and trade routes led to the trade in African people and increased interest in the exploitation of resources and labour on the continent. This period of interaction, domination and colonisation led to the development of new orders of power, control and trade, greatly impacting indigenous societies who were subjected to slavery, genocide and eventually, apartheid. In this course, we explore the impact of these interactions and the subsequent influence and impact of the creation of a European diaspora in southern Africa. We explore the concept of frontier as a central theme that impacts racial, gender and social relations. While being a period of intense contestation and competition for resources, this is also a period of indigenous agency and resistance. In order to examine these relations, this course explores the archaeological evidence, written sources and oral history to understand the multiple lived experiences and perspectives emblematic of the period.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 4th period, Practicals: One 2-hour practical per week, at times to be arranged

**DP requirements:** Attendance at lectures and practicals, completion of assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments and class tests count 50% towards the final mark and one 3-hour exam written in November counts 50%. A sub-minimum of 40% is required for the examination.

### **AGE3013H** ARCHAEOLOGY IN PRACTICE

*Please note that this course requires you to make yourselves available for field excursions during the first (March/April) and second (June/July) vacations of the academic year. While the majority of field excursions are likely to be day trips, there will be a four-week residential field-school during the second vacation. It is mandatory to participate fully in all field excursions.*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor D Stynder

**Course entry requirements:** AGE2011S and AGE2012F, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course will run throughout the academic year. The lecture programme (campus and field) will be flexible and a schedule will be decided upon in consultation with participating students. The curriculum covers training in site location, excavation, field note taking, stratigraphic observation, site survey, use of GPS and total station, photography, rock art recording, processing of field observations, spread sheet use, preliminary conservation and accessioning of materials, preliminary analyses and report writing.

**DP requirements:** Participation in all field excursions and completion of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments 30%; Research paper 20%; Practical examination 25%; Theory examination 25%.

---

## COMMERCIAL LAW

The Department is housed in the Wilfred and Jules Kramer Law School Building, Middle Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at [cml@uct.ac.za](mailto:cml@uct.ac.za), and by telephone at 021 650 5642.

The letter code for the Department is CML.

Departmental website: [www.commerciallaw.uct.ac.za/](http://www.commerciallaw.uct.ac.za/)

### Professor and Head of Department:

M Louw, BJuris LLB LLM LLD *Unisa* Dip(Insolvency Law and Practice)(SARIPA) *Johannesburg*

### Professional Law Courses Unit

The Professional Law Courses Unit, based in the Department of Commercial Law, delivers professional law courses to undergraduate students who are not housed in the Faculty of Law (Commerce, Humanities, Engineering & the Built Environment, and Science). Some of the courses are required for these undergraduate degree programmes, and others are offered as electives.

Across all of these service courses, the Law Faculty teaches courses for more than 2 500 non-Law students undertaking their degrees in other Faculties.

The Professional Law Courses Unit's courses are accredited by various institutions both locally and some internationally - but above all the subject matter is relevant and vibrant.

The unit can be contacted by e-mail at [toni.murphy@uct.ac.za](mailto:toni.murphy@uct.ac.za) and by telephone at 021 650 5642.

Unit website: [www.commerciallaw.uct.ac.za/law-courses-other-faculties](http://www.commerciallaw.uct.ac.za/law-courses-other-faculties)

### Senior Lecturer and Director of the Professional Law Courses Unit:

J Franco, BA LLB *Cape Town* Attorney and Notary Public and Conveyancer of the High Court

### Senior Lecturers:

F Adams, BA(Law) LLB LLM LLD *Johannesburg* Attorney of the High Court

M Maphiri LLB *Limpopo* LLM PhD *Cape Town*

T Thabane, BA(Law) LLB *Lesotho* LLM *Pretoria* PhD *Cape Town* Advocate of the High Court\*

### Lecturers:

C de Villiers, LLB LLM LLD *Stellenbosch* Attorney of the High Court

S Mesthrie, BA LLB LLM *Cape Town* Attorney of the High Court

L Mkhwanazi, LLB *Western Cape* LLM *Cape Town*

B Zungu, BCom(Law) *Johannesburg* LLB PGDip(Taxation) LLM *Cape Town*

### Administrator:

T Murphy

### Course outlines:

**NB:** *Commercial Law may NOT be taken by Humanities students in their first year of study.*

*Commercial Law courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by a general BA or BSocSc.*

---

### CML1001F BUSINESS LAW I

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** S Mesthrie

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

The purpose of the course is to provide students with a general introduction to the South African legal system, with its main focus the law of contract. The course starts with an overview of the South African court structure and contemporary sources and branches of South African law, and also introduces students to the Constitution and the impact that it continues to have on legal development. The course then provides students with a general but comprehensive introduction to the general principles of contract, focusing on formation of contracts, the content of contracts, breach of contract and remedies for breach. The course also aims to provide students with an introduction to certain specific contracts, most notably contracts of sale, lease and agency. The general principles of contract are supplemented by a consideration of legislation, in particular the provisions of the Consumer Protection Act, where relevant.

**Lecture times:** The course is an intensive one, with 5 contact periods per week for the full semester.

**DP requirements:** Coursework is compulsory. If the student does not submit hand-ins or write a test the student will receive a mark of 0 for that assessment (unless granted an exemption). But the student will be able to write the exam.

**Assessment:** Coursework 40%; final examination 60%.

---

### **CML2001F COMPANY LAW**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr M Maphiri

**Course entry requirements:** Business Law 1 and no undergraduate student in his/her first year of study may register for Company Law.

**Course outline:**

The course offers an overview of the laws that govern the nature, formation, and management of partnerships, trusts, companies and close corporations with the main focus being on companies. Students are encouraged to apply the analytical abilities acquired in previous law courses and these skills are further developed. After the course students will be able to, amongst others, navigate the Companies Act 71 of 2008 and will be familiar with its core provisions and their practical impact.

**Lecture times:** The course is an intensive one with 5 contact periods per week for the full semester.

**DP requirements:** Coursework is compulsory. If the student does not submit hand-ins or write a test the student will receive a mark of 0 for that assessment (unless granted an exemption). But the student will be able to write the exam.

**Assessment:** Coursework 40%; final examination 60%.

---

### **CML2005F LABOUR LAW**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** L Mkhwanazi

**Course entry requirements:** No undergraduate student in his/her first year of study may take Labour Law. It is recommended that students have passed a foundation course in law, e.g. Business Law I.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to provide students with an understanding of the common law contract of employment and labour law statutes; including the Labour Relations Act; Basic Conditions of the Employment Act; and the Employment Equity Act. The course will specifically focus on the following issues that commonly arise in the workplace: the legal definition of 'employee'; discipline and dismissals; unfair labour practices; unfair discrimination in employment and recruitment and selection; employment equity issues; collective bargaining; strikes and lock-outs; and dispute resolution.

**Lecture times:** This course is an intensive one, with 3 lectures per week for the full semester.

**DP requirements:** Coursework is compulsory. If the student does not submit hand-ins or write a test the student will receive a mark of 0 for that assessment (unless granted an exemption). But the student will be able to write the exam.

**Assessment:** Coursework 40%; final examination 60%.

**CML2010Z BUSINESS LAW II**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** \*J Franco**Course entry requirements:** Business Law I. No undergraduate student in the first year of study may register for Business Law II.**Co-requisites:** None**Course outline:**

Business law 2 is designed to give students an understanding of commercial transactions, how they are financed, and the risks involved. The course covers insolvency, credit agreements, stokvels and the various forms of security that can be used to finance commercial transactions. By the end of the course, students should have an appreciation of the types of legal issues that commonly arise in financing transactions – how creditors can best secure themselves in the event of non-payment and ultimately the risk of insolvency and how debtors are protected under the National Credit Act.

The course also covers public sector financial management, looking specifically at the legal obligations set out in the Public Finance Management Act 1999 and the Municipal Finance Management Act 2003 and related laws.

**Lecture times:** The course is an intensive one with 5 contact periods per week for 8 weeks in Semester 2.

**DP requirements:** Writing the test is compulsory. If a student does not write the test and does not get an exemption then the student will be marked absent and awarded 0 for the test. But the student will be able to write the exam.

**Assessment:** Coursework 30% and final examination 70%

**SUMMER TERM SERVICE COURSES**

**Admission Criteria:** The following courses will be limited to a **maximum of 75 students**. Once this number has been reached, no further students will be registered for the course.

Note: A first year student may not do a law course during Summer Term.

Note: Students may not anticipate a course in order to lighten their standard workload

In addition to the above, only the following students are eligible to do these law courses in Summer Term:

- a) Semester Study Abroad Students (from UCT), registered in the Commerce Faculty who need the course to graduate in the current year;
- b) Construction Studies students who require Business Law I as a prerequisite for CON3032W and who already have a full credit load and which could impact on their graduation;
- c) Students for whom the course is the only course required in order to graduate (i.e. it is the only scheduled course outstanding for the degree);
- d) Students who require the course in order to graduate in the current year of study and who are already carrying a normal scheduled workload.

Note: In the event of an over-subscription students may have to be de-registered for the course and preference will be given to students in the order of the above categories i.e. first group (a), second group (b) and so on. **Students must register by 1 October and will be notified by the end of October if they are to de-register. But students in categories (c) and (d) may register up to 15 December.**

Note: A course will only run if a **minimum of 45 students** register for the course – if fewer students register, the course will be withdrawn due to insufficient demand.

The authority and responsibility for administering the admission criteria and registering students on the Summer Term programme rests with each student's home faculty.

**STUDENTS MUST STATE WHICH CATEGORY (a-d) THEY FALL INTO WHEN REGISTERING.**

---

**CML1001P BUSINESS LAW I - SUMMER TERM**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

Refer to course outline for CML1001F/CML1004S.

**Lecture times:** Lectures are offered on a daily basis for three hours over a four-week period.

**DP requirements:** Writing the test is compulsory. If a student does not write the test and does not get an exemption then the student will be marked absent and awarded 0 for the test. But the student will be able to write the exam.

**Assessment:** Test 40%; final examination 60%.

---

**CML2001P COMPANY LAW - SUMMER TERM**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** No undergraduate student in the first year of study may register for Company Law. Business Law I is a prerequisite for Company Law, and students cannot register for Company Law unless they successfully completed Business Law I in the previous year of study.

**Course outline:**

Refer to course outline for CML2001F.

**Lecture times:** Lectures are offered on a daily basis for three hours over a four-week period

**DP requirements:** Writing the test is compulsory. If a student does not write the test and does not get an exemption then the student will be marked absent and awarded 0 for the test. But the student will be able to write the exam.

**Assessment:** Test 40%; final examination 60%.

---

**CML2005P LABOUR LAW - SUMMER TERM**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** No undergraduate student in his/her first year of study may take Labour Law. It is recommended that students have passed a foundation course in law, e.g. Business Law I.

**Course outline:**

Refer to course outline for CML2005F.

**Lecture times:** Lectures are offered on a daily basis for three hours over a four-week period.

**DP requirements:** Writing the test is compulsory. If a student does not write the test and does not get an exemption then the student will be marked absent and awarded 0 for the test. But the student will be able to write the exam

**Assessment:** Test 40%; final examination 60%

---

**CML2010P BUSINESS LAW II - SUMMER TERM**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** Business Law I. No undergraduate student in the first year of study may register for Business Law II.

**Course outline:**

Refer to course outline for CML 2010Z.

**Lecture times:** Lectures are offered on a daily basis for three hours over a four-week period.

**DP requirements:** Writing the test is compulsory. If a student does not write the test and does not get an exemption then the student will be marked absent and awarded 0 for the test. But the student will be able to write the exam.

**Assessment:** Test 30% and final examination 70%.

---

## COMPUTER SCIENCE

The Department is housed in the Computer Science Building, 18 University Avenue  
 Telephone (021) 650-2663  
 The Departmental abbreviation for Computer Science is CSC.

The Department of Computer Science forms part of the School of IT.  
 The School focuses on leveraging the excellent research and teaching of both departments to provide students with the relevant knowledge and skills to contribute to the international and South African Information Technology Communities.

For further detail and degree options, see [www.sit.uct.ac.za](http://www.sit.uct.ac.za)

### **Professor and Head of Department:**

M Kuttel, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

### **DSI/NRF-UCT SARCHI Chair in Artificial Intelligence (AI) systems:**

D Moodley, MSc *UNP* PhD *KwaZulu-Natal*

### **Professors:**

J E Gain, MSc *Rhodes* PhD *Cantab*

T A Meyer, MSc *RAU* PhD *Unisa*

R Simmonds, BSc PhD *Bath*

H Suleman, MSc *UDW* PhD *Virginia Tech*

### **Adjunct Professor:**

A C M Hutchison, MSc HDE(PG) *Sec Cape Town* PhD *Zurich*

### **Honorary Professor:**

I J Varzinczak PhD *Université Paul Sabatier*

### **Associate Professors:**

S Berman, BSc *Rhodes* MSc PhD *Cape Town*

M Densmore, BA *Cornell* MSc *UCL* PhD *Berkeley*

M Keet, BSc Hons *OU* MSc *Wageningen* MA *Limerick* PhD *Bozen-Bolzano*

P C Marais, MSc *Cape Town* DPhil *Oxon*

G Nitschke, BSc Hons *Curtin* PhD *VU Amsterdam*

### **Adjunct Associate Professor:**

D Johnson, BEng *Cape Town* MEng *Pret* PhD *Santa Barbara*

### **Senior Lecturers:**

J M Buys, MSc *Stellenbosch* DPhil *Oxon*

J Chavula, MSc *Lancaster* PhD *Cape Town*

A Saffla, MSc *KwaZulu-Natal*

G Stewart, BSc Hons *Cape Town*

### **Adjunct Senior Lecturer:**

G Casini PhD *Pisa*

### **Lecturers:**

Z Mahlaza, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

F Meyer, MSc *Amsterdam*

K Prag, MSc *Witwatersrand*

**Honorary Research Associate:**

J Heyninck, PhD *Ruhr*

**Computer System Managers:**

C Balfour, BSocSc *Cape Town* BA (SS) Hons *Unisa*

S Chetty, IT Management Cert *Cape Town*

**Chief Scientific Officer:**

S Jamieson, MSc *London*

**Senior Scientific Officer:**

L Poulo, MSc *Cape Town*

**Administrative Officers:**

T Jenneker

T Potgieter MSc *Pretoria*

**Administrative Assistant:**

S Apollis

**Senior Secretary:**

TBA

**Departmental Assistant:**

B J Sam

**RESEARCH IN COMPUTER SCIENCE**

Research in the Department is organised into well-equipped laboratories funded by international, governmental and industrial sponsors. More information can be obtained on the Departmental Web pages or by writing to the department.

**ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE RESEARCH UNIT AND CENTRE FOR ARTIFICIAL INTELLIGENCE RESEARCH** (Co-Director: Professor Tommie Meyer, Co-Director: Associate Professor Deshen Moodley). The Artificial Intelligence Research Unit (AIRU) is an accredited research unit in the Department of Computer Science. Through its two research focus areas, Knowledge Representation and Reasoning, and Adaptive and Cognitive Systems, AIRU aims to harness blue sky research to explore innovative applications of Artificial Intelligence that can serve to advance social and economic development in South Africa and Africa. AIRU also hosts the Centre for Artificial Intelligence Research (CAIR). CAIR is a national distributed research centre with research groupings across eight South African universities. CAIR conducts research in both the foundational and applied aspects of Artificial Intelligence.

**COLLABORATIVE VISUAL COMPUTING** (Co-ordinator: Professor James Gain). Topics of research include: Collaborative Virtual Environments; Usability and Human-Computer Interaction; Computer Graphics; Computer vision and machine learning for 2D/3D scene analysis; and Virtual Reality. Special interests within the CVC lab include Virtual Environments, Modelling and Procedural Graphics.

**DIGITAL LIBRARIES** (Co-ordinator: Professor Hussein Suleman). Research areas covered within digital libraries include information retrieval; ontologies; natural language processing and generation; digital archives and repositories; interoperability and protocols and cultural heritage preservation.

**EVOLUTIONARY MACHINE LEARNING** (Co-ordinator: Associate Professor Geoff Nitschke). The main focus of the research group is to devise new methods using algorithmic techniques from a broad range of biologically inspired machine learning sub-fields such as evolutionary computation and artificial neural networks as well as statistical machine learning and apply such methods to adapt

artificial brains on various experimental platforms, including: evolutionary-robotic, artificial life and agent-based systems.

**HIGH PERFORMANCE COMPUTING** (Co-ordinator: Professor Michelle Kuttel). This laboratory investigates aspects of high-performance computing, including: parallel algorithms; multi-core and GPU programming; computational science; and scientific visualisation.

**HUMAN-COMPUTER INTERACTION** (Co-ordinator: Associate Professor Melissa Densmore). This laboratory takes a community-centred approach to the design and deployment of systems. Domains of research include design for mothers, design for community-health workers, local content creation for communities, media-based peer health education, and co-design across borders, with a focus on the role of HCI in making effective, usable and sustainable systems to address problems of inequality and social justice.

**KNOWLEDGE ENGINEERING** (Co-ordinator: Associate Professor Maria Keet). The aim of the team's activities is to contribute computing theory, methods, and techniques to the knowledge society. The scope of the KEEN team is knowledge engineering in its broad sense. This includes ontology engineering, the Semantic Web, intelligent (logic-based, ontology-driven) conceptual modelling, and natural language generation.

**NATURAL LANGUAGE PROCESSING** (Co-ordinator: Dr Jan Buys). This research group investigates aspects of natural language processing through the development of data-driven machine learning methods. Research topics include: methods for automatic text generation, language modelling and machine translation; supervised and unsupervised models for discovering linguistic structure in text; and developing datasets and NLP models for low-resource languages, with a particular focus on African and South African languages.

**NETWORK AND INFORMATION SECURITY** (Co-ordinator: Professor Andrew Hutchison). This group aims to design and implement network security protocols to address problems of security in web services, cloud computing environments and enterprise environments; research includes goal-oriented protocol design and identity management.

**NETWORKING FOR DEVELOPMENT** (Co-ordinators: Dr Josiah Chavula and Associate Professor David L Johnson). The Net4D laboratory focuses on the design and implementation of network infrastructure suitable for developing regions, as well as methods for sharing information in resource-scarce areas using alternative technologies. Main areas of research include Network Measurements, Wireless Community Networks, Localised Cloud Services, Software Defined Networking (SDN), and AI-driven network engineering. Our work involves a mix of creating solutions using network theory and systems, combined with trial networks that provide tangible measurable results.

## Requirements for a major in Computer Science

### [CSC05]

#### First Year courses

Code	Title
CSC1015FS	Computer Science 1015
CSC1016S	Computer Science 1016
MAM1008S	Introduction to Discreet Mathematics <b>OR</b>
STA100x/F/S	Any 1000-level Science STA course <b>OR</b>
<b>MAM1019H</b>	Fundamentals of Mathematics
MAM1004F	Mathematics 1004 <b>OR</b>
MAM1031F	Mathematics 1031

#### Second Year courses

Code	Title
CSC2001F	Computer Science 2001
CSC2002S	Computer Science 2002
CSC2004Z	Programming Assessment
INF2009F	Systems Analysis <b>OR</b>
<b>CSC2042S</b>	Introduction to AI 2: Machine Learning



**Third Year courses**


---

Code	Title
CSC3002F	Computer Science 3002
CSC3003S	Computer Science 3003

**First-Year Courses****CSC1015F/S** COMPUTER SCIENCE 1015

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** A Safla and K Prag

**Course entry requirements:** At least 70% for NSC Mathematics. *Students registered for this course will be assessed in week 5; if it is judged that they are not coping with the level and pace of the course, and would benefit from an opportunity to strengthen foundational concepts and learn new material at a slower pace, they will be required to transfer to CSC1010H from week 7.*

**Course outline:**

This course is an introduction to problem solving, algorithm development and programming in the Python language. It includes fundamental programming constructs and abstractions, sorting and searching techniques, and machine representations of data. The practical component covers input/output, conditionals, loops, strings, functions, arrays, lists, dictionaries, recursion, text files and exceptions in Python. Students are taught testing and debugging, as well as sorting and searching algorithms, algorithm complexity and equivalence classes. Number systems, binary arithmetic, Boolean algebra and logic gates are also introduced. The course is offered in a blended-learning format: students are provided with a set of online video lectures and contact time is in a tutorial/practical format aimed at reinforcing the principles introduced in the online lectures and giving students time to do exercises under the supervision of tutors.

**Lecture times:** 4th or 5th period once per week, Tutorials: One per week, replacing one lecture, Practicals: One per week, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday or Thursday 14h00 - 16h00 or 16h00 - 18h00

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

**Assessment:** Theory tests 15%; practical tests and practical assignments 25%; June examination 2 hours 60%. Subminima: 45% for practicals, 45% on weighted average of theory tests and examination.

**CSC1016S** COMPUTER SCIENCE 1016

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** A Safla

**Course entry requirements:** CSC1015F (At least 45% for CSC1015F or at least 70% for CSC1017F)

**Course outline:**

This course builds on the foundation of CSC1015F/CSC1010H, with a focus on object-oriented design and programming in Java, as well as introducing important considerations relating to Human Computer Interaction and interface design. The Java component of the course covers object-oriented design techniques and UML diagrams, as well as elementary data structures such as lists, stacks and queues. The practical component includes use of inheritance, polymorphism, interfaces, generics and GUI programming in Java.

**Lecture times:** 4th or 5th period daily, Tutorials: One per week, replacing one lecture, Practicals: One per week, Monday, Tuesday or Wednesday, 14h00 - 16h00 or 16h00 - 18h00

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

**Assessment:** Theory tests count 15%; practical tests and practical assignments count 25%; one 2-hour exam written in November counts 60%. Subminima: 45% for practicals and 45% on weighted average of theory tests and examination.

## Second-Year Courses

---

### **CSC2001F** COMPUTER SCIENCE 2001

*Each student registered for this course is required to have a laptop for use during class sessions as well as after hours. The minimum specifications of the laptop are available at [https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop\\_requirement.html](https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop_requirement.html) (a tablet will not be suitable). The course convener will provide details of additional software (open source) required.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** F Meyer

**Course entry requirements:** (CSC1015F and CSC1016S) or (CSC1010H and CSC1011H)

**Course outline:**

This course builds on the first year Computer Science foundation with an emphasis on data storage and manipulation. The course covers abstract data types and assertions, recursive algorithms, tree structures such as AVL and B-trees, graph traversals, minimum spanning trees, sets, hashing and priority queues. An introduction to conceptual modelling, database design and relational database manipulation is included. Practical programming in Java in a Unix environment is an important part of the course

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 2nd period, Four or five lectures per week, Practicals: One 4-hour practical per week, Monday - Friday, 14h00 - 18h00

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

**Assessment:** Tests 20%; practicals and practical test 30%; exam 50%. Subminima: 45% on weighted average of theory tests and examination.

---

### **CSC2002S** COMPUTER SCIENCE 2002

*Each student registered for this course is required to have a laptop for use during class sessions as well as after hours. The minimum specifications of the laptop are available at [https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop\\_requirement.html](https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop_requirement.html) (a tablet will not be suitable). The course convener will provide details of additional software (open source) required.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Berman

**Course entry requirements:** CSC2001F (At least 45% for CSC2001F)

**Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to build on the foundational concepts covered in CSC2001F, with further necessary core topics of an undergraduate Computer Science curriculum. These topics comprise: concurrent and parallel computing (including practical work in Java); computer architecture; an introduction to Society, Ethics, and the Profession (covering ethical issues such as property rights, freedom of expression and privacy, free and open source software); and Theory of Computing (including Turing Machines and the limits of computation).

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 2nd period, Four lectures per week, Practicals: One 4-hour practical per week, Monday - Friday, 14h00 - 18h00

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

**Assessment:** Tests 20%; practicals and practical test 30%; exam 50%. Subminima: 45% on weighted average of theory tests and examination.

---

### **CSC2004Z** PROGRAMMING ASSESSMENT

*This is a required course for all students majoring in Computer Science and/or who wish to continue to any third year courses in Computer Science. It should be taken in the second year of study and will demonstrate competency in programming, which is assumed in all third year courses. It is a compulsory course in the Computer Science major CSC05.*

0 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Berman

**Course entry requirements:** (CSC1015F and CSC1016S) or (CSC1010H and CSC1011H)

**Course outline:**

All students who take advanced courses in Computer Science need to build on a foundation of strong programming skills. The aim of this course is to assess and confirm mastery in fundamental programming skills before students can proceed to advanced courses.

**Lecture times:** None

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Practical programming examination counts for 100%

### **CSC2042S** INTRODUCTION TO AI 2: MACHINE LEARNING

*Each student registered for this course is required to have a laptop for use during class sessions as well as after hours. The minimum specifications of the laptop are available at [https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop\\_requirement.html](https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop_requirement.html) (a tablet will not be suitable). The course convenor will provide details of additional software (open source) required.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr J Buys

**Course entry requirements:** CSC1015F/S, CSC1016S, MAM1031F or MAM1004F

**Course outline:**

Machine learning is introduced as a paradigm for Artificial Intelligence. Fundamental machine learning algorithms are introduced, and students implement a subset of those using the Python programming language and modern machine learning frameworks in Python. There is a focus on problem formulation, feature representations and evaluation.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 3rd period, Four lectures per week, Practicals: One 4-hour practical per week, Monday - Friday, 14h00 - 18h00

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

**Assessment:** Tests 25%; practicals and practical test 25%; examination 50%. Subminima: 45% on weighted average of theory tests and examination.

### **Third-Year Courses**

### **CSC3002F** COMPUTER SCIENCE 3002

*Each student registered for this course is required to have a laptop for use during class sessions as well as after hours. The minimum specifications of the laptop are available at [https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop\\_requirement.html](https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop_requirement.html) (a tablet will not be suitable). The course convenor will provide details of additional software (open source) required.*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor P Marais

**Course entry requirements:** CSC2001F, CSC2002S, CSC2004Z and ((MAM1004F+MAM1008S) or (MAM1000W) or (MAM1031F or equivalent)).

**Course outline:**

The course provides an introduction to the structure and organization of operating systems, and computer networks including various logical layers of the ISO OSI layers, focusing on the Internet Protocol suite.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 2nd period, Practicals: Two 4-hour practicals per week, Monday - Friday, 14h00 - 18h00

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

**Assessment:** Tests count 15%; practical work counts 35%; one 3-hour paper written in June counts 50%. Subminima: 45% for practicals; 45% on weighted average of theory tests and examinations.

### **CSC3003S** COMPUTER SCIENCE 3003

*Each student registered for this course is required to have a laptop for use during class sessions as well as after hours. The minimum specifications of the laptop are available at [https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop\\_requirement.html](https://internal.cs.uct.ac.za/teaching/laptop_requirement.html) (a tablet will not be suitable). The course convenor will provide details of additional software (open source) required.*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor P Marais

**Course entry requirements:** CSC2001F, CSC2002S, CSC2004Z and ((MAM1004F+MAM1008S) or (MAM1000W) or (MAM1031F or equivalent)).

**Course outline:**

This is a course on two advanced topics: (1) advanced software design is about turning requirements into effective and efficient implementations in a systematic manner; and (2) the algorithms module expands on a topic central to computing. This module describes how algorithms are categorised, and shows interesting algorithms in each category and analyses their complexity. It also touches on Turing machines and the limits of computation.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 2nd period, Practicals: Two 4-hour practicals per week, Monday - Friday, 14h00 - 18h00

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 45% aggregate in practical work.

**Assessment:** Tests count 15%; practical work counts 35%; one 3-hour paper written in November counts 50%. Subminima: 45% for practicals, 45% on weighted average of theory tests and 35% for the algorithms module (comprising Theory of Algorithms and Theory of Computation) in the final examination.

---

## ECONOMICS, SCHOOL OF

The School is housed in the School of Economics Building, Middle Campus

The letter code for the Department is ECO.

Telephone number: (021) 650-5751.

Departmental website: <http://www.commerce.uct.ac.za/school-economics>

### Director of the School and Professor:

E Nikolaidou, BSc *Thessaloniki* MA PhD *London*

### Professors:

C Ardington, BSc(Hons) MSc PhD *Cape Town*

H Bhorat, BSocSc(Hons) *Cape Town* MA PhD *Stell*

J Burns, BCom(Hons) *Natal* MPhil *Camtab* PhD *Massachusetts*

B Conradie, BSc(Hons) MSc *Stell* PhD *Colorado*

L Edwards, BA *Cape Town* BA(Hons) *Rhodes* MA MSc LSE PhD *Cape Town*

R Daniels, BSc MA *Auckland* PhD *Cape Town*

C Georg, MSc *Karlsruhe* PhD *Jena*

L Grzybowski, MSc *Warsaw* PhD *Munich*

M V Leibbrandt, BSocSc(Hons) *Rhodes* MA PhD *Notre Dame*

E Muchapondwa, BSc MSc *Zimbabwe* PhD *Göteborg*

N Nattrass, BA *Stell* BSocSc(Hons) *Cape Town* MA *Natal* MSc DPhil *Oxon*

V Ranchhod, BCom(Hons) *Witwatersrand* MA PhD *Michigan*

D Ross, BA MA PhD *Western Ontario*

C Van Walbeek, BCom(Hons) MCom *Stell* PhD *Cape Town*

M Visser, BSc(Hons) MCom *Cape Town* PhD *Göteborg*

H Winkler, MSc *Berkeley* MA PhD *Cape Town*

M Wittenberg, BA(Hons) MA *Natal* MCom *Witwatersrand* PhD *Natal*

### Emeritus Professors:

H Abraham, MA *Tel Aviv* PhD *Hebrew University*

A Black, BA *Cape Town* BA(Hons) *Sussex* MSocSc *Natal* PhD *Cape Town*

D E Kaplan, BA BCom *Cape Town* MA *Kent* DPhil *Sussex*

H Kincaid, BA MA PhD *Indiana*

A Leiman, BA(Hons) *Natal* MA *Cape Town*

M Morris, BA(Hons) *Cape Town* MA PhD *Sussex*

### Principal Research Officer:

H Ross, PhD *Illinois*

### Honorary Professors:

G Ainslie, BA *Yale College* MD *Harvard*

M Carter, MA PhD *Wisconsin*

J D Hey, BA *Cambridge* MSc *Edinburgh*

S B Kahn, BCom MCom *Cape Town*

G Köhlin, PhD *Göteborg*

G Harrison, BEcon(Hons) MA *Monash* MA PhD *UCLA*

D Lam, BA *Colorado* MA *Austin* MA PhD *Berkeley*

L Ndikumana, BA *Burundi* MA PhD *Washington*

E Rutström, Bachelor of Economics & Business Administration PhD *Stockholm*

M Sarr, BA *Reims* MSc *Toulouse* MSc *Warwick* PhD *UCL*

T Sterner, BA PhD *Göteborg*

I Woolard, PhD *Cape Town*

**Adjunct Professor:**

F Ismail, BA LLB *Natal* MPhil *Sussex* PhD *Manchester*

**Associate Professors:**

K Eyal, BSc BCom(Hons) MCom PhD *Cape Town*

A Hofmeyr, BSocSc BCom MCom PhD *Cape Town*

H Hollander, BCom BCom(Hons) MCom PhD *Stell*

A Karimu, BA *Ghana* MSc PhD *Sweden*

A Kerr, BSc BCom(Hons) *UKZN* MPhil DPhil *Oxon*

M Keswell, BCom(Hons) *UDW* MSocSc *Natal* MA PhD *Massachusetts*

K Kotze, BCom *Natal* BCom(Hons) *Unisa* MCom PhD *Stell*

C Mlatsheni, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

D Thiam, BSc *Montpellier* MSc *Nantes* PhD *Bordeaux*

**Adjunct Associate Professors:**

Z Brixiova, BA *Prague* PhD *Minnesota*

M Ellyne, BSc(ENG) *Cornell* MSc *London* PhD *Baltimore*

A Shimeles, BA *Addis Ababa* MA *Delhi* PhD *Gothenburg*

**Senior Lecturers:**

A Davids, BCom(Hons) MCom(Cum Laude) *Stell* PhD *Cape Town*

D Fadiran, PhD *Cape Town*

R Lepelle, MCom *Witwatersrand* PhD *Cape Town*

C Makanza, BSc(Hons) MSc *Zimbabwe* PhD *Cape Town*

L Mateane, BSc(Hons) MA *Witwatersrand* PhD *New York*

T Mpofo, BSc(Hons) MSc *Zimbabwe* PhD *Cape Town*

G Ndlovu, BCom MSc *Zimbabwe* PhD *Cape Town*

L Neethling, BCom(Hons) MCom *Cape Town*

L Njozela, BBusSc(Hons) MCom PhD *Cape Town*

N Pillay, BBusSc MCom *Cape Town* PhD *Stanford*

**Adjunct Senior Lecturer:**

N Samouilhan, MCom PhD *Cape Town*

**Lecturers:**

R Chetty, BBusSc(Hons) MCom *Cape Town*

J Chien, BBusSc(Hons) MCom *Cape Town*

S Khan, BBusSc(Hons) MCom(Distinction) *Cape Town* MSc(Cum Laude) *Tilburg University*

M Smith, BSocSc(Hons)MPhil *Cape Town*

**Chief Research Officers:**

N Branson, PhD *Cape Town*

A de Lannoy, MA (Germanic Languages) *Ghent* PhD (Sociology) *Cape Town*

B Maughan-Brown, BSc(Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

M Oosthuizen, MCom (Economics) *Stell* PhD (Economics) *Cape Town*

**Researchers:**

I Bassier, BSc(Hons) *Cape Town* MA *Massachusetts*

J Budlender, BSocSc(Hons) *Cape Town* MSc *UCL*

D de Villiers, MA (Economics) *NMMU*

F Diaz Pabon, BSc(Hons) MSc *Universidad de los Andes* MA *Erasmus University Rotterdam*

G Espi-Sanchis, MA *Witwatersrand*

F Hartley, BBusSci(Hons) *Cape Town* MCom *Pret*

J Mosomi, PhD *Cape Town*

M Shifa, BSc *Addis Ababa* MCom PhD *Cape Town*

J Turpie, BSc(Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

**Duly performed certificates for special admissions programme students:**

A special admissions programme student shall meet the duly performed requirements listed for any course in the curriculum and in addition shall be required to have attended at least 70% of all tutorials of the course including special tutorials arranged for such students. Failure to meet this requirement may result in the student not being granted a duly performed certificate.

**Requirements for a major in Economics**

**[ECO01]**

**First Year courses**

Code	Title
<b>ALL of the following:</b>	
ECO1010F/S	Microeconomics
ECO1011S/F	Macroeconomics I
STA1000S	Introductory Statistics
MAM1010F	Mathematics 1010

**Second Year courses**

Code	Title
ECO2003F	Microeconomics II
ECO2004S	Macroeconomics II
<b>ONE of the following:</b>	
ECO2007S	Cooperation and Competition
ECO2008S	Development Economics

**Third Year courses**

Code	Title
ECO3020F	Advanced Macroeconomics and Microeconomics
<b>TWO of the following:</b>	
ECO3009F	Natural Resource Economics
ECO3016F	History of Economic Thought
ECO3021S	Quantitative Methods in Economics
ECO3022S	Advanced Labour Economics
ECO3023S	Public Sector Economics
ECO3024F	International Trade and Finance
ECO3025S	Applied International Trade Bargaining

**Entrance requirements:**

Admission by the Humanities Faculty and meeting the following Maths requirement: a minimum of HG Mathematics D (SC) or Mathematics 5 (NSC) or "A" Level Mathematics D.

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **ECO1011S**: A minimum mark of 50% for ECO1010F. ECO1010F/S may be taken concurrently with ECO1011F/S if ECO1010F/S has been previously attempted.
- (ii) For **ECO2003F**: ECO1010 and MAM1010 (or equivalent).
- (iii) For **ECO2004S**: ECO1010, ECO1011, and MAM1010 (or equivalent).
- (iv) For **ECO2007S**: ECO1010 or MAM1010 equivalent.
- (v) For **ECO2008S**: ECO1010 and ECO1011 or first-year equivalents in Political Studies, Sociology, Anthropology, History or Philosophy.
- (vi) For **ECO3020F**, ECO2003F, ECO2004S, and MAM1010 (or equivalent).

- (vii) For **ECO3021S**: ECO2003F, ECO2004S, MAM1010 (or equivalent) and STA1000 (or equivalent).
- (viii) For **ECO3009F**: ECO2003F.
- (ix) For **ECO3025S**: ECO1010, ECO1011 and at least two 2000-level Economics courses.
- (x) For **ECO3016F, ECO3022S, ECO3023S, ECO3024F**: ECO2003F and ECO2004S.

*NOTE: Credit will not be given for ECO1006F and ECO1010F/S*

## Course outlines:

---

### **ECO1006F ECONOMICS FOR NON-SPECIALISTS**

*This course is designed for students intending to do only one semester of Economics. It is therefore aimed at providing a broad perspective on the subject, and concentrates more on an understanding of economic concepts and their application than it does on rigorous proofs and analysis.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** L Njozela

**Course entry requirements:** Only students who are registered in the Faculty of Humanities may register for this course or with special permission from the course convener or head of department

**Course outline:**

This course comprises both micro- and macro-economics. Microeconomics focuses on individuals, be it individual consumers, firms or markets. The focus is on understanding the behaviour of these individual entities. Macroeconomics focuses on the economy as a whole. Rather than looking at the factors that determine an individual's consumption decisions (i.e. his/her income, the expected utility derived from different goods and the prices of those goods), the focus in macroeconomics is on total consumption of all consumers in the economy. Similarly, the focus is not on the output decision of any individual firm, or even an industry, but on the total output of all firms in the economy as a whole.

**Lecture times:** 16h00 - 18h00 Monday - Thursday

**DP requirements:** All class tests and assignments/essays/projects to be completed. Attend at least 70% tutorials. Satisfactory completion and timeous submission of at least 70% of tutorials. A weighted average mark of 30% for tests, tutorials, essays and assignments. Only students who have obtained DP certificates may write the final examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; Exam 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weightings and variation for exemptions and absences. *Note: The ECO1006F supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during the last week of the mid-year vacation. If students do not write this exam they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course.*

---

### **ECO1010F/S MICROECONOMICS I**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** N Narker – ECO1010F

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to degree. National Senior Certificate: a pass (5) in Mathematics.

**Co-requisites:** There is no co-requisite, but students are strongly advised to do a formal mathematics course (MAM1010 or equivalent). Not having done such a course will preclude entry to second year Economics.

**Course outline:**

This is an introductory course in microeconomics, which aims to expose students to a wide variety of microeconomic concepts and theories as well as certain practical applications of these concepts. The course begins with a discussion of economic history and the characteristics of different economic systems, as well as factors influencing economic development following the Industrial Revolution. Hereafter, students are introduced to topics within the standard utility-maximisation theory of consumption, including optimal-bundle and indifference curve analysis. Students are then exposed to game theoretical frameworks to model social interactions amongst economic agents, before applying this framework to wage-setting relationships in the labour market. Applications of experimental



economic methods are also briefly explored. Finally, students are introduced to the standard neo-classical theories of supply and demand as well as firms' pricing decisions under differing levels of market competition.

**Lecture times:** ECO1010F Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday & Friday 09h00 – 10h00; 10h00 – 11h00; 11h00 – 12h00; 12h00 – 13h00 ECO1010S Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday & Friday 12h00 – 13h00 Students are advised to reserve a Monday slot for tutorial sessions.

**DP requirements:** All tests/assignments/essays/projects/tutorial attendance/submissions to be completed for DP purposes (details will be provided in the course documentation). If your year mark is below 40% you will not be permitted to write the final examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; Exam 50%. The course documentation will detail the breakdown for assessment weightings and variation for exemptions and absences. Note: *The ECO1010F supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during the last week of the mid-year vacation. If students do not write this exam they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course. The ECO1010S supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during January of the following year. If students do not write this exam, they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course.*

### ECO1011F/S MACROECONOMICS I

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** L Mateane – ECO1011F & L Neethling – ECO1011S

**Course entry requirements:** A minimum mark of 50% for ECO1010F/S or ECO1110F/S. ECO1010F/S may be taken concurrently with ECO1011F/S if ECO1010F/S has been previously attempted.

**Course outline:**

This course is an introductory level course in macroeconomic theory and policy. Macroeconomics studies the aggregate behaviour of the economy. The list of topics covered include gross domestic product, economic growth, unemployment, inflation, exchange rates, balance of payments, business cycles, fiscal and monetary policy tools and objectives. The course will build on macroeconomic relationships to develop basic models explaining various interactions within the economy, providing students with a framework for understanding and interrogating the workings of the economy. The course emphasizes relevant and current issues in the context of South African economic history. We also explore South Africa's relationship with the rest of the world.

**Lecture times:** ECO1011F 15h00 – 16h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday & Thursday ECO1011S 09h00 – 10h00 Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday & Friday 10h00 – 11h00 Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday & Friday 11h00 – 12h00 Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday & Friday 12h00 – 13h00 Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday & Friday Students are advised to reserve a Monday slot for tutorial sessions.

**DP requirements:** All tests/assignments/essays/projects/tutorial attendance/submissions to be completed for DP purposes (details will be provided in the course documentation). If your year mark is below 40% you will not be permitted to write the final examination

**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course documentation will detail the breakdown for assessment weightings and variation for exemptions and absences. Note: *The ECO1011F supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during the last week of the mid-year vacation. If students do not write this exam they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course. The ECO1011S supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during January of the following year. If students do not write this exam, they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course.*

### ECO1110F/S MICROECONOMICS

*Students in this course write the same final examination as the ECO1010F/S students.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** N Narker

**Course entry requirements:** The course is open to first-year EDU students who meet the criteria for admission to ECO1010F.

**Co-requisites:** There is no co-requisite, but students are strongly advised to do a formal mathematics course (MAM1010 or equivalent). Not having done such a course will preclude entry to second year Economics.

**Course outline:**

This is an introductory course in microeconomics, which aims to expose students to a wide variety of microeconomic concepts and theories as well as certain practical applications of these concepts. The course begins with a discussion of economic history and the characteristics of different economic systems, as well as factors influencing economic development following the Industrial Revolution. Hereafter, students are introduced to topics within the standard utility-maximisation theory of consumption, including optimal-bundle and indifference curve analysis. Students are then exposed to game theoretical frameworks to model social interactions amongst economic agents, before applying this framework to wage-setting relationships in the labour market. Applications of experimental economic methods are also briefly explored. Finally, students are introduced to the standard neo-classical theories of supply and demand as well as firms' pricing decisions under differing levels of market competition.

**Lecture times:** ECO1110F 11h00 – 12h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday 12h00 – 13h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday ECO1110S 12h00 – 13h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday

**DP requirements:** All tests/assignments/essays/projects/tutorial attendance/submissions to be completed for DP purposes (details will be provided in the course documentation). If your year mark is below 40% you will not be permitted to write the final examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; Exam 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for assessment weightings and variation for exemptions and absences. *Note: The ECO1110F supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during the last week of the mid-year vacation. If students do not write this exam they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course. The ECO1110S supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during January of the following year. If students do not write this exam, they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course.*

## ECO2003F MICROECONOMICS II

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** L Edwards

**Course entry requirements:** ECO1010 and MAM1010 (or an equivalent) or MAM1031F or MAM1032S. If a student gets at least 40% for MAM1000W they will be allowed to register for ECO2004S.

**Course outline:**

The course studies the role of institutions and power in influencing the outcomes of economic exchange. The course introduces the concept of institutions and how they influence the balance of power in economic interactions, and affect the fairness and efficiency of the allocations that result. The course then applies these concepts to a study of economic inequality, focusing on its trends, sources and policy options for more equal societies. The course then considers firms and the role that market structure plays in the setting of prices. Finally, the course studies market failures with application to environmental policy, and innovation and the networked economy. The course makes use of mathematical techniques to complement the graphical and discursive representation of the theory. All sections of the course incorporate real world applications.

**Lecture times:** Lecture/Workshop times: 09h00 – 10h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday. 12h00 – 13h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday. 13h00 – 14h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weightings and variation for exemptions and absences. *Note: The ECO2003F supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during the last week of the mid-year vacation. If students do not write this exam they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course.*

---

**ECO2003P/L MICROECONOMICS II**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** C Mlatsheni

**Course entry requirements:** ECO1010 and MAM1010 (or an equivalent) or MAM1031F or MAM1032S. Students who wish to register for this course need to have failed the course previously or have been denied entry because they now meet the Mathematics requirements but previously did not. Alternatively, they need to prove that by registering for the course it would allow them to finish their degree at least 6 months earlier than had they not done the summer term course. Students may not register for both ECO2003P/L and ECO2004P/L simultaneously. To register for this course, permission is required from the School of Economics.

**Course outline:**

The course studies the role of institutions and power in influencing the outcomes of economic exchange. The course introduces the concept of institutions and how they influence the balance of power in economic interactions, and affect the fairness and efficiency of the allocations that result. The course then applies these concepts to a study of economic inequality, focusing on its trends, sources and policy options for more equal societies. The course then considers firms and the role that market structure plays in the setting of prices. Finally, the course studies market failures with application to environmental policy, and innovation and the networked economy. The course makes use of mathematical techniques to complement the graphical and discursive representation of the theory. All sections of the course incorporate real world applications.

**Lecture times:** Lecture/Workshop times: 09h00 – 12h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday and Friday

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weightings and variation for exemptions and absences.

---

**ECO2004S MACROECONOMICS II**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** C Mlatsheni

**Course entry requirements:** ECO1010, ECO1011 and MAM1010 (or an equivalent) or MAM1031F or MAM1032S. A student will be permitted to take ECO2004S without having passed ECO2003F, although it is desirable to pass ECO2003F prior to taking ECO2004S. If a student gets at least 40% for MAM1000W they will be allowed to register for ECO2004S.

**Course outline:**

The course builds upon ECO1011S and aims to provide students with the analytical tools and formal models to explain the behaviour of output, inflation, employment, interest rates, and other economic aggregates. These tools are used to understand current economic issues, forecast the behaviour of the economy, and assess the impact of policy choices. The course allows students to understand the behaviour of households, firms, governments and Central Banks. It starts with analysing the short run behaviour of the economy and then moves on to explore the open economy and exchange rates. Finally, it looks at the long run and assesses the role of technology and population growth on aggregate economic growth using the Solow growth model.

**Lecture times:** Lecture/Workshop times: 09h00 – 10h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, 12h00 – 13h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, 13h00 – 14h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weightings and variation for exemptions and absences.

---

**ECO2004P/L MACROECONOMICS II**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** C Mlatsheni**Course entry requirements:** ECO1010, ECO1011 and MAM1010 (or an equivalent) or MAM1031F or MAM1032S. A student will be permitted to take ECO2004S without having passed ECO2003F, although it is desirable to pass ECO2003F prior to taking ECO2004P/L. If a student gets at least 40% for MAM1000W they will be allowed to register for ECO2004P/L. Students who wish to register for this course need to have failed the course previously or have been denied entry because they now meet the Mathematics requirements but previously did not. To register for this course, permission is required from the School of Economics.**Course outline:**

The course builds upon ECO1011S and aims to provide students with the analytical tools and formal models to explain the behaviour of output, inflation, employment, interest rates, and other economic aggregates. These tools are used to understand current economic issues, forecast the behaviour of the economy, and assess the impact of policy choices. The course allows students to understand the behaviour of households, firms, governments and Central Banks. It starts with analysing the short run behaviour of the economy and then moves on to explore the open economy and exchange rates. Finally, it looks at the long run and assesses the role of technology and population growth on aggregate economic growth using the Solow growth model.

**Lecture times:** Lecture/Workshop times: 09h00 – 12h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday**DP requirements:** None**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weightings and variation for exemptions and absences.

---

**ECO2007S COOPERATION AND COMPETITION**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** R Chetty**Course entry requirements:** ECO1010 or MAM1010 (or equivalent)**Course outline:**

This is an introductory course in game theory, the framework for analysing strategic interaction. Game theory is (among other things), the basic technology for understanding most phenomena in microeconomics and some phenomena in macroeconomics, along with many processes in political science, law, evolutionary biology, and the science of animal behaviour (ethology). In this course we will study the basic structure of the theory. All mathematics will be either self-contained within the course, or will be familiar from STA1000 or MAM1010.

**Lecture times:** 09h00 - 10h00 and 11h00 - 12h00; Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday**DP requirements:** None**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weighting and variation for exemptions and absences.

---

**ECO2008S DEVELOPMENT ECONOMICS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M Smith**Course entry requirements:** ECO1010 and ECO1011 or first year equivalents in Political Studies, Sociology, Anthropology, History or Philosophy.**Course outline:**

The course provides an introduction to development economics. It covers the major topics in the field. These include the meaning of development, economic growth, inequality and poverty. In addition, the course deals with resource mobilisation, agricultural and industrial development, globalisation, sustainable development and institutions and the political economy of development. The discussion is both theoretical and applied with extensive use made of country and regional case-

studies. The course focuses on development challenges confronting South Africa and the rest of Africa. Considerable attention is devoted to key theoretical and policy debates.

**Lecture times:** 14h00 – 15h00 Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weightings and variation for exemptions and absences.

---

### **ECO3009F NATURAL RESOURCE ECONOMICS**

*This is a research-led course.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** D Thiam

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have completed ECO2003.

**Course outline:**

This introduction to Natural Resource Economics examines the scarcity and optimal allocation of freshwater resources in the Western Cape, South Africa. The theoretical framework is neo-classical microeconomics and market failure and climate change are being addressed.

**Lecture times:** 08h00 – 09h00 on Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday.

**DP requirements:** 40% year mark, at least one test must be written. Two concessions will result in DPR.

**Assessment:** Coursework 40%; Exam 60%. See the course outline for a detailed breakdown of the course work component. *Note that the supplementary / deferred exam for Eco3009F will be scheduled during the last week of the mid-year vacation. If students do not write this exam, they will be marked AB and will have to retake the course.*

---

### **ECO3016F HISTORY OF ECONOMIC THOUGHT**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** N. Natrass

**Course entry requirements:** ECO2003 and ECO2004.

**Course outline:**

This course explores the history of economic thought beginning with Adam Smith's defence of market society at the start of the industrial revolution and Karl Marx's critique of capitalism. It includes debates over socialist and development planning, the rise of development economics in the colonial and post-colonial context, and debates over the role of finance in shaping growth and inequality. The relationship between state, market and society is a central theme – as is the contemporary relevance of economic thought for Africa. Additional lenses are also given to theories developed around African economic development and their linkages with other continents and development theories.

**Lecture times:** 10h00 – 11h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for different components of the course-work and related requirements. *Note: The ECO3016F supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during the last week of the mid-year vacation. If students do not write this exam they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course.*

---

### **ECO3020F ADVANCED MACRO AND MICRO ECONOMICS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** T Mpofo

**Course entry requirements:** MAM1010 (or equivalent) or MAM1031F or MAM1032S or ECO2003, ECO2004

**Course outline:**

This course has two, equally weighted components: the microeconomics component and the macroeconomics component. The first 6 weeks of the course will focus on Microeconomics. This

section of the course will focus on the dynamic interplay of behaviour and institutions, and the outcomes produced through their interaction. The heart of the microeconomics we will study is really the question of how social interactions can be structured such that people are free to choose their own actions while avoiding outcomes that none would have chosen. We will draw attention to issues of distribution and market exclusion (issues of power and bargaining) as well as efficiency and will try to focus our thinking on applied issues. The macroeconomics component follows Stephen Williamson's Macroeconomics and employs his graphical and sectoral approach, which employs a micro foundations approach to macroeconomics. It starts by developing a basic closed economy model and expands it to a full open economy monetary model. Students will study the real business cycle model, the functioning of foreign trade and the role of money and banking.

**Lecture times:** 09h00 – 10h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday 10h00 – 11h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weighting and variation for exemptions and absences. *Note: The ECO3020F supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during the last week of the mid-year vacation. If students do not write this exam they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course.*

### ECO3021S QUANTITATIVE METHODS IN ECONOMICS

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** S Khan

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have completed MAM1010 (or an equivalent), STA1000, ECO2003 and ECO2004.

**Course outline:**

The emphasis in this course is to introduce students to new tools and techniques for quantitative analysis in the social and behavioural sciences. In this respect, it is aimed at students wishing to pursue postgraduate studies in economics. The course covers two inter-related modules, and while the sequence may vary from year to year, the broad areas of study include the following: Module one: cross sectional econometrics using Stata. Module two: time series econometrics using R.

**Lecture times:** 09h00 – 10h00 Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Exam: 40%; Coursework: 60%. In some years a bonus 5% may be achievable for a Stata Assignment. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weighting and variation for exemptions and absences.

### ECO3022S ADVANCED LABOUR ECONOMICS

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** C Mlatsheni

**Course entry requirements:** ECO2003 and ECO2004.

**Course outline:**

The aim of the course is to learn the basics of modern labour economics so as to understand some of the most crucial economic issues in South Africa and internationally (e.g. unemployment, inequality, migration etc.). The course covers a review of labour demand and supply; alternative approaches to labour economics and to the SA labour market; the economics of education and training; earnings inequality and discrimination; the economics of trade union collective bargaining; and unemployment.

**Lecture times:** 14h00 – 15h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Coursework: 40%; Exam: 60%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weightings and variation for exemptions and absences.

---

**ECO3023S PUBLIC ECONOMICS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** N Pillay**Course entry requirements:** ECO2003 and ECO2004.**Course outline:**

The course covers the core issues in public economics that are common to most countries and contexts: the theoretical and empirical tools of public economics, externalities, public goods, social insurance, redistribution and taxation. These tools are used to analyse questions that are more specific and/or relevant to current issues, such as healthcare, infrastructure and social grants. Reference will be made to key policy debates of other countries, developed and developing, but the primary focus will be on South Africa.

**Lecture times:** 15h00 – 16h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday**DP requirements:** None**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission and variation for exemptions and absences.

---

**ECO3024F INTERNATIONAL TRADE AND FINANCE**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** L Edwards**Course entry requirements:** The course is recommended only for students who attained at least 60% for ECO2003 and ECO2004.**Course outline:**

The course presents an overview of international economics with a focus on trade theory and international finance. The course covers many topics including the determinants of international trade flows, trade policy, exchange rates and open-economy macroeconomics, and international macroeconomic policy. The course draws upon empirical evidence to verify whether the theories taught in the course are relevant in explaining South Africa's performance in the international economy. By the end of the course, students will have an in-depth understanding of international economics and its application to the South African economy.

**Lecture times:** 16h00 – 17h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday**DP requirements:** None**Assessment:** Coursework: 50%; Exam: 50%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weighting and variation for exemptions and absences. *Note: The ECO3024F supplementary/deferred exam will be scheduled during the last week of the mid-year vacation. If students do not write this exam they will be marked as AB and will have to retake the course.*

---

**ECO3025S APPLIED INTERNATIONAL TRADE BARGAINING***There is no supplementary exam (Report) for this course.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** J Chien**Course entry requirements:** ECO1010 and ECO1011; At least TWO 2000-level economics courses.**Course outline:**

This course is a simulation of a multi-national, multilateral trade negotiating round, based on the 'Doha agenda.' Students representing countries, based on random assignment, and, after researching their country's trade policies and interests, participate in supervised negotiations simulating the World Trade Organisation bargaining and treaty-making process. The course is partly web-based, using a special site and resources on the Vula interface. There is no sit-down examination, but students submit substantial final reports that are externally examined and have equivalent status to an examination.

**Lecture times:** 10h00 – 11h00 Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday**DP requirements:** None**Assessment:** Coursework: 60%; Final Research Report: 40%. The course outline will detail the breakdown for submission weighting and variation for exemptions and absences.

## EDUCATION, SCHOOL OF

The School of Education is situated in the Neville Alexander Building, 6 Lovers Walk, Lower Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [hum-education@uct.ac.za](mailto:hum-education@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2772. The letter code for the Department is EDN.  
Departmental website: [www.education.uct.ac.za](http://www.education.uct.ac.za)

### Professor and Director:

N M A Badroodien, BA(Hons) HDE(PG)SEC Dip(African Studies) *Cape Town* PhD *UWC*

### Professors:

J Hardman, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc *Natal* PhD *Cape Town*  
U K Hoadley, BA *Natal* HDE MPhil PhD *Cape Town*  
D Ng'ambi, BSc *Zambia* PGDip *London* MSc *Birmingham* PhD *Cape Town*  
C W McKinney, BA *Cape Town* BA(Hons) *Rhodes* MA PhD *London*

### Emeritus Professors:

P Christie, BA(Hons) HDipEd(PG) *Witwatersrand* MEdSt PhD *Queensland*  
M P Ensor, BSocSc *Natal* BA(Hons) *Cape Town* DipTertEd *Unisa* CertEd MSc(Ed) PhD *London*  
J P Muller, MA *UPE* Doctorandus *Leiden* PhD *Cape Town*  
K Murrin, Librarianship BSc *Adam* BA(Hons) *Leiden* MA *London* PhD *Hull*  
M H Prinsloo, BA(Hons) *Natal* MEd *London* PhD *Cape Town*  
C Soudien MEd PhD *SUNY*

### Associate Professors:

A Hattingh, BSc HDE BEd MEd PhD *Pret*  
R C Laugksch, BSc HDE *Cape Town* BSc(Hons) *UPE* MSc PhD *Cape Town*  
L J Powell, BA HDE(PG) *Cape Town* BA(Hons) *UWC* MPhil *Cape Town* PhD *Nottingham*

### Emeritus Associate Professors:

L H Cooper, BA *Cape Town* MA *London* PhD *Cape Town*  
S Ismail, BA HDE BEd MPhil PhD *Cape Town*  
R L Kapp, BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town*  
C Kell, BArch MPhil *Cape Town* PhD *Open University*  
R F Siebörger, BA(Hons) NHED BEd MA *Rhodes* MPhil *Exeter*

### Senior Lecturers:

K L Angier, MA(Hons) *Edinburgh* MA PhD *London* PGDE *Cape Town*  
X W Guzula, BPrimEd MPhil PhD *Cape Town*  
S Jaffer, BSc BA HDE(PG)SEC MEd PhD *Cape Town* BEd *UWC*  
W Lilley, BSocSc PGCE MEd PhD *Cape Town*  
L-A Naidoo, BA HDE *UWC* MEd PhD *Witwatersrand*  
Y Omar, BBibI HDE(PG)SEC MPhil PhD *Cape Town*  
R Reynolds, BSocSc HDE (PG)P *Cape Town* Hons Ed *Unisa* MEd PhD *Cape Town*

### Lecturers:

S Abdulatief, BA MA *UWC* PGDip PhD *Cape Town*  
L Pottier, BSc(Hons) MEd *Cape Town*

### Honorary Associate Staff:

J Gamble, PhD *Cape Town*  
P Kallaway, MA *London*  
M Breier, PhD *Cape Town*



**Initial Teacher Education Coordinator:**

N Lesch NDip (Financial Management) *False Bay BTh Unisa*

**Administrative Officer:**

S Sileku, Dip(Office Management and Technology) BTech(Project Management) *CPUT*

**Senior Secretary:**

L Tyulu, Dip(Wholesale and Retail) *Cornerstone Institute*

**Requirements for recognition of university degrees for teaching purposes**

Students who are considering a career in teaching are advised that the entry requirements for the Postgraduate Certificate in Education are as follows:

- *Recommended for all intending teachers:* Introductory Xhosa course(s).
- *Teaching in a high school:*
  - Most teachers study two of the following school subjects in a Bachelor's degree: Language/s; mathematics; the natural sciences; geography; environmental science; historical studies; psychology; accounting; economics; music; fine arts; drama; dance; computer science. The normal requirement is a minimum of two years of degree study in each of the above school subjects, but 3 years of Psychology is the minimum for life skills teaching and a year of Mathematics can be accepted for Senior Phase and Mathematics Literacy.

Please consult the School of Education website for details: <http://www.education.uct.ac.za>. Visit our FAQs at [FAQs for prospective PGCE students](#) and [FAQs for current PGCE students](#).

*NOTE: Completion of a Certificate, Advanced Certificate, Diploma or Further Diploma is not normally sufficient qualification for admission into an honours programme.*

**Schools Development Unit (SDU)**

The Schools Development Unit (SDU) is a unit of the School of Education located in the Neville Alexander Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus.

The SDU was established in 2000 with the goal of improving teaching and learning in the South African schooling system. It draws on academic research and teaching expertise to help tackle the systemic and structural challenges within our education landscape. Through teacher education, schools-based interventions, professional consulting services and dynamic materials the SDU works to develop quality education for all.

Website: <http://www.sdu.uct.ac.za>

**Head of SDU:**

TBA

**Senior Education Specialists:**

F Parker, BSocSc HDE BEd *Cape Town PGDE UWC*

P Silbert, BA(Hons) HDE MA PhD *Cape Town*

R B Terhoven, BSc(Ed) BSc(Hons) *UWC MEd PhD Stell*

**Education Specialists:**

G Dolo, BSc(Ed) BEd(Hons) MEd *UWC*

K Hassan, PTD *Hewat ACE BEd(Hons) PGDE Cape Town*

D C Hendricks, DE *Boland DSE Stell FDE Cape Town BEd MEd UWC*

Y Johnson, BSc(Hons) HDE *Cape Town*

T Matheza, HDE *Western Cape College of Education*, BEd(Hons) *UWC*

**Social Worker:**

T Mzozoyana, BSocSc(Social Work) *Cape Town*

**Finance Manager:**

S Meyer, BCom *Unisa PGDip Cape Town*

**Administration:**

J de Villiers, Dip (Bus Admin & Management) *Damelin College*

I Dreyden, Cert (Operations Management) *Varsity College Cert (Project & Events Management) Cape Town*

W Fisher, Dip (Secretarial & Conveyancing) *Montrose Business College*

Y Ajouhaar, BCom(Information Technology) *Mancosa*

**Course Outlines:**

**Note - for courses for HCert(Ed) (Adult Ed) only:**

The first year will provide an introduction to learning theory, but this will be closely linked to the practical development of facilitation and design skills. The second year aims to enhance professional competence by locating practice theoretically and contextually. Academic development will be an important component of both years one and two.

*Please note that these courses are not available to students doing general BA and BSocSc degrees.*

---

**EDN1032FS DESIGNING AND FACILITATING A LEARNING PROGRAMME**

60 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** L Pottier

**Course entry requirements:** EDN1030FS Citizenship and Social Justice Education, EDN1031FS Introduction to Adult Learning

**Course outline:**

The course will introduce students to a conceptual understanding of planning and facilitating learning programmes. This module relates to the work integrated component of the qualification. It comprises a practical project that gives students the opportunity to facilitate a learning programme and to apply their knowledge of citizenship and social justice education and adult learning to their own site of practice. They will draw on adult learning principles and theories to plan and facilitate the learning event. Students will examine questions of facilitator identity and how this impacts the facilitation of learning. The course will equip students to deal with diversity and understand how the intersection of race, class, gender and disability influences the learning environment/space. It will give students a basic understanding of group roles, the importance of learner profiles, a range of methodologies, how to adapt learning materials for the learning context.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance.

**Assessment:** Assessment by assignment (70%) and facilitating a learning programme at their site of practice (30%).

---

**EDN1536W INTRODUCTION TO INFORMATION COMMUNICATION TECHNOLOGY FOR TEACHERS**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** K Hassan

**Course outline:**

This is a course for beginning users of ICT. Its main focus is on personal computing and the MS Office suite of programmes. Candidates will be introduced to and will gain initial user competence in word processing, spreadsheets, presentation programmes and databases. They will also learn to use email and the internet. The context of the course is the application of these ICTs to school teaching and administration.

**Assessment:** Competency tests count 100%.

---

### **EDN2507W** NUMBER SP

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Y Johnson

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching

**Course outline:**

The course develops course participants' knowledge of the structure of the Real number system, as a foundation for work in Algebra. In this regard, the focus is on developing a meaningful appreciation of the properties of and relations between different sets of numbers, emphasising the properties of commutativity, associativity, distributivity, identity and inverse. Course participants will engage with the academic debates relating to the teaching and learning of the content and, in so doing, analyse pupil difficulties and develop appropriate pedagogic strategies that will inform both the transmission and acquisition of the content in the classroom. Assessment, as a means of evaluation and to inform future teaching, will be addressed.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments and at least 80% attendance record.

**Assessment:** Assignment and tests count for 50%; the examination counts for 50%.

---

### **EDN2508W** ALGEBRA SP

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Y Johnson

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

This course draws on the concept development of the Number course and develops course participants' knowledge of the notion 'Algebra as generalised arithmetic'. In this regard, the focus is on developing a meaningful appreciation of the variable, algebraic expressions and algebraic equations. In addition to actual knowledge of the content, appropriate pedagogic strategies relating to the transmission and acquisition of the content in the classroom situation are explored, and assessment, as a means of evaluation and to inform future teaching, will be addressed. The course content includes an exploration of the notion of FUNCTION, an exploration of number patterns leading to an algebraic rule, an exploration of operations on algebraic expressions, solving algebraic equations and inequalities, and graphical representation of different functions.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments and at least 80% attendance record.

**Assessment:** Assignment and tests count for 50%; the examination counts for 50%.

---

### **EDN2509W** EUCLIDEAN GEOM & MEASURE SP

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Y Johnson

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

This course focuses on introducing participants to the content and to appropriate pedagogic strategies that will enable the teaching and learning of the content in a more formal way. The emphasis of the course is on the relations between propositions and how these propositional relations could be deployed to solve geometry problems. While construction and measurement will not be discounted, the proofs of particular propositions will necessarily also be developed using already established

propositions. The course therefore uses Euclidean and transformational geometric methods to investigate properties of geometrical shapes and objects. The course addresses in particular the geometry of lines, angles and triangles, and the work relating to area, perimeter, volume and surface area of various 2D and 3D shapes, and other content relating to measurement. Participants will engage with the practice of diagnosing pupil difficulties and with forms of assessment to both evaluate pupil performance and to inform future teaching.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignment and tests count for 50%; the examination counts for 50%.

---

### **EDN2510W DATA HANDLING & STATISTICS SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Y Johnson

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

This course focuses on developing and/or strengthening students' knowledge of collecting, organising, summarising, representing and analysing data (discrete and bivariate). This includes knowledge of using appropriate tools (e.g. questionnaires, interviews), tables, summaries and charts (including bar graphs, pie charts, histograms, line graphs, scatter plots, box-and-whisker plots, ogives). Students will apply their acquired knowledge in various real-life contexts. In this regard, they will be expected to conduct a related project in their own contexts. To facilitate quantitative analyses, students will explore various statistical measures (mean, median, mode, range, quartile, inter-quartile range). Participants will engage with the practice of diagnosing pupil difficulties and with forms of assessment to both evaluate pupil performance and to inform future teaching.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignment and tests count for 50%; the examination counts for 50%.

---

### **EDN2511W MATHEMATICS ASSESSMENT SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

8 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Y Johnson

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

Teachers will be introduced to the main approaches to assessment and testing used by the department of education. Methods of both informal and formal assessment will be covered. Informal assessment will include how to use self-assessment and peer assessment and how to give feedback to learners. Formal assessment will include knowing how to use tests, examinations, assignments, projects, investigations and homework activities to assess pupils' performance. So, the relation of formative and summative testing and its impact on learning will also form part of this course. How to assess pupils in order to improve instruction, diagnose pupil difficulty, determine remediation needs and identify errors in thinking using assessment criteria, assessment rubrics and marking memoranda will also be covered. The focus is on the assessment of learning and on assessment for learning.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments count for 100%.

---

### **EDN2512W CURRICULUM RESEARCH IN MATHEMATICS ED SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

8 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Y Johnson

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of the course is to introduce teachers to various perspectives on mathematics teaching and learning. The central question guiding our reading of the literature is that of what gets constituted

as mathematics, and how, in the pedagogic situations of schooling. In addition, the course will also engage with work on mathematical knowledge for teaching (incorporating subject matter knowledge and pedagogical content knowledge), as well as examine perspectives on the use of the conceptual-procedural distinction in mathematics education.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments count for 100%.

---

### **EDN2513W MATHEMATICS PRACTICUM SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

8 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Y Johnson

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

Situational learning and work integrated learning are constituted by assessments of how learnt knowledge is translated into classroom activities of teaching and learning. Classroom visits, observations of lessons and reflections, by both the teacher and the lesson observer, are key components of this course. Two lessons per teacher will form the focus of this engagement.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Portfolio counts for 100%.

---

### **EDN2514W NATURAL SCIENCES INSTRUCT SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

4 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** G Dolo

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

This course will provide the students with an important foundation for all that they are going to be taught in the Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Natural Sciences Teaching programme. The following questions are posed: What is science? And why teach science? The answer to these will help clarify why science is included as a basic requirement of the SP school curriculum. The course will provide the students with a framework to organise the direction and nature of science instruction in their classrooms. The following aspects will be included: Science as a human endeavour, historical perspectives, and nature of scientific knowledge. These aspects are designed to help students understand the human dimensions of science, the nature of scientific thought, and the role of science in society. The course will also include in-depth discussions of what distinguishes science from other academic disciplines as well as the visions of the current reforms in science education.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all assignments and at least 80% attendance record.

**Assessment:** Assignments count for 100%.

---

### **EDN2515W MATTER AND MATERIALS SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

26 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** G Dolo

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

This course will focus on the properties and classification of matter, the particle model of matter and the nature of different chemical reactions. It explores the uses and environmental impact of the production and disposal of different materials, including metals and non-metals. The classification of matter deals with the differences between elements, compounds and mixtures, the structure of the atom and how this links to the position of the metals, non-metals and metalloids in periodic table.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all assignments and at least 80% attendance record.

**Assessment:** Assignments and tests count for 50%; the examination counts for 50%.

---

**EDN2516W ENERGY AND CHANGE SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

26 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** G Dolo

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

This course will introduce a number of key physics principles and will provide opportunities to explore and refine understanding, to develop skills and update strategies for teaching physics. It will address the properties of physical matter, physical quantities, and their relationships. Through a variety of activities, the subject knowledge necessary to support effective teaching will be covered, as well as the use of stimulating practical activities and demonstrations to excite and enthuse students. ICT-based resources will also be explored.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments and at least 80% attendance record.

**Assessment:** Assignments and tests count for 50%; the examination counts for 50%.

---

**EDN2517W LIFE & LIVING SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

26 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** G Dolo

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

Life and living leads on to the knowledge strand of Life Sciences in the FET band. The Life and Living course is geared to encourage students to deepen their understanding of the biological sciences. The following concepts will be addressed in the course: the cell, the molecular basis of heredity, biological evolution, the interdependence of organisms, matter, energy and organization in living systems, and the adaptive response. Further, unifying concepts and provide a context for teaching content and process skills outcomes/goals. Focus on the unifying concepts of science will also help students understand the constant nature of science across the disciplines: • Systems, order and organization • Evidence, models, and explanations • Constancy, change, and measurement • Evolution and equilibrium • Forms and function. The description summary of the topics which demonstrate these unifying concepts will be included in the course guide to help students develop understanding the broader view of science context.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all assignments and at least 80% attendance record.

**Assessment:** Assignments and tests count for 50%; the examination counts for 50%.

---

**EDN2518W EARTH AND BEYOND SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

26 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** G Dolo

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

The course covers subject knowledge in the earth sciences. Earth systems science is used as a unifying concept and the course begins by exploring the birth of the universe and geological structures and processes on earth. The fundamentals of geology and palaeontology are explored which is followed by mining and sustainability. The course also includes astronomy, climatology, and meteorology, at a level appropriate to support the teaching of these topics in the SP.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments and at least 80% attendance record.

**Assessment:** Assignments and tests count for 50%; the examination counts for 50%.

---

**EDN2519W NATURAL SCIENCES PRAC WORK SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

4 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** G Dolo

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Education.

**Course outline:**

The course provides the laboratory focus for all the Science courses. It is common to all four courses offered in the Advanced Certificate in Senior Phase Natural Sciences Teaching programme. The purpose of the course is to develop the students' practical laboratory skills to use these practical skills in the other courses of the programme. The links between the investigation process, cognitive skills and the outdoor classroom activities are explored for their implications for teaching and assessment. Students should be familiar with the content of this course before beginning the core courses in the programme.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all assignments and at least 80% attendance record.

**Assessment:** Assignments and tests count for 100%.

**EDN2520W NATURAL SCIENCES PRACTICUM SP**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

8 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** G Dolo

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Certificate in Teaching.

**Course outline:**

Situational learning and work integrated learning are constituted by assessments of how learnt knowledge is translated into classroom activities of teaching and learning. Classroom visits, observations of lessons and reflections, by both the teacher and the lesson observer, are key components of this course. Two lessons per teacher will form the focus of this engagement.

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Portfolio counts for 100%.

**EDN2521W BEGINNING KNOWLEDGE IN THE FOUNDATION PHASE**

16 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan

**Course outline:**

The course takes the form of a series of projects and quizzes based on topics in the Grade R and 1 Beginning Knowledge (Life Skills) curriculum, which aims to develop the following concepts:

- Social science concepts; conservation, cause and effect, time, place, adaptation, relationships and interdependence, diversity and individuality, change;
- Natural Science concepts; life and living, energy and change, matter and materials; planet earth and beyond;
- Scientific process skills; the process of enquiry which involves observing, comparing, classifying, measuring, experimenting, and communicating;
- Technological process skills; investigating, designing, making, evaluating, communicating

Students are required to research these topics using available children's non-fiction books and the internet and to take online quizzes on these topics. Students may re-take these quizzes until they pass them. These projects are complemented by a series of compulsory interactive field visits to museums and other facilities in Cape Town which expose students to the history, natural history, geography and science of the world we live in. The course also develops an understanding of the Foundation Phase Life Skills curriculum and how to teach beginning knowledge using inquiry and narrative in particular.

**DP requirements:** Visiting all museums in this programme; 80% attendance at all other classes plus passing of all quizzes Quizzes: 50% Portfolio of activities based on field visits: 50%

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%.

**EDN2522W ENGLISH CLASSROOM PROFICIENCY**

8 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** T Matheza

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on developing confidence, fluency and accuracy in English language communication within the education context. Students complete a placement test and work in tutorial groups composed of students at roughly the same level of English competence. Students develop their ability to provide good language models and to monitor their own language use for fluency and accuracy. Listening and reading comprehension is developed. English vocabulary around key topics in the primary curriculum is developed. Knowledge (including relevant metalanguage) of English language structure and function, as relevant to teaching of early reading in English, is developed.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance and submission of all assignments 25% Assignments and tests 25% Oral Examination 50% Written Examination

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; exam 50%.

---

### **EDN2523W ENGLISH 1ST ADDITIONAL LANGUAGE IN THE FOUNDATION PHASE**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** T Matheza

**Course outline:**

The course develops teachers' methodology for teaching English as a First Additional Language (EFAL). The influence of and differences between English First Additional Language (EFAL) and Home Language (in particular IsiXhosa and Afrikaans) are explored in relation to the curriculum. This course is both a methodology and a resource development course, focussing on practical language activities in relation to Foundation Phase themes and topics. The course incorporates work-integrated learning and students apply their learning practically through classroom based tasks. A balanced, varied, communicative, creative approach to language learning is taken, encouraging increasing learner independence, reflective teaching and learning and awareness of different learning styles and preferences. The course focuses on the development of listening and speaking skills well as strategies for teaching reading and writing to EFAL learners in the Foundation Phase. Using assessment of EFAL to inform planning and teaching is an important component of the course

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance record plus submission of all assessment requirements. 100% School-based assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%.

---

### **EDN2524W FIRST LANGUAGE & LITERACY FOUNDATION PHASE**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** T Matheza

**Course outline:**

The course informs and develops teachers' knowledge of language learning and acquisition. It contributes to a significant paradigm shift from teaching isolated language topics to learning the principles of teaching reading, writing and comprehension within a balanced approach. It focuses on the relationship between pedagogical beliefs (theory and policy) in language education and classroom practice. The course develops teachers' knowledge of reading and writing across the curriculum, as well as the use of talk for learning. The course includes the following topics: Learning to read and write; Critical language and literacy skills that educators need to nurture in the Foundation Phase; Creating a print rich environment; Development of reading, writing and comprehension skills; Reading and Writing to Learn; Using thinking and reasoning to construct meaning from text; analysing of classroom talk. The course incorporates work-integrated learning and students apply their learning practically through classroom based tasks.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance record plus submission of all assignments 50% Assignments 50% one two-hour examination

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; exam 50%.



---

**EDN2525W LEARNING IN THE FOUNDATION PHASE**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan**Course outline:**

This course examines two key developmental theories in educational psychology, namely Piaget and Vygotsky, in order to develop understanding 1) of how children learn and 2) how one can therefore teach children in the most appropriate effective manner. The course begins by providing theoretical insights into learning before linking this knowledge to practical applications of the theory in a classroom situation. The following key areas are explored: Cognition: principal features; Piaget's genetic epistemology; Piaget's stages of development: central cognitive gains (object permanence; symbolic play; conservation; logico-mathematical thought); Provoking learning: Piaget's notion of disequilibrium (cognitive conflict); Mediating meaning: Vygotsky's Zone of Proximal Development (ZPD); Instruction in the ZPD; play as the leading activity in the Foundation Phase.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance record plus submission of all assessment requirements. 60% Assignments and school-based tasks 40% teaching related portfolio.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%.

---

**EDN2526W NUMBER & ALGEBRA IN THE FOUNDATION PHASE**

20 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan**Course outline:**

This course consists of two related components: mathematics knowledge for teaching and teaching mathematics. Mathematics knowledge for teaching focuses on developing students' knowledge of the structure of number systems, from natural numbers to real numbers. In this component, students will explore the relation between counting and the basic operations. In teaching mathematics students engage with issues relating to the teaching and learning of number and algebra in the Foundation Phase. The course focuses on different ways of teaching and assessing number and algebra through examining texts for teaching such as textbooks and workbooks and assessment instruments. In addition, the course focuses on diagnosing learners' difficulties and misconceptions in order to develop appropriate pedagogic strategies for remediation. The course incorporates work-integrated learning and students apply their learning practically through classroom-based tasks.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance and submission of all assignments and tasks 50% Tests, assignments and classroom-based tasks 50% Examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; exam 50%.

---

**EDN2527W SPACE; MEASUREMENT; DATA HANDLING IN THE FOUNDATION PHASE**

20 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan**Course outline:**

This course consists of two related components: Mathematics knowledge for teaching and Teaching mathematics. Mathematics knowledge for teaching develops students' knowledge of the mathematical notions of space and measure underlying the Foundation Phase mathematics curriculum, specifically in relation to geometric properties and measurement of two-dimensional shapes and three-dimensional objects and the collection, analysis, presentation and interpretation of numerical data. In Teaching mathematics, students engage with issues relating to the teaching and learning of space and measurement in the Foundation phase. The course concentrates on teaching and assessing space and measurement through examining texts for teaching such as textbooks and workbooks and assessment instruments. In addition, it focuses on diagnosing learners' difficulties and misconceptions in order to develop appropriate pedagogic strategies for remediation. The course incorporates work-integrated learning and students apply their learning practically through classroom-based tasks.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance and submission of all assignments and tasks. 50% Tests, assignments and classroom-based tasks. 50% Examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; exam 50%.

### **EDN2528W TEACHERS AS READERS & WRITERS**

8 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan

**Course outline:**

The course develops and extends teachers' own reading and writing habits. Teachers are required to show that they have joined a public library and to source books for this course from this library as well as that read online, especially blogs related to literacy. Modelled on a book club format which can be replicated with children, students read fiction and/or non-fiction books of their own choice throughout the year and engage in structured discussions with peers about these books. Writing workshops develop teachers' own writing skills and pleasure in writing across a range of genres. Additionally, it enables teachers to become writing mentors and to purposively select mentor texts to use with their own learners. It encourages teachers to notice and analyse techniques of good writers, so as to be able to discuss and model them with their learners. Methods of teachers sharing their reading and writing lives with pupils are also covered.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance; full participation in book club discussions; 100% submission of written tasks; 100% portfolio assessment.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%.

### **EDN2529W TEACHING IN THE FOUNDATION PHASE**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan

**Course outline:**

This course draws on theoretical insights into learning in the Foundation Phase (FP) and links this knowledge to practical applications of the theory in a classroom situation. Students will focus on the relation between teaching, theories of learning and the curriculum. The main approach involves selection and translation from the curriculum into teaching strategies and introduces FP teachers to a specific teaching methodology that arises from an understanding of learning as mediated. Students will engage with classroom practice, learning theories, teaching strategies and methodologies. Issues relating to the teaching of Language, Mathematics and Life Skills in the FP will be addressed, such as differentiated instructional pedagogy and responding to the diverse needs of learners.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance record plus submission of all assessment requirements. 60% Assignments 40% Portfolio of school-based tasks.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%.

### **EDN2530W CURRICULUM & ASSESSMENT IN THE INTERMEDIATE PHASE**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on Mathematics and English as a First Additional Language in the Intermediate Phase of the General Education and Training band for schooling. It will concentrate on issues of assessment as it relates to curriculum delivery within an Intermediate Phase classroom context. The students will develop a critical understanding of general curriculum principles and their applications. The course addresses issues of effective change in practice, progression and pacing, assessment for teaching and learning in order to optimize the utilization of existing systems and resources. Students will potentially be able to make judgements on learner performance in relation to curriculum requirements and recognise that these judgements are dependent on an understanding of the forms and purposes of assessment. The course incorporates work-integrated learning and students apply their learning practically through classroom-based tasks.

**Assessment:** 100% assignment-based assessment.

---

**EDN2531W ENGLISH 1ST ADDITIONAL LANGUAGE IN THE INTERMEDIATE PHASE**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan**Course outline:**

The course will develop teachers' knowledge of English First Additional Language (EFAL). It will focus on the relationship between pedagogical beliefs (theory and policy) in Language education and classroom practice. The differences between English First Additional Language (EFAL) and Home Language will be discussed with an emphasis on CAPS requirements including planning and assessment and its relevance to teaching and learning. This course will also equip teachers to teach EFAL with an understanding and background knowledge of multi-lingualism and additive bilingualism. The following topics will be included: English First Additional Language (EFAL) in CAPS; The relationship and differences between EFAL, Home Language and Language of Learning and Teaching (LOLT); Communicative, text-based and process orientated approaches to teaching Language, Planning and Assessment; Using 8 Cognitive thinking processes as described by the research of Hyerle & Yeager (2007) which proves that the more we use both systems of representation, the better we are able to think and recall knowledge.; Making learning memorable through resources and methodologies.

**DP requirements:** 100% DP requirements: 80% attendance record plus submission of all assessment requirements.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%.

---

**EDN2532W TEACHING LANGUAGE IN THE INTERMEDIATE PHASE**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** T Matheza**Course outline:**

Teachers' knowledge of language learning and acquisition are developed by the course. It contributes to a significant paradigm shift from teaching isolated language topics to learning the principles of teaching reading, writing and comprehension within a Balanced Language Approach. It focuses on the relationship between pedagogical beliefs (theory and policy) in language education and classroom practice. The course develops teachers' knowledge of reading and writing across the curriculum, as well as the use of talk for learning. The course includes the following topics: Learning to read and write; Critical language skills that educators need to nurture in the Intermediate Phase; Creating a print rich environment; Development of reading, writing and comprehension skills; Reading and Writing to Learn; Integrating Language Methodologies; Using thinking and reasoning to construct meaning in text; analysing of classroom talk. Assessment focuses on creating a print rich environment that supports teaching of language and on the practical transfer of knowledge to colleagues at school.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance record plus submission of all assignments and tasks.

**Assessment:** Assignments count 50%; one two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

**EDN2533W LEARNING & TEACHING IN THE INTERMEDIATE PHASE**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan**Course outline:**

The course introduces students to two key developmental theories in order to develop their understanding 1) of how children learn and 2) how one can therefore teach children in an effective manner. The course begins by providing theoretical insights into learning before linking this knowledge to practical applications of the theory in a classroom situation. Students will also focus on the relation between teaching, theories of learning and the curriculum. The main approach involves selection and translation from the curriculum into teaching strategies. Students will engage with classroom practice, education theories, teaching strategies and methodologies. Issues relating to the teaching of Mathematics and Language in practice will be addressed, such as differentiated instructional pedagogy and responding to the varied needs of learners.

**Assessment:** 100% assignment-based assessment.

### **EDN2534W** NUMBER & ALGEBRA IN THE INTERMEDIATE PHASE

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan

**Course outline:**

The course consists of two related components: (1) Developing students' knowledge of mathematics underpinning the Intermediate Phase mathematics curriculum, specifically in relation to Number and Algebra (Mathematics knowledge for teaching) (2) Teaching of Number and Algebra to Intermediate Phase learners and their learning of Number and Algebra (Teaching mathematics).

**Assessment:** 50% written tests, assignments and tasks; 50% examination.

### **EDN2535W** SPACE; MEASUREMENT; DATA HANDLING IN THE INTERMEDIATE PHASE

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** K Hassan

**Course outline:**

The course consists of two related components: (1) Developing students' knowledge of mathematics underpinning the Intermediate Phase mathematics curriculum, specifically in relation to Space and Shape, Measurement and Data Handling (Mathematics knowledge for teaching) (2) Teaching of Space and Shape, Measurement and Data Handling to Intermediate Phase learners and their learning of Space and Shape, Measurement and Data Handling (Teaching mathematics).

**Assessment:** 50% written tests, assignments and tasks; 50% examination.

### **EDN3701FS** POLICY AND DEVELOPMENT TOWARDS SOCIAL CHANGE

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** L Pottier

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Diploma in ACET.

**Course outline:**

The course will consider the changing nature of the field of adult education in South Africa, in particular the impact of formalizing and professionalizing a field that was historically characterized mainly by non-formal education and informal learning. Against this backdrop the course will provide an overview of adult education and training practices in relation to different theories of economic and social development. It will include an assessment of radical education discourse and practice in the South African social development context. In the recent period, there has been widespread emphasis on lifelong learning, certification and vocational training for competitiveness in the global economy. We will interrogate what these changes mean for Adult Education-Development and Social Change in the different community and work sites.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%

### **EDN3703FS** LEADING AND MANAGING AN EDUCATION PROJECT

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** L Pottier

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Diploma in ACET.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to different approaches to educational leadership and management. The course will involve students in a practical project of developing an educational project plan which incorporates strategic planning against the policy background, and which is informed by a particular view of development relevant to a constituency. In this course new roles and specialisms will be developed for the ACET sector.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100%.

---

**EDN3704W PROFESSIONAL PORTFOLIO AND WORKPLACE PROJECT**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R B Terhoven

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Diploma in SLM.

**Course outline:**

The course provides the introduction to school leadership and management in the South African context. A portfolio of evidence is developed over the period of the AdvDip(SLM) programme, central to which is a workplace project that directly relates to improvement in the specific school context that will ultimately benefit its learner population. Evidence must be provided in an integrated way of an ability to undertake evidence-based inquiry, make appropriate use of data and ICT, make evidence-based decisions, implement changed practices based on these decisions, monitor and evaluate the impact of these decisions as well and make appropriate changes or amendments indicated by the findings through an action-research cycle approach.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at contact sessions and submission of assessment tasks.

**Assessment:** Portfolio of professional work 100%.

---

**EDN3705W LEADING & MANAGING TEACHING & LEARNING IN THE SCHOOL**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R B Terhoven

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Diploma in SLM.

**Course outline:**

The course assumes that schools exist to provide systematic, quality learning opportunities for children and therefore that effective leadership and management of teaching and learning is a critical role for the school principal. As such the course covers the leadership and management roles and functions of the school to lead quality teaching, effectively manage implementation of the core curriculum and track and support improved learning.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at contact sessions and submission of assessment tasks.

**Assessment:** Two assignments.

---

**EDN3706W LEADING & MANAGING EXTRA-CURRICULAR AND CO-CURRICULAR ACTIVITIES**

9 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R B Terhoven

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Diploma in SLM.

**Course outline:**

The course focusses on effective leadership and management of extra-curricular and co-curricular activities to support the development of well-rounded individuals. The general principles of leadership applicable to all schools nationally and internationally in relation to extra-curricular and co-curricular activities are explored. Theories and practices underpinned by the South African legal, policy and financial requirements for schools address the challenges present and the advocacy required in the local context.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at contact sessions and submission of assessment tasks.

**Assessment:** Two assignments.

---

**EDN3707W LEADING & MANAGING PEOPLE AND CHANGE**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R B Terhoven

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Diploma in SLM.

**Course outline:**

The course focusses on people as the key resource of the school and explores theoretical understanding and practical competence to lead and manage oneself and others in the school and the wider

community. Alongside developing practices in human resource management, staff development and the application of relevant employment legislation, the course addresses issues related to the socio-economic background and health of learners, teachers and the school community.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at contact sessions and submission of assessment tasks.

**Assessment:** Two assignments.

---

### **EDN3708W WORKING WITH AND FOR THE COMMUNITY**

9 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R B Terhoven

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Diploma in SLM.

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on an integrated knowledge of the social and economic communities within which schools are located to establish co-operative, beneficial and collaborative relationships. The local community that the school serves is explored, to provide support and resources for the school. In turn, the school identifies its role in the wellbeing and development of that community.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at contact sessions and submission of assessment tasks.

**Assessment:** Two assignments.

---

### **EDN3709W LEADING & MANAGING THE SCHOOL AS AN ORGANISATION**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R B Terhoven

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Diploma in SLM.

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on developing an integrated knowledge of the school as an organisation, to evaluate and apply organisational systems holistically in context, lead and manage the use of ICT and effectively utilise physical and financial resources. As such it addresses issues related to building and enhancing the school as a safe, disciplined and caring environment that is conducive to effective teaching and learning.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at contact sessions and submission of assessment tasks.

**Assessment:** Two assignments.

---

### **EDN3710W WORKING WITHIN AND FOR THE SCHOOL SYSTEM**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R B Terhoven

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Advanced Diploma in SLM.

**Course outline:**

The course focusses on locating the school and its practices within the wider context of the education system, and underpins the core purpose of schooling: to provide quality teaching and learning, safely, securely and in accordance with legislation and policy. As such it addresses issues related to the Constitution, law, policy, governance, school planning and school development and examines the role of the principal and school management team in this context. An appropriate contribution to the school system involves the development of a constructive criticism that allows for a self-reflection on one's own leadership and management capacity.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at contact sessions and submission of assessment tasks.

**Assessment:** Two assignments.

---

## UMTHOMBO CENTRE FOR STUDENT SUCCESS

The Humanities Umthombo Centre for Student Success is housed in the lower level of the Beattie building and can be contacted by e-mail at: [humedu@uct.ac.za](mailto:humedu@uct.ac.za), or telephone: TBA.  
Departmental website: [www.humanities.uct.ac.za/hum-lsu](http://www.humanities.uct.ac.za/hum-lsu)

**Director:**

S Daya, BA(Hons) *Cape Town* MA PhD *Durham*

**Associate Professor:**

S Morreira, MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

**Undergraduate Affairs Co-ordinator:**

J Tiffin, MA PhD *Cape Town*

**Lecturer:**

T Wilks, MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

**Tutor Co-ordinator:**

N Isaacs, BSocSc BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town*

**Student Recruitment & Engagement Manager:**

N Sigonyela, MA *Nelson Mandela*

**Student Development Office:**

B Krishna, BSW BA(Hons) *UDW* MSocSc *UKZN*

**Administrative Officer:**

A Swartz, Management Practice(Hons) *Cape Town*

### Course outlines:

---

#### DOH1002F WRITING IN THE HUMANITIES

*Credits for this course count towards the four-year programme of study leading to the BA or BSocSc degree.*

28 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr A Humma and Dr M Arend

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to this course is restricted to Humanities students on the BA/BSocSc four-year programme of study.

**Course outline:**

Reading and writing practices in the academic environment of the university are different from those encountered at most schools. All students face various challenges around reading and writing in their respective disciplines. In response to this, this course provides a general orientation to some of the writing and learning practices, ideas and key concepts in the Humanities. This course aims to equip students with the necessary tools to engage with different forms of writing at university. These tools are developed through an exploration of the concept of 'identity' – allowing students to engage with the various ways we describe ourselves and others in a dynamic context. This engagement is facilitated by reading and writing in a face to face and online environment. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' lifeworlds and is cognisant of our African location. We facilitate student transition into university life and employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including multilingual pedagogies and digital literacy, that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> periods.

**DP requirements:** 75% attendance of lectures and tutorials, 100% completion of assignments and a 50% average for coursework.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **DOH1005F WRITING IN THE PERFORMING ARTS**

*Credits for this course count towards extended programmes of study leading to the BMus degree and the Diploma in Music Performance, as well as the Diploma in Theatre and Performance.*

28 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr C Hutchings

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to this course is restricted to Humanities students registered for extended programmes of study in the diploma and degrees in the Performing Arts and Fine Arts.

**Course outline:**

Reading and writing practices in the academic environment of the university are different from those encountered at most schools. All students face various challenges around reading and writing in their respective disciplines. In response to this, this course provides a general orientation to some of the writing and learning practices, ideas and key concepts in the Humanities. This course aims to equip students with the necessary tools to engage with different forms of writing at university. These tools are developed through an exploration of the concept of ‘identity’ – allowing students to engage with the various ways we describe ourselves and others in a dynamic context. This engagement is facilitated by reading and writing in a face to face and online environment. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students’ lifeworlds and is cognizant of our African location. We facilitate student transition into university life and employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including multilingual pedagogies and digital literacy, that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills for Performing Arts students in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures and 100% completion of assignments and at least 50% for coursework.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **DOH1009S CONCEPTS IN SOCIAL SCIENCE**

*Credits for this course count towards the four-year programme of study leading to the BA or BSocSc degree. Some aspects of this course may be offered in a blended/online mode.*

28 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Morreira

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to this course is restricted to Humanities students on the BA or BSocSc four-year programme of study and is strongly recommended for students taking BSocSc majors in this programme.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to involve students in an active and critical engagement with social science texts and concepts, with an emphasis on those issues most pertinent to the Southern African context. It aims to explore key concepts and methods used in different social science disciplines in order to facilitate students’ critical thinking, reading, writing, numeracy and research skills.

**Lecture times:** 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 75% attendance at lectures, tutorials and computer lab sessions, 100% completion of assignments and a 50% average for coursework.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **DOH1010S TEXTS IN THE HUMANITIES**

*Credits for this course count towards the four-year programme of study leading to the BA or BSocSc degree. Some aspects of this course may be offered in a blended/online mode.*

28 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr T Wilks



**Course entry requirements:** Admission to this course is restricted to Humanities students on the BA or BSocSc four-year programme of study and is strongly recommended for students taking BA majors in this programme.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to help students with reading texts and producing texts. It will give students the tools to critically analyse texts – to identify the what, who and how of texts – and it will provide them with examples and frameworks to help them create texts themselves. It will explain the principles of argumentation, and the meaning of ‘discourse’ and how these principles can help students who are working with texts in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 75% attendance of lectures and tutorials, 100% completion of assignments and a 50% average for coursework.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

**Augmenting courses:**

The following augmenting courses (colloquially referred to as Plus Tuts) are available to students registered for the four-year programme of study leading to the BA/BSocSc. Augmenting courses are embedded within first- and second-year undergraduate courses and offer students discipline-specific support. Attendance of augmenting course activities is compulsory for students on the four-year programme of study in their first and second years of the degree. Students are required to register for both the regular course together with the augmenting course as a co-requisite.

Course code	Course title	NQF	
		Foundation credits	Course level
ANS1403S	Introduction to Anthropology +	10	5
ASL1202F	Representations in Africa +	10	5
ASL1304F	Introduction to Language Studies +	10	5
ASL1305S	Introduction to Sociolinguistics +	10	5
ASL2203F	African Political Thought +	10	6
DOH1017S	Introduction to Organisational Psychology +	10	5
DOH2024F	Psychology of Human Resources Management +	10	6
DOH3003F	Research Design in Organisational Psychology +	10	7
DOH3004S	Research Data Analysis in Organisational Psychology +	10	7
ELL1010S	Image, Voice, Word +	10	5
ELL2016F	Cultures of Empire, Resistance and Postcoloniality +	10	6
ELL2017S	Literature and the Work of Memory +	10	6
FAM1010S	Analysing Film and TV +	10	5
FAM2015F	Writing & Editing in Media +	10	6
FAM2016S	Media Power and Culture +	10	6
HST1015F	Connections and Interruptions, 1500 – 1800 +	10	5
HST2041FS	Historical Methods +	10	6
PHI1011S	Ethics +	10	5
POL1010S	Introduction to Politics B +	10	5
PSY1006F	Intro to Psychology Part 1 +	10	5

UMTHOMBO CENTRE FOR STUDENT SUCCESS 185

PSY1007S	Intro to Psychology Part 2 +	10	5
PSY2012F	Research in Psychology I +	10	6
REL1015F	Religions Part and Present +	10	5
REL1016S	Judaism, Christianity and Islam +	10	5
REL2054F	Religion, Sexuality and Gender +	10	6
SOC1006F	Introduction to Sociology +	10	5
SOC1007S	Individual and Society +	10	5
SOC2034F	Poverty Development & Globalisation +	10	6
SOC2035S	Comparative Industrialisation & Labour Study +	10	6
SWK1014F	Community Connections +	10	5
SWK2002F	Introduction to Social Development +	10	6
SWK2014S	Community and Youth Development +	10	6
TDP1029F	Introduction to Theatre & Performance A +	10	5
TDP2042F	Global Performances +	10	6
TDP2013S	Analysis and Criticism +	10	6

*Note: Please consult the course entry under the relevant department to see full course details, as well as whether the augmenting course is offered in a particular year.*

---

## ENGLISH LITERARY STUDIES

The Department of English Literary Studies is housed in the A C Jordan Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus and can be contacted by e-mail at: [ell-english@uct.ac.za](mailto:ell-english@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2836.

The letter code for the Department is ELL.

Departmental website: <http://www.english.uct.ac.za>

### Associate Professor and Head of Department:

H L Twidle, BA(Hons) *Oxon* MA PhD *York*

### Professor:

S Young, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town* MPhil DPhil *Rutgers*

### Emeritus Professors:

J M Coetzee, MA *Cape Town* PhD *Texas* DLitt(h.c) *Strathclyde* DLitt(h.c) *Buffalo* FRSL DLitt(h.c) *Natal* DLitt(h.c) *Skidmore*

D Driver, BA *Unisa* PGCE *London* BA(Hons) MA PhD *Rhodes*

R S Edgecombe, MA *Rhodes* PhD *Cantab*

G Fincham, BA *Columbia* MA *Tel Aviv* DPhil *York*

G L Haresnape, MA *Cape Town* PhD *Sheffield*

J A Higgins, MA *Cantab* PhD *Cape Town* Fellow of UCT

K M McCormick, BA(Hons) UED *Natal* DipEd MA *London* PhD *Cape Town*

K Sole, BA(Hons) MA *London* PhD *Witwatersrand*

### Associate Professors:

P Anderson, BA PhD *Cape Town* MLitt *Oxon*

B Boswell, BTech *CPUT* MPhil *UWC* PhD *Maryland*

P Moji, BA(Hons) *UJ* MA PhD *Sorbonne-Nouvelle (Paris III)*

### Lecturers:

S Busuku, BA(Hons) MA *UKZN*

B Fortuin, BA(Hons) MA PhD *Stell*

K B Highman, BA(Hons) MA *Rhodes* PhD *York*

M Mohulatsi, BA(Hons) MA *Witwatersrand*

H Moosa, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town* PhD *KLC*

### Administrative Officer:

TBA

### Administrative Assistant:

N Kafaar

### Departmental website:

Detailed information on curricula, booklists and other academic matters is available on the English Department website (<http://www.english.uct.ac.za>).

### Repeating courses:

Students may be refused permission to repeat a course if their record is poor, and no student will be permitted to repeat a second time.

### Modification of the syllabus:

The syllabus may be modified within the general framework set out here.

## Requirements for a major in Literary Studies

### [ELL10]

#### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
ELL1013F	Literature: How and Why?
ELL1016S	Image, Voice, Word

#### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
ELL2000F	Cultures of Empire, Resistance and Postcoloniality
ELL2001S	Literature and the Work of Memory

#### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
ELL3000F	Movements, Manifestos and Modernities
ELL3001S	Contemporary Literary Studies

#### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **ELL1016S**: None
- (ii) For **ELL2000F**: At least second year status.
- (iii) For **ELL2001S**: At least second year status.
- (iv) For **ELL3000F**: ELL2000F and ELL2001S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (v) For **ELL3001S**: ELL2000F, ELL2001S and ELL3000F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

#### Course outlines:

---

##### **ELL1010S** IMAGE, VOICE, WORD +

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor B Boswell

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** ELL1016S.

##### **Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: ELL1016S. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

##### **ELL1013F** LITERATURE: HOW AND WHY?

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr H Moosa

**Course entry requirements:** None

##### **Course outline:**

What is 'literature' and how does it work? How and why can we read and think critically? What does close attention to plays, novels and poems tell us as we grapple with the meanings of being human within a 21<sup>st</sup> century world? How can we trace the shift from 'English literature' to 'literature in

English', from our specific and simultaneously myriad locations? This introduction to literary studies offers a range of critical tools and methods for reading and writing about texts in the most interesting and thought-provoking ways possible. The course also introduces students to literary and rhetorical terms, and to basic issues in literary studies. Different literary genres will be explored and analysed, including the novel, poetry and drama. Students will be introduced to different kinds of critical writing and will engage in honing their own critical skills. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' lifeworlds and is cognizant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** 2<sup>nd</sup> period, Monday, Tuesday and Thursday.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **ELL1016S IMAGE, VOICE, WORD**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor B Boswell

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

As an introduction to cultural and literary studies, this course examines an array of modes of expression as we seek to understand how texts of various kinds accomplish their acts of meaning-making and persuade their readers. We will give attention to the impact of a text's form and context in shaping its message, as well as its content. In trying to understand the rhetorical effects of any given text, we will examine examples from across a variety of genres that use words, images and even sound to engage their audience or readers, within a variety of historical and political contexts. Objects of study will include texts that use sound as well as words (such as contemporary ballads, performance poetry and hip hop, or contemporary adaptations of Shakespeare's plays), visual images (such as posters in a protest action, photographs that document war and suffering, and historical maps that retraced the shape the world), and words collated and presented in particular ways on the page (such as the archived documents from the apartheid censors, the published journal of a fugitive slave, the extended prose of a stream-of-consciousness novel). By drawing on key theoretical insights into the politics of representation, we aim to develop the critical skills needed to become savvy readers of contemporary culture and politics. The course aims to build upon the skills in critical reading and writing taught in ELL1013F.

**Lecture times:** 2<sup>nd</sup> period, Monday, Tuesday and Thursday.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **ELL2000F CULTURES OF EMPIRE AND RESISTANCE**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M Mohulatsi

**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status.

**Course outline:**

One of the distinct features of modern societies is how their connections across space and time have been mediated by cultures of empire. Imperialism was undoubtedly the engine of globalization. The imprint of empire, and resistance to imperial power, on cultural formations and modern sensibilities has been both profound and complex. Writing, reading, speaking, literature, language, liberty, freedom, nationalism, the nation-state, race, ethnicity, sex, gender, desire, indigeneity, to name but a few, are all categories of being that are impossible to fathom without a sense of the modern. This course reflects on the imprints and afterlives of empire as a cultural formation that is mediated through narrative and literary discourse. In the course of the semester, we will consider from our postcolonial present how narrative works to mediate these experiences and shape their meanings.

**Lecture times:** 3rd or 4th period.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at tutorials.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**ELL2001S LITERATURE AND THE WORK OF MEMORY**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor S Young**Course entry requirements:** At least second-year status.**Course outline:**

How do we understand, imagine and reanimate the past in language? This course explores questions of memory, remembering and time as these are refracted and represented via a range of verbal, literary and cultural forms. We will consider the making of collective and public memory (e.g. the creation of national pasts; cultures of commemoration; oral history; testimonial forms; displacement, exile and global conflict; literatures of war) but also the question of individual and personal memory (e.g. language and identity; narrative and subjectivity; literature and psychoanalytic theory) As such, the course opens onto a wide range of topics, including but not limited to: the relation between the literary text and the history text; life-writing, autobiography and memoir; representations of childhood and ageing; engagements with the archive; the question of silenced, repressed or invisible histories; the historical, post-colonial and post-apartheid novel; discourses of trauma, truth and reconciliation; old age and forgetting; death and commemoration.

**Lecture times:** 3rd or 4th period.**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at seminars.**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**ELL2016F CULTURES OF EMPIRE AND RESISTANCE +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M Mohulatsi**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).**Co-requisites:** ELL2000F.**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: ELL2000F. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

**ELL2017S LITERATURE AND THE WORK OF MEMORY +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor S Young**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).**Co-requisites:** ELL2001S.**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: ELL2001S. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

**ELL3000F MOVEMENTS, MANIFESTOS AND MODERNITIES**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** ELL2000F and ELL2001S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course examines key theoretical questions as they have been posed within literature on the representation of human and political being, especially as these help us interrogate the notion of modernity. The primary aim is to introduce senior undergraduates in ELL to the frameworks, vocabularies, and animating ideas of critical literary and cultural theorists, such as Cabral (on culture and the popular), Marxism (on questions of ideological formation and class), Said (on Orientalism), Fanon (on decolonialization), Spivak (on questions of the subaltern) and Butler (on language, gender and desire). The course will work with a range of texts and genres to facilitate new fluency with theoretical ideas, and to support critical reading and analysis through a clear theoretical lens.

**Lecture times:** 6<sup>th</sup> period, Monday and Tuesday.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at seminars.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**ELL3001S CONTEMPORARY LITERARY STUDIES**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** ELL2000F, ELL2001S and ELL3000F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This final course introduces students to a range of current ideas and questions in our discipline. It reflects on some of the most important debates and approaches within contemporary literary and cultural studies. We consider how cultural forms engage with the question of 'the contemporary' or 'the here and now', both within our current South African moment and across other historical periods and places. What new forms and canons are emerging for twenty-first-century readers and writers in an unstable world? The lecture series is complemented by small-group seminars that are closely tied to the wide-ranging research interests and creative work of staff and senior postgraduates, which includes: South, West and East African literatures, history and critical thought; creative writing and texts in performance; nineteenth- and twentieth-century poetry; black feminisms; queer studies; early modern studies and Shakespeare in the global South; postcolonial studies; decolonial theory; small magazines and African print cultures; sci-fi and speculative fiction; Francophone writing; life-writing and creative non-fiction; cultural memory and trauma studies; European literary and cultural theory; and the environmental humanities. The course assessment involves a mixture of research assignments and more public forms of critical writing and essays, with some opportunities for creative writing within seminars.

**Lecture times:** 6<sup>th</sup> period, Monday and Tuesday.

**DP requirements:** All written work to be handed in and at least 75% attendance at seminars.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE CENTRE

The English Language Centre (ELC) is a commercial unit within the Faculty of Humanities, located in the Rosedale Building, Hiddingh Campus.

ELC can be contacted by e-mail at [elc@uct.ac.za](mailto:elc@uct.ac.za) or by telephone on 021 650 4161.

**Website:** <http://uctlanguagecentre.com>

ELC delivers Continuing Education courses in English as a Foreign Language and Teaching English as a Foreign Language. The unit is established as a centre of excellence in the field of teaching English as a foreign language to adults, while supporting the Faculty through its commercial operations and furthering the internationalisation mandate of the University.

### **Director:**

S B Harrison, BA(Hons) *Sheffield CELTA DELTA Cantab ESOL MA Sussex*

### **Centre Manager**

C van Niekerk, BA *Stell CertTESOL Trinity ESOL DELTA Cantab ESOL*

### **Academic Managers:**

A Abdellah, BSc(Hons) *Cymru CELTA DELTA Cantab ESOL*

T Borole, BSocSc *Rhodes TESOL Witwatersrand*

M Boshoff, CELTA *Cantab ESOL BA UNISA MA Stell*

N di Gia, CELTA *Cantab ESOL DipTESOL Trinity*

### **Business Development Manager:**

J Kraus, LLB *Hamburg*

### **Marketing Coordinator:**

A More, BA *Unisa PGCE Cape Town*

### **Accommodation Coordinator:**

C Scott, BSocSc(Hons) *Cape Town*

### **English as a Foreign Language Teachers:**

R Barends, TEFL *Cape Town*

K Colvin, BSocSc MEd *UKZN CELTA Cantab ESOL*

S Donck, BA *Notre Dame MA Louvain CELTA Cantab ESOL*

D du Toit, CELTA *Cantab ESOL*

J Ely, TEFL *Cape Town*

T Esack, BA TEFL *Cape Town*

K Fisser, MA *Stell HDE(PGDip Ed) TEFL Cape Town*

L Glam, LLB LLM BSocSc TEFL *Cape Town*

N Jacobs, BSocSc TEFL *Cape Town*

S Lehman, BA *Unisa TEFL*

C Maraba, BSocSc *Cape Town TEFL*

M Mncwango, LLB *Dalian TEFL*

D Nortje, BA(Hons) *Rhodes PGCE Unisa TEFL Cape Town*

F Pelli, BA *Cape Town DELTA Cantab ESOL*

Q N Phandle, Dip *City Varsity TEFL*

N Pillay-Ellis, BA *UKZN PGCE Rhodes CELTA Cantab ESOL*

S Proctor, TEFL *Cape Town*

M Rautenbach, BCom *Stell TEFL*



D J Renke, BEd(Hons) *CPUT CELTA Cantab ESOL DipTESOL*

M Sampson, CELTA *Cantab ESOL*

G Salie, TEFL *Euro Centres*

M Shamrock, TEFL *UK*

J K Stewart, BSocSc(Hons) *Cape Town CELTA Cantab ESOL*

Z Rajie, TEFL *Cape Town*

K Wiid, TEFL *Stell*

M Williams, BA *Unisa CELTA Cantab ESOL*

L A Young, BA(Hons) *Unisa TEFL*

**Administrators:**

J Kambani-Banda

S Kropp

K Moodley

T Pansari

F White

S Diko

K Lwabi

S Mtsako

S Nkosi

---

## ENVIRONMENTAL AND GEOGRAPHICAL SCIENCE

The Department is housed in the Environment & Geographical Science Building, South Lane  
Telephone (021) 650 2874 Fax: (021) 650 3456  
The Departmental abbreviation for Environmental & Geographical Science is EGS.

**Associate Professor and Head of Department:**

P Anderson, BSc(Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

**Professor and ACDI Research Chair in Climate Risk Management:**

M New, BSc(Hons) *Cape Town* MPhil PhD *Cantab*

**Professor and UP-UCT Future Africa Research Chair in Sustainability Transformations:**

M F Ramutsindela, MA *Unin* PhD *London* FSSAG

**Professor and South African Research Chair in Environmental and Social Dimensions of the Bio-economy:**

R P Wynberg, BSc(Hons) MSc MPhil *Cape Town* PhD *Strathclyde*

**Professors:**

B J Abiodun, MTech *FUTA* Lic *Uppsala* PhD *FUTA*

F D Eckardt, BSc(Hons) *KCL* MSc *Cranfield* DPhil *Oxon*

B C Hewitson, BSc *Cape Town* MSc PhD *Penn State*

**Emeritus Professors:**

R F Fuggle, BSc(Hons) UED *Natal* MSc *Louisiana* PhD *McGill*

S Parnell, BA(Hons) HDE PG MA PhD *Witwatersrand*

**Emeritus Professors and Senior Research Scholars:**

M E Meadows, BSc(Hons) *Sussex* PhD *Cantab*

M R Sowman, MSc PhD *Cape Town*

**Honorary Professors:**

B Chase, BA *Portland* MSc *Sheffield* DPhil *Oxon*

W J Gutowski, BSc *Yale* PhD *MIT*

**Associate Professors:**

J Battersby, BSc(Hons) *London* MA *Newcastle* DPhil *Oxon*

Z Patel, BSc(Hons) MSc *Natal* PhD *Cantab*

G Ziervogel, BSc *Cape Town* BSc(Hons) *Rhodes* DPhil *Oxon*

**Emeritus Associate Professor:**

K J Winter, BA Hons *Cape Town* MA *London* PhD *Cape Town*

**Affiliated Associate Professor:**

S Daya, MA PhD *Durham*

**Honorary Associate Professor:**

S Lwasa, MSc *Netherlands* MA PhD *Uganda*

**Senior Lecturers:**

P Mbatha, BSocSc(Hons) *UKZN* MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

S Scheba, MPhil *Cape Town* PhD *Manchester*

**Lecturers:**

D Kibirige, B.Sc *Limpopo* MSc *Lund* PhD *Miskolc*  
M Norton BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town*  
P Matikinca BSc(Hons) *Rhodes* MSc *Cape Town* PhD *Stell*  
S Rikhotso, BSc(Hons) *Cape Town* MSc *UFS* PhD *North West*  
J R von Holdt, BSc *Unisa* MPhil PhD *Cape Town*

**Junior Research Fellow:**

MJ van Niekerk, BSc(Hons) *Stell* MPhil *Cape Town*

**Honorary Research Associates:**

D Fig, BA *Cape Town* BSc(Hons) PhD *LSE*  
R Hill, BSc Civil Eng PhD *Cape Town*

**Honorary Research Affiliate:**

EW Bergh, BSc(Hons) PhD *Cape Town*  
I Pinto, Licenciatura *Maputo* MSc PhD *Cape Town*

**Administrative Officer:**

S Adams

**Administrative Assistant:**

F Hartley

**Finance Officer:**

L George

**Senior Secretary:**

L Claasen

**Technical Officer:**

S Hess

**Project Manager:**

M Damons

**CLIMATE SYSTEM ANALYSIS GROUP**

**Director:**

B C Hewitson, BSc *Cape Town* MSc PhD *Penn State*

**Deputy Director:**

C Jack, BSc(Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

**Researchers:**

O Crespo, MSc *Montpellier* PhD *Toulouse*  
P Johnston, BSc(Hons) HDE *Stell* MSc PhD *Cape Town*  
C Lennard, BSc(Hons) MSc PhD *Cape Town*  
A McClure, BSc(Hons) MSc *Rhodes*  
SA Omar, BSc(Hons) MSc PhD *Cape Town* M Tadross, BSc(Hons) *Newcastle* PhD *Cantab*  
P Wolski, MSc *Krakow* PhD *Amsterdam*

**Research Support:**

R Duffet, BSc MSc *Cape Town*

S Govender, BSc *Unisa* MSc *UFS*

P Kloppers, BSc(Hons) MSc *Cape Town*

P Mukwenha, Bsc(Hons) MSU *Zimbabwe*

M Rustin-Nefdt, BCom *Unisa*

L Van Aardenne, BSc(Hons) MSc *Cape Town*

### Field work

All students attending courses in Environmental and Geographical Science are required to take part in fieldwork arranged during the year.

## Requirements for a major in Environmental and Geographical Science

### [EGS02]

#### First Year courses

Code	Title
EGS1007S	Human & Physical Systems
GEO1009F	Introduction to Earth and Environmental Sciences

#### Second Year courses

Code	Title
EGS2013F	The Physical Environment
EGS2015S	Space and Society

#### Third Year courses

Code	Title
	<b>Two of the following:</b>
EGS3012S	Atmospheric Science
EGS3021F	Sustainability and Environment
EGS3022S	Geographic Thought
EGS3023F	Anthropocene Environments in Perspective

#### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **GEO1009F**: At least 60% for NSC Physical Science, Life Sciences or Geography
- (ii) For **EGS1003S**: A 50% pass in NSC Geography or GEO1009F (or AGE1004S)
- (iii) For **EGS2013F**: GEO1009F or EGS1004S
- (iv) For **EGS2015S**: EGS1003S or EGS1007S or any Social Science course and any two full first-year Humanities courses.
- (v) For **EGS3021F**: EGS2013F, EGS2015S
- (vi) For **EGS3023F**: EGS2013F
- (vii) For **EGS3022S**: EGS2015S
- (viii) For **EGS3012S**: GEO1009F or equivalent, EGS2013F or SEA2004F (or SEA2002S or SEA2003F) or approved 2000-level Science course or any 1000-level Physics course.

*NOTE: Students who fail any EGS course by a narrow margin may be eligible for further testing. Sub-minima apply.*

#### Course outlines:

**NB:** *Environmental and Geographical Science courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by a general BA or BSocSc, except for the courses specified in Rule FB5.9.*

---

## **GEO1009F GEOSYSTEMS: AN INTRODUCTION TO EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES**

*This course is presented jointly by the Departments of Archaeology, Environmental & Geographical Sciences, Geological Sciences, and Oceanography, but administered by Geological Sciences. Students majoring in these subjects are required to attend one half-day excursion.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor E M Bordy

**Course entry requirements:** At least 50% for NSC Geography or at least 60% for NSC Physical Science or Life Sciences. NOTE: Preference will be given to students majoring in Archaeology, Environmental and Geographical Science, Geology or Oceanography.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop a broad understanding of how the Earth works. Over its >4.5 billion-year-long history, the Earth has been shaped by chemical, physical and biological processes. The course demonstrates why decoding the rock record of deep-time events is critical for explaining past, present and future environmental changes and the distribution of natural resources. It examines the interplay of terrestrial, marine, atmospheric, and cryospheric processes within the Earth system, with an emphasis on monitoring essential variables for understanding climate variability and change. The Earth has also sustained life over the last >3.5 billion years. Our species, *Homo sapiens*, is a relatively recent arrival, yet it has had, and continues to have, the greatest impact on our planet. The course reviews human evolution and how we became the dominant cause of global environmental change. The course also explores the social risks and vulnerabilities in response to the Earth's biophysical processes and change. The course concludes with attention to the concepts of environmental hazard, risk, resilience, monitoring and adaptation.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 2nd period

**DP requirements:** An average of 40% on all marked classwork and tests. Submission of 80% of weekly assignments in each of the four sections (i.e., GEO, AGE, SEA, EGS). Attendance of the field trip is compulsory for students majoring in Archaeology, EGS, Geology, or Oceanography.

**Assessment:** Marked classwork, including class test/s, counts 50%, and a 3-hour written examination counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% in the class mark is required to write the theory examination paper. Supplementary examinations for GEO1009F will be offered in July.

## **Undergraduate Courses**

### **Fieldwork**

All students attending courses in Environmental & Geographical Science are required to take part in fieldwork arranged during the year.

### **First-Year Courses**

---

## **EGS1007S HUMAN & PHYSICAL SYSTEMS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** To be advised

**Course entry requirements:** At least 50% for NSC Geography or GEO1009F

**Course outline:**

The course presents fundamental environmental and geographical concepts from the fields of human and physical geography and explores the interconnections, flows and boundaries across these systems. How these systems have played out in the past, how they are changing, and what the future may hold, is critical to a full appreciation of current and future environmental challenges. This course seeks to bring together an understanding of both the biophysical geographic settings and processes that inform all facets of our landscapes, and the social engagement with their components, which present both opportunity and limitation to human development.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 2nd period

**DP requirements:** Attendance and satisfactory completion of tutorial assignments; students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework component.

**Assessment:** Essays, assignments and tutorial work count 60%; one 2-hour theory examination written in November counts 40% (subminimum of 40% required).

## Second-Year Courses

---

### EGS2013F THE PHYSICAL ENVIRONMENT

*There is a compulsory fieldwork component involving half-day field excursions.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor F Eckardt

**Course entry requirements:** GEO1009F

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on contemporary Atmosphere-Earth surface interactions, in particular the role of precipitation and water from a global to a regional scale and examines temporal dynamics, driven by natural process as well as anthropogenic pressures. It covers in detail global circulation patterns, climate variability, soil formation, polar response to climate change, informants of regional biome formation, tropical deforestation, and desertification and earth observation technology. It is expected that students will enhance their understanding of Earth system dynamics, systems interactions and develop an appreciation for scales both temporal and spatial. Students are also expected to put the local context into a regional setting and make linkages to the larger global picture.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 5th period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory completion of practicals and all written assignments, including projects, fieldwork reports, practicals, essays and class tests. Students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Project, essays, class tests and practical assignments including fieldwork report count 50%; one 3-hour examination written in June count 50% (subminimum of 40% required).

---

### EGS2015S SOCIETY & SPACE

*There is a compulsory fieldwork component involving half-day field excursions.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor J Battersby

**Course entry requirements:** For BSc: EGS1007S; For BA or BSocSc: EGS1007S or Social Science Foundation course and two full first year Humanities courses, or equivalent.

**Course outline:**

Spatial thinking sits at the core of Geographical scholarship, and space and human societies are always mutually constitutive. This course explores how geographers have theorised space and place as central to understanding historical processes, social relations and cultural practices. Focusing particularly on Africa and other regions of the global South, the course covers foundational Human Geography concepts including modernity, landscape, memory, heritage, identity and inclusion. Through theoretical work and field-based experiential learning, we examine how space and place both shape and are shaped by a range of power dynamics.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 5th period

**DP requirements:** Attendance and satisfactory completion of practical including fieldwork and tutorial assignments; students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Essays, a class test, practical assignments based on compulsory fieldwork and tutorial work count 60%; one 2-hour theory examination written in November counts 40%. In order to pass the course, you are required to obtain an average mark of at least 50% across all submissions.

### Third-Year Courses

---

#### EGS3012S ATMOSPHERIC SCIENCE

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** To be advised

**Course entry requirements:** GEO1009F or equivalent, EGS2013F or SEA2004F (or SEA2002S or SEA2003F) or any approved 2000-level Science course, and or any approved 1000-level Physics or Mathematics course.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to provide a thorough understanding of the physical processes that control the Earth's atmosphere. It covers the following topics: atmospheric energy balance, thermodynamics, dynamics, and general circulation; tropical and mid-latitude weather producing systems; weather and climate extreme events (e.g. heat-waves, drought, and floods) in Africa; climate variability and change; atmospheric boundary layer turbulence, chemistry, and pollution. The lectures are complemented with field measurements and laboratory practicals to demonstrate basic data analysis techniques employed in atmospheric sciences.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 1st period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory completion of practicals and all written assignments, including essays, project reports and class tests.

**Assessment:** Essays and tests count 20%; project reports and practicals count 20%; one 3-hour examination in November counts 60% (subminimum of 40% required).

---

#### EGS3021F SUSTAINABILITY & ENVIRONMENT

*There is a compulsory fieldwork component involving a half-day field excursion.*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr P Sabela-Rikhotso

**Course entry requirements:** EGS2013F, EGS2015S

**Course outline:**

The course critically engages with current debates and discourses in the fields of sustainability, vulnerability and environmental management, including examination of key concepts such as integration, systems-thinking, complexity, equity, vulnerability, risk, resilience, adaptation and mitigation. Approaches and methods for analysing environmental problems and integrating risk reduction as well as sustainability principles and practices into policy, programme, plan and project cycle processes are investigated and applied in different contexts.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 3rd period

**DP requirements:** Attendance and satisfactory completion of practicals (including fieldwork), other assignments and tests; students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Practical reports (including fieldwork), class tests and other assignments count 60%; one 3-hour June examination counts 50% (subminimum of 40% required).

---

#### EGS3022S GEOGRAPHIC THOUGHT

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor Z Patel

**Course entry requirements:** EGS2015S

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on debates in classical and contemporary human geography. It considers important thematic areas in the geographical literature, such as development; spatiality; urban, political and feminist geographies. Each thematic area explores specific debates and key author's work in the field, providing students with an introduction to literature, a content overview, and skills to deconstruct and build conceptual and analytical arguments related to evidence drawn from geographical research from around the world, other than South Africa. The course also emphasises academic reading and writing skills taught in the practical sessions.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 4th period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory completion of essay and practical assignments and participation in tutorials; students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework

**Assessment:** Essay and other assignments count 70%; one 3-hour written examination in November count 30% (subminimum of 40% required).

---

**EGS3023F ANTHROPOCENE ENVIRONMENTS IN PERSPECTIVE**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr D Kibirige

**Course entry requirements:** EGS2013F

**Course outline:**

The course deals with the dynamic physical environment including the human impact on global environments at various spatial and temporal scales during the so-called Anthropocene. The general aim of this course is to illustrate the nature and scale of changes that characterise the earth's environment, against a background of both natural and anthropogenically-induced processes. This provides an important perspective when thinking about contemporary environments and how they might change in the future – with obvious consequences for our own species and that of the others with which we share the planet.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 5th period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory completion of practicals and all written assignments, including fieldwork report, essays and class tests. Students must attain an average mark of not less than 40% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Field report, essays, class tests and practical assignments count 50%; one 3-hour examination written in June count 50% (sub-minimum of 40% required).



---

## FILM AND MEDIA STUDIES, CENTRE FOR

The Centre for Film and Media Studies (CFMS) incorporates majors in Media and Writing and in Film and Television Studies, and the Undergraduate Programme in Film and Media Production.

At postgraduate level CFMS offers Honours specialising in Film and Television Studies (including Screenwriting), in Film Theory and Practice (with a focus on documentary film production), in Media Theory and Practice and in Political Communication. At the MA level, we offer specialisations in Film and Television Studies, Documentary Arts, Media Theory and Practice, and Political Communication.

The Centre also manages the UCT TV Studio. The letter code for the Centre is FAM.

### **Locations:**

**Central Administration:** A C Jordan Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus.

**UCT-TV:** Baxter Theatre, Main Road, Rondebosch.

**Contacts:** Upper Campus and UCT-TV: [fam.info@uct.ac.za](mailto:fam.info@uct.ac.za),  
telephone: 021 650 3373

Departmental website: [www.cfms.uct.ac.za](http://www.cfms.uct.ac.za)

### **Professor of Media Studies and Director:**

A Haupt, MA *UWC PhD Cape Town*

### **Professor:**

T Bosch, MA PhD *Ohio*

### **Emeritus Professor:**

I E Glenn, BA(Hons) *Natal BPhil York MA PhD Pennsylvania*

### **Associate Professors:**

W Chuma, MA *Zimbabwe PhD Witwatersrand*

M J Evans, MA PhD *Cape Town*

L J Modisane, MA PhD *Witwatersrand*

M Ndlovu, MA PhD *UKZN*

M Walton, MA PhD *Cape Town*

### **Emeritus Associate Professors:**

M P Botha, MA DPhil *UFS*

L G Marx, PhD *Cape Town*

### **Senior Lecturers:**

R H Irwin, MA PhD *Cape Town*

L Maasdorp, MA PhD *Stell*

D Marco, MA *Witwatersrand PhD Warwick*

I-M Rijdsdijk, MA PhD *Cape Town*

A J Smit, MA *Cape Town PhD Glasgow*

### **Lecturers:**

J Cain, BA(Hons) BFA *Montreal DPhil Stell*

A Dadi Patel, BA(Hons) MA *Witwatersrand*

V Suparsad, MA PhD *Witwatersrand*

D Valley, BA(Hons) *Cape Town MA Southern California*

### **Technical Officers:**

H Dudley – Chief Technical Officer

**Administrative Officer:**

B Zulu

**Administrative Assistants:**

P Ndlela

V Bhambatha, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc *Cape Town*

**Senior Secretary:**

M Maunganidze (UCT-TV)

**Majors and Specialisations offered:**

**FILM AND TELEVISION STUDIES MAJOR**

**MEDIA AND WRITING MAJOR**

**FILM AND MEDIA PRODUCTION** (see entry under Rules and Curricula for Qualifications and Programmes of Study)

**Requirements for a major in Film and Television Studies**

**[FAM01]**

**First Year courses**

Code	Title
FAM1000S	Analysing Film and TV

**Second Year courses**

Code	Title
FAM2013F	Introduction to Screen Genres
FAM2004S	Cinema Histories and Movements

**Third Year courses**

Code	Title
FAM3005F	Film in Africa
FAM3003S	Advanced Film Studies

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **FAM2013F**: At least second year status
- (ii) For **FAM2004S**: At least second year status
- (iii) For **FAM3005F**: FAM1000S, FAM2004S and FAM2013F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (iv) For **FAM3003S**: FAM1000S, FAM2004S, and FAM2013F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Requirements for a major in Media and Writing**

**[FAM07]**

**First Year courses**

Code	Title
FAM1001F	Media and Society

**Second Year courses**

Code	Title
FAM2000F	Writing & Editing in the Media
FAM2003S	Media, Power and Culture

**Third Year courses**

---

Code	Title
FAM3000F	The Media in South Africa
FAM3001S	Advanced Media Studies

**Recommended elective: REL3042S Religion and Media\***

This course is recommended but is not required for the FAM major. Second year students who are majoring in FAM are allowed to take this third year REL3042S course, which does not require prior REL courses.

*\*See entry under Department for the Study of Religions for description of REL3042S.*

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **FAM2000F**: At least second-year status
- (ii) For **FAM2003S**: FAM1001F and FAM2000F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (iii) For **FAM3000F**: Open to students who have completed FAM2000F and FAM2003S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.
- (iv) For **FAM3001S**: Open to students who have completed FAM2000F, FAM2003S and FAM3000F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outlines:**

**Film and Media Production Programme Courses:**

*Please note that Production courses are available only to students who are registered in the Production programme.*

---

**FAM1000S ANALYSING FILM AND TV**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr I-M Rijdsdijk

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course offers a critical introduction to contemporary film and television. It aims to provide students with the basic vocabulary for understanding the film-making process as well as narrative forms in both film and television. The course also considers key areas of film and television studies such as spectatorship, genre and realism, with examples drawn from both South Africa and abroad. Students are assessed through academic analysis and a creative assignment (a short film shot on a mobile phone, or a short script).

**Lecture times:** 6<sup>th</sup> period, Wednesday and Thursday; screening: 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> periods, Friday.

**DP requirements:** All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**FAM1001F MEDIA AND SOCIETY**

*This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term – please consult the Department.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** A/Professor M Walton and Professor A Haupt

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course is an Introduction to Film and Media Studies. The course examines the importance of the mass media in modern society and questions the roles that the media play in public life. We look conceptually at how meanings are constructed, using semiotic concepts to interrogate the relationship between audiences, media texts, technology and society. Debates around media effects and media

ethics are also explored in the course. In addition to discussing theoretical media debates, this course also exposes students to a diverse range of writing styles for multiple media platforms such as newspapers, television and the Internet. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' lifeworlds and is cognizant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including multilingual pedagogies and digital literacy, that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** 6<sup>th</sup> period, Wednesday and Thursday; screening: 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> periods, Friday; weekly tutorials.

**DP requirements:** All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **FAM1010S ANALYSING FILM AND TV +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr I-M Rijdsdijk

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** FAM1000S.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: FAM1000S ANALYSING FILM AND TV. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### **FAM2000F WRITING & EDITING IN THE MEDIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Evans

**Course entry requirements:** At least second-year status, or at the discretion of the Head of Department

**Course outline:**

The course serves as an introduction to journalism and will expose students to theoretical and practical aspects of media production. By the end of this course students should be able to demonstrate good writing and editing skills; an understanding of print, broadcast and online media practices; and an understanding of the theoretical underpinnings of these media practices.

**Lecture times:** 1<sup>st</sup> period, Monday and Wednesday.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written assignments and regular attendance. Students who miss more than two seminars will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **FAM2003S MEDIA, POWER AND CULTURE**

*This course may also be offered in Summer Term – please consult the Department.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor W Chuma

**Course entry requirements:** FAM1001F and FAM2000F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department

**Course outline:**

The course explores key theories which explain the inter-relationships of the media, popular culture and social power. These range from political economy to cultural and audience studies, and key theories of race, gender and intersectionality in the media. These are introduced in relation to key contemporary trends such as globalisation, global geopolitics and the rise of networked media. Students are given tools to understand attention economies, algorithmic power and contemporary issues of “dataveillance”. The course also explores the appropriation of both mass and networked media in everyday life. A set of compulsory workshops build students’ skills in audience research, critical thinking and data analysis and visualisation.

**Lecture times:** 8<sup>th</sup> period, Monday and Tuesday, Compulsory workshops 8<sup>th</sup> period Wednesday; tutorials.

**DP requirements:** All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **FAM2004S CINEMA: HISTORIES AND MOVEMENTS**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor L J Modisane

**Course entry requirements:** At least second-year status

#### **Course outline:**

This course examines the histories of cinemas and their social, cultural and political contexts from the silent era through to contemporary film. Important filmmakers and theorists are explored, from Soviet and German filmmaking between the wars, and the emergence of Africa filmmaking in the 1960s to Hollywood New Wave and Dogme 95. By the end of the course, students will have gained a broad knowledge of the histories of cinemas and cinema movements, deepening their knowledge of cinema, and will have improved their analytical skills and writing abilities.

**Lecture times:** 7<sup>th</sup> period, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday; weekly screenings, time and venue to be announced

**DP requirements:** All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **FAM2013F INTRODUCTION TO SCREEN GENRES**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr D Marco

**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status

#### **Course outline:**

This course provides an introduction to genre studies for screen texts. This investigation of genre is supported by a sampling of film and television genre texts. The concept of genre provides a lens for considering the industrial, historical and sociopolitical factors which shape screen media. While drawing from a range of global examples, this course will also pay attention to the ways genre has been adapted for African audiences and South African audiences, in particular. The course explores a number of key questions related to genre: (1) What is genre and how are genres defined? (2) How do industries and audiences influence and shape genre texts? (3) How do genre texts reproduce, reinforce or challenge dominant ideology? (4) What might genre codes reveal about the social, political and historical context of a texts production and reception? (5) How can filmmakers make critical use of genre tropes? (6) How might we understand genre’s relevance across different screen media platforms including, television film and streaming platforms?; and (7) What are politics of genres which travel across different national and economic contexts?

**Lecture times:** Monday and Tuesday, 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

**FAM2014FS SCREEN PRODUCTION I**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr L Maasdorp

**Course entry requirements:** As for admission to Film and Media Production specialisation (see entry under Rules and Curricula in this Handbook).

**Course outline:**

The goal of this course is to create a foundation of conceptual and practical skills for moving picture production. Conceptual skills will be discussed during theory lectures. From time-to-time students will be required to complete reading in preparation for a theory class. Technical skills modules have been designed to expose students to practical filmmaking skills. They will focus predominantly on camera, editing and sound (recording and mixing). These skills will be expanded on in FAM3016F and synthesised through the production of a short film, a Senior Research Project (SRP) in FAM3017S.

**Lecture times:** Four lecture periods per week (two workshops) and a compulsory screening during 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> periods, Monday – Wednesday. Self-paced lab time and group work.

**DP requirements:** Full attendance and submission of all classwork.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework (including practical, theoretical, individual and group work).

---

**FAM2015F WRITING & EDITING IN THE MEDIA +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Evans

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** FAM2000F

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: FAM2000F WRITING & EDITING IN MEDIA. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

**FAM2016S MEDIA, POWER AND CULTURE +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor W Chuma

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** FAM2003S.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: FAM2003S MEDIA POWER AND CULTURE. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

### **FAM2017FS MULTIMEDIA PRODUCTION I**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** A Dadi Patel

**Course entry requirements:** As for admission to Film and Media Production specialisation (see entry under Rules and Curricula in this Handbook).

**Course outline:**

This course aims to provide students with a foundation in online multimedia production skills, with a focus on storytelling which allows students to combine the written word with audio and visual forms, while understanding newsworthiness and how content is conceptualised and developed across distribution platforms. Students gain foundational journalistic skills in digital recording, field interviewing and research, news writing and news production. This training includes real-time reporting with social media to break stories, check facts, and engage with audiences. The theoretical component of the course will include an introduction to media ethics and law for practitioners and outlines key concepts and innovations in online publishing.

**Lecture times:** 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> periods, Thursdays and Fridays (when offered in second semester), Mondays and Thursdays (when offered in first semester).

**DP requirements:** Attendance of all sessions and submission of all work required for DP.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework (including practical, theoretical, individual and group work).

---

### **FAM3000F THE MEDIA IN SOUTH AFRICA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R Irwin

**Course entry requirements:** FAM2000F and FAM2003S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The Constitution of South Africa enshrines the freedom of the press and other media, but students entering the world of media work will discover that their freedom of expression is, in practice, subject to a gridwork of constraints. Knowledge of these constraints is vitally important to anyone wanting a career in media and public communication. As such, this course maps out key regulatory, ethical and legal parameters circumscribing the freedom to speak in the public domain. Similarly, the Constitution protects the right to privacy, and the course explores how social media platforms, publishers, users and civic groups are engaging with regulatory measures and ethical practices designed to guard the privacy of citizens.

**Lecture times:** 2<sup>nd</sup> period, Monday and Wednesday.

**DP requirements:** All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **FAM3001S ADVANCED MEDIA STUDIES**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor T Bosch

**Course entry requirements:** FAM2000F, FAM2003S and FAM3000F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course comprises a lecture series with a weekly supporting tutorial. The course aims to develop a critical understanding of research about the media, focusing on South African and African case studies. In particular, the course examines links between theoretical approaches or claims and applied media research. While the course centres on academic media research, it also introduces students to industry data, tools and researchers.

**Lecture times:** 2<sup>nd</sup> period, Monday and Tuesday.

**DP requirements:** All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

**FAM3003S ADVANCED FILM STUDIES**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr V Suparsad

**Course entry requirements:** FAM1000S, FAM2004S, and FAM2013F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course builds on cineliteracy, socio-political understanding and theoretical insights acquired in the preceding film courses. The lectures and seminars aim to broaden and deepen students' grasp of key contemporary developments in film theory that will be illustrated by means of case studies drawn from a wide diversity of films from around the world.

**Lecture times:** 4<sup>th</sup> period, Monday and Tuesday; screening: 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> periods, Friday.

**DP requirements:** All written work must be submitted by the stipulated dates. Students who miss more than two seminar classes will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%. The lecture series counts 50% and the seminar 50% of the final mark for the course.

---

**FAM3005F FILM IN AFRICA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** D Valley

**Course entry requirements:** FAM1000S, FAM2004S and FAM2013F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department

**Course outline:**

The course examines contemporary issues in African cinemas, including cinema in South Africa during and after apartheid. The term "cinemas" is used as there is not a single African cinema, but a diversity of national film cultures on the continent. The course will address the complex interrelationship of history, aesthetics, politics and ideology in African cinemas, as well as the cultural, social and economic forces which blend to form this vital part of world cinema.

**Lecture times:** 7<sup>th</sup> period, Tuesday and Wednesday; screening: 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> periods, Friday.

**DP requirements:** All written work must be submitted timeously. Students who miss more than two tutorials will lose their DPs.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**FAM3016F SCREEN PRODUCTION II**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr L Maasdorp

**Course entry requirements:** FAM2014S.

**Course outline:**

The third-year screen production course follows on from Screen Production I and is limited to students who have successfully completed that course. Students will consolidate skills learnt in the second-year course and further develop the fundamental techniques of production for film, television and the web. Classes are workshop-based and concentrate on practical and conceptual filmmaking skills.

**Lecture times:** Four lectures per week (two workshops) and a compulsory screening during 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> periods, Monday – Wednesday. Self-paced lab time and group work.

**DP requirements:** Full attendance and submission of all classwork.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework (including practical, theoretical, individual and group work).

---

**FAM3017FS SENIOR RESEARCH PROJECT SCREEN**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr J Cain

**Course entry requirements:** FAM2014S and FAM3016F.

**Course outline:**

The Senior Research Project: Screen follows on from Screen Production II and is limited to students who have successfully completed that course. The course is focused on students working in groups to



produce a 10-minute film designed and produced under supervision. It should showcase what students have acquired, creatively and intellectually, during the course of the Film and Media Production specialisation. The groups and projects will be decided on before or at the beginning of this course.

**Lecture times:** Monday 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> period and Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Full attendance and submission of all classwork.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework (including practical, theoretical, individual and group work).

---

### **FAM3018FSLP MULTIMEDIA PRODUCTION II**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R Irwin

**Course entry requirements:** FAM2017S.

**Course outline:**

Multimedia Production II builds on the skills learnt in Multimedia Production I, and provides students with the skills to produce in-depth genres across a range of platforms. Students will learn to produce and edit television inserts, and will receive training in photojournalism or data journalism.

**DP requirements:** Full attendance and submission of all classwork.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework (including practical, theoretical, individual and group work).

---

### **FAM3019FS MULTIMEDIA PRODUCTION III**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Walton

**Course entry requirements:** FAM2017S and FAM3018F.

**Course outline:**

Using the skills acquired in Production I and II and elsewhere, students will work with supervisors to research, conceptualise, propose and create a cohesive body of creative production work on an approved topic and in a chosen format. Students may choose to work with a client to produce a range of related media materials to meet their communication needs. The creative project must be accompanied by a theoretical justification and reflection on the process.

**DP requirements:** Full attendance and submission of all classwork.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework (including practical, theoretical, individual and group work).

---

## FINANCE AND TAX

The Department is housed in the Leslie Social Science Building. Reception: Room No. 4.54, phone (021) 650-2598 or can be contacted by e-mail at [kim.peters@uct.ac.za](mailto:kim.peters@uct.ac.za). The letter code for the department is FTX.

### Head of Department:

L Pitt, HDE *Cape Town* BCom(Hons)(Eco) *Unisa* BCom(Hons)(ES) *UJ* BB&A(Hons) MBA *Stell* MCom *Cape Town* DBL *Unisa*

### Lecturers:

P Brijlal, BSc HDE *UKZN* PGDip(Financial Planning) *Stell* MBA *UKZN* PhD *UWC*  
 N Jwara, BTech(Corporate Admin) *DUT* MBA *UKZN*  
 X Mtiki, MCom(Finance) *UWC*

### Administrator:

K Peters

### Course outlines:

*NB: Finance and Tax courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by the general BA or BSocSc degrees.*

---

#### FTX1005F/S MANAGERIAL FINANCE

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** FTX1005F TBA / FTX1005S N Jwara

**Course entry requirements:** Matriculation mathematics, Mathematics Literacy or registration for the Post graduate diploma in Management in Entrepreneurship, Marketing Sport Management Tourism and Business Communication.

**Objective:** This course is designed to provide a general introduction to the study of the financial function in business, particularly in a South African environment. The course has two primary objectives: Firstly to expose students with little or no commercial or financial background to the fundamentals of the financial aspects of business and the environment in which businesses operate. The second objective is to afford the students with the opportunity of gaining as much practical experience as possible in key areas of Finance, Management Accounting and Accounting.

#### Course outline:

This course is designed to introduce students with little or no commercial or financial background to the fundamentals of managerial finance. Having completed the course students should have a basic understanding of accounting concepts, be able to read financial statements and perform basic (ratio) analysis of key performance areas of the business, understand the concept of time value of money, employ basic steps toward efficient working capital management and have a basic understanding of capital budgeting and valuations. The course covers the following key topics: Introduction to basic accounting concepts, understanding annual financial statements, source of finance, basic financial ratio analysis, investments, risk & return, working capital management, cost volume profit analysis, budgeting, time value of money, basic valuations, cost of capital, discounted cash flow, and capital budgeting.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Wednesday, Thursday & Friday: 12h00 -12h45

**DP requirements:** Writing all class tests. Attendance and submission of 80% of tutorials. Satisfactory completion of the project and assignments. 40% average year mark.

**Assessment:** Class tests, 1-15%; 2-15%; objective tests (10% - Best 5 out of 10); 1 group project (10%); final examination (50%). *\*NB. Disclaimer, Please note that this course will be run in 2025, unless less than 20 students sign up for it.*

---

**FTX2000S PERSONAL FINANCIAL MANAGEMENT**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** Students must be in at least their 2nd year of study to register for the course. 3rd and 4th year students may also register for the course

**Course outline:**

The course introduces students to the fundamental principles of sound financial management at the individual level and equips them with the tools to ensure that they are better able to manage their personal finances. Topics covered include basic financial planning, time value of money, credit management, real estate, the basics of investing, personal income tax, medical schemes and insurance and estate and retirement planning. While the course provides a sound theoretical grounding in these topics, the focus is on practical application and real-world relevance.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday & Wednesday: 15h00 -15h45

**DP requirements:** Completion and submission of at least 80% of tutorial assignments and attendance at 80% of tutorial sessions, and 40% average year mark.

**Assessment:** Assessment Weighting: Students will be required to complete weekly tutorial assignments and a Group Investment project (10%) will be prepared and submitted for grading. In addition to the project 10%, the balance of the marks are made up as follows: weekly objective tests 10% (best 5 out of 10 counts); two class tests 20% (2 x 10%) and final exam 60% will be written.

---

## FINE ART, MICHAELIS SCHOOL OF

The Michaelis School of Fine Art is the Fine Art Department at the University of Cape Town. Michaelis is staffed by some of South Africa's leading fine artists, curators and art academics. Internationally the school is recognised as one of South Africa's foremost institutions for the study of fine art and art history at an advanced level. The department offers undergraduate courses in Fine Art, and Art History and Discourse of Art. Courses offered include Photography, Painting, Print-media, Sculpture and Curatorship. At postgraduate level it offers numerous degrees, including the Masters in Fine Art, Masters in Art Historical Studies, Masters in Arts in Critical Practice and Curatorial Studies, and the Honours in Curatorship.

The School also houses the Centre for Curating the Archive, the Katrine Harries Print Cabinet and the Michaelis Galleries.

Students are permitted to use the facilities and studios after hours, with permission of the Director and sections.

Studio facilities are provided, but students must furnish themselves with other materials, tools, personal protective clothing and equipment that they may require. Students will be held responsible for the proper care of the studios and workshop equipment and are required to observe all safety instructions.

The letter code for the Department is FIN. E-mail: [admissions.fineart@uct.ac.za](mailto:admissions.fineart@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 7111.

Departmental website: [www.michaelis.uct.ac.za](http://www.michaelis.uct.ac.za)

### **Associate Professor and Director:**

K Campbell, PGCE *Cape Town* (Theory and Practice of Art)  
MA(FA) *Stell* PhD *UWC*

### **Professors:**

J Alexander, MA(FA) *Witwatersrand* (Sculpture)  
N Makhubu, MA PhD *Rhodes* (Art History/Discourse)  
B Searle, HDE(PG Sec) MFA *Cape Town* (Video)

### **Emeritus Professor and Michaelis Professor of Fine Art:**

P A Skotnes, MFA DLit *Cape Town*

### **Emeritus Professors:**

S C Ingg, PGDip *Brighton* MA(FA) *Natal*  
M A P Godby, BA *Trinity College, Dublin* MA *Birmingham* PhD  
*Witwatersrand*  
M J Payne, NTD(Art) *Pretoria Technikon* Cert Adv Studies *St Martins*  
*London* MFA *Cape Town*  
J G F Younge, MA(FA) *Cape Town* NATD *Johannesburg College of Art*

### **Honorary Professor:**

B Martinez-Ruiz, PhD *Yale*  
P A Siopis, PGDip *Portsmouth* MFA *Rhodes*

### **Honorary Research Associate:**

A Tietze, MA *Oxon* MA *Essex*

### **Associate Professors:**

J Brundrit, MA(FA) *Stell* (Photography)  
 PGDip(HES) *Cape Town*  
 S Josephy, MA(FA) *Stell* (Photography)  
 PGDip(HES) *Cape Town*  
 F Langerman, MFA PhD *Cape Town* (Printmedia)  
 J van der Schijff, MFA *Cape Town*  
 MFA *Academie Minerva Groningen* (Sculpture)  
*Netherlands*

**Emeritus Associate Professor:**

V MacKenny, MA *Natal*

**Senior Lecturers:**

S Huigen-Conradie, MA PhD *Stell* (Printmedia)  
 G Mahashe, MA(FA) PhD *Cape* (Foundation/Curatorship)  
*Town*  
 P Malatjie, MA *Witwatersrand* PhD (Art History/Discourse)  
*Goldsmiths*  
 F Saptouw, MFA *Cape Town* (Curatorship/Painting)

**Lecturers:**

T Monoa, BTech *TUT* MTech PhD (Art History/Discourse)  
*UJ*  
 A Soudien, BA(FA) *Cape Town* MA (Art History/Discourse)  
*Chicago* PhD *Witwatersrand*  
 G van der Byl, MFA *Cape Town* (Painting/Core Practice)

**Gallery Curator:**

J Nair, BAHons *Cape Town*

**Principal Technical Officer:**

M Pather, BTech(FA), Dip Arts *DUT* (New Media)  
 PGDip(HES) *Cape Town* Exec Ed  
*Chicago*

**Chief Technical Officer**

C van Rooyen (Sculpture)

**Senior Technical Officers:**

S Stodel, BA(FA) *Cape Town* (Photography)  
 M van der Merwe, BTech(FA) *NMU*  
 PGCE *Rhodes* (Printmedia)

**Technical Officer:**

S Amon (Painting)

**Technical Assistants:**

TBA

**Senior Administrative Officer:**

A Rajap

**Administrative Assistants:**

Z Gaffoor, BA(Hons) *Witwatersrand*

F Phillips

**Centre for Curating the Archive (CCA)**

The CCA is located in the Old Medical School building on Hiddingh Campus.

The Centre can be contacted by e-mail: [fritha.langerman@uct.ac.za](mailto:fritha.langerman@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 7115.

Website: [www.cca.uct.ac.za](http://www.cca.uct.ac.za)

**Associate Professor and Director:**

F Langerman, MFA PhD *Cape Town*

**Senior Curators and Research Associates:**

G Mahashe, MA(FA) PhD *Cape Town*

F Saptouw, MFA *Cape Town*

P A Skotnes, MFA DLit *Cape Town*

**Junior Research Fellow**

S Mguni, MA *Witwatersrand* PhD *Cape Town*

The Centre for Curating the Archive, which includes the Lucy Lloyd Archive and Research Centre (LLAREC) and Katrine Harries Print Cabinet, has been established as a vehicle for the conservation and creative use, through exhibition and publication, of both object, image and paper collections. It builds on UCT's dual institutional strength in its numerous and valuable research collections on which much critical research is based, and in its established, often innovative expertise in the area of presenting those collections.

The linked research, often revealed in the public domain, uses these collections to facilitate and enrich public engagement with curatorial practice. It also aims to open up novel combinations of the historically separated domains of the creative arts, and the truth-claiming discourses of history and the social and natural sciences.

In coupling the avowedly creative activity of curation with the seemingly objective site of archive the CCA signals its intention to draw attention to past and present processes of the making of archives and collections of all kinds and the creation of meanings that flowed, and yet flow, therefrom.

The CCA is engaged in several partnerships, notably through the Honours specialisation in Curatorship with Iziko Museums of South Africa. The work of the CCA is represented on its website and at [www.cca.uct.ac.za](http://www.cca.uct.ac.za)

**Requirements for a Major in Art History and Discourse of Art**

**[FIN05]**

**First Year courses**

Code	Title
FIN1006F	Introduction to African Art
FIN1009S	Approaches to Art History

**Second Year courses**

Code	Title
FIN2029F	Envisioning the Body: Representation of the Human in Art and Visual Culture
FIN2028S	Discursive Strategies

**Third Year courses**

Code	Title
FIN3028F	Race, Gender and Decolonial Praxis
	<b>OR</b>
FIN3026F	New Art: New Perspectives
FIN3029S	Borders and Social Justice in the Arts

---

**OR**

FIN3027S Curatorial Praxes

**Course outlines:****Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **FIN1009S**: None;
- (ii) For **FIN2029F**: FIN1006F and FIN1009S or at least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department;
- (iii) For **FIN2028S**: FIN1006F and FIN1009S;
- (iv) For **FIN3026F and FIN3027S**: FIN2027F and FIN2028S;
- (v) For **FIN3028F and FIN3029S**: FIN1006F, FIN1009S, and two of: FIN2027F; FIN2028S; FIN2029F; FIN2030S.

**Course outlines:****FIN1001W STUDIOWORK I**

72 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr S Huigen-Conradie**Course entry requirements:** This compulsory (core) course is open only to students registered for the BA(FA).**Course outline:**

This multi-disciplinary course is broad-based and introduces all disciplines, placing a strong emphasis on drawing, observation, and basic technical and compositional skills. Students will be encouraged to develop an intensive, creative, and productive work process and to establish cognitive skills and relationships between all aspects of their work, both creative and academic. The studiowork course consists of a series of compulsory projects in 2 and 3-dimensional areas. Incorporated into these projects, the course consists of figure drawing and object drawing (which makes use of different drawing materials and working procedures and processes), colour theory and its application in painting, and three-dimensional work in clay, plaster, cardboard and wood. In addition to Drawing, Painting and Sculpture, the course introduces students to the disciplines of New Media, Printmaking and Photography as well as the development of visual research methodologies. Students are evaluated by critique, mid-year assessment and an end-of-year examination.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 45%, year-end coursework examination 45%, attendance & participation 10%.**FIN1005W FINE ART FOUNDATION COURSE**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr G Mahashe**Course entry requirements:** This compulsory (core) course is open only to students registered for the BA(FA).**Course outline:**

The course introduces creative thinking and critical literacy (written, visual, sonic, etc.), paying attention to a variety of textual forms and communication skills. "Situations" will be used to introduce core concepts, issues, theories and approaches to different ways of knowing. The common theme will be contemporaneity focusing on situated insights and subjectivity. This includes looking at the ways in which positionality reflects and impose on power, politics, gender and identity. Students will be introduced to examples in image making practices looking out from the continent and on to the rest

of the world. This course aims to enable students to articulate and contextualise their own creative production. An integration of all sensory faculties will be emphasised. Fieldwork in the form of gallery visits introduces art in context. Students will be expected to work in groups and to produce at least two projects as a group, as well as using online platforms such as blogs etc.

**Lecture times:** Wednesday 11:00am to 13:00pm

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of tutorials and lectures, 80% of Bi-weekly assignments/peer reviews and satisfactory completion of at least two essay assignment and group projects.

**Assessment:** Examination portfolio in November (50%), final group project in November (40%) and participation (10%). The mid-semester mark will be used for DP purposes. Mark weighting may be subject to change. This will be confirmed at the end of each semester.

---

### **FIN1006F INTRODUCTION TO AFRICAN ART**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor N Makhubu

**Course entry requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**

This course is an introduction to the theory of African Art across different historical periods. It is also an introduction to the complexities and contradictions of 'modernity' and 'modernism(s)' in postcolonial Africa. With a focus on ideology-driven interdisciplinary artistic movements and 20th Century art schools in Senegal, Nigeria, Sudan, Congo, Egypt, Ethiopia and South Africa, we will examine various movements that were part of the modern consciousness which characterised the independence decades. The course includes critical discussion of coloniality and the rise of Pan-Africanism and Pan-Arabism during the independence decades. Postcolonial modernity in Africa is characterised by the appropriation of languages and visual aesthetics, globally. We debate the complexity of this appropriation and critique unilinear narrative from "tradition" to "modernity" (transfer of technology and political systems [civil society and African state]). Aimed at undermining colonial ideological foundations, African nationalism is characterized by literacy, cultural revival (traditionalist and neo-African), and a quest for African history. Through dialogue, debate and discussion this course provides a forum for critical thinking on art history and African art. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' lifeworlds and is cognizant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> period – Upper Campus.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of tutorials and satisfactory completion of 2 assignments per semester. Late essays penalised by 5% per day (including weekends).

**Assessment:** Semester coursework 60%, 2-hour examination 40%.

---

### **FIN1009S APPROACHES TO ART HISTORY**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr A Soudien

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course examines some of the foundational issues of academic art history. How and where did the study of art history begin, and what were its founding principles? We consider its origins in the late 19th century and then trace how it has changed in the course of the succeeding century and into the contemporary period. We look at debates over issues of aesthetic quality, questions of the relationship between art and society, questions of the art-historical canon and its exclusions. The core theme is art history as a subject of academic study, but this inevitably links to broader issues of how art is taught within the art school and of how art is exhibited within the museum.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday – 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of tutorials and satisfactory completion of 2 assignments per semester. Late essays penalised by 5% per day (including weekends).

**Assessment:** Coursework (50%), 2-hour examination (50%).



### **FIN2011W PAINTING 2**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** G van der Byl

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1001W Studiowork 1. Due to the nature of the discipline, spatial and technical limitations and Health and Safety legislation, student numbers will be limited and students' results will be taken into consideration.

**Course outline:**

This course provides a broad exposure to a range of painting techniques including acrylic and oil. Projects emphasise mimetic skills, the development of colour and composition, and painting in the expanded field. The course demands a conceptual engagement with contemporary painting and the genres of landscape, narrative and still life are critically addressed.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 45%, year-end coursework examination 45%, attendance & participation 10%.

---

### **FIN2012W SCULPTURE 2**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor J van der Schijff

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1001W Studiowork 1. Due to the nature of the discipline, spatial and technical limitations and Health and Safety legislation, student numbers will be limited and students' results will be taken into consideration.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces the theory and practice of conventional sculpture techniques as well as contemporary forms of three-dimensional construction, emphasising the development of concepts in relation to particular skills. Projects include: metalwork; modelling and the casting of multiples; woodwork.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 45%, year-end coursework examination 45%, attendance & participation 10%.

---

### **FIN2013W PHOTOGRAPHY 2**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor J Brundrit

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1001W Studiowork 1. Due to the nature of the discipline, spatial and technical limitations and Health and Safety legislation, student numbers will be limited and students' results will be taken into consideration.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces the theory and practice of photography. Technical, conceptual and critical skills are taught through specific problem-solving projects. Students are encouraged to refer to relevant contemporary and historical practice and theory to inform their work. This course may include an introduction to portraiture, documentary and narrative photography, street photography, and related topics such as ethics and voyeurism. A number of technical skills are taught including colour and black and white photography; digital and camera skills; artificial and low-light photography; and basic digital image manipulation for print.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 45%, year-end coursework examination 45%, attendance & participation 10%.

---

### **FIN2024W PRINTMEDIA 2**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor F Langerman

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1001W Studiowork 1. Due to the nature of the discipline, spatial and technical limitations and Health and Safety legislation, student numbers will be limited and students' results will be taken into consideration.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces the theory and practice of printmaking and projects demand a conceptual engagement with both the historical and contemporary aspects of the discipline. Processes include intaglio, relief and lithographic techniques as well as book arts. Students are introduced to aspects of printmaking such as editing, paper care, print collections and the traditions of the print studio.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 45%, year-end coursework examination 45%, attendance & participation 10%.

---

### **FIN2026W CORE PRACTICE 2**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** G van der Byl

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1001W Studiowork 1

**Course outline:**

This course is divided into four thematic projects. Within these sessions traditional, exploratory and contemporary approaches to drawing will be presented as well as an introduction to digital technologies. The focus is on developing observational, perceptual and formal sensitivity as well as encouraging creative and conceptual approaches to production through both drawing and digital means. The development of visual research methodology is emphasised.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 40%, year-end coursework examination 40%. 20% year mark derived from the visual research book.

---

### **FIN2028S DISCURSIVE STRATEGIES**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr T Monoa

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1006F and FIN1009S

**Course outline:**

This course explores the urban environment in contemporary art practice and theory. We consider in particular the artist and artistic collectives focusing on the city, urban life, space, the body and technologies in Africa and across the globe. In part of the course students will engage the city in their own creative practice. Students will build skills in visual analysis, critical thinking and writing about art and visual imagery as well as approaches to visual and textual research. Fieldwork introduces site-specific practice.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Friday, 4<sup>th</sup> period

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of tutorials and satisfactory completion of 2 assignments per semester. Late essays penalised by 5% per day (including weekends).

**Assessment:** Semester coursework 50%, 2-hour examination 50%.

---

### **FIN2029F ENVISIONING THE BODY: REPRESENTATION OF THE HUMAN IN ART AND VISUAL CULTURE**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr A Soudien

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1006F and FIN1009S or at least 2 courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The human body has been central to art throughout its history. This course examines some of the many ways in which the body has been visualized and some of the manifold expressive purposes it has fulfilled. Themes vary from year to year but many include: nakedness versus nudity, the tradition of figure drawing, the ideal and the abject body, the body in space, reading gesture and pose, and the significance of costume in art.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, 2<sup>nd</sup> period

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of tutorials and satisfactory completion of 2 assignments per semester. Late essays penalised by 5% per day (including weekends).

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%, 2-hour examination in June 50%.

---

### **FIN3011W PAINTING 3**

60 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** F Saptouw

**Course entry requirements:** FIN2011W Painting 2. Due to the nature of the discipline, spatial and technical limitations and Health and Safety legislation, student numbers will be limited and students' results will be taken into consideration.

**Course outline:**

First semester: Surface and medium are key components in the generation of meaning in contemporary painting. Students are expected to explore historical precedents from 20<sup>th</sup> century modernism and postmodernism and to create works where the implications of surface and materiality in painting are primary. Students are required to expand the range of painting medium and consider using substances that might function as alternatives to paint, thereby expanding the range of paint beyond that which is commercially available. Traditional supports may be used or alternatives considered. Scale and format are also examined to encourage students to move beyond the conventions of the rectangle. After immersion into alternative media students are then engaged in ideas generation and conceptual responses to painting. Historically rooted in modernist minimalism and conceptualism, process work is key here. Second semester: Utilising the ideas and methods generated in the first semester students move into a self-motivated development of their own work conceived within the terrain of contemporary painting.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 40%, year-end coursework examination 50%, attendance & participation 10%.

---

**FIN3012W SCULPTURE 3**

60 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor J van der Schijff

**Course entry requirements:** FIN2012W Sculpture 2. Due to the nature of the discipline, spatial and technical limitations and Health and Safety legislation, student numbers will be limited and students' results will be taken into consideration.

**Course outline:**

During the first semester advanced sculpture techniques are introduced, building on the technical, conceptual and critical skills learnt during the second year of study. These include bronze casting and contemporary three-dimensional art forms such as site-specific installation. In the second semester, students are required to work on a self-motivated project, drawing on ideas and methods developed in earlier projects to produce a coherent body of work. Students are encouraged to continue to explore relevant contemporary theory and practice, as well as historical examples to inform their practice.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 40%, year-end coursework examination 50%, attendance & participation 10%.

---

**FIN3013W PHOTOGRAPHY 3**

60 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Josephy

**Course entry requirements:** FIN2013W Photography 2. Due to the nature of the discipline, spatial and technical limitations and Health and Safety legislation, student numbers will be limited and students' results will be taken into consideration.

**Course outline:**

This is an advanced course on the theory and practice of photography. It builds on the technical, conceptual and critical skills learnt during the second year of study. Projects encourage an exploration of the medium and emphasise the generation of ideas. Students are exposed to studio and advanced photographic lighting techniques, various format cameras and postproduction skills through specific problem-solving projects. During the second semester students work on a self-motivated project, which draws upon their previous photographic knowledge and further develops personal expression and critical understanding. Students are encouraged to explore relevant contemporary practice and theory, as well as historical examples to inform their practice. Fieldwork introduces new technology and methodology as well as conceptual thinking in alternative environments.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 40%, year-end coursework examination 50%, attendance & participation 10%.

---

**FIN3024W PRINTMEDIA 3**

60 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr S Huigen-Conradie

**Course entry requirements:** FIN2024W Printmedia 2. Due to the nature of the discipline, spatial and technical limitations and Health and Safety legislation, student numbers will be limited and students' results will be taken into consideration.

**Course outline:**

Advanced printmaking techniques are introduced in the first semester. These include photomechanical print technologies: lithography and screen printing; colour printing; digital applications used in the production of books; curatorship; catalogue and exhibition design. Conceptual emphasis is on the

expansion of notions of print. Ideas generated and technologies learned in the first semester are used toward a self-motivated area of study in the second semester. Fieldwork introduces industrial methodology and processing techniques.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 40%, year-end coursework examination 50%, attendance & participation 10%.

---

### **FIN3026F NEW ART: NEW PERSPECTIVES**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr T Monoa

**Course entry requirements:** FIN2029F and FIN2028S

**Course outline:**

This course focuses on the way developments in technology have transformed contemporary artistic practice, theory and reception. Included here is coverage of African and global art practice, as well as artistic practice deeply involved with new forms of social networking, comic books and video games. Students will develop advanced skills in visual analysis, critical thinking and writing about art and visual imagery, visual and textual research approaches.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Wednesday, Thursday, 3<sup>rd</sup> period

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of tutorials and satisfactory completion of 2 assignments per semester. Late essays penalised by 5% per day (including weekends).

**Assessment:** Semester coursework 50% and 2-hour examination 50%.

---

### **FIN3027S CRITICAL CURATORIAL PRAXES**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr P Malatjie

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1006F, FIN1009S, FIN2029F and FIN2028S

**Course outline:**

This course focuses on basic and nuanced understandings of the history and development of key concepts underpinning radical curatorial practices and theory, including, interdependent and collaborative curatorial engagements, undocumented co-curatorship, curatorial practices of care, decolonial methodologies in display strategies and imagined and speculative curatorial futures. The course will look at ways in which practitioners are dealing with current and urgent ideas around decoloniality, intersectionality and different forms of curatorial methods that might de-centre the exhibition as the goal and final outcome. This focus will enable students to situate their own creative practice – whether artistic, curatorial or theoretical – within the contemporary (and future) moment. Students will develop advanced skills in visual and auditory analysis, critical thinking as well as approaches to visual, textual, auditory, and other forms of research and knowledge production.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Wednesday, Thursday, 3<sup>rd</sup> period

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of tutorials and lectures. Satisfactory completion of coursework.

**Assessment:** 100% coursework (formative and summative essays) and no written examination.

---

### **FIN3028F RACE, GENDER AND DECOLONIAL PRAXIS**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr P Malatjie

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1006F, FIN1009S, FIN2028S and FIN2029F.

**Course outline:**

This course considers decolonial artistic and curatorial praxes by focusing on blackness, neoliberalism, decoloniality, fat studies, disability studies, spirituality, sound studies, race and technology, and rest. It unpacks notions of normativity that are at the root of colonial and neoliberal

frameworks, and considers ways in which these normative structures might be disrupted and undermined. Through a critical analysis of theory, politics and practice, the course is aimed at facilitating discussions about intersecting discourses of class, gender, race and sexuality. It centres debates, discussions, and critical thinking that move beyond pre-determined and limiting modes of engaging with artistic practice. Focusing on the Global South, students will learn different approaches to transdisciplinary and decolonial critical methodologies, with a keen focus on modes of resistance, refusal and fugitivity.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Wednesday, Thursday, 5<sup>th</sup> period

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at tutorials and lectures and satisfactory completion of all written assignments. Late essays penalised by 5% per day (including weekends).

**Assessment:** 100% coursework (formative and summative essays) and no written examination.

---

### **FIN3029S BORDERS AND SOCIAL JUSTICE IN THE ARTS**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor N Makhubu

**Course entry requirements:** FIN1006F, FIN1009S, FIN2028S and FIN2029F.

#### **Course outline:**

This course examines selected case studies of art interventions advocating for social justice in relation to migration and mobility across political, cultural and social borders. We discuss spatial scales, globalisation, borderlands, internal conflicts, statelessness, exile, fugitivity, affective publics, marginality, citizenship and belonging. Through the inter-disciplinary field of visual culture and what has been characterised as the ‘spatial turn’ in the arts and cultural studies, the course takes critical approaches to the mutually dependent notions of space and place. Although there is emphasis on visual culture, this course is rooted in art history, architecture and/or the built environment. The notion that “place is involved with embodiment” positions bodies as central loci from which space is understood. Bodies inhabit and perform in space. The course focusses on relations between space, time and the body. Regulations of space are, in effect, regulations of the body. Here we consider the distinctions of public and private domains as well as modes of access and concepts of belonging or not belonging, being ‘native’ or ‘foreign’.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> period

**DP requirements:** 50% of coursework completed and satisfactory submission of research paper. Late essays penalised by 5% per day (including weekends).

**Assessment:** Assignments 15%, Research paper 85%.

---

### **FIN3030W STUDIOWORK 3 ELECTIVES**

*Compulsory (core) whole-year course. Students are required to choose two electives from the following options (in some years, not all options will be available): Videography, Sound Art, Experiments with light, Curatorship, Computer aided design, Social responsibility, Historical photographic processes and Environmental Interventions.*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor B Searle

**Course entry requirements:** FIN2026W and two of FIN2011W, FIN2012W, FIN2013W, FIN2024W, FIN2025W

#### **Course outline:**

This course exposes students to alternative forms of art production outside of their major studio work areas. Contemporary in orientation, the various sub-courses will familiarise students with developments in digital image production, video editing and computer aided design as well as social responsiveness and curatorship. A strong creative relationship to other studio work options will be sought. Fieldwork introduces new technologies and methodologies as well as industrial applications of computer design and manufacturing techniques.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques, satisfactory completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Mid-year coursework examination 50%, year-end coursework examination 50%.

---

**FIN4012W** THEORY AND PRACTICE OF ART

48 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor K Campbell

**Course entry requirements:** FIN2029F, FIN2028S and a pass in both Studiowork 3 courses.

**Course outline:**

This course examines the place of the artist in contemporary society and the skills and tools (both practical and theoretical) that may be needed to traverse this terrain. Through the course students will be exposed to the conventions of professional art practice; examine the relationship between theory and practice; look at how the current internal art world is structured and discuss the economics and ethics of art production both globally and locally. Students will learn to write catalogue essays and design exhibition catalogues.

**DP requirements:** The submission of satisfactory assignments and satisfactory participation in the work of the class.

**Assessment:** Research essay on a South African artist: 30%; Catalogue of professional practice: 20%; Senior theoretical essay: 50%.

---

**FIN4015W** FINE ART 4

108 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Josephy

**Course entry requirements:** Both FIN3000-level third-year Studiowork courses.

**Course outline:**

This course is self-motivated study and research into an area of contemporary fine art practice that may include painting, sculpture, printmaking, photography or the expanded field of contemporary art, including Interdisciplinarity. Familiarisation with the historical and contemporary trajectories of the chosen practice is emphasised, as are display and exhibition methodologies. Students work towards an exhibition or other realisation presented at the end of the year. Students work in consultation with supervisors and peers in a studio-based learning student-centered model.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 14h00 to 17h00. **Studio times:** Studio times are from 09h00 to 17h00, with students breaking to attend lectures and tutorials as required by the timetable.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory presentation of coursework at mid-year assessment, at least 80% attendance of studio classes and critiques.

**Assessment:** Year-end coursework examination 100%.

---

## GEOLOGICAL SCIENCES

The Department is housed in the Geological Sciences Building, 13 University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [head.geologicalsciences@uct.ac.za](mailto:head.geologicalsciences@uct.ac.za) or telephone 021 650-2931, fax 021 650-3783.

The letter code for the Department is GEO.

Departmental website: <http://www.geology.uct.ac.za>

### Field excursions

All students are expected to join the Geology field excursions. Field trips for GEO1006S are mandatory while, for GEO1009F, attendance is optional.

### Course outlines:

**NB:** *Geological Science courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by the general BA and BSocSc degrees. GEO1006S may NOT be taken by students in their first year of study.*

---

#### GEO1006S INTRODUCTION TO MINERALS, ROCKS & STRUCTURE

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr R Pickering

**Course entry requirements:** A minimum of 45% in GEO1009F

##### Course outline:

This course introduces students to the Geology major and covers the essentials of the discipline as follows: crystals and minerals; igneous and metamorphic rocks; structural geology; mineral deposits and economic geology; palaeontology; the interpretation of geological maps. A three-day field trip to the Western Cape serves as an introduction to field geology.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 5th period

**DP requirements:** An average of 30% in all marked coursework and tests.

**Assessment:** Class tests count 35%; field reports count 15%; one 2-hour theory examination written in November counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% is required in the theory examination paper.

---

#### GEO1009F GEOSYSTEMS: AN INTRODUCTION TO EARTH & ENVIRONMENTAL SCIENCES

*This course is presented jointly by the Departments of Archaeology, Environmental & Geographical Sciences, Geological Sciences, and Oceanography, but administered by Geological Sciences. Students majoring in these subjects are required to attend one half-day excursion.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor E M Bordy

**Course entry requirements:** At least 50% for NSC Geography or at least 60% for NSC Physical Science or Life Sciences. NOTE: Preference will be given to students majoring in Archaeology, Environmental and Geographical Science, Geology or Oceanography.

##### Course outline:

This course aims to develop a broad understanding of how the Earth works. Over its >4.5 billion-year-long history, the Earth has been shaped by chemical, physical and biological processes. The course demonstrates why decoding the rock record of deep-time events is critical for explaining past, present and future environmental changes and the distribution of natural resources. It examines the interplay of terrestrial, marine, atmospheric, and cryospheric processes within the Earth system, with an emphasis on monitoring essential variables for understanding climate variability and change. The Earth has also sustained life over the last >3.5 billion years. Our species, *Homo sapiens*, is a relatively recent arrival, yet it has had, and continues to have, the greatest impact on our planet. The course reviews human evolution and how we became the dominant cause of global environmental change. The course also explores the social risks and vulnerabilities in response to the Earth's biophysical



processes and change. The course concludes with attention to the concepts of environmental hazard, risk, resilience, monitoring and adaptation.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 2nd period

**DP requirements:** An average of 40% on all marked classwork and tests. Submission of 80% of weekly assignments in each of the four sections (i.e., GEO, AGE, SEA, EGS). Attendance of the field trip is compulsory for students majoring in Archaeology, EGS, Geology, or Oceanography.

**Assessment:** Marked classwork, including class test/s, counts 50%, and a 3-hour written examination counts 50%. A subminimum of 40% in the class mark is required to write the theory examination paper. Supplementary examinations for GEO1009F will be offered in July.

---

## HISTORICAL STUDIES

The Department is housed in the Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [admin.historicalstudies@uct.ac.za](mailto:admin.historicalstudies@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650-2742.

The letter code for the Department is HST.

Departmental website: [www.historicalstudies.uct.ac.za](http://www.historicalstudies.uct.ac.za)

### **Professor, Head of Department and Isidore and Theresa Cohen Chair in Jewish Civilisation:**

A Mendelsohn, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town* PhD *Brandeis*

### **Emeritus Professors:**

J V Bickford-Smith, MA PhD *Cantab*

A Mager, BA(Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

W Nasson, BA(Hons) *Hull* MA *York* PhD *Cantab*

N G Penn, BA(Hons) *Witwatersrand* PhD *Cape Town*

H Phillips, BA(Hons) *Cape Town* MA *London* PhD *Cape Town*

C C Saunders, BA(Hons) *Cape Town* MA DPhil *Oxon*

M Shain, MA *Unisa* STD *Cape Town* MA *Leeds* PhD *Cape Town*

N A Worden, MA PhD *Cantab*

### **Senior Research Scholar:**

C Hamilton, BA *UKZN* BA(Hons) MA *Witwatersrand* PhD *Johns Hopkins*

### **Associate Professors:**

S Field, MSocSc *Cape Town* PhD *Essex*

S Jeppie, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town* PhD *Princeton*

B Kar, MA PhD *JNU*

M Mbali, MA *UKZN* DPhil *Oxon*

L van Sittert, BA(Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

### **Emeritus Associate Professors:**

M Adhikari, BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town*

R Mendelsohn, BA(Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *Witwatersrand*

### **Senior Lecturers:**

A Sen, MA PhD *JNU*

A Masola, MA PhD *Rhodes*

### **Lecturers:**

L Mokwena BA(Hons) *Witwatersrand* MA *Sussex* MA PhD *New School*

C Naicker, MA *Rhodes*

N Shivji, BA *British Columbia* MA *McGill* PhD *New York*

### **Honorary Research Associates:**

I Filatova, MA PhD Senior PhD *Moscow State*

C Kros, BA(Hons) PGDip PhD *Witwatersrand*

J Maingard, MA PhD *Witwatersrand*

M Mulaudzi, BA *Oberlin* College PhD *Minnesota*

### **Honorary Research Affiliate:**

K Shoro, MSc *Cape Town*

### **Administrative Officer:**

C Petersen

**Administrative Assistant:**

M Mba

**Requirements for a major in History****[HST04]****First Year courses**

---

Code	Title
HST1013F	Connections and Interruptions, 1500 - 1800
HST1014S	Empires and Modernities

**Second Year courses**

---

Code	Title
HST2040SF	Historical Methods
<b>and ONE of the following:</b>	
HST2039FS	Africa Since 1800: From Colonial Rule to Independence
HST2042FS	Conflict and Conquest: Southern Africa to 1900
HST2044FS	Africa in Question: Ancient and Pre-colonial Africa – Between Past and Present <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i>
HST2047FS	Gender and History

**Third Year courses**

---

Code	Title
HST3043F	Debates in Modern African Intellectual History
<b>and ONE of the following:</b>	
HST3037S	Memory, Identity and History
HST3044FS	Themes in South/West Asian & North African History: 15th-20thC <i>(Not offered in 2025)</i>
HST3045S	African Economic History
HST3046S	Subjects to Citizens? South Africa since 1900

**Prerequisites:**

**HST2040F:** At least two of HST1004F, HST1005F, HST1010S, HST1013F or HST1014S, or by permission of the Head of Department

**HST2039S, HST2047S:** At least two courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department

**HST3043F:** HST2040F and any other 2000-level HST major courses, or by permission of the Head of Department.

---

## **ISAAC AND JESSIE KAPLAN CENTRE FOR JEWISH STUDIES AND RESEARCH**

The Centre is housed in Rachel Bloch House on Upper Campus.

E-mail: [janine.blumberg@uct.ac.za](mailto:janine.blumberg@uct.ac.za)

Telephone: (021) 650-3062.

Website: <http://www.kaplancentre.uct.ac.za>

**Director:**

Professor A Mendelsohn

The Kaplan Centre was established in 1980 under the terms of a gift to the University of Cape Town by the Kaplan Kushlick Foundation and is named in honour of the parents of Mendel and Robert Kaplan.

The Centre, the only one of its kind in Africa, seeks to stimulate and promote the field of Jewish studies at the University, with a special focus on research into the South African Jewish community. Multidisciplinary in scope, the Centre encourages the participation of scholars from a range of fields at UCT and beyond.

The Centre serves as a coordinating unit in the university, using its resources to invite distinguished scholars to UCT, to initiate and sponsor research that includes largescale historical and sociological studies, and to strengthen the university's library holding of books, microfilms and archival sources. The Centre awards a limited number of undergraduate and graduate scholarships, as well as research grants.

The Centre organizes and hosts a regular roster of public lectures, symposia, and conferences. The latter includes an ongoing biennial conference series in partnership with the University of Southampton, University of Sydney, and Tulane University. It also has an active publications programme which brings out monographs and occasional papers.

### **Course Outlines:**

---

#### **HST1013F CONNECTIONS AND INTERRUPTIONS, 1500-1800**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Jeppie

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

We often do not realise how much of our contemporary, everyday world has been shaped by processes of the long past. Through a carefully selected set of practices, objects, events, ideas and institutions, this course offers a broad and critical narrative of world history from the sixteenth to the end of the eighteenth century. While new links came to be forged between hitherto unconnected world regions through an increased level of travel, commerce and colonisation during this period, for many societies in the world it was also a profound experience of rupture with their traditional modes of social organisation. In encouraging students to think dialectically about this complex interaction, this course aims at providing them with a firm grounding in both empirical and conceptual literature appropriate to a first-year undergraduate programme.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

#### **HST1014S EMPIRES AND MODERNITIES**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr A Sen

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

Histories of modernity are inextricably entwined with histories of empires. Even in a time when the formal empires have arguably collapsed, the categories through which we approach the modern world are still deeply shaped by the persistence of imperial modes of thinking. This course focuses on a range of key concepts of modernity and encourages students to think critically about these concepts by drawing particular attention to the tensions between their metropolitan and colonial careers. The course offers a broad and critical narrative of world history from the nineteenth through the twenty-first century. A primary goal of the course is to provide students with an understanding of how these concepts carry many different histories within them, how they are open to contending interpretations, and how crucial the sense of their varied historical contexts is to the practice of social sciences and humanities. As an introductory course to Historical Studies, we use content that engages the diversity

of students' lifeworlds and is cognisant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including multilingual pedagogies and digital literacy, that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **HST1015F CONNECTIONS AND INTERRUPTIONS, 1500-1800 +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Jeppie

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** HST1013F

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: HST1013F CONNECTIONS AND INTERRUPTIONS, 1500-1800. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### **HST2034LP AFRICA: COLONIAL & POST-COLONIAL ENCOUNTERS**

*This course may be offered in the Winter and/or Summer Term. Please contact the department to confirm.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor L van Sittert

**Course entry requirements:** At least two courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course covers the history of Africa from c.1800 to the present, focusing on the main themes of slavery, legitimate commerce, partition, colonialism, decolonisation, development, debt and democracy. The course is intended for non-specialists and no prior knowledge of history or African history is required.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 50% of the final mark, and one examination at the end of the semester counts for 50%.

---

### **HST2039FS AFRICA SINCE 1800: FROM COLONIAL RULE TO INDEPENDENCE**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Jeppie

**Course entry requirements:** At least two courses in historical, cultural studies or social sciences offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to introduce students to the on-going profound and diverse changes that the African continent experienced and the equally complex responses from men and women, young and old during the nineteenth and twentieth centuries. Exploring the wide-ranging debates about the origins of modern Africa, the course seeks to equip students with critical analytical tools with which to understand its complex pasts and African's place in world history and in the contemporary world. The course explores diverse encounters between African societies and the world since 1800 and stresses

the complex ways in which diverse Africans engaged and came to terms with these historical forces and their complex outcomes. The course focus will include the abolition of the Atlantic slave trade, colonial conquest and rule, socio-economic changes and the decolonisation process. Through a selection of regional case studies, the course will cover the entire continent so as to understand the diversity of the historical forces that have shaped contemporary Africa.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Wednesday, Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 50% of the final mark, and one examination at the end of the semester counts for 50%.

### **HST2040FS HISTORICAL METHODS**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor L van Sittert

**Course entry requirements:** At least two of HST1004F, HST1005F, HST1010S, HST1013F or HST1014S (or their Plus equivalents if taken in 2015 or earlier), or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course critically engages some of the key conceptual and methodological issues concerning the nature of the historical discipline and its modes of writing and enquiry. It explores different traditions of narrating the past, examines certain major formative moments in the life of the modern historical discipline, and analyses different critiques of the historical knowledge as well as the reconfiguring effects they have had on the discipline. In exposing students to diverse styles and approaches of doing history, this course points at some emergent fields of historical enquiry and reflects on the complex relationship between the academic discipline and its popular and public variants.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 50% of the final mark, and one examination at the end of the semester counts for 50%.

### **HST2041FS HISTORICAL METHODS +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor L van Sittert

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** HST2040F.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all your coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

### **HST2042FS CONFLICT AND CONQUEST: SOUTHERN AFRICA TO 1900**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr A Masola

**Course entry requirements:** At least two courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course is aimed at introducing students to the long pasts of the southern African region before the twentieth century. Instead of assuming that this history was inevitably leading to the emergence of a nation-state, this course examines the complex historical processes of making and unmaking of identities and territories. The topics include historiographical debates, the nature of precolonial societies and states, colonial conquest and violence, slavery and resistance, colonial governance, frontier narratives, missionary power, the mineral revolution and the South African War at the end of the nineteenth century. Rather than privileging the action of settlers, this course focuses on the ways in which African people remade and reformulated their politics and societies in the context of conflict and conquest. In drawing on historical materials from different interior regions of southern Africa, it also challenges the Cape-centric bias of the conventional historiography.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Wednesday, Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 50% of the final mark, and one examination at the end of the semester counts for 50%.

### HST2047FS GENDER & HISTORY

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Mbali

**Course entry requirements:** At least two courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces how to read history with a "gender lens" so that we can see how social relations are ordered, how power relations are constructed, and how identities are played out at particular moments and how they change over time. The course is divided into two parts. The first section explores the gendered nature of colonial and nationalist practices in Southern and West Africa. The second section examines the emergence of feminist ideas and social movements as well as key developments of gendered identities in Europe including discussions around sexuality in Victorian Britain and the links between gender and nationalism in Nazi Germany.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 50% of the final mark, and one examination at the end of the semester counts for 50%.

### HST3037S MEMORY, IDENTITY AND HISTORY

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Field

**Course entry requirements:** At least two courses at 1000-level and two courses at 2000-level in historical, cultural studies or social science offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The ways in which people remember, forget and silence their past are indispensable to how they construct and sustain their identities. South African and international historical literature will be used to develop comparative case studies on trauma and memory in post-authoritarian countries such as South Africa, Rwanda and post-war Germany. A central theme linking these diverse case studies is the impact of traumatic experiences on the making of life, community and national histories, and the significance of reconciliatory processes such as the TRC and *gacaca*. Through these case studies, students will have the opportunity to explore specific memory/identity themes such as self, community, gender, culture and politics. The course will also help students to interpret examples of remembrance that are represented through writing, oral histories, films, cartoons, spaces, archives and memorialisation.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Thursday, Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 50% of the final mark, and one examination at the end of the semester counts for 50%.

---

**HST3043F DEBATES IN MODERN AFRICAN INTELLECTUAL HISTORY**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor B Kar

**Course entry requirements:** HST2040F or HST2041F and any other 2000-level HST major courses, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course aims at equipping undergraduate students with a critical understanding of a broad range of complex and diverse intellectual traditions in modern African worlds of thought. Its emphasis is on debates and arguments, conversations and contestations, connections and displacements. In contrast to an essentialised and unitary notion of African thought, this course emphasizes the plural and dynamic worlds of African intellectuality, drawing particular attention to the vibrant histories of critiques and auto-critiques. In doing so, it also provides a basic sense of the various historical contexts of continental and diasporic activism in which these intellectual approaches were formulated and discussed. Among other themes, we engage the debates on and around decolonisation and violence, nationalism and tribalism, afro-communism and afro-feminism, precolonial epistemologies and customary law, aesthetics and materiality, religion and pedagogy, and postcolonial and neoliberal conditions. The study materials used in this course include original texts by African thinkers, visual sources, and musical compositions.

**Lecture times:** Wednesday, Thursday, Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 50% of the final mark, and one examination at the end of the semester in which the course is taken counts for 50%.

---

**HST3045S AFRICAN ECONOMIC HISTORY**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr L Mokwena

**Course entry requirements:** At least two courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course explores debates and approaches to the study of economic history in Africa, placing South Africa's economic history within the context of the continent as a whole. It introduces new perspectives on African economic and social history developed in the global south. It examines the economic legacies of colonialism (including the differences between settler and non-settler colonies), and the place of institutions in the growth and development of the continent. Using comparisons between different regions and countries, this course investigates why countries which are resource rich have not been able to use these resources to improve living standards and encourage broad-based economic development. It also examines the roles international business and labour have played in the economic history of individual countries. Finally, the course tracks the changing place of Africa in the global economy.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 50%, one examination at the end of the semester counts for 50%.

---

**HST3046S SUBJECTS TO CITIZENS?: SOUTH AFRICA SINCE 1900**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** C Naicker

**Course entry requirements:** At least two courses in historical, social science or cultural studies offered by the Faculty of Humanities, or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course consciously seeks new ways of thinking and re-imagining twentieth century South African history by locating it in African and global contexts. Comparative throughout, the course engages with South African histories and historians to reveal the multiple ways in which ideas, structures, actors



## HISTORICAL STUDIES 232

and events shaped the national. The course covers the long twentieth century from 1880 to 2014 and the interrelated histories of race, culture, nation, economy, state and citizen.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 100% of required coursework and course evaluation.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 50% of the final mark, and one examination at the end of the semester counts for 50%.

---

## INFORMATION SYSTEMS

The Department is housed in the Leslie Commerce Building. Reception: Room No. 3.01.1

Telephone Number: (021) 650-2261.

The letter code for the Department is INF.

Departmental website: <http://www.sit.uct.ac.za/sit/depts/commerce>

The School of IT, which is based in the Science Faculty, houses the Department of Information Systems (Commerce Faculty) and the Department of Computer Science (Science Faculty). The School focuses on leveraging the excellent research and teaching of both departments to provide students with the relevant knowledge and skills to contribute to the international and South African Information Technology Communities. The capstone Honours degrees in the School are accredited by the British Computer Society, providing students with an internationally recognized certification.

### Professor and Head of Department:

M Tanner, BEng(Hons) *Mauritius* MCom PhD *Cape Town*

### Professors:

I T J Brown, BScEng(Hons)(Electrical) *Zimbabwe* GradDipBusComp MInfSys *Curtin* PhD *Cape Town*

W M Chigona, BScSoc *Malawi* MSc *Waikato* PhD *Magdeburg*

M Kyobe, MBA *Durham* PhD *UOFS*

U Rivett, Dipl.-Ing. *Munich* PhD *Cape Town*

L F Seymour, PhD *Cape Town*

J-P Van Belle, Lic(Econ) *Ghent* BCom(Hons) *Cape Town* MBA *Stell* PhD *Cape Town*

### Emeritus Professors:

M L Hart, BSc(Hons) MSc PhD *Cape Town*

O Ngwenyama, MS *Roosevelt* MBA *Syracuse* PhD(Computer Science) *SUNY-Binghamton* PhD *Pret*

D C Smith, BTech(Hons) *UK* MCom *Cape Town* PMP

### Associate Professors:

A Budree, BSc(Computer Science and Business IS) *Durban, Natal* BSc(IS) *Unisa* MSc(Financial Economics) *London SOAS* PhD *UWC*

S K Kabanda, BCom(Hons) *North West* MSc(Computer Science) *Zululand* PhD *Cape Town*

### Emeritus Associate Professors:

K A Johnston, BSc *Rhodes* BSc(Hons) *Unisa* MCom PhD *Cape Town*

E Scott, BSc *Stell* BSc(Hons) *Unisa* MSc *Stell* PhD *Cape Town*

### Honorary Associate Professors:

J Steyn, BA BA(Hons) MA HED *Pret* PhD *Cape Town*

E Weimann, MD *Ludwig Maximilian* MPH *Cape Town*

P Weimann, MSc *Dortmund* PhD *Cape Town*

### Senior Lecturers:

T Chimboza, BSocSc *Fort Hare* BA(Hons) MA *UWC* PhD *Cape Town*

M Kapepo, BTech MTech *CPUT*

G Mwalemba, BSc BCom(Hons) MCom *Cape Town*

D Snyman, BA(Language Technology with Computer Science) MA PhD *North West*

P Tsibolane, BSc(Hons) *Cape Town* M.IT *Pret* MA *Rhodes*

W Uys, Dip Datametrics *Unisa* PGD(IS) BCom(Hons) MCom PhD *Cape Town*

### Lecturers:

G Oosterwyk, BTech *CPUTa* MCom *Cape Town*

A Pekane MTech *CPUT*  
 Z Ruhwanya, BSc *Dar es Salaam* MSc *Vrije* MSc *Kansas State*  
 L Tekeni, NDip BTech *NMMU* MA PhD *NMU*

## Requirements for a major in Informatics

### [INF09]

#### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
CSC1015F	Computer Science 1015 <b>OR</b>
INF1002S	Informatics Systems I

#### Optional course

---

Code	Title
CSC1016S	Computer Science 1016

*CSC1016S should be taken in first year if students have taken CSC1015F and wish to substitute CSC1016S for INF1003F in second year.*

#### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
INF1003F*	Commercial Programming* <b>OR</b>
CSC1016S	Computer Science 1016
INF2008F	Database Systems
INF2009F	Systems Analysis
INF2011S	Systems Design & Development

#### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
INF3014F	Electronic Commerce
INF2010S	Information and Communication Technologies <b>and ONE of the following:</b>
INF3011F	IT Project Management <b>OR</b>
INF3003W	Systems Development Project I**

\* Extended programme students would do INF1003F in second year and start their other second year INF courses in third year to spread their courses over 4 years

\*\* For students wanting to enter software development career tracks

#### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **INF1002S**: EITHER 70% for NBT QL OR at least 50% for NSC Mathematics OR at least 60% for MAM1014F OR at least 60% for MAM1022F
- (ii) For **INF1003F**: At least 65% for INF1002S
- (iii) For **CSC1015F**: NSC Mathematics at 70% or higher
- (iv) For **CSC1016S**: pass or supp for CSC1015F
- (v) For **INF1003F**: At least 65% for INF1002F/S or equivalent (or at least 70% for CSC1017F)
- (vi) For **INF2008F and INF2009F**: INF1003F or CSC1016S, or INF1003F as co-requisite
- (vii) For **INF2010S**: At least 45% for INF1003F or CSC1016S
- (viii) For **INF2011S**: At least 45% for [INF1003F or CSC1016S], [INF2007F or INF2008F] and INF2009F
- (ix) For **INF3003W**: all second-year INF courses required by the major
- (x) For **INF3011F and INF3014F**: INF2009F and INF2011S

## Course outlines:

*NB: Information Systems courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by a general BA or BSocSc.*

### INF1002F/S FOUNDATIONS OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** Admission may be restricted for students other than Commerce based on student numbers. For students outside of Commerce, entrance requirements include either 70% for NBT QL or at least 50% for Maths (NSC) or MAM1014F or at least 60% for MAM1022F

**Course outline:**

The course provides a foundation to the use and impact of Information systems in business and society. Fundamental knowledge of information systems, their functioning and how they contribute to globalisation will be discussed. Particular focus is for students to understand the value of information, its collection, processing, storage and transmission through use of information systems in businesses, suppliers and customers. Practical exposure (linked to the theoretical themes) to data analysis tools, programming and systems development in organisations is provided.

**Lecture times:** Monday: 6th OR 7th period, Tuesday 6th AND 7th period OR Wednesday 6th and 7th.

**DP requirements:** Year mark greater or equal to 45% (based on all assessments prior to the final exam). 80% participation for all practicals (tutorials and workshops).

**Assessment:** Coursework 65%; Final Examination 35%. Sub-minimum of 40% for the final exam.

### INF1003F COMMERCIAL PROGRAMMING

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** D Snyman

**Course entry requirements:** At least 65% for INF1002F/S/N or equivalent (or at least 70% for CSC1017F).

**Objective:** At the end of the course, students will be able to: • Demonstrate understanding of C# language features; • Demonstrate understanding of object-oriented programming; • Write entry-level programs, from specifications, using C#; • Use the Visual Studio integrated development environment proficiently

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on integrating good programming practices through planning and developing software programs using C#. The course is practically-orientated and students should be prepared to spend time after hours to do programming exercises and examples in the computer laboratories, or on a personal computer at home. Theory lectures are used to communicate course content, which includes: Data Types and Expressions, Methods and Behaviours, Creating Your Own Classes, Making Decisions, Repeating Instructions, Arrays, Introduction to Windows Programming, Advanced Object-Oriented Programming Features, and Debugging and Handling Exceptions.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday and Thursday, 8<sup>th</sup> and 9<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Submission of 80% of quizzes and workshops. A minimum year mark of 45%.

**Assessment:** Coursework: 80%; Summative Assessment 20%. Subminimum 40% for the summative assessment.

### INF1102F/S FOUNDATIONS OF INFORMATION SYSTEMS

*For Academic Development programme (Commerce). Students in this course write the same class tests and final examination as the INF1002F/S students.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M. I. Kapepo

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the Commerce EDU programme. For students outside of Commerce, entrance requirements include either 70% for NBT QL or at least 50% for Maths (NSC) or MAM1014F or 60% for MAM1022F.

**Course outline:**

The course provides a foundation to the use and impact of Information systems in business and society. Fundamental knowledge of information systems, their functioning and how they contribute to globalisation will be discussed. Particular focus is for students to understand the value of information, its collection, processing, storage and transmission through use of information systems in businesses, suppliers and customers. Practical exposure (linked to the theoretical themes) to data analysis tools, programming and systems development in organisations is provided.

**Lecture times:** Monday, 6th and 7th period, Tuesday to Wednesday, 6th period

**DP requirements:** Year mark greater or equal to 45% for the year mark (based on all assessment prior to the final exam). 80% participation for all practicals (tutorials and workshops)

**Assessment:** Coursework 65%; Final Examination 35%. Sub-minimum of 40% for the final exam.

**INF2004F INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY IN BUSINESS**

*This course is not credited towards an Information Systems degree.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** T Chimboza

**Course entry requirements:** Successful completion of INF1002F/S and ACC1006F or equivalents. Course restricted to Commerce students.

**Course outline:**

Information Technology in Business (INF2004F) is offered to Accounting and Finance students in order to prepare them for a range of roles within the business environment. The course prepares students for a range of IT-related roles such as users, manager, designers, project managers and evaluators of information systems. The course covers the conceptual foundations, control, applications, and system development process of Accounting Information Systems. The course is linked with other courses: Foundations of Information Systems (INF1002F/S), Financial Reporting II (ACC2012W) and Governance, Audit and Assurance I (ACC2018H). The course has been developed to be in line with South African Institute of Chartered Accountants (SAICA) competency requirements.

**Lecture times:** Monday and Tuesday either 15h00-15h45 or 16h00-16:45.

**DP requirements:** Year mark greater or equal to 45% (based on all continuous assessment prior to the final exam) and 80% participation for all practicals (tutorials and workshops).

**Assessment:** Coursework 60%, Final Examination 40% with a Sub-minimum of 40% for the final exam.

**INF2006F BUSINESS INTELLIGENCE AND ANALYTICS**

6 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** A. Budree

**Course entry requirements:** INF1002 OR equivalent.

**Course outline:**

The course introduces students to the main features of business intelligence and business analytics, including data warehousing and data marts, decision support systems, OLAP, data mining and analytics, corporate performance management, data visualisation, real-time BI, pervasive BI, mobile BI and big data analytics. Case studies and management approaches for implementation are covered and a hands-on project requires students to produce a management report after analysing data using commercial BI software.

**Lecture times:** Course runs only for 3 weeks: Monday to Wednesday, 5<sup>th</sup> period, Friday 4<sup>th</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> period

**DP requirements:** 80% Class attendance.

**Assessment:** Note: Assessment requirements for both INF2006F and INF2007F need to be met in order to pass INF2008F.

---

**INF2007F APPLYING DATABASE PRINCIPLES**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** W Chigona

**Course entry requirements:** INF1003F or equivalent, or INF1003F as co-requisite. Students cannot be credited for this course and CSC2001F.

**Course outline:**

The course introduces students to database concepts, advanced database design and implementation and new developments in the database field. These are core skills which I.S. professionals require throughout their careers. There is a strong practical component to the course, where students will be taught the practical aspects of designing, implementing and using databases. This course explores different database architectures and design approaches, data modelling techniques, data dictionaries, database implementation, database security and administration. The concepts are applicable to any development context, and the workshops ensure the students are able to apply this theory to real world applications.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Wednesday 12h00 - 12h45

**DP requirements:** Submit 80% of workshops; submitted all project work and a year-mark of 45%.

**Assessment:** The final grade is derived from the following deliverables: Coursework: 60%; Final Exam 40%. Sub-minimum 45% for the final exam. Note: Assessment requirements for both INF2006F and INF2007F need to be met in order to pass INF2008F.

---

**INF2008F DATABASE SYSTEMS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** W Chigona

**Course entry requirements:** INF1003F or equivalent or INF1003F as co-requisite. Students cannot be credited for this course and CSC2001F.

**Course outline:**

The course combines INF2006F (weighted 33%) and INF2007F (weighted 67%). Please see course outlines for these courses. This course introduces students to database concepts, advanced database design and implementation and new developments in the database field. The main features of business intelligence and business analytics, including data warehousing and data marts, decision support systems, OLAP, data mining and analytics, corporate performance management, data visualization, real-time BI, pervasive BI, mobile BI and big data analytics are introduced. There is a strong practical component to the course, where students will be taught the practical aspects of designing, implementing and using databases. This course explores different database architectures and design approaches, data modelling techniques, data dictionaries, database implementation, database security and administration. The concepts are applicable to any development context, and the workshops ensure the students are able to apply this theory to real world applications. Case studies and management approaches for implementation are covered and a hands-on project requires students to produce a management report after analysing data using commercial BI software.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at workshops, completion of all course deliverables, year mark of 45%.

**Assessment:** The course combines INF2006F (weighted 33%) and INF2007F(67%). Both need to be met in order for the student to pass INF2008F.

---

**INF2009F SYSTEMS ANALYSIS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** A Pekane

**Course entry requirements:** INF1003F or equivalent or INF1003F as co-requisite.

**Course outline:**

INF2009F is a half course designed for students intending to major in Information Systems or Computer Science for the BCom, BBusSci or Bsc degrees. Students pursuing other computing degrees may be accepted, space permitting.

This course explores the role of the Systems Analyst in business, different approaches used in the development of information systems, and the various tools and techniques used in the specification of system requirements. It is intended to provide students with an in-depth knowledge of the systems development process, with a particular emphasis on the analysis stage of the life cycle. There is a strong practical component to the course, where students will be taught to understand and use the common tools of object-oriented systems analysis, with a particular focus on UML models.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Wednesday, 4<sup>th</sup> period, Practical workshops: Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> & 4<sup>th</sup> periods OR 4<sup>th</sup> & 5<sup>th</sup> OR 8<sup>th</sup> & 9<sup>th</sup>

**DP requirements:** Submitted at least 80% of the coursework (80% of individual deliverables and 80% of group work). Subminimum of 45% course year-mark.

**Assessment:** The final grade is derived from results of the Coursework (Formative Assessment: 40% + Summative Assessment 20%) and the Final Examination (40%). Sub-minimum of 40% for the final examination.

### INF2010S IT ARCHITECTURE

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** G Oosterwyk

**Course entry requirements:** Minimum 45% final mark for INF1003F or equivalent. Students cannot be credited for this course and CSC2002S

**Course outline:**

This course is intended to provide students with an in-depth knowledge of hardware, software, data communications and networking theory. This course is designed to build the skills required for the management and building of distributed systems and commercial networks. This course provides the hardware and software technology background required for understanding various computer architectures for single and multiple users. The analysis and design of networked applications is covered, including telecommunication devices, media, network hardware and software, network configuration and applications, network architectures, topologies and protocols, LAN and WAN networks, intranets and the Internet. The underlying architecture of modern computer hardware and operating systems, mobile computing, the cloud and basic computer security is also covered.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Wednesday 12h00 -12h45

**DP requirements:** Completing 80% of deliverables including quizzes, assignments (including the IT technical report) and semester test. Year mark of 45%.

**Assessment:** The final grade is derived from the results of quizzes, assignments (including IT technical report) and the semester test which counts 60%; the Final Exam (40%)—sub-minimum of 45% for the final examination

### INF2011S SYSTEMS DESIGN & DEVELOPMENT

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** D Snyman

**Course entry requirements:** Minimum 45% final mark for [INF2007 or INF2008 or CSC2001 or equivalent] and INF2009 and [INF1003 or CSC1016 or equivalent]

**Course outline:**

This course is intended to provide students with an in-depth knowledge of the systems development process with particular emphasis on the design and implementation stages of the life cycle. There is a strong practical component to the course, where students will use object - oriented tools to design and construct a working system. This course is designed to build on the skills acquired in INF2009F Systems Analysis.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, 4<sup>th</sup> period, Thursday: Weekly workshop sessions 3<sup>rd</sup> to 4<sup>th</sup> OR 4<sup>th</sup> to 5<sup>th</sup> periods. Friday: Practical workshops 5<sup>th</sup> – 7<sup>th</sup>

**DP requirements:** Submit 80% of workshops and quizzes. Year-mark of 45%. Submitted all project work.

**Assessment:** The final grade is derived from the following deliverables: Coursework: 60%; Exam 40%. Subminimum 45% for the final exam.

---

**INF3003W SYSTEMS DEVELOPMENT PROJECT I**

48 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** W Uys

**Course entry requirements:** All second year Information Systems courses.

**Objective:** It aims to equip the student with crucial problem-solving skills using object-oriented software development techniques, and endeavours to improve technical document writing skills.

**Course outline:**

This whole year course is for students majoring in Information Systems (IS) to gain an understanding of the issues that are influencing ICT projects and experience the development and implementation of such a project. This course combines the theoretical elements of project management with the practical implementation of these concepts through the completion of a systems development team project, integrating practical and theoretical elements obtained and developed during other undergraduate IS courses. The theoretical parts of this course aim to make the project team experiences more true to life, aiding the development of a project practitioner. Students should be aware that successful project management consists of a sound plan (using project management tools and techniques) and strong people management to direct the plan through to the completion of the project's deliverables. The basis for this development process is an interactive project team environment of learning through experiences and reflection. The practical part of this course involves the application and implementation of these concepts following the full life cycle of a team-based IS project in a real-life setting.

**Lecture times:** First semester: 10h00-10h45 Monday and Tuesday, and 10h00-11h45 Wednesday and Friday, and 10h00-12h45 Thursday Second semester: 12h00-12h45 Thursday

**DP requirements:** Students will be considered to have duly performed the course work if they have obtained a minimum of 45% for their year mark.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60%. (Weekly coding workshops and tutorials, as well as continuous assignments for the team project culminating in a formal presentation and code presentation). Teamwork makes up 40% of the course mark. Exam 40%. Sub-minimum of 40% for the examination (both Project Management and Code).

---

**INF3011F I.T. PROJECT MANAGEMENT**

*Students cannot be credited for this course and for INF3003W.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** G Mwalemba

**Course entry requirements:** INF1003F, INF2009F and at least 45% for INF2011S

**Course outline:**

This is a first-semester capstone course for students majoring in Information Systems (IS) and either Computer Science, Finance or Informatics who wish not only to gain an understanding of project management issues but also experience the execution of such projects. The course thus combines the theoretical elements of project management (and people management) with the practical implementation of these concepts through the completion of a team project. The course integrates practical and theoretical elements obtained and developed in other undergraduate IS courses

**Lecture times:** 10h00-10h45 Monday - Thursday and 10h00-11h45 Friday

**DP requirements:** Submission of required project work and a sub-minimum of 45% for the year mark prior to writing the final examination. In addition, students must have satisfactory attendance at tutorials and lectures.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 70%. Final examination counts 30%. Sub-minimum of 40% for the final examination.

---

**INF3012S BPM & ENTERPRISE SYSTEMS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** L Seymour

**Course entry requirements:** INF1003F, INF2009F and INF2011S

**Course outline:**



This course examines the role, relationship and effect IT Applications have on businesses and vice versa. It has a heavy emphasis on ERP systems, business processes and Business Process Management (BPM). Students will be exposed to methodologies and techniques to identify, model, measure and improve processes. Students will be introduced to technologies that can be used as part of process improvement initiatives as well as technologies such as ERP that impact on business processes. A group project will allow students to apply their analytical skills to improving an existing process. Students will be introduced to S/4 HANA and will acquire a basic working knowledge of the Application.

**Lecture times:** 11h00-11h45 Tuesday- Friday and 10h00-10h45 Thursday and Friday

**DP requirements:** Submission of group project and a sub-minimum of 45% for the year mark prior to writing the final examination. In addition, students must complete, make a reasonable attempt at, and submit 80% of workshops.

**Assessment:** Classwork 70% (workshops, class exercises, test and a group project), final examination 30%. Sub-minimum of 40% for the final examination.

### **INF3014F ELECTRONIC COMMERCE**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** G Mwalemba

**Course entry requirements:** INF1003F, INF2009F and at least 45% for INF2011S

**Course outline:**

INF3014F is a course for students majoring in Information Systems (IS) as well as any other student that wish to gain an understanding of electronic commerce (e-Commerce) technologies and their usage in society. The course covers both theoretical e-Commerce issues as well as the practical skills required to develop a basic e-Commerce system. The course plays a role in facilitating students' ability to constructively develop integrated knowledge on e-Commerce, including an understanding of and the ability to apply and critically evaluate the key concepts, techniques and practices that form part of e-Commerce systems design, development, implementation and usage. The practical component includes planning, structuring, and developing e-Commerce related web applications as well as designing the user experience (UX). The practical component will culminate in a project that involves developing an e-Commerce application that addresses a real business or social need.

**Lecture times:** 12h00-13h45 Tuesday and Wednesday and either 13h00-14h45 or 14h00-15h45 Friday

**DP requirements:** Submission of tutorials, seminar, and project work as well as a subminimum of 45% for the year mark prior to writing the final examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 70%. Exam 30%. Subminimum of 40% for the final examination.

---

## KNOWLEDGE & INFORMATION STEWARDSHIP

The Department of Knowledge & Information Stewardship is housed on Hlanganani Level 5, Chancellor Oppenheimer Library, on Upper Campus.

The letter code for courses offered by the Department is LIS.

The Department can be contacted by e-mail at [dkis@uct.ac.za](mailto:dkis@uct.ac.za)

Telephone Number: (021) 650 4546

Website: <http://www.dkis.uct.ac.za>

### **Professor and Head of Department:**

J Raju, BA(Hons) MIS PhD *Natal*

### **Lecturer and Deputy Head of Department:**

A Mfengu, BSc MLIS PhD *Cape Town*

### **Emeritus Professor:**

P G Underwood, MBA *Cranfield* FCLIP

### **Emeritus Associate Professors:**

M Nassimbeni, PhD *Cape Town*

K de Jager, MA *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*

### **Senior Lecturer:**

M Shongwe, BA(Hons) *Zululand* MCom *Cape Town* PhD *UKZN*

### **Lecturers:**

R Higgs, BA(Hons) *Witwatersrand* MLitt *Montpellier* MA *Cape Town*

M Kahn, BA(Hons) MPhil *Cape Town*

T De Young, BA HDE BBibl(Hons) MPhil *Cape Town*

### **Administrative Assistant:**

N Rajman, BCom(Law) *Unisa* PGDip(Management Practice) *Cape Town*

### **Professional associations:**

It is important to retain professional contact outside the immediate area of one's particular work. The Library and Information Association of South Africa (LIASA) accepts applications for membership from any worker in a library or information service. Other information related local professional associations include the Association for Southern African Indexers and Bibliographers (ASAIB), South African Society of Archivists (SASA), International Council of Museums-SA (ICOM-SA) and Knowledge Management South Africa (KMSA).

## **Course Outlines:**

---

### **LIS100S INTRODUCTION TO SOCIAL INFORMATICS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr A Mfengu

**Course entry requirements:** Due to some of its technical content, it is preferable that students should have at least a pass in NSC mathematics or equivalent, although this is not compulsory.

#### **Course outline:**

Introduction to Social Informatics aims to provide entry level general degree humanities students with critical understanding of multi-modal literacies and information stewardship principles for the discoverability, accessibility and critical use of information content available in different formats and mediums. It also provides students with an understanding of the research lifecycle, and within this, an

## KNOWLEDGE & INFORMATION STEWARDSHIP 242

understanding of research data management and analysis using basic statistical and computational approaches relevant to digital humanities. This course critically explores computational applications and data science use in decolonised social sciences and humanities contexts. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of our students' life worlds and are cognisant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including digital literacy, which allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical skills in the humanities.

**Lecture times:** Thursday, 4<sup>th</sup> period (Thursdays only for tutorials as the rest of the content will be delivered online).

**DP requirements:** Submission of all tutorial responses and completion of practical exercises.

**Assessment:** Formative: Tutorial one-page responses for scaffolded learning (20%); Practical exercises (30%); Quizzes (10%). Summative: Two-hour exam with a mixture of contextual and short essay questions to test critical understanding (40%).

---

## LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES, SCHOOL OF

The School can be contacted by e-mail at: [director.languagesliteratures@uct.ac.za](mailto:director.languagesliteratures@uct.ac.za)

The letter code for all courses offered in the School is SLL.

Departmental website: <http://humanities.uct.ac.za/school-languages-literatures>

The School comprises the following Sections:

**AFRICAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES**  
**AFRIKAANS AND NETHERLANDIC STUDIES**  
**ARABIC LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**  
**CHINESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**  
**CLASSICS (comprising Greek, Latin and Classical Culture)**  
**FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**  
**GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**  
**HEBREW LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**  
**ITALIAN STUDIES**  
**PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**  
**SPANISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE**  
**THE CENTRE FOR CREATIVE WRITING**

**Associate Professor and Director of the School:**

M Arnold, MA Philologie Romane & Anglaise *Regensburg* Doctorat (co-tutelle) *Regensburg & La Réunion*

**Senior Administrative Officer:**

E Petersen

**Administrative Assistants:**

L Futuse, BA *Unisa* BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town*

T Pretorius, Dip(Business Management) *False Bay College*

**A. Language and Literature courses and majors**

Students are welcome to register for any language taught by the School, whether or not they have studied the language before. The School offers introductory courses in each of its languages. Furthermore, the School welcomes not only those who intend to specialise in any of its languages, but also those who would like to get an introduction to a language and/or are not able to fit more than one or two courses into their degree programmes. A student who, within the preceding five years, has passed a relevant language at Matric level with at least a C symbol, 4 at NSC (or a course recognised as equivalent) will not be admitted to the introductory course of that language for degree purposes, unless the Head of Section is satisfied that for some special reason he/she is not able to perform the work of the second-year first-semester course.

Students can major in any one of the following languages: Afrikaans, Arabic, Chinese, French, Italian, Portuguese, Spanish and Xhosa (majors in Latin and Greek are subsumed within Classical Studies). A major in a language gives admission to the Honours course in that language and also meets the requirement for anyone wishing to offer a language as a teaching subject after completion of the Postgraduate Certificate in Education course.

**B. Cultural Studies**

The School offers courses in the fields of cultural, literary, film and historical studies which can comprise a major in Classical Studies and can be taken as electives. Some combinations of these courses qualify the student for admission into Honours courses. These undergraduate courses are

taught and examined in English, but where a student wishes to take a course as part of a language major the School will set assignments and examination questions in the relevant language.

---

## AFRICAN LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES SECTION

The African Languages and Literatures Section is housed in the AC Jordan Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [liziwe.futuse@uct.ac.za](mailto:liziwe.futuse@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2301.

**Associate Professor and Head of Section:**

R Possa, BA MA *Lesotho* PhD *Unisa*

**Emeritus Associate Professor:**

D S Gxilishe, BA(Hons) UED *Fort Hare* MEd (Applied Linguistics) *Columbia* MA DLitt *Stell*

**Senior Lecturer:**

T Dowling, PhD *Cape Town*

**Lecturers:**

S Deyi, MPhil *Cape Town*

W Gambushe, PhD SOAS *London*

S Ntshingana, MA *Rhodes*

H Kunju, MA PhD *Rhodes*

**Part-time Lecturers:**

T Skade, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town*

Z Mlatsheni, BA(Hons) *Cape Town*

N Ngalo, BA(Hons) UWC Adv Cert in Education *WSU* MA *US*

A Ngwendu, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town*

T P Xhalisa, BA(Hons) MPhil Ed *Cape Town*

**Administrative Assistant:**

L Futuse, BA *Unisa* BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town*

**Languages offered:**

Communication courses (courses for 2<sup>nd</sup> language students) are offered for isiXhosa, Sesotho and kiSwahili. Students interested in studying communication courses in any other African language should please contact the Section Head.

### Requirements for a major in Xhosa Communication

#### [SLL15]

**Second Year courses**

Code	Title
SLL2101F	Xhosa Communication IIA
SLL2102S	Xhosa Communication IIB

**Third Year courses**

Code	Title
SLL3101F	Xhosa Communication IIIA
SLL3102S	Xhosa Communication IIIB

Prerequisites:

- (i) **SLL1101F:** No language prerequisites. Mother-tongue speakers of Nguni languages **cannot register** for this course and are encouraged to register for SLL1131F IsiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IA
- (ii) **SLL1102S:** SLL1101F or SLL1018S
- (iii) **SLL2101F:** Must have passed Xhosa Communication IB or have passed Xhosa as a 2<sup>nd</sup> language at Matric level
- (iv) **SLL2102S:** Must have passed SLL2101F
- (v) **SLL3101F:** Must have passed SLL2102S
- (vi) **SLL3102S:** Must have passed SLL3101F.

## Requirements for a major in African Languages & Literatures

### [SLL01]

#### First Year courses

Code	Title
SLL1131F	IsiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IA
SLL1132S	IsiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IB

#### Second Year courses

Code	Title
SLL2131F	IsiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IIA
SLL2132S	IsiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IIB

#### Third Year courses

Code	Title
SLL3131F	IsiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IIIA
SLL3132S	IsiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IIIB

#### Prerequisites:

- (i) **SLL1131F:** A Grade 12 pass in an African language (isiXhosa, isiZulu, isiNdebele, isiSwati) or complete SLL1101F Xhosa Communication IA and SLL1102S Xhosa Communication IB
- (ii) **SLL1132S:** Must have passed SLL1131F
- (iii) **SLL2131F:** Must have passed SLL1132S
- (iv) **SLL2132S:** Must have passed SLL2131F
- (v) **SLL3131F:** Must have passed SLL2132S
- (vi) **SLL3132S:** Must have passed SLL3131F

#### Course outlines:

### SLL1017FS SWAHILI COMMUNICATION 1A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr E Mahenge

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a beginners' course aimed at non-mother tongue speakers of Swahili.

#### Course outline:

This course will provide students with a broad overview of the study of sociolinguistics with specific reference to Southern Africa. We will look at topics such as language and gender, language and power, linguistic prejudice as well as language planning. The latter is a very important and controversial field in Southern Africa, given the liberal constitution, which allows for 11 official languages. The course will furthermore focus on two specific arenas or work situations i.e. the legal and medical fraternities, in order to assess what complications and challenges arise in a multilingual work environment. How are these challenges being addressed? Why is it important for you to be a multilingual citizen? Students who attend classes and Language Laboratory regularly can expect to: Have a foundation,

which they can develop further, in order to be able to communicate with mother-tongue speakers of Swahili in common everyday topics; To be equipped with essential linguistic skills so they are able to elicit and understand verbal information from Swahili mother-tongue speakers; Understand basic cultural issues related to the Swahili way of life; as well as understand some issues of cultural misunderstanding that emanate from inter and cross-cultural communication.

**Lecture times:** 7<sup>th</sup> Period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; exam 50%.

---

### **SLL1117S SWAHILI COMMUNICATION IB**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr E Mahenge

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1017FS

**Course outline:**

In continuity with the foundational beginners course (SLL1017FS), this course provides more basic knowledge on Swahili grammar, especially on Swahili derivations and skills on simple spoken and written Swahili. This will enable the student to participate in more advanced communication in Swahili. Moreover, it provides more cultural notes in the use of Swahili according to specific contexts introduced.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Coursework (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) count 35%; orals count 15%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL2017FS SWAHILI COMMUNICATION IIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr E Mahenge

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1117S Swahili Communication IB or equivalent.

**Course outline:**

Swahili Communication IIA is designed to teach students to communicate in Swahili using everyday vocabulary and grammar as well as to continue building their conversational and listening skills. It builds from more complex language usage according to specific contexts which will enable the student to participate in more advanced communication in Swahili and provides more cultural notes in the use of Swahili according to specific contexts.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Coursework (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) count 35%; orals count 15%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL2117FS SWAHILI COMMUNICATION IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr E Mahenge

**Course entry requirements:** Swahili Communication IIA or equivalent.

**Course outline:**

In continuity with the intermediate course Swahili Communication IIA, more complex grammatical structures and complex conversations are covered. This second year course also actively engages students in some advanced usage of Swahili as reflected in Bongo Fleva (young generation music) sung in Swahili. In addition to this, the polite commands in Swahili as well as hypothetical tenses will be covered and practiced.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Coursework (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) count 35%; orals count 15%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

### SLL1029FS LANGUAGE AND CROSS-CULTURAL COMMUNICATION

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor R Possa

**Course outline:**

This course is an introduction to communication and culture in African languages. Whereas the main focus is on the South African indigenous languages, classroom activities will require students to draw from their living experiences to understand cross-cultural communication. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' life worlds and is cognisant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including multilingual pedagogies and digital literacy, which allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Arranged by the Section.

**DP requirements:** Attendance of all tutorials and completion of all written work.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, class tests, projects) counts 100%.

### SLL1016S SOTHO ADDITIONAL A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor R Possa

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a beginners' course. Students with a Sotho language as a 1<sup>st</sup> language are not permitted to do *Sotho Additional*.

**Course outline:**

This course takes students from zero knowledge of Sesotho to a good, basic competency in the language. The course actively engages students in acquiring the language through a series of well-developed modules with an integrated approach to acquiring speaking, writing and comprehension skills in Sesotho. Grammar is taught in context and students are expected to apply their grammatical knowledge in task-based communication situations. Students are taught about different varieties of Sesotho and how to use these appropriately in social contexts. Students are also exposed to cultural issues through readings and classroom activities.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Coursework (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 60%; Oral examination counts 40% of the final mark.

### SLL1022F SESOTHO COMMUNICATION IA

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor R Possa

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a beginners' course. Students with a Sotho language as a first language are not permitted to do *Sesotho Communication IA*.

**Course outline:**

This course takes students from zero knowledge of Sesotho to a good, basic competency in the language. The course actively engages students in acquiring the language through a series of well-developed modules with an integrated approach to acquiring speaking, writing and comprehension skills in Sesotho. Grammar is taught in context and students are expected to apply their grammatical knowledge in task-based communication situations. Students are taught about different varieties of Sesotho and how to use these appropriately in social contexts. Students are also exposed to cultural issues through readings and classroom activities.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.



**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Coursework (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 60%; Oral examination counts 40% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL1023S SESOTHO COMMUNICATION IB**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor R Possa

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1022F Sesotho Communication IA or SLL1016S Sotho Additional

**Objective:** To equip students with advanced conversational skills in Sesotho.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of Sesotho Communication IA, SLL1022F. Communication skills are further developed. Students develop their ability to listen to, understand, speak, read and write the language. This course will aid in understanding basic cultural issues related to the Sesotho way of life, as well as understanding some issues of cultural misunderstanding that emanate from inter and cross-cultural communication.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Coursework (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 60%; Oral examination counts 40% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL2025F SESOTHO COMMUNICATION IIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor R Possa

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1023S Sesotho Communication IB.

**Course outline:**

This course engages students in furthering their communication skills in Sesotho through a series of task-based communication situations which focus on speaking, writing, reading and listening. Grammar is taught in context and students are expected to apply their grammatical knowledge to facilitate communication outside of the set communication situations. The course also develops students' sociolinguistic knowledge of Sesotho and deepens their understanding of the link between culture, language and thought. Translation skills are developed by working with basic Sesotho texts such as signs, posters and advertisements.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Friday Meridian.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 50%; orals count 10%; one two-hour examination counts 40% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL2026S SESOTHO COMMUNICATION IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor R Possa

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2025F Sesotho Communication IIA.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL2025F Sesotho Communication IIA. The aim of this course is to further develop speaking, reading, listening and writing skills in Sesotho. This is done by working through topics that represent daily experiences of Sesotho speaking people in South Africa and Lesotho. In this way, the course will continue to make the connections between the use of Sesotho in a social setting while requiring the acquisition of vocabulary and grammar in context at an intermediate level. In addition, by exposing students to literature we hope to further encourage an understanding of Sesotho culture and practices.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Friday Meridian.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 50%; orals count 10%; one two-hour examination counts 40% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL1018S** XHOSA ADDITIONAL A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr T Dowling

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a beginners' course. Students with an Nguni language as a 1<sup>st</sup> language are not permitted to do *Xhosa Additional*, and are encouraged to register for SLL1131F isiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IA.

**Course outline:**

This course is for students who have no prior knowledge of Xhosa, and is aimed at providing initial grammatical comprehension and oral competencies. Skills are developed through a series of well-developed modules which are repeated in multimedia laboratory sessions. Grammar is taught in context and students are expected to apply their grammatical knowledge in task-based communication situations. Students are taught about different varieties of Xhosa and how to use these appropriately in social contexts.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 35%; orals count 15%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL1101F** XHOSA COMMUNICATION IA

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr T Dowling

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a course for beginners. Students with an Nguni language as a 1<sup>st</sup> language are not permitted to do this course and are encouraged to register for SLL1131F isiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IA.

**Objective:** To equip students with the necessary skills to communicate in and comprehend basic isiXhosa.

**Course outline:**

This course takes students from zero knowledge of Xhosa to a good, basic competency in the language. The course actively engages students in acquiring the language through a series of well-developed modules with an integrated approach to acquiring speaking, writing and comprehension skills in Xhosa. Grammar is taught in context and students are expected to apply their grammatical knowledge in task-based communication situations. Students are taught about different varieties of Xhosa and how to use these appropriately in social contexts.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 35%; orals count 15%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL1102S** XHOSA COMMUNICATION IB

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr T Dowling

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1101F or SLL1018S, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Section. Students with a Nguni language as a 1<sup>st</sup> language are not permitted to do this course and are encouraged to register for SLL1132S isiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IB.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL1101F. On completion of this course, students would have covered more complex conversational and grammatical structures, enabling them to engage in a wide range of meaningful communicative activities. Students begin to read a simple Xhosa text and to increase their vocabularies by working with words relating to particular domains and tasks with contemporary, local and cultural significance.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 35%; orals count 15%; one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL2101F XHOSA COMMUNICATION IIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr T Dowling

**Course entry requirements:** The student must have passed SLL1102S Xhosa Communication IB or have a Grade 12 pass in Xhosa as a 1<sup>st</sup> Additional or 2<sup>nd</sup> Additional Language. Students who have done Xhosa as a First Language at school or university are not permitted to do this course and are encouraged to register for SLL2131F isiXhosa Language & Literature Studies IIA.

**Course outline:**

This course actively engages students in furthering their communication skills in Xhosa through a series of well-developed modules focused on speaking, writing and listening to and understanding Xhosa. Grammar is taught in context and students are expected to apply their grammatical knowledge in task-based communication situations. The course also develops students' sociolinguistic knowledge of Xhosa and deepens their understanding of the link between culture, language and thought. Translation skills are developed by working with public notices and signs available in both English and Xhosa.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 50%; orals count 10%; one two-hour examination counts 40% of the final mark.

---

### **SLL2102S XHOSA COMMUNICATION IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr T Dowling

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2101F, or at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL2101F. The course actively engages students in further developing their communicative competence and translation skills. The course also develops students' grammatical competency by providing detailed linguistic descriptions of written texts. Oral and comprehension skills are developed by students' active engagement with videos and oral texts sourced from Xhosa radio and television. Students will engage in a sociolinguistic activity assessing the language of contemporary popular lyrics sung in Xhosa. Students continue with their translation and discussion of a Xhosa novel.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 50%; orals count 10%; one two-hour examination counts 40% of the final mark.

**SLL3101F XHOSA COMMUNICATION IIIA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** S Ntshingana

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2102S, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course actively engages students in furthering their communication skills in Xhosa through a series of well-developed modules focused on speaking, writing and listening to and understanding Xhosa. Grammar is taught in context and students are expected to apply their grammatical knowledge in task-based communication situations. Study of a contemporary Xhosa literary text provides important lexical and cultural information. Translation skills from Xhosa to English are developed to an advanced level. A detailed research project focusing on Xhosa-speaking communities ensures not only communicative competence but also develops students' ability to produce linguistic analyses of contemporary spoken Xhosa.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 50%; orals count 10%; one two-hour examination counts 40% of the final mark.

**SLL3102S XHOSA COMMUNICATION IIIB**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** S Ntshingana

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3101F, or at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL3101F. The course aims to give students advanced skills in comprehending, speaking and providing grammatical analyses of the Xhosa language. Students continue to develop their advanced cultural and lexical knowledge through engagement with a Xhosa literary text. Translation and sociolinguistic skills are developed to an advanced level. Students research the way in which Xhosa is transmitted and received in the media.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to complete all tests and assignments and attend at least 80% of all lectures, tutorials and language labs.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and portfolio activities) counts 50%; orals count 10%; one two-hour examination counts 40% of the final mark.

**SLL1131F ISIXHOSA LANGUAGE & LITERATURE STUDIES IA**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr W Gambushe

**Course entry requirements:** The student must have passed an African language (isiXhosa, isiZulu, isiNdebele, isiSwati) at Grade 12 level or have completed SLL1101F Xhosa Communication IA and SLL1102S Xhosa Communication IB.

**Course outline:**

The course introduces students to isiXhosa language, literacy and culture. It examines the contributions of isiXhosa linguistic and cultural competence to multilingualism discourses through an examination of language in context, literary discourse, language and society and translation studies. The main focus at this level is on developing writing skills such as awareness of orthographic changes and spelling conventions, academic writing, and language policy issues such as standardisation, dialects and the impact on education.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to attend 80% of all lectures and tutorials and to complete all tests, projects and assignments.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and projects) 50%, one two-hour examination 50%.

**SLL1132S ISIXHOSA LANGUAGE & LITERATURE STUDIES IB**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr H Kunju

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1131F isiXhosa Language and Literature Studies IA.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL1131F. The course further develops students' isiXhosa linguistic skills and cultural competence and literacy. The approach in this course is to discuss topics of language development and apply them to specific areas of language policy and planning. We also explore the role of African languages under the topics of language and power.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to attend 80% of all lectures and tutorials and to complete all tests, projects and assignments.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and projects) 50%, one two-hour examination 50%.

---

**SLL2131F ISIXHOSA LANGUAGE & LITERATURE STUDIES IIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr H Kunju

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1132S isiXhosa Language and Literature Studies IB.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL1132S. The course introduces students to contemporary theories in language studies, linguistics and literary discourse. It highlights the contributions of African languages to linguistic theory and development. Further, the course explores how sociolinguistic theories can be used to describe the relationship between language, culture and society in a systematic manner.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to attend 80% of all lectures and tutorials and to complete all tests, projects and assignments.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and projects) 50%, one two-hour examination 50%.

---

**SLL2132S ISIXHOSA LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE STUDIES IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr W Gambushe

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2131F isiXhosa Language and Literature Studies IIA.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL2131F. The course is a further exploration of contemporary language and linguistic theories. The emphasis is on the investigation of the connections between theoretical structural language studies and language and society. The course attempts to bridge the gap between theory and application. In addition, an exploration of topics in language and society allows students to relate theory to language description.

**Lecture times:** Wednesday, Thursday, Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to attend 80% of all lectures and tutorials and to complete all tests, projects and assignments.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and projects) 50%, one two-hour examination 50%.

---

**SLL3131F ISIXHOSA LANGUAGE & LITERATURE STUDIES IIIA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr W Gambushe

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2132S isiXhosa Language and Literature Studies IIB.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL2132S. The course introduces students to contemporary theories in language studies, linguistics and literary discourse. It highlights the contributions of African languages to linguistic theory and development. Further, the course explores how sociolinguistic

theories can be used to describe the relationship between language, culture and society in a systematic manner.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to attend 80% of all lectures and tutorials and to complete all tests, projects and assignments.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and projects) 50%, one two-hour examination 50%.

---

### **SLL3132S ISIXHOSA LANGUAGE & LITERATURE STUDIES IIIB**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr H Kunju

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3131F isiXhosa Language and Literature Studies IIIA

#### **Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL2131F. The course is a further exploration of contemporary language and linguistic theories. The emphasis is on the investigation of the connections between theoretical structural language studies and language and society. The course attempts to bridge the gap between theory and application. In addition, an exploration of topics in language and society allows students to relate theory to language description.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to attend 80% of all lectures and tutorials and to complete all tests, projects and assignments.

**Assessment:** Year work (tests, assignments and projects) 50%, one two-hour examination 50%.

---

## **AFRIKAANS AND NETHERLANDIC STUDIES SECTION**

The Afrikaans and Netherlandic Studies Section is housed in the AC Jordan Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [liziwe.futuse@uct.ac.za](mailto:liziwe.futuse@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2301.

#### **Associate Professor and Head of Section:**

S Loots, MA *Rhodes* PhD *Stell*

#### **Emeritus Professors:**

J Hambidge, BA(Hons) *Stell* MA *Pret* PhD *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*

E R van Heerden, BA(Hons) LLB *Stell* MA *Witwatersrand* PhD *Rhodes* DLitt h.c. *UFS*

#### **Emeritus Associate Professor:**

C N van der Merwe, BA(Hons) MA *Stell* LittDrs *Utrecht* DLitt et Phil *RAU*

#### **Senior Lecturer:**

J Claassen, BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town* PGCE *Unisa*

#### **Lecturers:**

I W van Rooyen, MA PhD *Cape Town*

B Burger, PhD *Stell*

#### **Part-time Lecturers:**

M Lewis, BA(Hons) HDE(PG) MA PhD *Cape Town*

C Reyneke, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town*

M Potter, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town*

#### **Administrative Assistant:**

L Futuse, BA *Unisa* BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town*

## Requirements for a major in Afrikaans

### [SLL02]

#### Second Year courses

Code	Title
SLL2040F	Afrikaans IIA
SLL2041S	Afrikaans IIB

#### Third Year courses

Code	Title
SLL3040F	Afrikaans IIIA
SLL3041S	Afrikaans IIIB

#### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **SLL2040F**: Students with a D symbol or higher in Afrikaans First Language, or a C symbol or higher in Afrikaans Second Language (SC), or a pass of 4 or higher in Afrikaans Home Language or a pass of 5 or higher in Afrikaans First Additional Language (NSC), may enter this course directly. Or with permission of the Section Head.
- (ii) For **SLL2041S**: SLL2040F, or with permission of the Section Head.
- (iii) For **SLL3040F** and **SLL3041S**: SLL2040F and SLL2041S, or with permission of the Section Head.

#### Course outlines:

#### **SLL1042FS** AFRIKAANS INTENSIVE A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr I van Rooyen

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a course for beginners; under certain conditions students with basic knowledge of Afrikaans may be permitted to attend, with permission of the Section Head.

#### **Course outline:**

The course enables students with no prior knowledge of Afrikaans to develop a basic competency in the language, which is required for basic daily interactions. Afrikaans grammar is taught within context, appropriate vocabulary is systematically expanded and a variety of relevant written and oral activities are provided to facilitate comprehension.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June or October/November counts for 40% of the final mark; an oral examination counts for 20%; the semester coursework counts for the remaining 40%.

#### **SLL2040F** AFRIKAANS IIA

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Loots

**Course entry requirements:** Students with a pass of 4 or higher in Afrikaans Home Language or a pass of 5 or higher in Afrikaans First Additional Language (NSC), may enter this course directly. Or with permission of the Section Head.

#### **Course outline:**

This course serves as an introduction to literary studies in the fields of Afrikaans and Netherlandic studies. Crucial critical methods for reading and writing are discussed with reference to Afrikaans short stories and poems. Literary theory is studied with reference to key concepts such as postcolonialism, gender studies and World Literature. Students are introduced for the first time to basic Dutch grammar and vocabulary and read short texts in Dutch.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.

**Assessment:** Two two-hour examinations in June count for 50% of the final mark; the semester coursework counts for the remaining 50%.

**SLL2041S**      AFRIKAANS IIB

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Loots

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2040F, or with permission of the Section Head.

**Course outline:**

This course follows on its pre-requisite course SLL2040F. It augments and enhances students' understanding of theoretical concepts and critical approaches. Students are taught to read and interpret a wide range of literary texts in Afrikaans and Dutch. These include poems, short stories, plays, novels and novellas. Students are encouraged to start thinking about Afrikaans and Dutch in sociolinguistic context i.e., with reference to how cultural norms, region, class and dialect impact on these languages. Where appropriate, students will be referred to relevant theoretical and scholarly sources, which will form part of the required reading for this course.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.

**Assessment:** Two two-hour examinations in October/November count for 50% of the final mark; the semester coursework counts for the remaining 50%.

**SLL3040F**      AFRIKAANS IIIA

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Loots

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2040F and SLL2041S, or with permission of the Section Head.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to develop students' critical reading and writing skills. Students will study novels, short stories, poems and plays in Afrikaans and Dutch. They will be guided to pay attention to genre, style and theme with reference to key concepts from literary theory. Students will be encouraged to read comparatively and to consider literary texts in their national and transnational contexts. Particular attention will be paid to the position of Afrikaans texts and their translations in postcolonial, post-apartheid and transnational contexts. Current debates about World Literature will be discussed with reference to the position of Afrikaans and Dutch writers. Where appropriate, students will be referred to relevant theoretical and scholarly sources, which will form part of the required reading for this course.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.

**Assessment:** Two two-hour examinations in June count for 50% of the final mark; the semester coursework counts for the remaining 50%.

**SLL3041S**      AFRIKAANS IIIB

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Loots

**Course entry requirements:** As for SLL3040F, or with permission of the Section Head.

**Course outline:**

This course further develops the ability of students to read, interpret and compare Afrikaans and Dutch texts from historical, post-colonial and post-apartheid contexts with reference to relevant theoretical frameworks. The course draws on debates about postcolonialism, posthumanism, World Literature, queer identities and human-animal relationships to illustrate how literature transcends linguistic, geographical and temporal boundaries and how it explores and interrogates a wide range of racial, gender and linguistic identities. Spoken word productions, movies and songs in Afrikaans and Dutch are also included in the course material. Where appropriate, students will be referred to relevant theoretical and scholarly sources, which will form part of the required reading for this course.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.



**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures; completion of all assignments and tests.

**Assessment:** Two two-hour examinations in October/November count for 50% of the final mark; the semester coursework counts for the remaining 50%.

---

## ARABIC LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE SECTION

The Arabic Language and Literature Section is housed in the Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za](mailto:tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2712.

**Associate Professor and Head of Section:**

P Macaluso, MA *Palermo* PhD *Rome*

**Emeritus Professor:**

Y Dutton, MA DPhil *Oxon*

**Lecturer:**

E Moos, BA *Al-Azhar* MA *Cape Town*

**Administrative Assistant:**

T Pretorius, Dip(Business Management) *False Bay College*

### Requirements for a major in Arabic Language and Literature

#### [SLL03]

##### Second Year courses

Code	Title
SLL2080F	Arabic IIA
SLL2081S	Arabic IIB

##### Third Year courses

Code	Title
SLL3080F	Arabic IIIA
SLL3081S	Arabic IIIB

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) **SLL2080F:** Initial Arabic B (SLL1059S) or a level of Arabic approved by the Head of Department
- (ii) **SLL2081S:** SLL2080F
- (iii) **SLL3080F:** SLL2081S
- (iv) **SLL3081S:** SLL3080F.

### Course outlines:

---

#### **SLL1058F** INITIAL ARABIC A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** E Moos

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

The course provides students with their first steps in both written and spoken Modern Standard Arabic. The first weeks are taken up with studying the alphabet and the writing and pronunciation rules along with some basics of conversation. In the following part of the course students are introduced to the

structure of nominal and verbal sentences, conjugation of past tense, use of demonstratives and other basics.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 8<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Written and oral assignments and tests count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester counts for 50%; the oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

### **SLL1059S INITIAL ARABIC B**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** E Moos

**Course entry requirements:** Initial Arabic A (SLL1058F)

**Course outline:**

This course continues from Arabic IA in offering a beginners' level study of Modern Standard Arabic with emphasis on oral comprehension and communication along with writing and reading skills. The students are taught the plural of nouns and demonstratives, conjugation of present tense, derived forms of verbs and other elements of grammar, while texts and exercises will also provide them with a large amount of useful vocabulary.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 8<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Written and oral assignments and tests count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester counts for 50%; the oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

### **SLL2080F ARABIC IIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor P Macaluso

**Course entry requirements:** Initial Arabic B (SLL1059S) or a level of Arabic approved by the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course caters for intermediate learners of the Arabic language. It covers more advanced grammatical materials, including irregular verbs and relative pronouns. The materials used during the course will provide the students with a large amount of vocabulary meant to enable them to communicate in many contexts of everyday life and understand original texts at intermediate level.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Tests and written assignments count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the first semester counts for 50%; the oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

### **SLL2081S ARABIC IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor P Macaluso

**Course entry requirements:** Arabic IIA (SLL2080F)

**Course outline:**

The course continues from Arabic IIA in offering an intermediate level study of Modern Standard Arabic with emphasis on all the four language skills. It introduces the students to short unvocalised

texts and to the study of matters related to the Arab culture. The grammar covered includes a thorough revision of the derived forms and irregular verbs, and the study of the relative clauses and passive voice.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Tests and written assignments count for 40% of the final mark; the two-hour written examination at the end of the second semester counts for 50%; the oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

---

### **SLL3080F ARABIC IIIA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor P Macaluso

**Course entry requirements:** Arabic IIB (SLL2081S) or equivalent.

**Course outline:**

Arabic IIIA acts as an introduction to the classical Arabic literary tradition. In the first quarter we study short extracts from medieval and modern prose. In the second quarter we concentrate on longer excerpts from the classical Arabic literary tradition. There is also an on-going language component to this course, consisting of the further study of key grammatical structures via the medium of short passages for translation from English into Arabic.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend at least 75% of lectures, submit the prescribed number of assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** The two-hour written examination at the end of the semester counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 40%; and an oral examination counts for 10%.

---

### **SLL3081S ARABIC IIIB**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** E Moos

**Course entry requirements:** Arabic IIIA (SLL3080F)

**Course outline:**

Arabic IIIB continues an exploration of the Arabic literary tradition with, typically, an in-depth study of selected texts from the Qur'an and the Hadith as pivotal examples of Arabic religious writing. There is also a continuing language element to this course, consisting of the further study of key grammatical structures and further exposure to contemporary modern Arabic usage and vocabulary.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend at least 75% of lectures, submit the prescribed number of assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** The two-hour written examination at the end of the semester counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 40%; and an oral examination counts for 10%.

---

## **CHINESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE SECTION**

(With the support of the Confucius Institute at the University of Cape Town)

The Chinese Language and Literature Section is administered in the AC Jordan Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [liziwe.futuse@uct.ac.za](mailto:liziwe.futuse@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2301.

The teaching staff are located in the Beattie Building.

**Senior Lecturer and Head of Section:**

S An, MA East China Normal University PhD Macquarie University

**Lecturer (seconded by Chinese government: the Confucius Institute @ UCT)**

HY Meng, BA *Yan'an University, China* MA *Northwest University, China*

**Administrative Assistant:**

L Futuse, BA *Unisa* BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town*

## Requirements for a major in Chinese Studies

### [SLL21]

#### First Year courses

Code	Title
SLL1121F	Chinese Studies IA
SLL1122S	Chinese Studies IB

#### Second Year courses

Code	Title
SLL2121F	Chinese Studies IIA
SLL2122S	Chinese Studies IIB

#### Third Year courses

Code	Title
SLL3121F	Chinese Studies IIIA
SLL3122S	Chinese Studies IIIB

#### Pre-requisites:

- (i) **SLL1122S:** SLL1121F or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (ii) **SLL2121F:** SLL1122S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (iii) **SLL2122S:** SLL2121F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (iv) **SLL3121F:** SLL2122S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department
- (v) **SLL3122S:** SLL3121F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

### Course outlines:

#### **SLL1121F** CHINESE STUDIES IA

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr S An

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a course designed for beginners.

#### **Course outline:**

This Chinese language course is designed for non-mother tongue students who wish to acquire essential communicative skills in both spoken and written Chinese through a combination of lectures, conversation classes and language laboratory sessions. No prior knowledge of the Chinese language is needed when the students are enrolled into the course, which is designed as an academic course that builds up the foundation for Chinese studies in later stages. The first year course covers a sizeable repertoire of Chinese characters as used in everyday communicative situations, and develops an awareness and understanding of the cultural aspects of the unique Chinese writing system. By the end of the course, students are expected to be able to make simple conversations in Chinese on some specific everyday situations.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes, lab sessions and tutorials regularly, submit the prescribed number of assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral and aural examination counts for 20%.

---

**SLL1122S CHINESE STUDIES IB**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr S An

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1121F, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

The course is a continuation of SLL1121F, and through a combination of lectures, conversation classes and language laboratory sessions, it aims to further develop communicative competence in aural comprehension, speaking, reading, and writing of modern Chinese. Students are expected to be able to read and understand the texts in Chinese characters instead of relying on pinyin that is now merely used as an aid for looking up characters in dictionaries and getting the pronunciation of characters correct. By the end of the course learners should be able to write short paragraphs in characters, in addition to being able to talk about daily life events.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes, lab sessions and tutorials regularly, submit the prescribed number of assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral and aural examination counts for 20%.

---

**SLL2121F CHINESE STUDIES IIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr S An

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1122S, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to provide an introduction to modern Chinese at an intermediate level. Emphasis is given to further development in all four language skills (aural, oral, reading, and writing) through a combination of lectures, conversation classes and language laboratory sessions. Understanding of the linguistic and cultural aspects of language learning will continue to be explored and enhanced. Understanding of the metaphorical and culture loaded uses of language will be emphasised. Meanwhile, text related discussions of Chinese culture and society will also be an important aspect of study in order to interpret the language expressions beyond the pure linguistic level.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes, lab sessions and tutorials regularly, submit the prescribed number of assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral and aural examination counts for 20%.

---

**SLL2122S CHINESE STUDIES IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr S An

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2121F, or at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course is a continuation of SLL2121F Chinese Studies IIA and aims to further develop competence in aural comprehension, speaking, reading, and writing of modern Chinese through a combination of lectures, conversation classes and language laboratory sessions. In addition to oral communication skills, the ability of reading and writing will be further developed. Students should be able to write paragraphs approximately beyond 500 characters. At the end of the course, students should be able to master over 1200 single Chinese characters with a working knowledge of between 2000 and 2500 words. They are expected to reach the equivalent standard benchmarked by HSK (Chinese Proficiency Test) level 4, which is set as an optional external test for self-evaluation.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes, lab sessions and tutorials regularly, submit the prescribed number of assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral and aural examination counts for 20%.

---

### **SLL3121F CHINESE STUDIES IIIA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr S An

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2122S

**Course outline:**

The course is a continuation of SLL2122S Chinese Studies IIB and aims to pave a solid foundation in the year as a major for continuing to develop students' communicative competence in modern Chinese through a combination of lectures, conversation classes and language laboratory sessions, as well as class presentations by students. Focus is given to the use of language in critical and interactive situations, in addition to the ability of being able to use the language in private academic studies. Students should be able to write paragraphs of approximately 800 characters, approaching the ability of language users at upper intermediate level.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes, lab sessions and tutorials regularly, submit the prescribed number of assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) count for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral and aural examination counts for 20%.

---

### **SLL3122S CHINESE STUDIES IIIB**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr S An

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3121F

**Course outline:**

The course is a continuation of SLL3121F Chinese Studies IIIA and aims at achieving language proficiency matching the level of upper intermediate by the completion of this major course. Students will continue to be trained through a combination of lectures, conversation classes and language laboratory sessions, as well as class presentations by students. Issues in Chinese culture, history and civilisation, as well as contemporary and modern society, will be topics of discussion in the process of learning and practicing the use of the language. Students should be able to write paragraphs of approximately 1000 characters and speak fairly clearly on a variety of topics with very limited time for preparation. By the end of the course, the students are expected to be able to pass HSK level 5 or higher, meeting the language requirement for postgraduate students at a tertiary institution in China or elsewhere for honours or higher levels of study in Chinese-related subjects.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes, lab sessions and tutorials regularly, submit the prescribed number of assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral and aural examination counts for 20%.

---

## CLASSICS SECTION

The Classics Section is housed in the Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus and can be contacted by e-mail at: [tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za](mailto:tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2712.

**Associate Professor and Head Section:**

C E Chandler, BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town*

**King George V Professor:**

D Wardle, MA DPhil *Oxon*

**Professor:**

R E Roth, MA PhD *Cantab*

**Emeritus Professor:**

R A Whitaker, BA *Witwatersrand* MA *Oxon* PhD *St Andrews*

**Honorary Professor:**

R M Schneider, PhD *Heidelberg*

**Senior Lecturer:**

J A Murray, BA(Hons) MA *UKZN* PhD *Cape Town*

**Lecturer:**

M J Shelton, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town* PhD *St Andrews*

**Honorary Research Affiliates:**

B Bentel, BA(Hons) *Cape Town* MPhil *Cantab* PhD *Cape Town*

K McLachlan, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town* DPhil *Oxon*

C Von Solms, BA(FA) MFA *Cape Town* MPhil *Stell* PhD *Cape Town*

**Administrative Assistant:**

T Pretorius, Dip(Business Management) *False Bay College*

The courses offered by the Classics Section fall into two main categories:

1) Greek and Latin language courses and 2) Classical culture and history courses.

The Classical culture and history courses require no knowledge of Greek or Latin. These courses focus on Greek and Roman history, culture, mythology and literature in the Mediterranean and North Africa.

*NOTE: Students who have failed any course in Classics twice will not be permitted to reregister for the same course; either with or without attendance.*

## Requirements for a major in Classical Studies

### [SLL05]

#### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
<b>ONE of the following:</b>	
SLL2058F	Ancient Mythology
SLL2057F	The City in the Ancient World ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )
SLL2059F	Rome: Literature & Empire
SLL2050F	Latin IIA
SLL2052F	Greek IIA

---

**ONE of the following:**

SLL2055S	Athenian Life and Culture ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )
SLL2056S	Roman Society and Law
SLL2051S	Latin IIB
SLL2053S	Greek IIB

**Third Year courses**

---

**Code Title**

**ONE of the following:**

SLL3057F	The City in the Ancient World ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )
SLL3059F	Rome: Literature & Empire
SLL3001F	Sex: from Sappho to Cyber ** ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )
SLL3050F	Latin IIIA
SLL3052F	Greek IIIA

**ONE of the following:**

SLL3055S	Athenian Life and Culture ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )
SLL3056S	Roman Society and Law
SLL3051S	Latin IIIB
SLL3053S	Greek IIIB

\*\* From 2016 this course will no longer form part of the major

**Prerequisites for Cultural/Historical track:**

- (i) For **SLL2058F**, **SLL2057F** and **SLL2059F**: 2nd year status
- (ii) For **SLL2055S** and **SLL2056S**: 2nd year status
- (iii) For **SLL3001F**: 3rd year status
- (iv) For **SLL3057F** and **SLL3059F**: SLL2055S or SLL2056S
- (v) For **SLL3055S** and **SLL3056S**: SLL3057F or SLL3059F or SLL3001F

All material in the Culture and History courses is studied in English, and no knowledge of Greek, Latin or Hebrew is required. Students intending to proceed to Classical Studies Honours are strongly encouraged to include a course in Latin or Greek in their undergraduate curriculum.

At the Senior Level most of the Culture and History courses are offered in alternate years. Most can be taken in a particular year *either* as a 2000-level course or as a 3000-level course.

Students wishing to take any senior course in Culture and History, but not as part of a major in Classical Studies, may be admitted at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

**Credit will not be given for both:**

SLL2057F and SLL3057F	SLL2055S and SLL3055S
SLL2059F and SLL3059F	SLL2056S and SLL3056S

**Prerequisites for Latin track:**

- (i) For **SLL2050F**: SLL1051S
- (ii) For **SLL2051S**: SLL2050F
- (iii) For **SLL3050F**: SLL2051S
- (iv) For **SLL3051S**: SLL3050F

Students who have Matriculated in Latin with a C grade or above, or an NSC rating of 5, will be admitted directly into Latin IB. If a student can satisfy the Head of Section that entry into Latin IIA is appropriate, this may be granted and thus the student may complete Latin IIIA and B by the end of the following year.



**Prerequisites for Greek track:**

- (i) For **SLL2052F**: SLL1053S
- (ii) For **SLL2053S**: SLL2052F
- (iii) For **SLL3052F**: SLL2053S
- (iv) For **SLL3053S**: SLL3052F

**Course outlines:**

---

**SLL1002FS WORD POWER**

*(A course in etymology) (NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term – please consult the Department.)*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr J A Murray

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

The course consists of two components:

- i. words and ideas: focus on concepts associated with the ancient Greek and Roman civilisations of the Mediterranean and key words in English derived from Greek and Latin;
- ii. a knowledge of English word-formation and evolution from the lexical resources of the Greek and Latin languages, as well as other languages, particularly as this knowledge enhances word-building skills and increases confidence in the use of English of an academic register. As an introductory course to the study of language, we use content that engages the diversity of students' own lexicons and is cognizant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including multilingual pedagogies and digital literacy, that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** 1st semester: Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 5<sup>th</sup> period; 2<sup>nd</sup> semester: Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 5<sup>th</sup> or 8<sup>th</sup> periods.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend all tutorials, submit all tutorial assignments, and write all tests.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination at the end of the semester counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

**Latin:**

---

**SLL1050F LATIN IA**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr J A Murray

**Course entry requirements:** None. This course is primarily designed for those who have not studied Latin before, but is also open to those who have done some Latin at school but not enough to enter Latin IB or IIA.

**Course outline:**

The course provides an introduction to Latin for students with no previous knowledge of Latin. It offers insights into word formation and sentence structure and the Latin roots of common words in English. The syllabus includes a selection of prose passages, and a study of translation from English into Latin.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students will not be permitted to write the examination unless they have submitted all coursework.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts 50%.

**SLL1051S** LATIN IB

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr J A Murray

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1050F Latin IA

**Course outline:**

The course builds on Latin IA and provides further instruction in Latin vocabulary, grammar and syntax (including complex sentences and subordinate clauses – temporal, concessive, final, consecutive, *oratio obliqua*), and includes introductory study of a selection of continuous prose passages, and practice in translation of complex sentences from English into Latin.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students will not be permitted to write the examination unless they have submitted all coursework.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts 50%.

**SLL2050F** LATIN IIA

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr M Shelton

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1051S Latin IB. A student with a C or above in Latin (SC) or a 5 or above (NSC) may register directly for this course at the discretion of the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head.

**Course outline:**

This course provides instruction and practice in translation of unseen passages in prose and poetry as well as translation of increasingly more complex sentences from English into Latin. A significant portion of the course is devoted to introducing study of Latin literature through a variety of Classical texts. Fundamental authors exemplifying Latin prose and poetry are covered, since these offer a convenient introduction to oratory, historiography, and a range of poetic forms.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorial assignments, and write all class tests.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

**SLL2051S** LATIN IIB

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr M Shelton

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2050F Latin IIA

**Course outline:**

This course builds on SLL2050F and continues practice in translation of unseen passages in prose and poetry as well as an introduction to Latin prose composition, which enhances the student's grasp of Latin idiom and a range of registers. Additional key Latin authors in prose and poetry are introduced at this stage, usually historiographical prose and narrative poetry.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorial assignments, and write all class tests.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

**SLL3050F** LATIN IIIA

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr M Shelton

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2051S Latin IIB

**Course outline:**

This course introduces advanced study of Latin language and literature. Students continue with practice in unseen translation from prose and poetry but are also introduced to stylistic analysis of Latin prose. Literary study now focuses on more challenging aspects of important poetic and prose texts, with appreciation of historical and social context and literary pedigree.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorial assignments, and write all class tests.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

---

### **SLL3051S** LATIN IIIB

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr J A Murray

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3050F Latin IIIA

**Course outline:**

This course continues advanced study of Latin language and literature. Students continue with practice in unseen translation from prose and poetry and refine their appreciation of Latin prose style and its historical development. Literary study comprises remaining important poetic and prose texts, with appreciation of historical and social context and literary pedigree.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorial assignments, and write all class tests

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

---

## **Greek:**

### **SLL1052F** GREEK IA

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor C E Chandler

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course is designed for students with no previous knowledge of Ancient Greek. It provides an introduction to basic grammar and syntax, and a basic working vocabulary. A great emphasis is placed in graded reading of passages in Greek and gradual introduction of idioms of Classical Greek prose. Aspects of Ancient Greek culture and historical context are included where relevant.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 8<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all coursework, write all tests and 80% lecture attendance.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 40% of the final mark; coursework counts for 60%.

---

### **SLL1053S** GREEK IB

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor C E Chandler

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1052F Greek IA

**Course outline:**

The course builds on Greek IA and provides further instruction in Greek vocabulary, grammar and syntax (including complex sentences and subordinate clauses – temporal, concessive, final, consecutive, indirect statement). The reading passages become gradually more complex and are based increasingly on actual surviving Greek examples of dramatic comedy and forensic oratory. There is increased practice in translating English into Greek, and Greek into English.

**Lecture times:** 8<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all coursework, write all tests and 80% lecture attendance.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 40% of the final mark; coursework counts for 60%.

---

**SLL2052F** GREEK IIA

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor C E Chandler

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1053S Greek IB

**Course outline:**

This course includes introduction to the study of two authors drawn from the following list: Homer, Herodotus, Sophocles, Aristophanes, Euripides, Thucydides, Plato, Greek orators in their socio-historical context, practice in unseen translation, and translation from English into Greek. In each semester one prose work and one poetic work is read (subject to availability of staff).

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorials, write all class tests, and 80% lecture attendance.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

---

**SLL2053S** GREEK IIB

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor R Roth

**Course outline:**

This course continues the study of two additional authors not covered in SLL2052F drawn from the following list: Homer, Herodotus, Sophocles, Aristophanes, Euripides, Thucydides, Plato, Greek orators, in their socio-historical context, further practice in unseen translation, and introduction to prose composition. In each semester one prose work and one poetic work is read (subject to availability of staff).

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorials, write all class tests, and 80% lecture attendance.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

---

**SLL3052F** GREEK IIIA

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor C E Chandler

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2053S Greek IIB

**Course outline:**

This course includes advanced study of works from two authors drawn from the following list: Homer, Herodotus, Sophocles, Aristophanes, Euripides, Thucydides, Plato, Greek orators, in their socio-historical context, advanced unseen translation, and introduction to stylistics analysis. In each semester one prose work and one poetic work is read (subject to availability of staff).

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorials, write all class tests, and 80% lecture attendance.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

---

**SLL3053S** GREEK IIIB

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor R Roth

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3052F Greek IIIA

**Course outline:**

This course continues the study of two additional authors not covered in SLL3052F drawn from the following list: Homer, Herodotus, Sophocles, Aristophanes, Euripides, Thucydides, Plato, Greek orators, in their socio-historical context, advanced unseen translation, and stylistics analysis. In each semester one prose work and one poetic work is read (subject to availability of staff).

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must submit the prescribed number of essays and tutorials, write all class tests, and 80% lecture attendance.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 30% of the final mark; coursework counts for 70%.

## **Courses in Greek, Roman and Mediterranean History, Culture and Mythology:**

All material in these courses is studied in English, and no knowledge of Greek, Latin or Hebrew is required. Students intending to proceed to Classical Studies Honours are strongly encouraged to include a course in Latin or Greek in their undergraduate curriculum.

At the senior level, most of the Culture and History courses are offered in alternate years meaning that these courses can be taken in a particular year *either* as a 2000-level course or as a 3000-level course.

---

### **SLL1054F THE WORLD OF ODYSSEUS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr M Shelton

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course provides an introduction to the ancient Mediterranean world through Homer's *Odyssey*, examining the hero, Odysseus, in the context of early Greek society and its oral traditions, and tracing the hero's fortunes in ancient and modern literature, film and art. All texts are studied in English, and no knowledge of ancient languages is required.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

### **SLL1057F ANCIENT EGYPT**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr J A Murray

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course provides students with no previous knowledge of ancient history with an introduction to (i) the history of Egypt from c. 4000 BC to AD 300, and (ii) key elements of Egyptian culture (including architecture and religion). The course will consider how Egyptian culture adapted to rule by foreign powers (Greek and Roman) and how these foreigners perceived and represented Egypt. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' lifeworlds and is cognizant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Wednesday, Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

**SLL1097S** INTRODUCING ANCIENT HISTORY

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor D Wardle

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

An introduction to the study of ancient history and classical archaeology in the Mediterranean world from the 8<sup>th</sup> century BC to the early Roman Empire (1<sup>st</sup> century AD). The focus is on the development of Rome in the Italian peninsula and the emergence of Rome as a major power in the Mediterranean world. The reigns of the early Roman emperors are also covered.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday, Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend at least 80% of tutorials, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

**SLL1136S** INTRODUCTION TO ROMAN LITERATURE AND CULTURE

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr J A Murray

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course provides an introduction to the cultural history of ancient Rome and her empire. The Aeneid, the poet Virgil's epic account of Rome's origins and of the vision of her later greatness, will form a starting point for a survey of Roman culture through ancient texts (in translation), art and archaeology. Students will acquire basic familiarity with the most significant Roman literary genres, and with the study of Roman life and society.

**Lecture times:** 6th period.

**DP requirements:** Timely submission of all coursework as stipulated in the Classics Section's handbook.

**Assessment:** Coursework (2 essays [chosen from 3 options] and 2 tutorial assignments); compulsory attendance of tutorials – 50%. Formal examination at the end of the semester – 50%.

---

**SLL2056S** ROMAN SOCIETY AND LAW

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor R Roth

**Course entry requirements:** 2<sup>nd</sup> year status

**Course outline:**

This course focuses on key aspects of Ancient Rome and its civilisation. Topics covered include the concept of citizenship, marriage and inheritance law, slavery, business practice and welfare schemes, crime and punishment, religion, and visual and material culture. Attention is also given to selected examples of the literary production of Rome, especially historiography, biography, and poetry.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

**SLL2058F** ANCIENT MYTHOLOGY

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor D Wardle

**Course entry requirements:** 2<sup>nd</sup> year status

**Course outline:**

This course provides an introduction to Greek mythology and concepts of the divine, followed by a detailed study of selected myths of Ancient Greece and Rome, including the following topics: Theories of Myths and their meaning; the ideological uses of Myth; Myth in Classical Art and literature; Myth in post-classical literary and artistic traditions.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

### **SLL2059F** ROME: LITERATURE & EMPIRE

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor R Roth

**Course entry requirements:** 2<sup>nd</sup> year status

**Course outline:**

The course deals with the phenomenon of the Roman Empire from the 1<sup>st</sup> century BC to about the 3<sup>rd</sup> century AD. It examines the nature and development of Roman rule under the emperors and the kinds of literature that emerged in a culturally and linguistically diverse empire, whether written in poetry or prose.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

### **SLL3056S** ROMAN SOCIETY AND LAW

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor R Roth

**Course entry requirements:** 3<sup>rd</sup> year status or by permission of the Head of Section

**Course outline:**

This course focuses on key aspects Ancient Rome and its civilisation. Topics covered include the concept of citizenship, marriage and inheritance law, slavery, business practice and welfare schemes, crime and punishment, religion, and visual and material culture. Attention is also given to selected examples of the literary production of Rome, especially historiography, biography, and poetry.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in October/November counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

### **SLL3059F** ROME: LITERATURE & EMPIRE

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor R Roth

**Course entry requirements:** 3<sup>rd</sup> year status or by permission of the Head of Section

**Course outline:**

The course deals with the phenomenon of the Roman Empire, from the 1<sup>st</sup> century BC to about the 3<sup>rd</sup> century AD. It examines the nature and development of Roman rule under the emperors and the kinds of literature that emerged in a culturally and linguistically diverse empire, whether written in poetry or prose.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend classes regularly, submit the prescribed number of essays and assignments and write any class test that may be scheduled. Submission dates must be adhered to.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination in June counts for 50% of the final mark; coursework counts for 50%.

---

## FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE SECTION

The French Language and Literature Section is housed in the Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za](mailto:tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2712.

### **Lecturer and Head of Section:**

A K Plaiche, BA(Hons) *Mauritius* Maîtrise DEA Doctorat *La Réunion*

### **Emeritus Professor:**

J-L Cornille, Professor of Modern French Literature, Licence Maîtrise Philologie Romane *Anvers* Doctorat *Nijmegen* Habilitation *Lille*

### **Emeritus Associate Professor:**

V Everson, BA(Hons) *Nottingham* PGCE *Oxon* PhD *Cape Town*

### **Associate Professor:**

M Arnold, MA Philologie Romane & Anglaise *Regensburg* Doctorat (co-tutelle) *Regensburg & La Réunion*

### **Senior Lecturer:**

R de Oliveira, Honors Master 1 & 2 *Nice* PhD *Paris III Sorbonne Nouvelle (ILPGA)* Postdoctoral degree *São Paulo*

### **Lecturer:**

K Schmid, MA *Cape Town*

### **Honorary Research Associates:**

A Marie, MA PhD *Cape Town*

A Seba-Collett, MA PhD *Cape Town*

### **Administrative Assistant:**

T Pretorius, Dip(Business Management) *False Bay College*

### **Admission requirements:**

Students will be admitted to the French Section whether or not they have already studied French.

The courses offered by the French Section are primarily designed for students of French as a **foreign language**. **Students for whom French is a second or home language will be accepted only under certain conditions, and after prior discussion with the Section Head.** They may be admitted directly into SLL3060F. Such French or Francophone students may major after a further 3 semesters of French Language & Literature (SLL3061S and SLL3070W). They may *not* opt for Business French.

A student who has not taken French at secondary school will be admitted to the Initial French course (SLL1060F, SLL1061S). Such a student may major after a further 4 semesters of French (SLL2060F, SLL2061S, SLL3060F, SLL3061S or SLL3084F and SLL3085S).

A student qualifies for admission to French Language & Literature II (SLL2060F, SLL2061S) if (i) within the preceding 3 years, s/he has obtained at least a C symbol in French for the Matriculation examination, or 5 in the NSC (or a course recognised as equivalent) or (ii) the Head of the Section is satisfied that s/he is able to perform the work of the class. Such a student will major after a further 2



semesters: French Language & Literature IIIA and IIIB (SLL3060F, SLL3061S) or Business French IIIA and IIIB (SLL3084F, SLL3085S).

Students who have already majored in French after 4 semesters in the section, but still have one year ahead of them to complete their undergraduate degree in other majors, are encouraged to opt for French Additional (SLL3070W) to enhance their proficiency (in language and literature), should they wish to proceed to postgraduate studies in French.

## Requirements for a major in French FOR NON-FRANCOPHONE STUDENTS [SLL06]

### Second Year courses

Code	Title
SLL2060F	French Language & Literature IIA
SLL2061S	French Language & Literature IIB

### Third Year courses

Code	Title
SLL3060F	French Language & Literature IIIA
SLL3061S	French Language & Literature IIIB

FOR FRANCOPHONE STUDENTS[SLL06]

### Third Year courses

Code	Title
SLL3060F	French Language & Literature IIIA
SLL3061S	French Language & Literature IIIB

### Additional courses

Code	Title
SLL3070W	French Additional

*NB1: Students may not major in both French and Business French*

*NB2: Students who have already majored in French may subsequently opt for French Additional to further enhance their proficiency (see above)*

### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **SLL2060F**: SLL1061S, or a pass in Matric French within the past 3 years with at least a C symbol, or 5 in the NSC (or equivalent), or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
- (ii) For **SLL2061S**: SLL2060F (or equivalent), or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
- (iii) For **SLL3060F**: SLL2061S
- (iv) For **SLL3061S**: SLL3060F
- (v) For **SLL3070W**: SLL3061S

## Requirements for a major in Business French [SLL04]

### Second Year courses

Code	Title
SLL2060F	French Language & Literature IIA
SLL2061S	French Language & Literature IIB

### Third Year courses

Code	Title
SLL3084F	Business French IIIA
SLL3085S	Business French IIIB

*NB1: Students may not major in both French and Business French.*

*NB2: Students who have already majored in Business French may subsequently opt for French Language & Literature IIIA & IIIB to further enhance their proficiency.*

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **SLL2060F**: SLL1061S or a pass in Matric French within the past 3 years with at least a C symbol, or 5 in the NSC (or equivalent), or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
- (ii) For **SLL2061S**: SLL2060F (or equivalent) or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head
- (iii) For **SLL3084F**: SLL2061S (or equivalent)
- (iv) For **SLL3085S**: SLL3084F.

*NB 3: Students majoring in French, notably in French Language & Literature, are encouraged to take the elective course SLL2090S (Black Francophone Thinkers: from Négritude to Afrotopia), taught in English.*

**Course outlines:**

**SLL1060F FRENCH INTENSIVE A**

*This course may also be offered in Winter Term – please consult the Department.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** K Schmid

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a course for beginners. Students with previous knowledge of French may **not** register for this course.

**Course outline:**

This course offers an intensive introduction to French as a foreign language focusing on the basic grammatical, lexical, phonetic, and cultural aspects of the language. The course aims to equip students with a thorough understanding of the structure of the language for further study, all the while acquiring reading, writing, listening and speaking skills for communication purposes.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday either in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 5<sup>th</sup> period and one conversation class per week.

**DP requirements:** Completion of class tests and oral examinations on the date indicated, submission of all assignments by the due date, and minimum of 80% attendance of all sections of the course are compulsory for the Duly Performed Certificate.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark) and an end-of-semester oral examination (20% of final mark).

**SLL1061S FRENCH INTENSIVE B**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** K Schmid

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1060F or equivalent. This second semester is specially designed for students who passed SLL1060F but students with adequate level of French language acquisition may, by permission of the course convener, be admitted in SLL1061S. Note that “special admissions” exclude students coming from countries where French is spoken and/or taught; thus students who have studied French at high school, e.g. South Africa, Zimbabwe, and/or passed their Matric – with French as a foreign language - within the last three years at the day of registration are not allowed to register for this module.

**Course outline:**

This course offers a further intensive introduction to French as a foreign language focusing on the basic grammatical, lexical, phonetic, and cultural aspects of the language. The course aims to equip students with a thorough understanding of the structure of the language for further study, all the while acquiring reading, writing, listening and speaking skills for communication purposes.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday either in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 5<sup>th</sup> period and one conversation class per week.

**DP requirements:** Completion of class tests and oral examinations on the dated indicated, submission of all assignments by the due date, and minimum of 80% attendance of all sections of the course are compulsory for the Duly Performed Certificate.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark) and an end-of-semester oral examination (20% of final mark).

---

### **SLL1069F FRENCH COMMUNICATION**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** K Schmid

**Course entry requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**

This course offers an introduction to French as a foreign language with a focus on the basic structures of the language for communication purposes. Students will acquire practical knowledge of, notably, spoken but also written French, leading up to the A1 level according to the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR). This is a stand-alone elective course that does not automatically allow continuation to a second semester French course. However, if a student decides they wish to take the second semester course and continue with French, they may take the winter term SLL1060L French Intensive A course, which should be passed prior to continuing with SLL1061S French Intensive B.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Wednesday, 2<sup>nd</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> period; Tutorials: Thursday & Friday, 2<sup>nd</sup> and 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance, handing in of all assignments and tests throughout the semester.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (80%) and an oral exam (20%).

---

### **SLL2060F FRENCH LANGUAGE & LITERATURE IIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr R de Oliveira

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1061S or a pass in Matriculation French within the past 3 years with at least a C symbol, or 5 in NSC (or equivalent) or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head. Francophone students may **not** register for this course.

**Course outline:**

This course extends the concepts taught in SLL2060F at intermediate level. It is composed of two modules: one focuses and develops the language skills in listening, speaking, reading and writing, and the basic techniques of translation (English- French); the other focuses on French and Francophone cultures, civilizations and literatures (i.e. novel, theatre and poetry).

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday in 3<sup>rd</sup> period and one conversation class per week.

**DP requirements:** Completion of class tests and oral examinations on the date indicated, submission of all assignments by the due date, and minimum of 80% attendance of all sections of the course are compulsory for the Duly Performed Certificate.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark) and an end-of-semester oral examination (20% of final mark).

---

### **SLL2061S FRENCH LANGUAGE & LITERATURE IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr R de Oliveira

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2060F or equivalent, or approval by the Head of Department in consultation with the Section Head. Francophone students may **not** register for this course.

**Course outline:**

This course extends the concepts taught in SLL2060F at intermediate level. It is composed of two modules: one focuses and develops the language (skills in listening, speaking, reading and writing, and the basic techniques of translation (English-French), the other focuses on French and Francophone cultures, civilizations and literatures (i.e. novel, theatre and poetry).

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday in 3<sup>rd</sup> period and one conversation class per week.

**DP requirements:** Completion of class tests and oral examinations, submission of all assignments by the due date, and minimum of 80% attendance of all sections of the course are compulsory for the Duly Performed Certificate.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark and an end-of-semester oral examination (20% of final mark).

### **SLL2090S BLACK FRANCOPHONE THOUGHT: FROM NÉGRITUDE TO AFROTOPIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** A/Professor M Arnold

**Course entry requirements:** Second-year status or at the discretion of the HOD.

#### **Course outline:**

This course offers an introduction to key thinkers, moments and movements from Francophone Africa and the African diaspora (including the Caribbean, the Indian Ocean, and France). It provides a diachronic survey focusing on selective figures and their main texts which have been shaping the cultural, social and political imagination of/on Africa and the African diaspora until today. Focal points include 1) the Négritude movement; 2) anti-colonialism, Pan-Africanism, and independence; and 3) contemporary postcolonial critique as well as current emancipatory thinking, comprising notions such as "Postcolony", "Necropolitics", "Afropolitanism", "Afrotopia", "Afrodystopia", and "Universality". These mostly Africa-centred conceptualisations will be read alongside influential thought produced in the larger African diaspora and Afro-descendant context outside the Continent, addressing three geographical and cultural contexts: 1) the Francophone Caribbean, with "Antillanité", "Créolité" and "Relation"; 2) the Francophone Indian Ocean Islands with "Creolisation" and "Liquid Africa"; and 3) France with critical debates around "Francophonie", "Afropeanism", and "heritage restoration".

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday and Thursday (7<sup>th</sup> period).

**DP requirements:** At least 80% of attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion and timely submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

### **SLL3060F FRENCH LANGUAGE & LITERATURE IIIA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr K Plaiche

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2061S. Francophone students may register directly for 3<sup>rd</sup> year courses after consultation with the Section Head.

#### **Course outline:**

The course offers advanced language work, including history of the language and translation (theory and practice), and focuses on selected literary works of major French and Francophone authors from the 17th century up to today. Emphasis will be put on French prose fiction and Francophone writers from Africa, the Indian Ocean and the Caribbean. Taught in French, the course includes literary theory, concepts from cultural and postcolonial studies, and may discuss theatre and poetry, as well as contemporary graphic literature (bande-dessinée).

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday (4<sup>th</sup> period), and one tutorial/conversation class per week.

**DP requirements:** Completion of class tests and oral examinations on the date indicated, submission of all assignments by the due date, and a minimum of 80% attendance of all sections of the course are compulsory for the Duly Performed Certificate.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark) and an end-of-semester oral examination (20% of final mark).

**SLL3061S FRENCH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE IIIB**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr K Plaiche

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3060F

**Course outline:**

This second semester course offers a continuation of French and Francophone literary and cultural studies at an advanced level, including practical translation (literary & factual texts). Following on from the study of previously discussed classical and modern authors/works in the first semester, it further enhances the students' interpretational skills on several contemporary literary texts from France and Francophone locations (e.g. Africa, the Indian Ocean, and the Caribbean). Extending comparative methods of analysis and academic thought, the course puts emphasis on critical written and oral expression on a wide spectrum of literary and cultural production (possibly including graphic and visual narration: bande-dessinée and film).

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday (4<sup>th</sup> period), and one tutorial/conversation class per week.

**DP requirements:** Completion of class tests and oral examinations on the date indicated, submission of all assignments by the due date, and a minimum of 80% attendance of all sections of the course is compulsory for the Duly Performed Certificate.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark) and an end-of-semester oral examination (20% of final mark).

**SLL3070W FRENCH ADDITIONAL**

60 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr K Plaiche

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3061S

**Course outline:**

This course allows students to progress from SLL3060F and SLL3061S by focussing on studies in French and Francophone Literature, and on translation. The course, which includes discussion of literary, theoretical and possibly wider cultural production (e.g. graphic and visual narratives) is based on different texts/contents than those studied previously. It puts emphasis on enhancing interpretational skills and comparative analytical methods, thus contributing to the students' increased proficiency in expressing critical academic thinking in oral and written form.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday (4<sup>th</sup> period) and one tutorial/conversation class per week.

**DP requirements:** Completion of class tests and oral examinations on the date indicated, submission of all assignments by the due date, and a minimum of 80% attendance of all sections of the course are compulsory for the Duly Performed Certificate.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark) and an oral examination at the end of each semester (20% of the final mark).

**SLL3084F BUSINESS FRENCH IIIA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** K Schmid

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2060F & SLL2061S (or equivalent).

**Course outline:**

An introduction to business communication and aspects of economics, law and marketing in a Francophone environment. An introduction to the starting up and day to day organisation and management of a business through professional communication. The course also comprises an introduction to the history of the French language and to translation (theory and practice) from French to English. Students with a high proficiency in French (e.g. from Francophone countries) and native speakers (e.g. from France) are to register for SLL3060F.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period, and one tutorial/conversation class per week.

**DP requirements:** Completion of class tests and oral examination on the date indicated, submission of all assignments by the due date, and a minimum of 80% attendance at lectures, and tutorials are obligatory for the Duly Performed Certificate.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark) and an end-of-semester oral examination (20% of the final mark).

---

### **SLL3085S BUSINESS FRENCH IIIB**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** K Schmid

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3084F or equivalent.

#### **Course outline:**

Further introduction to business communication and aspects of economics, law and marketing in a Francophone environment. This course will focus on current events in business, economics and politics, and will prepare students to take the CCI-P (Paris Chamber of Commerce) DFP (Diplôme de Français Professionnel – Affaires) international examination. The course also develops the work on translation (French to English) started in the first semester, focusing on both fictional and factual texts. Students with a high proficiency in French (e.g. from Francophone countries) and native speakers (e.g. from France) are to register for SLL3061S.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 4<sup>th</sup> period and one tut/conversation class per week.

**DP requirements:** Completion of class tests and oral examinations on the date indicated, submission of all assignments by the due date, and a minimum of 80% attendance at lectures and tutorials are obligatory for the Duly Performed Certificate.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark) and an end-of-semester oral examination (20% of the final mark).

---

## **GERMAN LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE SECTION**

The German Language and Literature Section is housed in Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus and can be contacted by e-mail at: [tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za](mailto:tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2712.

#### **Associate Professor and Head of Section:**

G Singer, MA *Göttingen* PhD *Oldenburg*

#### **Honorary Professor:**

E Hess-Lüttich, MA *Bonn*, MIL *London*, DPhil *Bonn* Dr. habil. *FU Berlin*, Dr. paed. *Bonn*, Dr. h.c. *Budapest* Prof. h.c. *TU Berlin* Prof. h.c. *Cape Town*

#### **Emeritus Associate Professor:**

G Pakendorf, MA *Witwatersrand* PhD *Cape Town*

#### **Senior Lecturer:**

G Ortner, PhD *Rhodes*

#### **Lecturer (seconded by the German government: DAAD):**

F Heinz, MA *HU Berlin & TU Berlin*

#### **Administrative Assistant:**

T Pretorius, Dip(Business Management) *False Bay College*

#### **Admission requirements:**

The courses offered by the German Section are designed for students of German as a **foreign language**. **Students for whom German is a second or home language (native or heritage) will be accepted only under certain conditions, and after prior discussion with the Section Head.** They may be admitted directly into SLL3062F, and they may major after a further 3 semesters of German (SLL3063S, SLL3071F and SLL3072S).

Students with no previous knowledge of German qualify for admission to German Studies IA (SLL1062F). A student wishing to register for German Studies IB (SLL1063S) must have passed German Studies IA (SLL1062F) or an equivalent or must satisfy the Head of Section that he/she is able to perform the work of German Studies IB (SLL1063S).

A student qualifies for admission to German Studies IIA (SLL2062F) if he/she has passed German at Matriculation level within the preceding 5 years with at least a D symbol, or 4 in NSC, or a course recognised as equivalent, or (where a student has completed German as a second or home language) must satisfy the Section Head of his/her ability to perform the work of the class.

A student who qualifies for admission to SLL2062F in terms of the above will not be admitted to SLL1062F (German Studies IA) for degree purposes unless the Section Head is satisfied that for some special reason he/she is not able to perform the work of SLL2062F.

## **Requirements for a major in German FOR STUDENTS STUDYING GERMAN AS A FOREIGN LANGUAGE [SLL08]**

### **Second Year courses**

---

<b>Code</b>	<b>Title</b>
SLL2062F	German Studies IIA
SLL2063S	German Studies IIB

### **Third Year courses**

---

<b>Code</b>	<b>Title</b>
SLL3062F	German Studies IIIA
SLL3063S	German Studies IIIB

## **FOR STUDENTS WITH GERMAN AS A HOME OR SECOND LANGUAGE [SLL08]**

### **Third Year courses**

---

<b>Code</b>	<b>Title</b>
SLL3062F	German Studies IIIA
SLL3063S	German Studies IIIB

### **Additional courses**

---

<b>Code</b>	<b>Title</b>
SLL3071F	German Additional A
SLL3072S	German Additional B

### **Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **SLL2062F**: SLL1063S, or a pass in German within the past five years with at least a D symbol (SC) or a 4 rating (NSC), or by permission of the Head of Section
- (ii) For **SLL2063S**: SLL2062F, or by permission of the Head of Section
- (iii) For **SLL3062F**: SLL2063S
- (iv) For **SLL3063S**: SLL3062F
- (v) For **SLL3071F**: SLL3062F and SLL3063S
- (vi) For **SLL3072S**: SLL3071F

**Course outlines:**

---

**SLL1062F GERMAN STUDIES IA**

*This course may also be offered in Winter Term – please consult the Department.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr G Ortner

**Course entry requirements:** No previous knowledge of German is required. Students who have passed German within the preceding five years with at least a D symbol (SC), or a 4 rating (NSC), or a course recognised as equivalent will not be admitted to this course for degree purposes unless the Head of Section is satisfied that for some special reason they are not able to perform the work of SLL2062F.

**Course outline:**

This course offers an introduction to German as a Foreign Language and German Studies focusing on the basics of German language, comprehension of texts, and reflecting on selected cultural patterns. An overview of German grammar and structure is given, which is supplemented by working with basic texts. The course cultivates a basic understanding of everyday communicative skills in German. Based on the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR), level A1 is aimed for.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including the language laboratory); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework (homework and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; Language laboratory examination counts for 20%.

---

**SLL1063S GERMAN STUDIES IB**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr G Ortner

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed SLL1062F. In certain instances, where students have some informal knowledge of German, they may be admitted to German Studies IB without having done German Studies IA, provided the Head of Section is satisfied of the students' German competence. Students who have passed German within the preceding five years with at least a D symbol (SC), or a 4 rating (NSC), or a course recognised as equivalent, will not be admitted to this course for degree purposes unless the Head of Section is satisfied that for some special reason they are not able to perform the work of SLL2062F.

**Course outline:**

Building on German IA, this course offers a continued introduction to German as a Foreign Language and German Studies focusing on furthering an understanding of the basics of the German language, consolidating the comprehension of texts, and reflecting on selected cultural patterns. A deeper overview of German grammar and structures is given, which is supplemented by working with a wider variety of texts. The course cultivates an understanding of everyday communicative skills and fosters an ability to engage with specific topics in German. Based on the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR), level A2 is aimed for.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including the language laboratory); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework (homework and tests) counts for 40% of the final mark; Two-hour written examination counts for 40%; Language laboratory examination counts for 10%; Oral examination counts for 10%.



**SLL2062F** GERMAN STUDIES IIA

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1063S, or a pass in German within the preceding five years with at least a D symbol (SC), or a 4 rating (NSC), or by permission of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course offers an intermediate approach to German as a Foreign Language and German Studies and an introduction to German Literary Studies. The course consists of three modules. The language module aims to enable students to use German independently with familiar topics, allowing them to understand and express opinions. The conversation module aims to foster the acquisition of German in a communicative context. The literature module provides an introduction to various periods of German literature by focusing on selected literary genres, and active work with texts. Throughout this course, students will reflect on selected cultural patterns. Based on the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR), level B1 is aimed for.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral examination counts for 20%.

---

**SLL2063S** GERMAN STUDIES IIB

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course entry requirements:** Students will be admitted to this course if they have passed German Studies IIA (SLL2062F), or by permission of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course builds on the German IIA course and continues with an intermediate approach to both German as a Foreign Language and German Studies as well as German literary studies. The course consists of three modules. The language module aims to enable students to comprehend and use complex language occurring in a variety of concrete and abstract topics. The conversation module aims to foster the use of German in a communicative context. The literature module aims to introduce students to methods and techniques to analyse literary texts by engaging intensively with one literary work. Throughout this course, students will reflect on selected cultural patterns. Based on the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR), level B2.1 is aimed for.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral examination counts for 20%.

---

**SLL3062F** GERMAN STUDIES IIIA

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed German Studies IIB (SLL2063S).

**Course outline:**

This course builds on the German IIB course and offers an advanced approach to both German as a Foreign Language and German studies as well as German Literary Studies and counts towards a major in German. The course consists of three modules. The language module aims to enable students to comprehend and actively use complex language occurring in a variety of concrete and abstract topics. The conversation module aims to apply the use of German in a communicative context. This course also enables students to participate in discussions in areas of their own specialisation. The literature module practises methods and techniques to analyse and interpret literary texts and introduces students to the use of secondary literature and scientific texts. Throughout this course, students will reflect on

selected cultural patterns. Based on the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR), level B2.2 is aimed for.

**Lecture times:** Arranged departmentally.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour examination counts for 40%; oral examination counts for 20%.

---

### **SLL3063S GERMAN STUDIES IIIB**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed German Studies IIIA (SLL3062F).

**Course outline:**

This course builds on the German IIIA course, offers an advanced approach to both German as a Foreign Language and German Studies as well as German Literary Studies, and counts towards a major in German. The course consists of three modules. The language module aims to enable students to use specialised German language for specific communicative purposes in both daily and professional situations. The conversation module aims to apply the use of German spontaneously in a communicative context. The literature module employs methods and techniques to analyse and interpret a wide range of literary texts and encourages students to use secondary literature and scientific texts. Moreover, the understanding of implicit meanings of texts and discourse is imparted. Throughout the course, students will reflect on selected cultural patterns. Based on the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR), Level B2 is consolidated, and level C1 is introduced.

**Lecture times:** Arranged departmentally.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour examination counts for 40%; oral examination counts for 20%.

---

### **SLL3071F GERMAN ADDITIONAL A**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed German Studies IIIA and IIIB (SLL3062F/SLL3063S).

**Course outline:**

The course offers an additional opportunity to broaden the previously acquired skills in analytical and interpretational skills in German cultural and literary studies at an advanced undergraduate level, for a variety of literary texts in German. Emphasis is placed on enhancing the assessment of academic critical thought, philosophy and language.

**Lecture times:** Arranged departmentally.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including the language laboratory); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral examination counts for 20%.

---

### **SLL3072S GERMAN ADDITIONAL B**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed German Additional A (SLL3071F).

**Course outline:**

As a continuation of German Additional A, this course offers enhanced skills in critical assessment and analysis of theoretical, philosophical and comparative language studies, including a selected number of internationally acclaimed literary works in German, through the centuries. Written assignments and oral assessments are pitched at an advanced academic level.

**Lecture times:** Arranged departmentally.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 40% of the final mark; two-hour written examination counts for 40%; oral examination counts for 20%.

---

## HEBREW LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE SECTION

The Hebrew Language and Literature Section is located in Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za](mailto:tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2712.

**Assistant Lecturer and Head of Section (Acting):**

A Laskov, BA(Hons) Teaching Dip *Tel Aviv* MA *Stell*

**Administrative Assistant:**

T Pretorius, Dip(Business Management) *False Bay College*

### Requirements for a major in Hebrew Language and Literature

#### [SLL09]

(*Not offered in 2025*)

#### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
SLL2082F	Hebrew Language & Literature IIA
SLL2083S	Hebrew Language & Literature IIB

#### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
SLL3082F	Hebrew Language & Literature IIIA ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )
SLL3083S	Hebrew Language & Literature IIIB ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )

#### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **SLL2082F**: A pass in Hebrew (SC or NSC), or SLL1082F and SLL1083S, or with the permission of the Head of Department
- (ii) For **SLL2083S**: SLL2082F, or with the permission of the Head of Department
- (iii) For **SLL3082F**: SLL2082F and SLL2083S
- (iv) For **SLL3083S**: SLL3082F

#### Course outlines:

---

#### SLL1082F HEBREW INTENSIVE A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** A Laskov

**Course entry requirements:** None. The course is designed for those who have not studied Hebrew before. In special cases students with an elementary knowledge of Hebrew may be admitted into the course by special permission of the Head of Department. NOTE: Students who have passed SC or NSC Hebrew or equivalent within the last five years are not eligible for registration.

**Course outline:**

The course introduces students to the Hebrew alphabet and its unique vowel-system. Students gain basic skills in reading, writing and conversation. A variety of verb forms are introduced in present and past tenses, and with vocabulary of modern life it allows the students to express themselves, and join in Hebrew conversation.

**Lecture times:** 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students must attend regularly, prepare adequately for language classes and tutorials and submit the prescribed number of written assignments, and write any class tests.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

**SLL1083S HEBREW INTENSIVE B**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** A Laskov

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1082F or equivalent by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course focuses on Hebrew grammar, vocabulary, conversation, reading and writing skills as it builds on the basic skills of semester one. Students learn to distinguish between various linguistic registers, as well as the various Hebrew styles from Biblical, to Rabbinic Hebrew to Modernity. Though the course concentrates on Modern Hebrew it prepares the students to join Hebrew 2A – where they need to analyse Hebrew Literature.

**Lecture times:** 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** As for SLL1082F.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

**SLL2082F HEBREW LANGUAGE & LITERATURE IIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** A Laskov

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Hebrew (SC), or a 4 rating (NSC), or SLL1083S, or with the permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course comprises Hebrew language, stylistics and literary texts, with attention to the development of Hebrew literature through the ages. It covers biblical poetry and prose, and introduces the students to texts from the Dead Sea scrolls, Mishnaic Hebrew, Middle Ages and Golden Era. It finishes by introducing the classical modern national poets such as Bialik and Tchernichovsky.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Students are expected to attend regularly, prepare adequately for language classes and tutorials and submit the prescribed number of written assignments, and write any class tests.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

**SLL2083S HEBREW LANGUAGE & LITERATURE IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** A Laskov

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2082F or with the permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course comprises Hebrew language and stylistics and literature. Modern literature is studied under various themes, such as women's writing, Holocaust literature and people at the margin. Students are introduced to methodology which allows them to analyse Hebrew literature at the academic level. They are introduced to the canonical authors, and become familiar with their writings.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** As for SLL2082F.

**Assessment:** One two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark; the remaining 50% is awarded for classwork (35%) and oral (15%).

---

## ITALIAN STUDIES SECTION

The Italian Studies Section is housed in the Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus and can be contacted by e-mail at: [tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za](mailto:tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2712.

**Senior Lecturer and Head of Section:**

M Boccaccio, MA *Scuola Normale Superiore Pisa* PhD *Pisa*

**Honorary Professor:**

G Tuccini, MA PGDip PhD *Florence* PGDip *Roma Tor Vergata*

**Honorary Research Associate:**

W Snyman, MA PhD *Stell*

**Lecturer (seconded by the Italian government):**

F Chessa, MA *Cagliari*

**Administrative Assistant:**

T Pretorius, Dip(Business Management) *False Bay College*

### Requirements for a major in Italian

#### [SLL10]

##### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
SLL2064F	Italian IIA
SLL2065S	Italian IIB

##### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
SLL3064F	Italian IIIA
SLL3065S	Italian IIIB

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **SLL2064F**: SLL1065S
- (ii) For **SLL2065S**: SLL2064F
- (iii) For **SLL3064F**: SLL2064F and SLL2065S
- (iv) For **SLL3065S**: SLL3064F

### Course outlines:

---

#### **SLL1064F** ITALIAN INTENSIVE A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr M Boccaccio

**Course entry requirements:** None. Students with a pass (SC) or a 4 rating (NSC) or equivalent in Italian or mother-tongue speakers may be admitted directly into SLL2064F at the Head of Section's discretion.

**Course outline:**

This course is intended for those who do not have any knowledge of Italian and consists of basic grammar, vocabulary, grammar drill, oral practice and simple reading passages. The course also

consists of weekly language lab sessions and exercises and exposure to Italian culture by the occasional screening and discussion of films.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Written and oral assignments and tests count for 90% of the final mark; the 10-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

---

### **SLL1065S** ITALIAN INTENSIVE B

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr M Boccaccio

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1064F

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of the first semester course introducing students to more advanced grammar, and thereby enabling them to gain a complete knowledge of the structure of the language. This course also equips students to be able to cope with the second year Italian literature, language and history.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials (including language laboratory where offered); completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Written and oral assignments and tests count for 90% of the final mark; the 10-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 10%.

---

### **SLL2064F** ITALIAN IIA

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr M Boccaccio

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1065S, or a C symbol (SC) or a 4 rating (NSC) or equivalent in Italian.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to enhance students' understanding of questions of critical and literary movements in Italian culture in the 20th and 21st centuries. The course is taught in Italian and is based on intermediate language work, including translation from Italian into English, the study of Italian contemporary literature (prose only) set into its cultural context. Students will have the opportunity to study the history of 20th and 21st century Italian literature through the analysis of several key texts of major Italian writers and with an emphasis on the post-colonial moment.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Written and oral assignments and tests count for 80% of the final mark; the 20-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 20%.

---

### **SLL2065S** ITALIAN IIB

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr M Boccaccio

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2064F, or by arrangement with the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

Further intermediate-level language work including translation, the study of Italian modern literature and cultural background. Selected authors (including poets) will be studied from the 18th to the 20th centuries.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.  
**Assessment:** Written and oral assignments and tests count for 80% of the final mark; the 20-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 20%.

---

**SLL3064F** ITALIAN IIIA

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr M Boccaccio

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2065S

**Course outline:**

The course examines the literature of the Renaissance down to the 17th century, with the emphasis of its undertakings falling on the contemporary outworking of the deep history of Italian literature. The course is taught in Italian and is based on advanced language work, including grammar consolidation and contemporary text translation.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Written and oral assignments and tests count for 80% of the final mark; the 20-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 20%.

---

**SLL3065S** ITALIAN IIIB

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr M Boccaccio

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3064F

**Course outline:**

The course advances students' grasp of Italian literary studies with emphasis on earlier authors in both prose and poetry (especially Dante Alighieri, Francesco Petrarca and Giovanni Boccaccio), but once again laying emphasis on the contemporary outworking of deep Italian literary culture. Language studies include the grammatical analysis of texts, as well as translation work.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, seminars and tutorials; completion and due submission of all written exercises and essays; attendance at all tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Written and oral assignments and tests count for 80% of the final mark; the 20-minute oral examination at the end of the semester counts for 20%.

---

**SLL3078W** ITALIAN ADDITIONAL

60 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr M Boccaccio

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3064F and SLL3065S

**Course outline:**

This course allows students to progress from SLL3065S by focussing on studies in Italian Literature, and on translation. The course, which includes discussion of literary, theoretical and possibly wider cultural production (e.g. graphic and visual narratives) is based on different texts/contents than those studied previously. It puts emphasis on enhancing interpretational skills and comparative analytical methods, thus contributing to the students' increased proficiency in expressing critical academic thinking in oral and written form. It continues with language work in grammatical analysis of texts.

**Lecture times:** Arranged by section.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance.

**Assessment:** Students are evaluated by continuous assessment (80% of the final mark) and an oral examination at the end of each semester (20% of the final mark).

---

## PORTUGUESE LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE SECTION

The Portuguese Language and Literature Section is housed in the Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za](mailto:tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2712.

### Senior Lecturer and Head of Section:

A De Melo, PhD *Georgia, United States*

### Lecturer (seconded by the Brazilian government):

J Barboza Torres, MA *Chicago MA Illinois at Urbana-Champaign*

### Administrative Assistant:

T Pretorius, Dip(Business Management) *False Bay College*

### Admission Requirements:

Students will be admitted to the Portuguese Section whether or not they have already studied Portuguese.

The courses offered by the Portuguese Section are designed for students of Portuguese as a **foreign language**. Students for whom Portuguese is a second or home language (native or heritage) may be accepted under certain conditions, and after prior discussion with the Section Head. They may be admitted directly into SLL3075F, and they may major after a further 3 semesters of Portuguese (SLL3076S, SLL3077W).

## Requirements for a major in Portuguese

### FOR STUDENTS STUDYING PORTUGUESE AS A FOREIGN LANGUAGE [SLL20]

#### Second Year courses

Code	Title
SLL2075F	Portuguese IIA
SLL2076S	Portuguese IIB

#### Third Year courses

Code	Title
SLL3075F	Portuguese IIIA
SLL3076S	Portuguese IIIB

### FOR STUDENTS WITH PORTUGUESE AS A HOME OR SECOND LANGUAGE [SLL20]

#### Third Year courses

Code	Title
SLL3075F	Portuguese IIIA
SLL3076S	Portuguese IIIB

#### Additional courses

Code	Title
SLL3077W	Additional Third Year Portuguese

### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **SLL2075F**: SLL1076S, or a pass in Portuguese (SC) or a 4 rating (NSC), or at the discretion of the Head of Section.
- (ii) For **SLL2076S**: SLL2075F
- (iii) For **SLL3075F**: SLL2075F and SLL2076S
- (iv) For **SLL3076S**: SLL3075F



(v) For SLL3077W: SLL3076S

### Course outlines:

#### SLL1075F INITIAL PORTUGUESE A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr A De Melo

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a course for beginners, but under certain circumstances students with prior knowledge of Portuguese may be admitted.

**Course outline:**

The objective of this course is the development of proficiency in Portuguese at beginner's level, with a focus on practical knowledge and the acquisition of basic listening, speaking, reading, and writing skills. It also offers an introduction to the cultures of the Portuguese-speaking countries.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 1<sup>st</sup> period or meridian. Plus, one tutorial and one conversation class.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework 80%; end-of-semester oral examination 20%.

#### SLL1076S INITIAL PORTUGUESE B

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr A De Melo

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1075F, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course forms the continuation of Initial Portuguese A. Its objective is the further development of proficiency in Portuguese at beginner's level, with a focus on practical knowledge and on the acquisition of basic listening, speaking, reading and writing skills. It also offers an introduction to the cultures, of the Portuguese-speaking countries.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 1<sup>st</sup> period or meridian. Plus, one tutorial and one conversation class.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and conversation classes; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework 80%; end-of-semester oral examination 20%.

#### SLL2075F PORTUGUESE IIA

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr A De Melo

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1076S Initial Portuguese B, or a pass in Portuguese (SC) or a 4 rating (NSC), or at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of first year courses. Its objective is to provide students with intermediate proficiency in the Portuguese language through advanced development of listening, speaking, writing, and reading skills. This course also provides a further grasp on the cultures of the Portuguese-speaking countries through the introduction of literary texts.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period. Plus, one tutorial and one conversation class.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and conversation classes; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests and exams.

**Assessment:** Coursework 80%; end-of-semester oral examination 20%.

#### SLL2076S PORTUGUESE IIB

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr A De Melo

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2075F or at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of Portuguese IIA. It is designed to help students acquire full proficiency in Portuguese. At the end of second year students will have been introduced to the entire Portuguese grammar and structure. This course also provides further grasp on the cultures of the Portuguese-speaking countries through the introduction of literary texts.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period. Plus, one tutorial and one conversation class.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and conversation classes; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework 80%; end-of-semester oral examination 20%.

---

### **SLL3075F PORTUGUESE IIIA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr A De Melo

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2076S or at the discretion of the Section Head.

**Course outline:**

This course consolidates knowledge of Portuguese language structures, grammar and vocabulary learnt in second year. Students are prepared for advanced Portuguese language training through reading and writing practices. Students are introduced to literary, critical, and cultural texts from the Portuguese speaking world. Students are prepared to write short critical and analytical response papers.

**Lecture times:** Arranged departmentally.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and conversation classes; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework 80%; end-of-semester oral examination 20%.

---

### **SLL3076S PORTUGUESE IIIB**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr A De Melo

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3075F or at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of SLL3075F. It further consolidates Portuguese language structures, grammar and vocabulary. Students continue their advanced Portuguese language training through reading and writing practices. Students carry on working with literary, critical, and cultural texts from the Portuguese-speaking world. Students are enabled to write short critical and analytical response papers.

**Lecture times:** Arranged departmentally.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and conversation classes; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests.

**Assessment:** Coursework 80%; end-of-semester oral examination 20%.

---

### **SLL3077W ADDITIONAL THIRD YEAR PORTUGUESE**

*(Note: ONLY for students who start the Portuguese major in the third year)*

60 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr A De Melo

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3076S

**Course outline:**

This course allows students to progress from SLL3075F and SLL3076S. It prepares students to consolidate an advanced fluency in Portuguese language through the study of Lusophone literature tradition and its socio-cultural productions and by writing critical and academic response papers. It also prepares students professionally with advanced translation practices.

**Lecture times:** Arranged by the Section.

**Assessment:** Coursework 80%; end-of-semester oral examination 20%.

---

## SPANISH LANGUAGE AND LITERATURE SECTION

The Spanish Language and Literature Section is housed in the Beattie Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za](mailto:tara.pretorius@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2712.

**Lecturer and Head of Section:**

K De la Cruz Garcia, PhD *Cape Town*

**Senior Lecturer:**

J Corwin, PhD *Florida State*

**Lecturer (seconded by the Spanish government: AECID):**

A Roca Regué, MA *Seville*

**Administrative Assistant:**

T Pretorius, Dip(Business Management) *False Bay College*

### Requirements for a major in Spanish

#### [SLL13]

**Second Year courses**

---

Code	Title
SLL2073F	Spanish IIA
SLL2074S	Spanish IIB

**Third Year courses**

---

Code	Title
SLL3073F	Spanish IIIA
SLL3074S	Spanish IIIB

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **SLL2073F**: SLL1074S
- (ii) For **SLL2074S**: SLL2073F
- (iii) For **SLL3073F**: SLL2073F and SLL2074S
- (iv) For **SLL3074S**: SLL3073F.

### Course outlines:

---

#### **SLL1068FS** LATIN AMERICA: TEXTS AND ARTISTIC REPRESENTATIONS

*This course may also be offered in Summer Term – please consult the Department.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr A De Melo

**Course entry requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**

Focusing on literary texts as well as the visual and performing arts, this course introduces the cultures of Mexico, the Caribbean Islands, and Central and South America – a region known as Latin America. Culturally diverse, Latin America is an important part of humanity's past and future; its histories, politics, pieces of literature, and arts are a stimulating complement for a diversity of academic disciplines and programmes. Topics covered in this survey course include the Aztec, Maya, and Inca civilizations; European colonization; native music and dance; African diasporic cultural systems; Amazonian ritual landscapes; etc. The reading material for this course is translated into English and derives from texts written originally in Portuguese, Spanish, French, and Creole. No previous

knowledge or familiarity with the cultural and linguistic background of the studied regions is required. The course is taught in English.

**Lecture times:** Tuesdays, Wednesdays and Thursdays, 7<sup>th</sup> period, plus one tutorial.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% of attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion and timeous submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **SLL1073F** INITIAL SPANISH A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr K De La Cruz Garcia

**Course entry requirements:** None. This is a course for beginners, but under certain circumstances students with prior knowledge of Spanish may be admitted.

**Course outline:**

The course is an intensive introductory language course, which aims to provide a practical knowledge of spoken and written Spanish for beginners. The module targets to bring students up to a standard where they can communicate and understand basic ideas in any variety of Spanish. The focus during this first semester is on the introduction of Spanish grammar structures and vocabulary, and the development of language skills in reading, writing and listening.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 8<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework (homework, tests and labs) (40%); two-hour written examination (40%); oral examination (20%).

---

### **SLL1074S** INITIAL SPANISH B

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr K De La Cruz Garcia

**Course entry requirements:** SLL1073F, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course is a continuation of SLL1073F and aims to provide a further practical knowledge of spoken and written Spanish of approximately Matriculation standard. There is no in-depth study of literature at this level. The module focuses on the consolidation of language skills in reading, writing and listening, and the introduction of conversational skills. By the end of this second semester, students should be able to engage in interactions with Spanish speakers in socially and culturally appropriate forms without problems.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 8<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials, and language laboratory sessions; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework (homework, tests and labs) (40%); two-hour written examination (40%); oral examination (20%).

---

### **SLL2073F** SPANISH IIA

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr K De La Cruz Garcia

**Course entry requirements:** Initial Spanish B (SLL1074S) or a pass in Spanish (SC) or a 4 rating (NSC), or by arrangement with the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to provide a practical and theoretical knowledge of spoken and written Spanish (all varieties) and to introduce the study of Spanish literature through basic texts. The module focuses on the consolidation of basic linguistic structures acquired during the first year of studies and the introduction of more complex ones at an intermediate level in order for the students to be able

communicate in tasks requiring a simple and direct exchange of information on familiar and routine matters. The course is conducted mainly in Spanish.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials, and language laboratory sessions; completion and timely submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework (homework, tests and labs) (40%); two-hour written examination (40%); oral examination (20%).

---

### **SLL2074S SPANISH IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr K De La Cruz Garcia

**Course entry requirements:** Spanish IIA (SLL2073F).

**Course outline:**

The course is a continuation of Spanish IIA and aims to provide a further practical knowledge of spoken and written Spanish at an intermediate level and to continue the study of Spanish literature through more complicated texts of mainly South American authors, on both concrete and abstract topics. Students are introduced to the practice of oral presentations in Spanish and the focus is on the achievement of fluent and spontaneous interaction with native speakers, without major complications. The module is conducted solely in Spanish.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials, and language laboratory sessions; completion and timely submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Coursework (homework, tests and labs) (40%); two-hour written examination (40%); oral examination (20%).

---

### **SLL3073F SPANISH IIIA**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr J Corwin

**Course entry requirements:** SLL2074S, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

This course centres specifically on high level written and spoken language acquisition by means of literary texts including terminology and methods of literary analysis in the target language. The writing component is geared exclusively towards use of high register language consistent with a university education in the subject. The course is conducted in Spanish. By semester end the students will be able to write and discuss ideas in the target language with relative ease.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and timely submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Tests and written assignments (40%); two-hour written examination (40%); oral examination (20%).

---

### **SLL3074S SPANISH IIIB**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr J Corwin

**Course entry requirements:** SLL3073F, or equivalent at the discretion of the Head of Section.

**Course outline:**

The course is a continuation of Spanish IIIA and aims to provide a further advanced practical and theoretical language work in Spanish. By the end of this semester students will have read difficult texts in the target language. The reading, writing and oral components of the class are geared towards

broadening and perfecting vocabulary and higher level oral and written communications in the target language, consistent with the expectations of a university education in the subject.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, tutorials and language laboratory sessions; completion and timeous submission of all written assignments; attendance at all scheduled tests, written and oral examinations.

**Assessment:** Tests and written assignments (40%); two-hour written examination (40%); oral examination (20%).

---

## **CENTRE FOR CREATIVE WRITING**

**Professor and Director:**

I Coovadia, AB *Harvard* MFA *Cornell* PhD *Yale*

**Academic staff at UCT:**

Emerita Professor J Hambidge, BA(Hons) *Stell* MA *Pret* PhD *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*

**Administrative Assistant:**

L Futuse, BA *Unisa* BA(Hons) MA PhD *Cape Town*

The Centre for Creative Writing at the University of Cape Town offers the premier creative writing specialisation on the African continent. Two Nobel Prize nominees have been part of its staff of committed, exceptional writers. Joining the University of Cape Town's Creative Writing specialisation offers students from around the world a chance to play a role in the cultural renewal of South Africa and work closely with some of the world-famous authors whose writings helped transform this country.

---

## LAW

The Law departments are housed in the Wilfred & Jules Kramer Law School, Middle Campus.  
Departmental website: [www.law.uct.ac.za](http://www.law.uct.ac.za)

The Department of Private Law can be contacted by e-mail at: [nikki.campbell@uct.ac.za](mailto:nikki.campbell@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650-5609.

The letter code for the Department is PVL.

The Department of Public Law can be contacted by e-mail at: [rene.francke@uct.ac.za](mailto:rene.francke@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 3072.

The letter code for the Department is PBL.

### *Notes on requirements for intending Law students:*

1. Law is a two-year major: students in the 3-year general BA or BSocSc start it in their second year, and student in the extended (4-year) general BA or BSocSc start it in their third year. It is not possible to start it in a subsequent year.
2. Students wishing to major in Law should indicate this when registering in their first year (3-year degree students) or second year (extended degree students) by adding the Law major code (PVL06) as a third major. Failing this, they must declare their intent by adding the major code by ACA09 Change of Curriculum submission on Peoplesoft **no later than 30 September** of the year before they wish to start the major.
3. **Students intending to take the Law major should note that the six Law courses required by the major in themselves comprise the 8 non-Humanities credits permitted in a general degree. Any additional non-Humanities courses taken in the first or subsequent years will not count toward the degree credit total. Commercial Law courses are not part of the major and are not Humanities courses, so cannot be taken by Law major students without increasing the number of credits in the degree as a whole.**
4. **The number of places available on the law major stream is limited and varies from year to year. Places are offered on a competitive basis to candidates with the highest results and in accordance with the Law Faculty's redress enrolment targets.** In order to be eligible for consideration for possible (but not guaranteed) admission to the law major stream of the BA/BSocSc degrees, candidates must either have achieved sufficient points in the NSC and National Benchmark Tests to have qualified for admission to the four-year undergraduate LLB degree, on a competitive basis, in their first year of study OR must have attained an average of at least 65% on a first sitting of a full course load (8 courses) totalling at least 144 credits in their first year of study.
5. In order to be eligible for consideration for possible (but not guaranteed) admission to the law major stream, candidates in the extended (4-year degree) programme for the general BA/BSocSci degrees must have passed all their courses in their first and second years of registration on a standard course-load (i.e. 6 semester courses per year, excluding co-requisite Augmenting courses, including at least two senior courses) on a first sitting and have obtained a cumulative average of at least 65% after completion of the second year of the extended programme.

### **Important notes:**

- The 65% GPA is the minimum requirement for candidates to be eligible for consideration for a place on a competitive basis. It does not guarantee a place. Given the large number of candidates who apply for the law major and the fact that places are limited and are offered on a competitive basis to candidates with the highest GPAs, it is likely that a candidate will require a GPA well above 65% in order to actually receive a place.
- Results in supplementary examinations are not included when calculating the first-year average but the results of deferred examinations are included.
- The Law Faculty retains the discretion to admit Humanities students with an average of less than 65% on redress grounds.

## Requirements for a major in Law

### [PVL06]

#### Second Year courses (Preliminary A)

Code	Title
PVL1003W	Foundations of South African Law
PVL1004F	South African Private Law: System and Context
PVL1008H	Law of Persons & Family

#### Third Year courses (Preliminary B)

Code	Title
PBL2000W	Constitutional Law
PVL2002H	Law of Property
PVL2003H	Law of Succession

#### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **PVL1003W**, **PVL1004F** and **PVL1008H**: Fulfilment of all requirements for entry to the law major stream AND receipt of confirmation of an offer of a place on the law major stream AND concurrent registration for all three PVL1000-level courses
- (ii) For **PBL2000W**, **PVL2002H** and **PVL2003H**: **PVL1003W**, **PVL1004F** and **PVL1008H** AND concurrent registration for **PBL2000W** and both PVL2000-level courses.

#### Course outlines:

*NB: Law courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by a general BA or BSocSc.*

---

#### **PBL2000W** CONSTITUTIONAL LAW

*Preliminary Level, whole year course*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr N Ramalekana

**Course entry requirements:** Undergraduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PBL2001H and PVL2002H. Graduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PVL1003W, PVL1004F, PVL1008H, PVL2002H, PVL2003H.

#### **Course outline:**

The first part of the course provides an introduction to the history of South African constitutional law and basic concepts such as democracy, legitimacy, constitutionalism, federalism, separation of powers and the rule of law. It then considers the institutional framework provided by the South African Constitution in detail.

The second part of the course focuses on the protection of human rights in the Constitution. It examines the operation of the Bill of Rights and, using both SA cases and the jurisprudence of constitutional courts in other jurisdictions as well as the European Court of Human Rights, considers freedom of speech, equality and affirmative action, the protection of property rights and social and economic rights among other issues.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** November examination (3 hour) 60%; The year mark contributes the remaining 40% of the mark.

---

#### **PVL1003W** FOUNDATIONS OF SOUTH AFRICAN LAW

*Preliminary Level, whole year course, three lectures per week.*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor AJ Barnard-Naudé



**Course entry requirements:** Undergraduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PVL1004F and PVL1008H. Graduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PVL1004F, PVL1008H, PBL2000W, PVL2002H, PVL2003H.

**Course outline:**

An introduction to the South African legal system is covered in the first section of the course. This is followed by an introduction to critical post-apartheid jurisprudence, including transformative constitutionalism and decolonisation. An outline of the development of public law culture, viewed through the lens of the rule of law, follows in the second semester. Finally, a section on the rules of interpretation of law and the practical application of those rules, concludes the course.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%, final examination 50%.

**PVL1004F SOUTH AFRICAN PRIVATE LAW: SYSTEM AND CONTEXT**

*Preliminary Level, first semester, three lectures per week.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M Baase

**Co-requisites:** Undergraduate LLB students: PVL1003W and PVL1008H. Graduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PVL1003W, PVL1008H, PBL2000W, PVL2002H, PVL2003H.

**Course outline:**

The course serves primarily as an introduction to the common law of property and obligations, although other areas of private law may be covered. Its main aims are, first, to provide both a map of the law and an understanding of the operation of the system of private law rules; and, second, to provide students with an understanding of the development of legal rules in their historical and comparative contexts.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Coursework 50% Final Examination 50%.

**PVL1008H LAW OF PERSONS AND FAMILY**

*Preliminary Level, half course, thirty-six lectures and three tutorials.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Barratt

**Co-requisites:** Undergraduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PVL1003W and PVL1004F. Graduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PVL1003W, PVL1004F, PVL2002H, PVL2003H and PBL2000W

**Course outline:**

This is a foundational law course and focuses particularly on developing legal problem-solving skills. The course aims to introduce students to the study of private law. We examine the nature of legal personality; the principles of legal capacity; and look at the principles of domicile. Most of the course focuses on Family Law and looks particularly at the legal relationships between parents and children; the personal consequences of marriage; the law of marital property; divorce; and the law governing unmarried people who live in long-term domestic partnerships. The course also examines the ways in which South African family law is changing to become compliant with the Constitution and Bill of Rights.

**DP requirements:** None

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; Final Examination 50%

**PVL2002H LAW OF PROPERTY**

*Preliminary Level, half course, 36 lectures.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr G Mathiba

**Course entry requirements:** Undergraduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PBL2000W and PVL2003H. Graduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PVL1003W, PVL1004F, PVL1008H, PBL2000W and PVL2003H.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to introduce students to fundamental concepts and common law principles of the South African Law of Property as regards what is property, how rights in property are acquired or lost and are protected. The law is examined in its current constitutional and socio-political context. In addition to the focus on the content of this area of law, considerable attention is given to development of appropriate analytical and problem-solving skills, independent and active learning as well as appropriate study methodology and techniques.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50% Final Examination 50%.

**PVL2003H LAW OF SUCCESSION**

*Preliminary Level, half course, 36 lectures.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor F du Toit

**Course entry requirements:** Undergraduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PBL2000W and PVL2002H. Graduate LLB students: concurrent registration with PVL1003W, PVL1004F, PVL1008H, PBL2000W and PVL2002H.

**Course outline:**Aims and objectives

The course is concerned with the consequences of death and in particular, the devolution of a person's property on death.

Course content

The course considers the distinction between testate and intestate succession; the devolution of an estate under intestacy law; testamentary capacity; formalities for wills; revocation and revival of wills; capacity to inherit; freedom of testation; vesting and conditional bequests; the different kinds of testamentary vehicles and the content of wills; doctrine of collation; interpretation of wills and succession by contract. The course will also consider legal ethics in the context of the law of Succession.

**DP requirements:** Please refer to course handout.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%, Final examination 50%.

---

## MANAGEMENT STUDIES, SCHOOL OF

The Section of Organisational Psychology is housed in the School of Management Studies, Leslie Commerce Building, Engineering Mall, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [admin.orgpsy@uct.ac.za](mailto:admin.orgpsy@uct.ac.za) or telephone: 021 650-3778.

The letter code for the Department is BUS.

Departmental website: <http://www.organisationalpsychology.uct.ac.za/>

### Head of Department:

DM Maralack, BSocSc MCRP *Cape Town* MSc(Econ) Urban Dev Plan *London* PhD *Minnesota*

### Head of Organisational Psychology Section:

C Duffy, BSocSc(Hons) MCom PhD *Cape Town*

### Professors:

J Bagraim, BBusSc BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town* PhD *Warwick*

F De Kock, MCom *Stell* PhD *Rotterdam*

A Jaga, MCom PhD *Cape Town*

I Meyer, MA *Phillips-University Marburg* PhD *Cape Town*

A Schlechter, BSc(Hons) MA PhD *Stell*

### Associate Professor:

S Chapman, BA(Hons) MSc *Witwatersrand* PhD *Rhodes*

### Senior Lecturer:

Z Zungu, BSocSc(Hon) MSocSc *UKZN*

### Lecturers:

B Arendse, BCom(Hons) MCom *UWC*

F Farista, BSocSc(Hons) MCom *Cape Town*

N Veldsman, BBusSc MCom *Cape Town*

### Administrator:

TBA

## Requirements for a major in Organisational Psychology [BUS08]

### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
PSY1004F	Introduction to Psychology Part 1*
PSY1005S	Introduction to Psychology Part 2*
BUS1007S	Introduction to Organisational Psychology

\* See entry under Psychology Department. Please note that extended programme students must register for the regular course AND the augmenting course.

### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
BUS2024F	Psychology of Human Resource Management
BUS2023S	Organisational Behaviour

### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
------	-------

---

BUS3003F	Research Design in Organisational Psychology
BUS3004S	Research Data Analysis in Organisational Psychology

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **BUS2024F** and **BUS2023S**: restricted to students in their second year or higher.
- (ii) For **BUS3003F** and **BUS3004S**: restricted to students in their third year.

Student's may take organisational psychology first and second year courses concurrently, or second and third year courses concurrently. Concessions are not required for this.

Students intending to pursue an Honours in Organisational Psychology are encouraged to complete FTX1005F/S during their undergraduate degree. This course is a requirement for the Honours. FTX1005F/S can be taken during Honours year if necessary.

**Course outlines:**

*NB: Management Studies courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by a general BA or BSocSc.*

---

**BUS1004F INTRODUCTION TO STRATEGY AND MARKETING**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** A Meadows

**Course entry requirements:** Students must be in their 2<sup>ND</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> academic year of study or have the permission of the Head of Department of the School of Management Studies. BUS1004F is offered as an elective to students from all faculties as well as SSA students.

**Course outline:**

The objective of this course is to provide a general introduction to the world of business strategy and marketing. The course is divided into two modules and the students will study a selection of core topics in the business strategy module and subsequently in the marketing module. As such, the course builds a foundation for developing the business knowledge and skills within the above business disciplines. Those can be further applied in everyday lives, by aspiring entrepreneurs or in careers which are likely to have a significant managerial/business component.

**DP requirements:** All guest lectures and tutorials are compulsory. Students must satisfactorily submit their projects; write the class tests and obtain an average of 40% in order to receive their Duly Performed certificate.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60% of the final mark; final assessment 40% of the final mark.

---

**BUS1007S INTRODUCTION TO ORGANISATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** B Arendse

**Course entry requirements:** This course is intended for students in the special field of Organisational Psychology, but students from other faculties may choose this course as an elective.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to the field of Organisational Psychology, which deals with the application of psychological theories and principles to solve problems in the workplace. It will focus on the major historical trends and research that have shaped the discipline, as well as current and future developments in the workplace. This course will also provide students with an understanding of why individuals in organisations behave in particular ways and how organisations can influence the behaviour of their employees.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) 60%, Final examination 40%.

### **BUS2023S ORGANISATIONAL BEHAVIOUR**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Z Zungu

**Course entry requirements:** This course is restricted to students in their second year of study or higher. The course is intended for students majoring in Organisational Psychology, but students from other streams/faculties may choose this course as an elective.

**Course outline:**

The practices and underlying theories covered in BUS2024F - Psychology of Human Resource Management (HRM) serve to recruit, develop and retain the best employees, and to ensure that people are treated fairly at their places of work. Whether or not employees perform to the best of their ability also depends on the interpersonal relationships they have at work. Human interactions are complex, and each relationship is unique, but if you understand human behaviour in organisations (called Organisational Behaviour (OB) you can create ways of interacting which are likely to result in effective working environments, that is, environments in which employees feel they are treated fairly, are committed to their work and motivated to contribute to the organisation's success. OB is one of the areas which distinguishes work psychology from HRM: To understand human interactions you require a thorough knowledge of psychology. In this course, we will teach how to apply OB theory to understand the behaviour of people working in organisations, particularly under consideration of the South African workplace context, and to critically reflect on your own behaviour when working with others.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60% (assignments, tests), Final examination 40%.

---

### **BUS2024F PSYCHOLOGY OF HUMAN RESOURCE MANAGEMENT**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Z Zungu

**Course entry requirements:** This course is restricted to students in their second year of study or higher. The course is intended for students majoring in Organisational Psychology, but students from other streams/faculties may choose this course as an elective.

**Course outline:**

Broadly, human resource management (HRM) deals with the practices an organisation employs to manage its people so that they can best fulfil the organisation's strategic goals. It includes the hiring, developing and retaining of employees and ensures their fair treatment. This course introduces students to HRM practices and considers how organisational psychology's understanding of human behaviour in workspaces informs these.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) 60%, Final examination 40%

---

### **BUS3003F RESEARCH DESIGN IN ORGANISATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** N Veldsman

**Course entry requirements:** This course is restricted to students in their third year of study or higher. The course is intended for students majoring in Organisational Psychology, but students from other streams/ faculties may choose this course as an elective.

**Co-requisites:** None

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop the foundational knowledge and skills required by the scientist-practitioner. To this end, we focus on the continual interplay between theory and application in our applied field. Students learn how to design empirical research projects to investigate and engage with current topics in Organisational Psychology. Topic selection is based on recent and emerging trends in research from academia and industry. This course will provide an applied overview of the research planning process, from the perspective of quantitative, qualitative, and mixed methods research approaches.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) 60%, Final examination 40%.

---

**BUS3004S RESEARCH DATA ANALYSIS IN ORGANISATIONAL PSYCHOLOGY**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** N Veldsman

**Course entry requirements:** This course is restricted to students in their third year of study or higher. The course is intended for students majoring in Organisational Psychology, but students from other streams/ faculties may choose this course as an elective.

**Course outline:**

This course will equip students with an understanding of how to conduct quantitative and qualitative data analysis to inform Organisational Psychology practice. Students will gain skills to critically assess and empirically analyse research findings relating to the management of people in organisations. Additionally, students will be able to apply this learning to make effective decisions in a business/organisational environment.

**DP requirements:** None.

**Assessment:** Coursework (assignments and tests) 60%, Final examination 40%.

## MATHEMATICS AND APPLIED MATHEMATICS

The Department is housed in the Mathematics Building, 7 University Avenue, Upper Campus and can be contacted by email at: [hayley.leslie@uct.ac.za](mailto:hayley.leslie@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650-3191.

The letter code for the Department is MAM.

Departmental website: [www.math.uct.ac.za](http://www.math.uct.ac.za)

### Associate Professor and Head of Department:

D J Erwin, MSc *Natal* PhD *Western Michigan*

### Notes

1. All students registered for a course will be required to attend lectures and tutorial classes prescribed for that course.
2. Most syllabi indicate the contents of the various courses as recently given. All courses are subject to revision without advance notice.
3. Courses in Mathematics for Engineering and for Commerce Faculty students are offered by the Department. See relevant handbooks.
4. In exceptional cases, with the special permission of the Head of Department, usual entrance requirements may be waived.
5. Most administrative course information, such as lists of prescribed/recommended textbooks, lecture and tutorial timetables, test details, etc. can be found on the departmental website and will also be published on the departmental notice boards.
6. Students who are registered for the courses MAM1031F, MAM1032S, MAM1004F/S, MAM1005H, MAM1006H, MAM1010F/S, MAM1012F/S, MAM1110F/H, MAM1112S, MAM1020F/S and MAM1021F/S will be able to access an EBook version of the prescribed textbook at no extra cost (i.e., students in these courses do not have to buy the textbook).
7. Please note that Mathematics is equivalent to a 9-course major (MAM3000W counts as 2 courses) and Humanities students who choose this major will still be required to take 12 Humanities courses.

### Requirements for a major in Mathematics

#### [MAM02]

##### First Year courses

Code	Title
MAM1031F	Mathematics 1031
MAM1032S	Mathematics 1032
MAM1019H	Fundamentals of Mathematics

##### Second Year courses

Code	Title
MAM2010F	Advanced Calculus
MAM2011F	Linear Algebra
MAM2013S	Introductory Algebra
MAM2014S	Real Analysis

##### Third Year courses (At least four of the six, including either MAM3010F, MAM3011F, or both)

Code	Title
MAM3010F	Metric Spaces
MAM3011F	Algebra
MAM3012S	Discrete Mathematics
MAM3013S	Topics in Algebra
MAM3014S	Topics in Analysis

### First-year courses

Two semester courses are offered in the Faculty of Humanities: MAM1031F and MAM1032S. Credit equivalent to MAM1031F and MAM1032S can be obtained by passing MAM1033F and MAM1034S or by passing MAM1005H and MAM1006H. In special cases MAM1004F or MAM1004S may be taken in place of MAM1005H; detailed rules are given under the entry for MAM1006H.

No student may register for more than one of MAM1031F and MAM1032S, MAM1033F and MAM1034S, MAM1004F, MAM1004S, MAM1005H, MAM1006H, MAM1010F, MAM1014F/S, MAM1016S and MAM1020F simultaneously.

Credit will not be given for more than one of MAM1004F, MAM1004S, MAM1005H, MAM1010F, MAM1014F/S, MAM1016S, MAM1020F, MAM1031F, MAM1033F and STA1001F.

#### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **MAM1031F** and **MAM1032S**: a pass in NSC Mathematics with at least 70%
- (ii) For **MAM1019H**: a pass in NSC Mathematics with at least 70%
- (iii) For **MAM2010F**, **MAM2011F**, **MAM2013S** and **MAM2014S**: MAM1031F and MAM1032S, or equivalent
- (iv) For **MAM3010F**, **MAM3011F**, **MAM3012S**, **MAM3013S**, **MAM3014S**, **MAM3015S**: MAM2010F, MAM2011F, MAM2013S and MAM2014S.

#### Course outlines:

*NB: Mathematics courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by a general BA or BSocSc, except for the courses specified in Rule FB5.9.*

#### **MAM1004F** MATHEMATICS 1004

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** T C Van Heerden

**Course entry requirements:** At least 70% in NSC Mathematics. Students registered in other faculties who do not meet the 70% NSC requirement may instead complete MAM1014F/MAM1022F followed by MAM1015S with a mark of 70% or higher to gain entry to MAM1004F and MAM1004S. *Students who fail MAM1004F are expected to register for MAM1004S in the 2<sup>nd</sup> semester.*

#### **Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to provide mathematics for applications, particularly in the Life and Earth sciences. The syllabus covers the following topics: Functions and graphs. Straight lines, power functions, polynomials, exponential and logarithmic functions, trigonometric functions (radians). Discrete-time dynamical systems. Stability and equilibria. Rates of change. Limits, derivatives. Maxima and minima. Concavity. Asymptotes and curve sketching. Antiderivatives and integrals. Mathematical modelling. Separable and linear differential equations.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 1st period

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 30% in class tests, and satisfactory tutorial attendance.

**Assessment:** Class tests and regular WebAssigns determine a class record; one 3-hour examination makes up the balance of the final mark.

#### **MAM1004S** MATHEMATICS 1004

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** To be advised

**Course entry requirements:** At least 70% in NSC Mathematics. Students registered in other faculties who do not meet the 70% NSC requirement may instead complete MAM1014F/MAM1022F followed by MAM1015S with a mark of 70% or higher to gain entry to MAM1004F and MAM1004S. *Students who fail MAM1004F are expected to register for MAM1004S in the 2<sup>nd</sup> semester.*



**Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to provide mathematics for applications, particularly in the Life and Earth sciences. The syllabus covers the following topics: Functions and graphs. Straight lines, power functions, polynomials, exponential and logarithmic functions, trigonometric functions (radians). Discrete-time dynamical systems. Stability and equilibria. Rates of change. Limits, derivatives. Maxima and minima. Concavity. Asymptotes and curve sketching. Antiderivatives and integrals. Mathematical modelling. Separable and linear differential equations.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, Meridian

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 30% in class tests, and at least 80% attendance at tutorials.

**Assessment:** Year mark counts up to 40%; one 3-hour examination makes up the balance.

**MAM1005H MATHEMATICS 1005**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr M Geyer

**Course entry requirements:** At least 70% in NSC Mathematics. The permission of the Dean or Head of Department is required prior to registration for this course. *NOTES: 1) The course places an emphasis on the strengthening of foundational concepts and skills, the carefully-paced introduction of new material, and the development of sound approaches to effective learning. 2) MAM1005H + MAM1006H is equivalent to MAM1031F + MAM1032S in level, credit value towards the degree and as prerequisite for other courses.*

**Course outline:**

Similar to MAM1031F, the aim of this course is to introduce the fundamental ideas in calculus and related topics. It will cover the topics in MAM1031F including differential calculus of functions of one variable, but extended over the full year.

**Lecture times:** Students attend Monday - Friday in 1st or 3rd period (depending on the rest of their timetable); Workshops: Monday, 6th and 7th period.

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 35% for class record and very satisfactory attendance at all lectures, workshops and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Year mark counts up to 50%; one 2-hour examination written in October/November makes up the balance.

**MAM1006H MATHEMATICS 1006**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor B Osano

**Course entry requirements:** MAM1005H or a pass with at least 65% in MAM1004F/S. Students who have passed MAM1004F/S with less than 65% and who wish to register for MAM1006H will be required to write and pass the examination paper for MAM1005H in November or the supplementary examination paper in January before they are allowed to register for MAM1006H. Such students are required to inform the course co-ordinator for MAM1005H by 1 September or 1 December, respectively, of their intention to write the examination and at the same time obtain information about the reading to be done as preparation for the examination. *NOTES: 1) This course follows on from MAM1005H and also places an emphasis on the strengthening of foundational concepts and skills, the carefully-paced introduction of new material, and the development of sound approaches to effective learning. 2) MAM1005H + MAM1006H is equivalent to MAM1000W in level, credit value towards the degree and as prerequisite for certain other courses.*

**Course outline:**

Similar to the full-year course MAM1000W, the aim of this course is to introduce the fundamental ideas in calculus, linear algebra and related topics. This course consists of those topics in the MAM1000W syllabus that were not covered in MAM1005H the previous year, including differential equations, partial derivatives, vector geometry, matrix algebra, complex numbers, Taylor series.

**Lecture times:** Lectures on Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday and Friday in first period. Tutorials on Thursday in first period. No workshops.

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 35% in class tests and very satisfactory attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Year mark counts up to 40%; one 2-hour examination written in October/November makes up the balance.

---

**MAM1010F MATHEMATICS 1010**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr R Moolman

**Course entry requirements:** At least 60% in NSC Mathematics, or 50% in Higher Grade Mathematics (SC), or passes in both MAM1014F/MAM1022F and MAM1015S.

**Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to introduce topics in mathematics that are of interest to Commerce students, with applications to economics. Introductory financial mathematics including compound interest and annuities, functions, limits, differential calculus and applications of the derivative including graph sketching and Newton's Method, introduction to integral calculus and techniques of integration.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 1st, 3rd, or 4th period

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 30% in class tests and full attendance at workshops.

**Assessment:** Semester mark up to 40%. June examination 1 x 2 hour paper

---

**MAM1010S MATHEMATICS 1010**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** To be advised

**Course entry requirements:** At least 60% in NSC Mathematics or 50% on Higher Grade Mathematics (SC), or passes in both MAM1014F/MAM1022F and MAM1015S.

**Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to introduce topics in mathematics that are of interest to Commerce students, with applications to economics. Introductory financial mathematics including compound interest and annuities, functions, limits, differential calculus and applications of the derivative including graph sketching and Newton's Method, introduction to integral calculus and techniques of integration.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 1<sup>st</sup> or 4th period

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 30% in class tests and full attendance at workshops.

**Assessment:** Semester up to 40% November examination 1 x 2 hour paper

---

**MAM1008S INTRODUCTION TO DISCRETE MATHEMATICS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr I Allie

**Co-requisites:** MAM1004S or MAM1005H (unless a pass has been obtained for MAM1004F or MAM1031F or equivalent)

**Objective:** To introduce students to the language and methods of the area of Discrete Mathematics, and to show students how discrete mathematics can be used in modern computer science (with the focus on algorithmic applications).

**Course outline:**

This course provides a foundation for Computer Science and Applied Statistics. Many areas of Computer Science and Applied Statistics require the ability to work with concepts from discrete structures, which include topics such as set theory, logic, graph theory, and probability theory. In this course, you will learn about (1) sets, relations and functions; (2) basic logic, including propositional logic, logical connectives, truth tables, propositional inference rules and predicate logic; (3) proof techniques, including the structure of mathematical proofs, direct proofs, disproving by counterexample, proof by contradiction; (4) basics of counting, including counting arguments, the pigeonhole principle, permutations and combinations, solving recurrence relation; (5) graphs and trees; (6) discrete probability, including finite probability space, axioms of probability, conditional probability; and, (7) linear algebra, including vectors, matrices and their applications. The course is offered in a blended-learning format. Students are provided with a set of video lectures that they can watch multiple times. Student contact time is in a tutorial format aimed at reinforcing the principles

introduced in the online lectures and giving students time to do exercises under the supervision of tutors.

**Lecture times:** No face-to-face lectures. The course content is delivered online.

**DP requirements:** Class Record of at least 30% and attendance at 10 or more (out of 12) tutorials.

**Assessment:** Class Record counts 50% and Exam counts 50%.

### MAM1014F QUANTITATIVE LITERACY FOR HUMANITIES

*Details subject to change.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** J Clarke

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Matric Mathematics or Mathematical Literacy.

**Course outline:**

This course is intended to provide Humanities students with the necessary Quantitative Literacy to be able to understand and express appropriate quantitative ideas. The aim of this course is to give students an appreciation and an understanding of mathematical and statistical ideas within social science contexts. Course material will start from real-life situations and extract general concepts and principles using a problem-solving approach. For example: percentages; ratios; interpretation of graphs; manipulation of data; computer skills such as the use of spread sheets. The lectures will be conducted in the form of workshop/lectures: the aim is to create a learning environment based on group-work and problem-solving. Written assignments will be set to encourage students to explore their own understanding of mathematical and statistical ideas within context

**Lecture times:** Monday to Friday, 1st period or 6th period

**DP requirements:** A class record will be created through the compulsory submission of computer tutorials and written assignments, as well as through written tests. A minimum of 40% for this class record and a minimum of 75% attendance at lectures and computer laboratory periods will be required as a DP for admission to the examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50% (75% assessments, 15% assignments; 10% computer submissions). Exam 50% (67% written examination; 33% computer examination) NOTE: Credit will not be given for both this course and MAM1013F/S or MAM1022F.

### MAM1015S INTRODUCTORY MATHEMATICS

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** R Rix

**Course entry requirements:** Either: (A) NSC 50% in Mathematics or at least an A-level grade of E, or, (B) Credit for one of MAM1013, MAM1014, and MAM1022.

**Objective:** This course is intended to provide students with the necessary mathematical background to be able to continue with MAM1010F/S or, with a mark of 70% or higher, MAM1004F/S (note: students wishing to continue into MAM1010 or MAM1004 must also obtain credit for MAM1014F)

**Course outline:**

Basic algebra: Variables, algebraic manipulation, real numbers, sets and intervals, absolute value, exponents, polynomial and rational functions, equations, inequalities. Functions: Linear, quadratic, polynomial, rational, exponential, logarithmic, domain and range, graphs, piecewise-defined functions, composition of functions, inverse of a function.

**Lecture times:** Monday – Friday, 1<sup>st</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** A class record will be created through the compulsory submission of computer tutorials and written assignments and tests. A minimum of 40% for the class record and a minimum of 75% attendance will be required for a DP for admission to the examination.

**Assessment:** Class record: 40%; exam: 60%.

### MAM1016S QUANTITATIVE LITERACY FOR THE SOCIAL SCIENCES

*Details subject to change.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr M Henry

**Course entry requirements:** MAM1013F or MAM1014F or MAM1022F.

**Course outline:**

This course follows on from MAM1014F and is intended to provide Humanities students with the necessary Quantitative Literacy to be able to continue with studies in Quantitative Social Sciences, such as Psychology and Sociology. The aim of this course is to give students an appreciation and an understanding of mathematical and statistical ideas within appropriate contexts. The effective use of spreadsheets for data analysis and representation will be promoted. The lectures will be conducted in the form of workshop/lectures: the aim is to create a learning environment based on group-work and problem-solving. Written assignments will be set to encourage students to explore their own understanding of mathematical and statistical ideas within context.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 1st period

**DP requirements:** A class record will be created through the compulsory submission of computer tutorials and written assignments, as well as through written tests. A minimum of 40% for the class record and a minimum of 75% attendance at lectures and computer laboratory periods will be required as a DP for admission to the examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50% (54% assessments, 30% assignments; 16% computer submissions). Exam 50% (67% written examination; 33% computer examination).

**MAM1019H FUNDAMENTALS OF MATHEMATICS**

*Students who intend to major in mathematics are expected to take MAM1019H during their first year of study.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Schauerte

**Course entry requirements:** At least 70% in NSC Mathematics

**Co-requisites:** MAM1031F and MAM1032S or equivalent.

**Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to familiarise students with the most fundamental concepts and tools of modern mathematics at an elementary level. These include: fundamentals of logic and set theory, concepts of a function, of relations, of equivalence and order relations as well as some basic mathematical structures and the fundamental number systems.

**Lecture times:** Five lectures every two weeks in meridian.

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 30% in year mark.

**Assessment:** Year mark counts up to 40%; one 2-hour examination paper written in November makes up the balance.

**MAM1022F NUMBERS IN THE HUMANITIES**

*Details subject to change. For most students this is a terminating course. If students achieve more than 60% for this course they can continue to MAM1016S. Credits for this course may count towards the four-year programme of study leading to the BA or BSocSc degree*

28 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr M Sikhonde

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to this course is restricted to Extended Degree students and first-year Humanities students by course convener permission. It is strongly recommended for ED students taking BSocSc majors.

**Course outline:**

This course is intended to provide Humanities ED students with the necessary quantitative literacy to be able to understand and express appropriate quantitative ideas, which may be presented in text, tables, charts and graphs. The aim of the course is to give students an appreciation and understanding of simple mathematical and statistical ideas in social science contexts and to develop their ability to write about such quantitative information. Some examples of quantitative ideas to be mastered in the course include: percentages, ratios, ways of representing change, descriptive statistics, data representations and the use of spread-sheets.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 1st or 6th period

**DP requirements:** Students will build up a coursework mark through the compulsory submission of all computer tutorials, assignments and tests. A minimum of 45% for coursework and a minimum of 75% attendance at lectures and computer laboratory periods will be required as a DP for admission to the examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50% (75% assessments, 15% assignments, 10% computer submissions). Exam 50% (67% written examination; 33% computer examination).

---

### **MAM1031F MATHEMATICS 1031**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr H Wiggins

**Course entry requirements:** At least 70% in NSC Mathematics

#### **Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to introduce students to the fundamental ideas in differential calculus covering functions of one variable, limits, continuity and differentiation with applications, as well as formal proof methods. This course (or equivalent), along with MAM1032S (or equivalent) is necessary for entry into second year mathematics.

**Lecture times:** Five lectures per week, Monday - Friday, 1st or 3rd period

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 30% for class tests, minimum 30% for weekly online tests, and 80% attendance at tutorial sessions.

**Assessment:** Semester mark counts 33.3% and end-of-semester exam counts 66.6%.

---

### **MAM1032S MATHEMATICS 1032**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr H Wiggins

**Course entry requirements:** MAM1031F or MAM1033F or MAM1004F (with 65% or higher)

#### **Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to continue from the work in MAM1031F and introduce students to integral calculus, Taylor polynomials, complex numbers, vector geometry, linear algebra and differential equations. This course, along with MAM1031F is necessary for entry into second year mathematics.

**Lecture times:** Five lectures per week, Monday - Friday, 1st or 3rd period.

**DP requirements:** Minimum of 30% for class tests, minimum 30% for weekly online tests, and 80% attendance at tutorial sessions.

**Assessment:** Semester mark counts 33.3% and end-of-semester exam counts 66.6%.

---

### **MAM2010F ADVANCED CALCULUS (2AC)**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr F Ebobisse-Bille

**Course entry requirements:** MAM1031F and MAM1032S or equivalent. With permission from the convener, students with 70% for both MAM1010F and MAM1012S may register for MAM2010F.

#### **Course outline:**

Students will study the fundamentals of multivariable calculus, including: Curves and surfaces in three dimensions, change of coordinates; Line integrals, surface integrals; Stoke's, Green's and divergence theorems. Please note that lectures alternate during the week so that students can take MAM2010F and MAM2011F concurrently.

**Lecture times:** Tuesdays, Fridays and some Wednesdays in 5th period.

---

### **MAM2011F LINEAR ALGEBRA (2LA)**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr H Spakowski

**Course entry requirements:** MAM1031F and MAM1032S or equivalent. With permission from the convener, students with 70% for both MAM1010F and MAM1012S may register for MAM2010F.

**Course outline:**

Students will study the fundamentals of linear algebra, including: Vector spaces, linear independence, spans, bases, row space, column space, null space; Linear maps; Eigenvectors and eigenvalues; Inner product spaces, orthogonality. Please note that lectures alternate during the week so that students can take MAM2010F and MAM2011F concurrently.

**Lecture times:** Mondays, Thursdays and some Wednesdays in 5th period.

---

**MAM2013S INTRODUCTORY ALGEBRA (2IA)**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Schauerte

**Course entry requirements:** MAM1031F and MAM1032S or equivalent.

**Course outline:**

Students will study the fundamentals of abstract algebra and number theory, including: induction, strong induction and Well-Ordering axiom; Divisibility and prime factorization; Modular arithmetic; Permutations; Groups, Subgroups, Cyclic groups; Isomorphisms; Simple groups, Factor groups, Lagrange's Theorem; The First Isomorphism Theorem. Please note that lectures alternate during the week so that students can take any of MAM2012S, MAM2013S and MAM2014S concurrently.

**Lecture times:** Tuesdays, Fridays and some Wednesdays in 5th period.

---

**MAM2014S REAL ANALYSIS (2RA)**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M Vandeyar

**Course entry requirements:** MAM1031F and MAM1032S or equivalent.

**Course outline:**

Students will study the fundamentals of real analysis, including: Axioms of the real numbers, supremum and infimum; Countable sets; Sequences and series; Open and closed sets, compactness; Limits, continuity, differentiability; Sequences and series of functions, uniform convergence, power series; Integration. Please note that lectures alternate during the week so that students can take any of MAM2012S, MAM2013S and MAM2014S concurrently.

**Lecture times:** Mondays, Thursdays and some Wednesdays in 4th and 5th period.

---

**MAM3010F METRIC SPACES (3MS)**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** S Chili

**Course entry requirements:** MAM2010F, MAM2011F, MAM2014S and at least one of MAM2012S or MAM2013S.

**Course outline:**

The aim of this course is to introduce fundamental concepts in metric spaces and topology. Basic tools - Metrics, ultrametrics, pseudometrics, quasi-metrics. Convergence in metric spaces. Closed sets and closures. Open sets and interiors. Definition of topology in metric space and in general. Functions: continuous, uniformly continuous, Lipschitz continuous, contractions, isometries. Isomorphisms: topological, uniform, metric. Fundamental concepts - Completeness, via Cauchy sequences. Cantor's intersection theorem. Construction of completion and proof of uniqueness. Banach's Fixed Point Theorem and some applications. Compactness, via convergent subsequences; equivalence with total boundedness and completeness, and with open cover property. Connectedness, disconnectedness, and connected components.

**Lecture times:** Tuesdays, Fridays and some Wednesdays in 5th period.

---

**MAM3011F MODERN ABSTRACT ALGEBRA (3AL)**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr J Sanchez-Ortega

**Course entry requirements:** MAM2010F, MAM2011F, MAM2013S and at least one of MAM2012S or MAM2014S.

**Course outline:**

This course focusses on Group Theory. Topics include: Lagrange's Theorem. Isomorphism Theorems, Correspondence Theorem.  $p$ -Groups. Cauchy's Theorem. Sylow Theorems. Direct Product of groups. Finitely generated Abelian Groups. Jordan-Holder Theorem.

**Lecture times:** Mondays, Thursdays and some Wednesdays in 5th period.

---

**MAM3012S DISCRETE MATHEMATICS (3DM)**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor D Erwin

**Course entry requirements:** MAM2010F, MAM2011F, and two of MAM2012S, MAM2013S and MAM2014S.

**Course outline:**

Graph theory, combinatorial counting, discrete probability theory, recurrences, algorithms, applications.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Friday, 4th period.

---

**MAM3013S TOPICS IN ALGEBRA (3TA)**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr J Sanchez-Ortega

**Course entry requirements:** MAM2010F, MAM2011F, and two of MAM2012S, MAM2013S and MAM2014S.

**Course outline:**

This courses provides an Introduction to Ring Theory. A selection of the topics covered: Definition of a ring, examples, main properties. The field of fraction of an integral domain. Polynomial rings.

**Lecture times:** Tuesdays, Fridays and some Wednesdays in 5th period.

---

**MAM3014S TOPICS IN ANALYSIS (3TN)**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr F Ebobisse-Bille

**Course entry requirements:** MAM3010F

**Course outline:**

1. Study of sequences: basic definitions on sequences of numbers; study of the behaviour of sequences of real numbers. 2. Revision on metric spaces: distance, balls, open and closed sets, limit of a function, convergence of sequences, compactness, completeness; spaces of continuous functions between metric spaces (continuity, uniform continuity, Lipschitz continuity, Hölderian continuity; pointwise convergence and uniform convergence for sequences of functions; normed spaces and linear continuous mappings between normed spaces; equivalence of norms; Banach spaces; linear continuous mappings between normed spaces (norm of a linear continuous mapping, the dual space). 3. Hilbert spaces: scalar product (parallelogram identity; Hilbert spaces; the orthogonal complement, the orthogonal projection operator, the Gram-Schmidt orthonormalization process. 5. Differential calculus between normed spaces: Gâteaux and Fréchet differentiability; chain rule; the Lagrange inequality; convexity (convex Fréchet differentiable functions); the implicit function theorem (IFT) – Inverse mapping theorem (IMT). 6. On Riemann integration and its limitations.

**Lecture times:** Mondays, Thursdays and some Wednesdays in 5th period.

---

**MAM3015F COMPLEX ANALYSIS (3CA)**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor E Berdysheva

**Course entry requirements:** MAM2010F, MAM2011F, MAM2014S and at least one of MAM2012S or MAM2013S.

**Course outline:**

Fields of complex numbers, Holomorphic functions, Power series, Elementary functions, Complex integration, Cauchy's Integral Theorem, Cauchy's Integral Formula, Liouville's Theorem, Fundamental Theorem of Algebra, Coincidence Principle, Maximum Modulus Principle, Singularities, Residues, Laurent Series, Arguments, Rouché's Theorem, Open Mapping Theorems.

**Lecture times:** Tuesdays, Fridays and some Wednesdays in 4th period.



---

## MUSIC, SOUTH AFRICAN COLLEGE OF

The South African College of Music is a university department offering training in music. Options include orchestral instruments, piano, voice, African music, jazz and a variety of theoretical subjects, including History, Theory, Technology and Composition.

The department includes sections devoted to African music, jazz, opera (the UCT Opera School) and Western music. The College is located on Lower Campus in Woolsack Drive in a complex of buildings around Strubenholm, the home of the College since the 1920s.

Contact e-mail: [music@uct.ac.za](mailto:music@uct.ac.za), or telephone 021 650 2626.

Departmental website: [www.sacm.uct.ac.za](http://www.sacm.uct.ac.za)

The letter code of the College is MUZ.

### Director:

A Lilley, BAS *Cape Town Dip Boston PhD Cape Town* – Jazz Studies

### Professors:

R Sandmeier, PhD *Trinity College Dublin Habilitation Münster LRSM* – Musicology

D Plaatjies, BMus(Hons) MMus *Cape Town* – African Music

### Emeritus Professors:

A Gobbato, BSc(Hons) DMus(h.c) *Cape Town LTCL*

H Hofmeyr, MMus DMus *Cape Town State Diplomas Florence (Piano, Conducting) Bologna (Composition)* – Music Theory and Composition

F Larey, BA(Mus) STD *UWC MMus Artist Diploma DMA Cincinnati LRSM LTCL*

J May, MMus *Cape Town LRSM*

M Rossi, MM DMA *New England Conservatory of Music*

### Professor and Director of the UCT Opera School:

J Silver, LRAM *Royal Academy of Music MA Cantab*

### Associate Professors:

F Bacharova, BMus *Gnesin Music College Moscow MMus Moscow Conservatory* – Strings

S Bruinders, MA *Wesleyan PhD Illinois* – Ethnomusicology

F du Toit, BMus(Hons) *Cape Town ATCL LTCL FTCL UPLM Solistenklassediplom Hannover* – Piano

A Herbst, BMus(Hons) *UFS MMus DPhil Stell UPLM* – Music Education

A Tiffin, MMus *Cape Town* – Jazz Studies

P Tikolo, PDO *Cape Town MMus Artist Diploma SMU Dallas* – Vocal Studies

M Watt, BMus(Hons) MMus *Cape Town DipRAM London DMus Pret* – Music Theory and Composition

### Emeritus Associate Professors:

M Bezuidenhout, DMus *Unisa LTCL*

M Campbell, BMus(Jazz Studies) *North Texas MMus DMus Cape Town*

V Davids, PLM *Stell*

B Liebl, MM DMA *Cincinnati*

A van Schalkwyk, BMus *Cape Town PDM LRAM(Accompanying) VPLM Unisa PhD UFS*

### Senior Lecturers:

V Angelov, PDO BMus(Hons) *Cape Town* – Vocal Studies

R Deja, MM(Jazz Studies) *DePaul University PhD(Musicology) Illinois* – Ethnomusicology; Curator, Kirby Collection

W Haubrich, BMus *Southern California* – Brass

T Herbst, BMus *Stell* MMus *UKZN Künstlerische Abschlussprüfung* (Composition) *Stuttgart* – Music Technology  
E Kruger, BMus, MMus *Stell DMA North Texas* – Piano  
C Malefane, DMP PGDip(Opera) *Cape Town* – Vocal Studies  
M van Noie, BMus MMus *Cape Town* – Jazz Studies  
N Xaluva-Dyantyis, BMus MMus *Cape Town* – Jazz Vocals, MBA *Henley Business School*

**Lecturers:**

J Bellairs, BMus(Jazz Studies) *Cape Town* MMus(Jazz Performance) *Makhanda* – Saxophone  
B Clacherty, PhD(Music) *Cape Town* – African Music  
S Fubesi, PGDip(Performance) PGDip(Opera Studies) *RNCM* – Vocal Studies  
J Grace, BMus(Hons) *RCM* – Classical Guitar  
B Phillips, Dip(Orchestral Studies) BMus(Hons) *Cape Town*  
J Reolon, BMus *Cape Town* – Jazz Piano

**Music Student Advisors:**

S Bruinders – African Music  
A Herbst – Music Education  
T Herbst – Music Technology  
F du Toit – Western Music, Postgraduate Studies  
J Silver – Opera  
A Tiffin – Jazz  
P Tikolo – Vocal Studies  
M Watt – Composition

**Principal Technical Officer:**

I Greyling, MA(Music Technology) *UKZN*

**Music Technology Officer:**

D Philander

**Technician:**

K Hartzenberg  
J Scheepers

**Building Supervisor:**

S Kruger

**Departmental Assistant:**

M Meyer

**Technical Assistant:**

C Potgieter, Jnr

**Concerts Coordinator:**

F Grayer, BMus – *Cape Town* Performer's Licentiate and Teacher's Licentiates *Unisa*

**Departmental Manager:**

A Scheepers

**Administrative Officer:**

TBA

**Senior Secretary:**

L Diamond, BSocSc *Cape Town*

**WH Bell Music Library**

**Music Librarian:**

E Britz, BMus MMus PGDipLIS *Cape Town*

**Entrance requirements for a major in Music [MUZ08] within the Bachelor of Arts degree:**

Students registering for General Degrees who wish to take courses established in the South African College of Music must fulfil the following entrance requirements:

- (i) One of the following:
  - (a) 60% (HG) or 70% (SG) in Music (SC), or a 5 rating in Music (NSC), or equivalent examination;  
**OR**
  - (b) A pass in the Grade V Theory of Music examination and Grade VII practical examination of the University of South Africa or in examinations recognised by Senate as equivalent;  
**OR**
  - (c) Satisfies the Admission Board of the SA College of Music by practical audition and theory examination that they can register for the courses with a reasonable expectation of successfully completing the courses in the period required in terms of Faculty rules.
- (ii) Students must pass a Theory of Music Entrance Test.
- (iii) For entrance to practical courses (Instrument B1 or B2 or B3), an audition will be required. A successful audition does not guarantee a place in the practical courses of the BA music major. Admission to practical courses is at the discretion of the Director of the SACM.

**Requirements for a major in Music within the Bachelor of Arts degree [MUZ08]**

*These courses are taken in addition to courses for the other major(s); please read in conjunction with Faculty Rules FBI-7 at the beginning of this book. Please note that a BA with a music major does not qualify the student to do a PGCE in music. Students wishing to go on to a teaching qualification in music must register for the Bachelor of Music or the Diploma in Music Performance. Please also note that practical subjects (instrumental or vocal studies) are at the discretion of the Director and subject to budget and teacher availability constraints.*

**First Year courses**

---

**Choose two courses (you may not choose two courses from the same category):**

- (a) MUZ1340H History of Western Music I
- (b) MUZ1351H Music Theory and Analysis I
- (c) MUZ1367F Worlds of Music I **OR** MUZ1322F African Music I
- (d) MUZ1381H Music Technology IA
- (e) One of the following:
  - MUZ1309H Accordion B1
  - MUZ1201H African Instrument B1
  - MUZ1207H Bassoon B1
  - MUZ1211H Cello B1
  - MUZ1215H Clarinet B1
  - MUZ1223H Double Bass B1
  - MUZ1229H Euphonium B1
  - MUZ1233H Flute B1
  - MUZ1237H Guitar B1

---

MUZ1241H	Harp B1
MUZ1245H	Harpsichord B1
MUZ1249H	Horn B1
MUZ1257H	Oboe B1
MUZ1261H	Organ B1
MUZ1265H	Percussion B1
MUZ1269H	Piano B1
MUZ1274H	Recorder B1
MUZ1386H	Classical Saxophone B1
MUZ1283H	Singing B1
MUZ1287H	Trombone B1
MUZ1291H	Trumpet B1
MUZ1294H	Tuba B1
MUZ1298H	Viola B1
MUZ1302H	Violin B1

**Second Year courses**

---

**Choose two courses (you may not choose two courses from the same category):**

- (a) MUZ2340H History of Western Music II
- (b) MUZ2351H Music Theory and Analysis II
- (c) MUZ2367S Worlds of Music II **OR**  
MUZ2322S African Music II
- (d) MUZ2372H Music Technology IIA
- (e) One of the following:
  - MUZ2308H Accordion B2
  - MUZ2201H African Instrument B2
  - MUZ2207H Bassoon B2
  - MUZ2211H Cello B2
  - MUZ2215H Clarinet B2
  - MUZ2223H Double Bass B2
  - MUZ2229H Euphonium B2
  - MUZ2233H Flute B2
  - MUZ2237H Guitar B2
  - MUZ2241H Harp B2
  - MUZ2245H Harpsichord B2
  - MUZ2249H Horn B2
  - MUZ2257H Oboe B2
  - MUZ2261H Organ B2
  - MUZ2265H Percussion B2
  - MUZ2269H Piano B2
  - MUZ2274H Recorder B2
  - MUZ2386H Classical Saxophone B2
  - MUZ2283H Singing B2
  - MUZ2287H Trombone B2
  - MUZ2291H Trumpet B2
  - MUZ2294H Tuba B2
  - MUZ2298H Viola B2
  - MUZ2302H Violin B2

**Third Year courses**

---

**Choose two courses (you may not choose two courses from the same category):**

- (a) MUZ3340H Music in History and Society III
- (b) MUZ3351H Music Theory and Analysis III
- (c) MUZ3324F Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3
- (d) MUZ3371H Music Technology IIIA
- (e) One of the following:
  - MUZ3308H Accordion B3
  - MUZ3201H African Instrument B3
  - MUZ3207H Bassoon B3
  - MUZ3211H Cello B3
  - MUZ3215H Clarinet B3
  - MUZ3223H Double Bass B3
  - MUZ3229H Euphonium B3
  - MUZ3233H Flute B3
  - MUZ3237H Guitar B3
  - MUZ3241H Harp B3
  - MUZ3245H Harpsichord B3
  - MUZ3249H Horn B3
  - MUZ3257H Oboe B3
  - MUZ3261H Organ B3
  - MUZ3265H Percussion B3
  - MUZ3269H Piano B3
  - MUZ3274H Recorder B3
  - MUZ3386H Classical Saxophone B3
  - MUZ3283H Singing B3
  - MUZ3287H Trombone B3
  - MUZ3291H Trumpet B3
  - MUZ3294H Tuba B3
  - MUZ3298H Viola B3
  - MUZ3302H Violin B3

---

## UNDERGRADUATE DEGREES AND DIPLOMAS IN MUSIC

---

Bachelor of Music (BMus)		HB010	4 years
General, or		MUZ33	
with a focus on:	Classical Performance,	MUZ42	
	African Music Performance,	MUZ44	
	Opera,	MUZ23	
	Music Technology,	MUZ41	
	Classical Composition, or	MUZ45	
	Jazz Studies	MUZ07	
Diploma in Music Performance (DMP)		HU021	3 years
with a focus on:	Classical,	MUZ12	
	Jazz Studies,	MUZ07	
	African Music,	MUZ02	
	World Music, or	MUZ14	
	Opera	MUZ23	

For full details of curricula please consult the Rules and Curricula for Qualifications and Programmes of Study of the handbook.

### Admission requirements

#### To qualify for admission to any Bachelor of Music degree programme candidates must have:

- Matriculation endorsement or the NSC endorsed for degree studies
- Passed an audition
- Music at C (HG) or B (SG) (SC), or Music at level 5 (NSC) or Grade V Theory of Music examination and Grade VII practical examination of Unisa or the equivalent
- Written the NBT and achieved at least lower intermediate.

#### To qualify for admission to a Diploma in Music Performance candidates must have:

- A school-leaving (senior) certificate or the NSC endorsed for diploma studies
- Music at C (HG) or B (SG) (SC), or Music at level 5 (NSC) or Grade VII practical (Unisa or equivalent)
- Grade V Theory of Music (Unisa or equivalent)
- Passed an audition
- Written the NBT and achieved at least lower intermediate.

All candidates must arrange an audition with the Director of the South African College of Music. A successful audition does not guarantee a place in one of the music degrees or diplomas in general, nor in a particular programme or stream.

### Course outlines:

---

#### MUZ1320H ACCOMPANYING I

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr E Kruger

**Course entry requirements:** Keyboard students admitted to the BMus degree or Diploma in Music Performance.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to investigate the basic requirements and skills of the piano accompanist in various typical performance or teaching situations. The repertoire will cover simple solo vocal repertoire (accessible art songs and Baroque arias) and instrumental duo works from the Baroque to the present day. The required technical level is the same as for Piano B1: UNISA or Associated Board or Trinity Grades 7 to 8.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at lectures and due submission of all assignments and tests.

**Assessment:** Assignments 20%; Performance of repertoire 80%.

---

### **MUZ1322F AFRICAN MUSIC I**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Bruinders

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the BMus degree or BA major in Music. No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to introduce the study of a wide range of Africa's music cultures in ways that facilitate an interpretation of the meanings of specific musics and music-related performances (dance, theatre, religious and other ritual, commercial, social, political contexts). No previous specialised music knowledge is necessary. The course surveys musics in all major African regions, including North Africa. Case studies by various researchers are studied that involve ways of making sense of music by considering meaning construction, basic music analysis, history, relations between text and music, reception theory, and other relevant theoretical and methodological approaches. The course involves viewing and responding to videos and sound recordings, experiencing live performance, investigating the construction and acoustic properties of musical instruments, and a final assignment involving a creative component as well as writing.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, projects, etc.) 100%.

---

### **MUZ1323H AFRICAN MUSIC ENSEMBLE I**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** By audition.

**Course outline:**

African Music Ensemble I provides large-group practical training in African performance skills in order to prepare students for the professional stage. Sessions will be aimed at further developing the interpretative and performance skills built in African Instrument courses, enhancing the micro-work done in one-to-one practical study classes through participation in large scale performances for the stage under the guidance and tutorage of professional performers. Activities include lectures and mandatory participation in rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark: assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

### **MUZ1324H AURAL I**

15 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** All prospective Western Classical, Opera and African Music students will write an entrance test for Aural I during registration week. Achievement of the required standard will entitle the student to register for Aural I in the first year of study. Students who pass Aural Intro will also be allowed to enrol for Aural I.

**Course outline:**

This course aims at developing students' knowledge of and skills in the following essential areas of musicianship: (1) Audiation ('Inner hearing') through sight singing and sight reading; and (2)

transcription and aural analysis. Students will be required to complete a set number of prescribed exercises in these areas during tutorials. The course content covers a wide variety of tonal and atonal music styles and genres.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance and completion of all prescribed coursework and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 40%; examination 60%.

---

### **MUZ1325H AURAL INTRODUCTORY**

15 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** A course for students who do not pass the entrance test for Aural I in registration week.

**Course outline:**

This is an intensive course for students who do not have the requisite background for Aural I. The course focuses on two essential areas of musicianship: (1) sight-singing and sight-reading skills; and (2) transcription and aural analysis. Students will be required to complete a set number of prescribed exercises in these areas.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance and completion of all prescribed coursework.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 40%; examination 60%.

---

### **MUZ1333H ENSEMBLE 1**

*This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms, i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** B Phillips

**Course entry requirements:** Placement in Ensemble will be at the discretion of the course convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for both Ensemble I and Ensemble Additional I. However, Ensemble Additional I may not be used as a substitute for Ensemble I. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, students must do the required number of years of that course. No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop ensemble skills for instrumentalists, including ability to play with each other and under a conductor, as preparation for both working as a professional instrumentalist, and for teaching ensembles at primary or secondary level. The course will also strengthen intonation and reading skills necessary for ensemble work. Activities include rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

### **MUZ1335H FIGURED BASS AND SCORE READING**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

9 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor F du Toit

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Theory and Analysis I.

**Course outline:**

For organists and harpsichordists only. The first part of the course will be based on progressive exercises in keyboard harmony, leading up to the realisation of a figured bass in the Baroque manner. The second part of the course will consist of progressive exercises in score-reading at the keyboard, starting with the reading of C clefs and transposing instruments, and culminating in the reading of simple orchestral scores.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures.



**Assessment:** Score-reading tests 50%; performance of figured bass 50%.

---

### **MUZ1337H FOUNDATION MUSIC THEORY**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in the theory entrance test.

**Course outline:**

This course will provide students with the theoretical background required to pursue either a degree or a diploma course in music. It is a comprehensive introduction to Western notation and its related music. It introduces the student to basic theoretical concepts including clefs, intervals, scales, key signatures, time signatures, note values and conventional indications for tempo and dynamics. Great emphasis will be placed on the actual reading of musical scores, including vocal and instrumental scores, and on the development of aural and visualisation skills.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance; 50% year mark for prescribed coursework; tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments and tests 60%; examination 40%.

---

### **MUZ1338S MUSIC IN SOCIETY**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr R Deja

**Course entry requirements:** National Senior Certificate or equivalent qualification at HEQSF level 4. No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course offers an introduction to the study of the phenomenon of music. The general concept of sound and music will be discussed, its manifestations in folk, popular and art music as well as its context in community and commercial settings. Discussions will centre on Africa and beyond, keeping in mind the local and the translocal. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' life worlds and is cognisant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including multilingual pedagogies and digital literacy, which allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities. Please note that there is a course cap of 60 enrolments due to availability of equipment.

**DP requirements:** Due submission of all assigned work; at least 80% attendance at lectures and practicals.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **MUZ1339H JAZZ IN CONTEXT I**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

The history of Jazz will be studied through its early foundations within cultural and commercial society. Concepts include the formation and adoption of jazz as popular music in North America, beginning with the merger of African, European and Latin American music traditions. The course examines the innovative manner in which jazz styles evolved, with some maintaining unique identities to the present day. The course material is focussed on the definitive styles developing during the 1900s-1950s, for example, Early Jazz, the Swing period and Cool Jazz. The course also begins to explore the relationship between American Jazz and South African Jazz. As an introductory course, the content moves between diverse topics with an aim to develop context and insight, alongside critical reading and writing skills.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) 100%.

---

**MUZ1340H MUSIC IN HISTORY AND SOCIETY I**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor R Sandmeier

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the BMus degree, BA major in Music or Diploma in Music Performance. Registration for students in other programmes is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

The content of the course covers Western music from ca. 1600 to the present time. It uses a modular approach to investigate specific topics, including but not limited to major figures, compositions, genres, forms and compositional techniques, social, technical and aesthetic factors as well as institutions, methods and practices. In addition, lectures and seminars deal with the reading and critical evaluation of scholarly texts and aim to develop skills in academic writing.

**DP requirements:** Due submission of all assigned work; at least 80% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**MUZ1342H JAZZ ENSEMBLE I**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to a degree or diploma. No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, the student must complete the required number of years.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop jazz ensemble skills both as a professional performance and teaching skill. Performances are conducted in groups characteristic of the jazz idiom and related musical styles, ranging from 3- to 9-piece combo, to full big band format including vocalists depending on the selected repertoire material. The jazz vocal section conducts a full choir and small vocal ensemble under this course heading. Both vocalists and instrumentalists may be placed in groups that require interaction with a variety of instruments and styles. Ensembles rehearse under the guidance of a staff member, and undertake public performances or recordings organised on and off campus by the ensemble directors in conjunction with the SACM Concerts Committee. The course codes I – IV align with the students' year of registration, and do not indicate graded levels of proficiency.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals, recordings and concerts.

---

**MUZ1343H JAZZ IMPROVISATION I**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** J Ballairs

**Course entry requirements:** No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to develop and promote skills in jazz improvisation at a basic level, in the common practice style. Lectures and practicals will be aimed at developing interpretative and integrative skills which will be further developed in more advanced courses (e.g. MUZ2343H) which cover more specific information.

A further important aim will be to develop music literacy in the discipline, as well as introducing students to established performance techniques and approaches.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at classes and the completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%; performance of repertoire 50%.

---

### MUZ1350H MUSIC THEORY I

22 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in the written entrance examination of the College of Music, which consists of one paper of a standard equivalent to the final paper of the Foundation Music Theory course of the University of Cape Town.

**Course outline:**

The objectives of this course are to provide the student with a broad knowledge of harmonic and contrapuntal procedures and the use of formal structures during the Baroque and Classical periods. Content will include:

1. A study of the most important genres of these periods.
2. The use of harmonic and contrapuntal procedures, including figured bass and its application.
3. The use of formal structures commonly encountered in the Baroque and Classical periods.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at lectures and tutorials; 50% year mark for prescribed course work, tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments and tests 75%; examinations 25%.

---

### MUZ1351H MUSIC THEORY AND ANALYSIS I

21 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in the written entrance examination of the College of Music, which consists of one paper of a standard equivalent to the final paper of the Foundation Music Theory course of the University of Cape Town.

**Course outline:**

The objectives of this course are to provide the student with an in-depth knowledge of harmonic and contrapuntal procedures and the use of formal structures during the Baroque period including, but not necessarily limited to:

1. The use of figured bass and its application in works such as recitatives, arias, trio sonatas and chorale harmonisations. On completion of the course, students will be able to realise a given figured bass or set a melody in 4-part chorale style, and analyse, identify and write chord progressions as encountered in the works studied.
2. The principles of counterpoint, including the writing and analysis of 2-part inventions.
3. The use of binary, ternary and ritornello-type forms in the Baroque period, including the use of modulation to articulate structure.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at lectures and tutorials; 50% year mark for prescribed course work, tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments 50%, examination 50%.

---

### MUZ1363H THEORY OF JAZZ I

21 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor A Lilley

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in the written entrance examination of the College of Music, which consists of one paper of a standard equivalent to the final paper of the Introduction to Jazz Theory course of the University of Cape Town.

**Course outline:**

The study of Jazz Theory in the common practice style. Students will be introduced to the fundamentals of established theoretical practice in jazz including consensus jazz nomenclature, the principles of functional harmony, functional harmonic analysis in context of standard jazz repertoire and the practical application of theory. The course is designed to give useable knowledge and understanding of theoretical practices in jazz for use in arranging and improvisation.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 40%; examination 60%.

---

**MUZ1366H** WORLD MUSIC ENSEMBLE I

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr R Deja**Course entry requirements:** By audition**Course outline:**

This course provides practical training in World Music performance skills in both folk and commercial/popular musics drawing from African, Diasporic, and other World Music traditions. Sessions will be aimed at addressing the differences between folk and commercial music and developing strategies in adapting music to different formats, fusing multiple styles/genres, as well as retaining the original performance style and aesthetics where appropriate. Students will be encouraged to develop interpretative and performance skills through participation in collaborative ensemble playing under the guidance and tutorship of professional performers. While there is a strong emphasis on vocal and assorted percussion performance, other instruments such as horns, piano/keyboard, guitar, bass, and drumkit are needed and encouraged to participate.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

**MUZ1367F** WORLDS OF MUSIC I

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr R Deja**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the BMus degree or BA major in Music. No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.**Course outline:**

This course serves as an introduction to the study of music as a social and cultural phenomenon and will survey a range of musical contexts in communities from different parts of the world. Through a comparison of musical traditions across the globe, this course seeks answers to questions such as: What is music? Why do people make it? What shapes different musical taste and preferences? and What are the differences, if any, between folk and popular musics? In addition to attending lectures, students will read popular and scholarly writings, engage in focused listening, and attend live performances when possible. Students will further develop their understanding of music through group discussions and small written projects.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, essays, projects, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**MUZ1368H** ENSEMBLE ADDITIONAL I

*(May not be offered in 2025). This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms, i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** B Phillips**Course entry requirements:** Placement in Ensemble Additional will be at the discretion of the course convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for both the normal Ensemble course (i.e. MUZ1333H – 4333H) and Ensemble Additional I. However, Ensemble Additional I may not be used as a substitute for any other Ensemble course. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, students must do the required number of years. No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.**Course outline:**

This course is an adjunct to the Ensemble course, i.e. students selected for two ensembles may register for both Ensemble and Ensemble Additional. The course aims to develop additional ensemble skills

for instrumentalists, as preparation for both working as a professional instrumentalist, and for teaching ensembles at primary or secondary level. Activities include rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

### **MUZ1369H JAZZ ENSEMBLE ADDITIONAL I**

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to a degree or diploma. Placement in Jazz Ensemble Additional I is at the discretion of the course convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for another Ensemble course (i.e. MUZ1342H) and Jazz Ensemble Additional I. However, Jazz Ensemble Additional I may not be used as a substitute for any other Ensemble course.

**Course outline:**

For additional credit. This course aims to develop jazz ensemble skills both as a professional performance and teaching skill. Performances are conducted in groups characteristic of the jazz idiom and related musical styles, ranging from 3- to 9-piece combo, to full big band format including vocalists depending on the selected repertoire material. The jazz vocal section conducts a full choir and small vocal ensemble under this course heading. Both vocalists and instrumentalists may be placed in groups that require interaction with a variety of instruments and styles. Ensembles rehearse under the guidance of a staff member, and undertake public performances or recordings organised on and off campus by the ensemble directors in conjunction with the SACM Concerts Committee. The course codes I – IV align with the students' year of registration, and do not indicate graded levels of proficiency.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals, recordings and concerts.

---

### **MUZ1375H AFRICAN MUSIC THEORY I**

21 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to a degree or diploma. No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to fundamental concepts related to the study of African music theory. The intent is to investigate African music from a deliberately comparative perspective with emphasis on structure, technique, form and performance-style and its notation, rather than on social context.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, and completion of all assigned work.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%, final examination 50%.

---

### **MUZ1377H LYRIC DICTION I**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor J Silver

**Course entry requirements:** No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to the basic principles of singing in the Italian language. Lectures, in class performance, and participation in staged operas as either chorus or small roles (both with orchestra and piano accompaniment) will be utilised as tools to establish a functional method of execution of the difficulties inherent in sung language.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Tests, quizzes and participation 50%; performance of diction excerpts 50%.

**MUZ1379H JAZZ EAR TRAINING I**

15 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** All prospective students in Jazz Studies will write an entrance test for Jazz Ear Training during registration week. Achievement of the required standard will entitle registration into Jazz Ear Training I in their first year of study. Students who do not meet the required standard for Jazz Ear Training I, will be placed into Introduction to Jazz Theory and Aural in their first year of study.

**Course outline:**

Comprehensive aural training in the jazz style, focusing on the recognition of melodic and harmonic material arising from the jazz tradition and aligned with internationally accepted common practice. The first-year course will concentrate on fundamental diatonic relationships, recognition and transcription of basic functional jazz harmony, jazz chord qualities. Sight-singing, melodic dictation and rhythmic recognition are included as a practice to expand aural skills.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of lectures and the completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 60%; final examination 40%.

---

**MUZ1380H AFRICAN AURAL I**

15 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to a degree or diploma. No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course provides comprehensive aural training in African music, focusing on the recognition of melodic, harmonic and rhythmic materials arising from various African musical traditions. Sessions will be aimed at developing the ability to work with notations appropriate for various African musical styles and instruments and centre on the methodical development of the eye/ear/hand- coordination skills required to perform polyrhythmic musical structures. Students will be required to complete a set number of prescribed exercises in these areas.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance and the completion of all prescribed work.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%; examination 50%.

---

**MUZ1381H MUSIC TECHNOLOGY 1A**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** T Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to a degree or diploma programme and passing a music theory proficiency test.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to introduce the field of Music Technology to musically proficient students who have had little exposure to the use of technology to create and record music. Students use digital audio workstations, located in a music technology laboratory with adjacent audio recording booth, to develop practical skills in certain focus areas. The focus areas are; MIDI sequencing, live musical performance and audio recording. The course primarily fosters and develops practical skills. However, sufficient time is devoted to introducing the theoretical fundamentals on which these skills rest.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 60%; final examination 40%.

### **MUZ1385W JAZZ FUNDAMENTALS**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** Admission into a jazz degree or diploma. All prospective students in Jazz Studies will write a placement test for Jazz Ear Training and Theory during registration week. Achievement of the required standard will entitle registration into Jazz Ear Training I in their first year of study.

**Course outline:**

This course will provide students with the theoretical background required to pursue a degree or diploma in Jazz Studies. The course will cover intermediate jazz theory and aural concepts, placing emphasis on a combined theory and aural approach. The course introduces internationally accepted common jazz practice concepts from both aural and theoretical perspectives.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of all lectures & tutorials; 50% year mark for prescribed coursework, tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework, tests and assignments: 70%; final examination 30%.

---

### **MUZ1399H AFRICAN MUSIC PRACTICAL STUDY**

*(Not offered in 2025)*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** Admission into the Foundation programme for BMus or DMP

**Co-requisites:** Students may be obliged to play in the UCT ensembles at the discretion of the director, in consultation with the course conveners.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to develop and promote skills for those who wish to study African instrument as part of the Foundation Programme which is designed for students who lack formal theoretical training, but who have practical qualifications/skills that meet the B1 entry level requirements. Practicals will be aimed at developing interpretive and technical skills as well as a developing knowledge of their instrument's repertoire. The course will consist of Technical tests and repertoire at the commensurate level required as outlined in the course outlines.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lessons and (where applicable), studio classes, and compliance with all other DP requirements as set out in the SACM course requirements. In addition every student must attend 27 performances of the SACM during the academic year. Students may count attendances at Performers' Class and official SACM concerts.

**Assessment:** Technical tests 50%. Performance of repertoire 50%.

---

### **MUZ1400H JAZZ PRACTICAL STUDY**

*(Not offered in 2025)*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Tiffin

**Course entry requirements:** Admission into the Foundation programme for BMus or DMP.

**Co-requisites:** Students may be obliged to play in the UCT ensembles at the discretion of the director, in consultation with the course conveners.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to develop and promote skills for those who wish to study a Jazz instrument / Jazz singing as part of the Foundation Programme which is designed for students who lack formal theoretical training, but who have practical qualifications/skills that meet the B1 entry level requirements. Practicals will be aimed at developing interpretive and technical skills as well as a more comprehensive knowledge of their instrument's repertoire. The course will consist of Technical tests and repertoire at the commensurate level required as outlined in the course outlines.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lessons and (where applicable), studio classes, and compliance with all other DP requirements as set out in the SACM course requirements. In addition every student

must attend 27 performances of the SACM during the academic year. Students may count attendances at Performers' Class and official SACM concerts.

**Assessment:** Technical tests 50%. Performance of repertoire 50%.

---

### **MUZ1401H WESTERN CLASSICAL MUSIC PRACTICAL STUDY**

*(Not offered in 2025)*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor F du Toit

**Course entry requirements:** Admission into the Foundation programme for BMus or DMP

**Co-requisites:** Students may be obliged to play in the UCT ensembles and symphony orchestra at the discretion of the director, in consultation with the course conveners.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to develop and promote skills for those who wish to study an instrument/singing of Western Classical Music as part of the Foundation Programme which is designed for students who lack formal theoretical training, but who have practical qualifications/skills that meet the B1 entry level requirements. Practicals will be aimed at developing interpretive and technical skills as well as a developing knowledge of their instrument's repertoire. The course will consist of technical and repertoire requirements at the commensurate level required as outlined in the course outlines.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lessons and (where applicable), studio classes, and compliance with all other DP requirements as set out in the SACM course requirements. In addition every student must attend 27 performances of the SACM during the academic year. Students may count attendances at Performers' Class and official SACM concerts.

**Assessment:** Practical technical tests and performance of repertoire 100%.

---

### **MUZ1404H OPERA TRAINING I**

*NOTE: This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms; i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor J Silver

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the BMus (general stream) or DMP Opera.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop and promote skills in basic musical and theatrical grounding pursuant to developing a career on the operatic stage. The first year makes students familiar with the details of theatrical organisation, structure and discipline. Lectures and practical work centre on preparing students for work in operatic chorus, developing skills in thinking, acting and reacting in foreign language texts as well as spoken theatre in English. A further aim will be to develop physical relaxation and body awareness integration techniques.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework 80%; exam 20%.

---

### **MUZ1405H JAZZ VOCAL TECHNIQUES**

6 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** N Xaluva

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for Jazz Singing instrument study B1. For students not taking Jazz Singing B1, an audition is required for entry into this course.

**Co-requisites:** Jazz Singing B1.

**Course outline:**

This course covers common practice techniques in Jazz Vocal Performance. The course explores the stylistic, technical and creative aspects of Jazz Vocal artistry. The course aims to introduce essential skills necessary for the effective professional functioning of all jazz singers, including phrasing, articulation and lyric expression, exploration of the sub-genres of South African vocal jazz, Brazilian



vocal jazz, microphone and sound equipment use for the vocalist, comprehensive lead-sheet writing and development and individualisation of repertoire.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lectures and completion of all assignments, projects and performances.

**Assessment:** 100% Coursework.

---

### **MUZ2320H ACCOMPANYING II**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr E Kruger

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Accompanying I.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop the skills of the piano accompanist in various typical performance or teaching situations. The repertoire will cover more advanced solo vocal repertoire (art songs and standard operatic arias) and standard instrumental duo works from the Baroque to the present day. The required technical level is the same as for Piano B2: UNISA or Associated Board or Trinity Grade 8 to Teaching Licentiate level.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at lectures and due submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments 20%; Performance of repertoire 80%.

---

### **MUZ2322S AFRICAN MUSIC II**

21 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr R DeJa

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in African Music I

**Course outline:**

A study of selected topics in African popular musics, this course introduces students to some of the continent's most influential performers and recording artists, from Southern, Central, West and East Africa in the twentieth and twenty-first centuries. We look at similarities and differences in the music of these different regions and focus particularly on the dynamic nature of cultural interchange and the re-Africanisation of popular music on the continent. In addition to attending lectures, students will read popular and scholarly writings, engage in focused listening, and attend live performances when possible. Students will further develop their understanding of music through in-class discussions, online forums, essays and projects.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, essays, projects, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **MUZ2323H AFRICAN MUSIC ENSEMBLE II**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** By audition.

**Course outline:**

African Music Ensemble II will build on the standards achieved in African Music Ensemble I. This course continues to develop performing skills in African music through large-group practical work. As in African Ensemble I, sessions will be aimed at further developing the interpretative and performance skills built in African Instrument courses, enhancing the micro-work done in one-to-one practical study classes through participation in large scale performances for the stage under the guidance and tutorship of professional performers and directors. Activities include lectures and mandatory participation in rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

**MUZ2324H AURAL II**

15 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Aural I.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to intensify the skills developed in Aural I, incorporating more advanced levels of the essential musicianship areas established in Aural I, namely (1) sight singing and sight reading; and (2) transcription and aural analysis. The course content covers a wide variety of music styles and genres of more complex tonal and atonal music than offered in the first year.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance and completion of all prescribed coursework and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 40%; examination 60%.

---

**MUZ2328H CHAMBER MUSIC I**

21 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor F du Toit

**Course entry requirements:** This course is normally open only to students who are required to take it. Students who take it as an elective must audition for entry. Minimum requirements are instrument at A2 level, or Singing at A2-level, or Vocal Studies II-level, or have previously passed instrument or vocal studies at that level.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to give the student a broad overview of the chamber music for his or her instrument or vocal range. The “broad overview” pertains to both style/period and to instrumental groupings. This course requires a high degree of individual organisation, since professionals play chamber music almost entirely on a freelance basis, on the side of other full-time orchestral or solo jobs. In Chamber Music I, the student will work on advanced chamber repertoire.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lectures, 100% attendance at all concerts and coaching sessions where the student is due to play, and compliance with all other DP requirements as set out in the course requirements hand-out.

**Assessment:** 4 projects, chosen and marked according to the guidelines in the course requirements hand-out, and assessed at concerts or other sessions as approved by the course convener 95%; mark for general organization and professionalism 5%.

---

**MUZ2330H COMPOSITION I**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** At least 75% for Music Theory and Analysis I (Students who did not receive this mark or higher, may apply for a concession). ALL students, regardless if they have or have not achieved this mark, must submit a short portfolio of original compositions for assessment before being allowed to enrol for the course. *Please note that meeting the entrance requirements does not guarantee acceptance as class size is limited. Priority will be given to students in the Composition stream.*

**Course outline:**

This composition course is largely project based. During the academic year, students will complete four compositions (projects) for different instrumental combinations as assigned by the lecturer of no less than a performance duration of 12 - 15 minutes in total. Individual students will also present one seminar each semester on a topic of their choice. By request, students will receive individual guidance on their on-going projects by the lecturer. ALL compositions will be prepared with either the *Sibelius* or *Finale* programs. The following (including, but not limited to) composition techniques will be discussed: scale formations, melodic and rhythmic motifs and their development, melodic structure and shape, harmonic procedures, writing accompaniment, rhythmic profiles and designs, setting text to music, composing for voice and/or chorus, and larger formal structural design.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all projects by due dates, presentation of seminars, 100% attendance at lectures and seminars.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; final examination 50%.

---

### **MUZ2333H ENSEMBLE II**

*This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms, i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** B Phillips

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Ensemble I or audition (transferring students). Placement in Ensemble will be at the discretion of the Course Convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for both Ensemble II and an Ensemble Additional course (i.e. MUZ1368H – 2368H). However, Ensemble Additional courses may not be used as a substitute for Ensemble II. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, students must do the required number of years. Registration for non-music majors is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop ensemble skills for instrumentalists, including ability to play with each other and under a conductor, as preparation for both working as a professional instrumentalist, and for teaching ensembles at primary or secondary level. The course will also strengthen intonation and reading skills necessary for ensemble work. Students in Ensemble II will start taking parts involving more responsibility than in Ensemble I. Activities include rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

### **MUZ2339H JAZZ IN CONTEXT II**

21 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz in Context I.

**Course outline:**

This course reviews the development of jazz during the period of the mid-20th to the 21st century within the context of cultural communities and societies. Students will gain aural and historical perspectives on a range of jazz styles, arising from the proliferation of the jazz tradition in music of different cultures, including typically South African jazz. The course examines the innovative manner in which jazz styles evolved depending on the cultural context of the society. As with Jazz in Context I, the course content moves between diverse topics with an aim to develop context and insight, alongside critical reading, research and writing skills.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) 100%.

---

### **MUZ2340H MUSIC IN HISTORY AND SOCIETY II**

21 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor R Sandmeier

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in MUZ1340H Music in History and Society I.

**Course outline:**

The content of the course covers Western music from ca. 1600 to the present time. It uses a modular approach to investigate specific topics, including but not limited to major figures, compositions, genres, forms and compositional techniques, social, technical and aesthetic factors as well as institutions, methods and practices. In addition, lectures and seminars deal with the reading and critical evaluation of scholarly texts and aim to develop skills in academic writing.

**DP requirements:** Due submission of all assigned work; 80% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**MUZ2342H JAZZ ENSEMBLE II**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz Ensemble I or audition (for transferring students or particular performance groups). Placement in Jazz Ensemble will be at the discretion of the course convener. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, the student must complete the required number of years. Registration for non-music majors is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop jazz ensemble skills both as a professional performance and teaching skill. Performances are conducted in groups characteristic of the jazz idiom and related musical styles, ranging from 3- to 9-piece combo, to full big band format including vocalists depending on the selected repertoire material. The jazz vocal section conducts a full choir and small vocal ensemble under this course heading. Both vocalists and instrumentalists may be placed in groups that require interaction with a variety of instruments and styles. Ensembles rehearse under the guidance of staff members, and undertake public performances or recordings organised on and off campus by the ensemble directors in conjunction with the SACM Concerts Committee. The course codes I – IV align with the students' year of registration, and do not indicate graded levels of proficiency.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark: assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals, recordings and concerts.

---

**MUZ2343H JAZZ IMPROVISATION II**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor A Lilliey

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz Improvisation I.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to further develop and promote skills in jazz improvisation, familiarising students with the consensus melodic concepts of the bebop style period in context of standard repertoire. Lectures and practicals will be aimed at developing interpretative and integrative skills built during previous courses.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at classes and the completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 40%, performance of repertoire 60%.

---

**MUZ2346H REPERTOIRE AND APPLIED REPERTOIRE STUDIES II**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor F du Toit

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in MUZ2356H Repertoire and Applied Repertoire Studies I.

**Course outline:**

Repertoire II is the higher level in the process of broadening students' knowledge of the main body of compositions in the repertoire written for the instrument of their selected practical studies. Additionally, the course will include a practically-oriented component in which the repertoire knowledge will be applied. This will not only inform and deepen the students' understanding of the different historical style periods and various ways of writing for their instruments, but also develop their ability to work independently at interpretation, thus strengthening their individual musicianship. Course conveners for the various instruments will provide students with study guidelines and assessment methods.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and completion of all written assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests, exams and/or projects as per the course outline for specific instrument.

**MUZ2349H MUSIC EDUCATION I**

21 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Theory and Analysis I, Music Theory I, African Theory I or Jazz Theory I.

**Course outline:**

The course content covers group-teaching strategies and aims to introduce students to a variety of written and oral-based music teaching systems. Lectures and practical teaching in a group environment strive at developing integration and application of lateral thinking skills based on knowledge gained in core subjects of the degree (music theory, music history, aural training and the main music instrument), with the purpose to develop appropriate age-related teaching practices. As part of developing these skills, students will also be required to play the recorder.

**DP requirements:** The completion of all assignments and projects, and at least 80% attendance.

**Assessment:** Projects and assignments 50%; final examination 50%.

---

**MUZ2350H MUSIC THEORY II**

22 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Theory I.

**Course outline:**

The objectives of this course are to provide the student with a broad knowledge of harmonic and contrapuntal procedures and the use of formal structures during the Romantic period and the first half of the twentieth century. Content will include:

1. A study of the most important genres of these periods.
2. The use of harmonic and contrapuntal procedures and compositional techniques.
3. The use and adaptation of formal structures.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at lectures and tutorials; 50% year mark for prescribed course work, tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Course work 50%; final examination 50%.

---

**MUZ2351H MUSIC THEORY AND ANALYSIS II**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Theory and Analysis I.

**Course outline:**

The objectives of this course are to provide the student with an in-depth knowledge of harmonic and contrapuntal procedures and the use of formal structures during the Classical and early Romantic period including:

1. The use of functional harmony and its application in works such as sonatas, symphonies and vocal works.
2. The use of contrapuntal procedures, including the writing and analysis of canon and fugue subjects and answers (non-modulatory, real and tonal), and imitative counterpoint. On completion of the course, students will be able to write a fugal exposition on a given subject, and identify and analyse complete fugues as well as imitative procedures in selected works.
3. The use of formal structures in the Classical and early Romantic periods including binary, ternary, rondo, sonata and variation form, as well as the application of cyclic principles and the use of modulation to articulate structure.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at lectures and tutorials; 50% year mark for prescribed course work, tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Course work 50%, final examination 50%.

---

**MUZ2356H** REPERTOIRE AND APPLIED REPERTOIRE STUDIES I

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor F du Toit

**Course outline:**

Repertoire I is intended to broaden students' knowledge of the main body of compositions in the repertoire written for the instrument of their selected practical studies. Additionally, the course will include a practically-oriented component in which the repertoire knowledge will be applied. This will not only inform and deepen the students' understanding of the different historical style periods and various ways of writing for their instruments, but also develop their ability to work independently at interpretation, thus strengthening their individual musicianship. Course conveners for the various instruments will provide students with study guidelines and assessment methods.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and completion of all written assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests, exams and/or projects as per the course outline for specific instrument.

---

**MUZ2363H** THEORY OF JAZZ II

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor A Lilley

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Theory of Jazz I.

**Course outline:**

The course introduces more advanced harmonic practices in jazz including modal harmony, ambiguous harmony and reharmonisation in context of common jazz repertoire. Course material is designed to support concepts taught in jazz improvisation and jazz arrangement.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 40%; final examination 60%.

---

**MUZ2365H** TEACHING METHOD & REPERTOIRE I

9 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** C Malefane

**Course outline:**

This course is intended as a supplement to a classical singer's practical lessons. Instruction and information are offered concerning the rudiments of the technique of a healthy singing voice, through reading, lectures, listening. The basic conducting patterns and elementary lessons in diction are also addressed. Together, and with the guidance of the lecturer, the class also listens to a prescribed list of vocal repertoire and discusses its vocal challenges.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Tests 75%; final examination 25%.

---

**MUZ2366H** WORLD MUSIC ENSEMBLE II

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr R Deja

**Course entry requirements:** By audition

**Course outline:**

This course continues the practical study of the World Music ensembles through the introduction of more challenging repertoire. World Music Ensemble II builds on the standards achieved in the previous year. This course continues to develop performing skills in World Music through ensemble playing and sessions are aimed at further developing students' interpretative abilities in different World Musics. The specific offerings may vary from year to year. Activities include mandatory participation in rehearsals and performances. In the past this ensemble has included South Indian music and Brazilian samba.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

**MUZ2367S** WORLDS OF MUSIC II

21 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr R Deja**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Worlds of Music I.**Course outline:**

The course aims for a critical understanding of the development of musics in societies that experience periods of conflict or upheaval—social, political, religious, ecological, or other kinds—in recent and/or historical times; it is partly a way to consider the extraordinarily violent social, political and ecological disjunctions of the 20<sup>th</sup> century, and the work of music and musicians in creating both solidarity and division. The course is rooted in a working knowledge of the construction and function of some of the world's most distinctive musics. It involves lectures, readings, videos, sound recordings, works of art in other media, attendance—when possible—at live performances, and student mini-presentations on particular aspects of the work. In the past the course has considered: flamenco in Andalusia and the larger Spanish context; the experiences of Rom musicians in different parts of Europe; the New Song movement (*nueva canción*) in Cuba, Chile, and Argentina; music before and after the Cuban revolution, and after the crisis starting in 1990; Burmese traditional musics since the 1960s; and the music and arts of Aborigines in Australia. Given the need to master a volume and range of unfamiliar literature, the number of topics is limited.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests, including fieldwork and a research paper.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, projects, etc.) 100%.

---

**MUZ2368H** ENSEMBLE ADDITIONAL II

*(May not be offered in 2025). This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms, i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** B Phillips

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Ensemble Additional I or by audition (transferring students). Placement in Ensemble Additional will be at the discretion of the course convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for both the normal Ensemble course (i.e. MUZ1333H-MUZ4333H) and Ensemble Additional II. However, Ensemble Additional II may not be used as a substitute for any other Ensemble course. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, students must do the required number of years. Registration for non-music majors is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course is an adjunct to the Ensemble course, i.e. students selected for two ensembles may register for both Ensemble and Ensemble Additional. The course aims to develop additional ensemble skills for instrumentalists, as preparation for both working as a professional instrumentalist, and for teaching ensembles at primary or secondary level. Activities include rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

**MUZ2369H** JAZZ ENSEMBLE ADDITIONAL II

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** Enrolment in a degree or diploma. Placement in Jazz Ensemble Additional II is at the discretion of the course convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for another Ensemble course (i.e. MUZ2342H) and Jazz Ensemble Additional II. However, Jazz Ensemble Additional II may not be used as a substitute for any other Ensemble course.

**Course outline:**

For additional credit. This course aims to develop jazz ensemble skills both as a professional performance and teaching skill. Performances are conducted in groups characteristic of the jazz idiom and related musical styles, ranging from 3- to 9-piece combo, to full big band format including vocalists depending on the selected repertoire material. The jazz vocal section conducts a full choir and small vocal ensemble under this course heading. Both vocalists and instrumentalists may be placed in groups that require interaction with a variety of instruments and styles. Ensembles rehearse under the guidance of staff members, and undertake public performances or recordings organised on and off campus by the ensemble directors in conjunction with the SACM Concerts Committee. The course codes I – IV align with the students' year of registration, and do not indicate graded levels of proficiency.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals, recordings and concerts.

---

**MUZ2372H MUSIC TECHNOLOGY IIA**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** T Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Technology IA.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation and expansion of the introduction to the field of Music Technology covered in MUZ1381H Music Technology IA. As such, it is aimed at musically proficient students who have acquired basic skills in the use of technology to create and notate music. Students use digital audio workstations, located in a music technology laboratory with adjacent audio recording booth, to expand their practical skills and understanding in the field of acoustics, audio recording and MIDI sequencing. The methodology that is followed revolves around the setting of creative tasks and assignments for students to complete. The course primarily fosters and develops practical skills. However, sufficient time is devoted to introducing the theoretical fundamentals on which these skills rest.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 60%; final examination 40%.

---

**MUZ2373H MUSIC TECHNOLOGY IIB**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** T Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** At least 70% in Music Technology IA and a pass in NSC Maths, or at discretion of HOD.

**Co-requisites:** Music Technology IIA.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of the exploration of the field of Music Technology initiated in MUZ1381H Music Technology IA. It is intended for musically proficient students with experience in using technology to create and record music. The course is taken concurrently with MUZ2372H Music Technology IIA. Students use a digital audio workstation and peripheral equipment, located in a project recording studio, to develop practical skills in two focus areas. The two focus areas introduce fundamental principles and concepts in the field of audio recording and audio mixing. In addition, students' creative abilities are developed by the advanced use of patcher-based audio software for musical composition. A compulsory theoretical component continues the initial study of a considerable body of core literature and research covering the broader audio technology field. Topics that are studied include the formulation of units, standards and specifications pertaining to sound wave generation and propagation, acoustics, psychoacoustics, psychophysics and critical listening.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 40%; final examination 60%.



---

**MUZ2375H AFRICAN MUSIC THEORY II**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in African Music Theory I.

**Course outline:**

Through case studies presenting selected musical examples from distinct regions of Africa, this course will focus on processes of musical creation and composition in African music. Four major themes will be presented and illustrated, each grappling with the relationship between musical conceptualisation and performance in a different way:

1. Interlocking Techniques : East Africa
2. From Polyrhythm to Instrumental Polyphony : Central Africa
3. From Instrument to Instrument : South-Central African Belt
4. From Instrument to Vocal Polyphony : Southern Africa

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, and completion of all assigned work.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%, final examination 50%.

---

**MUZ2377H LYRIC DICTION II**

21 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor J Silver

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Lyric Diction I.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to build upon the foundation of the Lyric Diction I course by bringing the same tools to bear on the German language. A further aim will be to introduce students to the study and performance of the German lied repertoire, as an artistic aim in itself and as a building tool to mastery of the language for eventual use in operatic contexts. Students will develop fluency with the IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet) over the much broader array of phonemes present in German, and will also be encouraged to maintain the mastery of the tools presented in the first year course.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Tests, quizzes and participation 50%; performance of diction excerpts 50%.

---

**MUZ2379H JAZZ EAR TRAINING II**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor A Lilley

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz Ear Training I.

**Course outline:**

Comprehensive aural training in the jazz style, focusing on the recognition of melodic and harmonic material arising from the jazz tradition and aligned with internationally accepted common practice. The first-year course will concentrate on fundamental diatonic relationships, and in the second year progress to more complex linear and vertical structures.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (assignments, weekly reports, tests, etc.) counts 100%

---

**MUZ2380H AFRICAN AURAL II**

15 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in African Aural I.

**Course outline:**

A continuation of African Aural I, this course will consist of more intensive training in the field of practical African music, through further study of the melodic, harmonic and rhythmic materials arising from various African musical traditions. Sessions will be aimed at further refining students' practical and aural abilities through more advanced technical studies centred on the methodical development of eye/ear/hand-coordination skills. Students will be required to complete a set number of prescribed exercises in these areas.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance and the completion of all prescribed work.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%; examination 50%.

---

### **MUZ2404H OPERA TRAINING II**

*NOTE: This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms; i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

21 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor J Silver

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Opera Training I.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to reinforce and amplify the techniques learned in the previous course. Practical experience deepens and intensifies the work in large ensembles and introduces the preparation and presentation techniques necessary for working on staged solo scenes. A special emphasis is placed on moving smoothly from English, to vernacular, to operatic languages in study and rehearsal of scene work. A further important aim will be to promote skills in presentation and performance of recitativo secco. Students are introduced to stage make up, and body work is continued.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance.

**Assessment:** Coursework 80%; examination 20%.

---

### **MUZ3320H ACCOMPANYING III**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr E Kruger

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Accompanying II.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop the skills of the piano accompanist in various typical performance or teaching situations. The repertoire will cover advanced solo and vocal repertoire (advanced art songs and operatic arias and ensembles) and advanced instrumental duo works from the Baroque to the present day. The required technical level is the same as for Piano B3: UNISA or Associated Board or Trinity Teaching Licentiate level.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at lectures and due submission of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments 20 %; Performance of repertoire 80%.

---

### **MUZ3323H AFRICAN MUSIC ENSEMBLE III**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** By audition.

**Course outline:**

Through the introduction of more challenging repertoire, African Music Ensemble III will build on the standards achieved in African Music Ensemble II. This course continues to develop performing skills in African music through large-group practical work. As in African Ensemble I and II, sessions will be aimed at further developing the interpretative and performance skills built in African Instrument courses, enhancing the micro-work done in one-to-one practical study classes through participation in large scale performances for the stage under the guidance and tutorship of professional performers and directors. Activities include lectures and mandatory participation in rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

**MUZ3324F** ADVANCED TOPICS IN AFRICAN AND WORLD MUSICS 3

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R Deja

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in MUZ2322S African Music II or MUZ2367S Worlds of Music II.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to refine and extend the knowledge of world music cultures. It promotes critical approaches to researching, representing and interpreting the world's musics through engaging with readings, sound recordings, films, videos, new media, archival investigation and attending live performances. The focus is on recent and emerging research, including reading and responding to the archive in which traces of the musics pasts are curated.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all assignments, projects and tests and at least 80% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, essays, projects, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**MUZ3328H** CHAMBER MUSIC II

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor F du Toit

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Chamber Music I.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to give the student a broad overview of the chamber music for his or her instrument or vocal range. The "broad overview" pertains to both style/period and to instrumental groupings. This course requires a high degree of individual organisation, since professionals play chamber music almost entirely on a freelance basis, on the side of other full-time orchestral or solo jobs. In Chamber Music II, the student will work on more advanced chamber repertoire.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lectures, 100% attendance at all concerts and coaching sessions where the student is due to play, and compliance with all other DP requirements as set out in the course requirements hand-out.

**Assessment:** 4 projects, chosen and marked according to the guidelines in the course requirements hand-out, and assessed at concerts or other sessions as approved by the course convener 95%; mark for general organization and professionalism 5%.

---

**MUZ3330H** COMPOSITION II

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** At least 70% for Composition I. *Please note that meeting the entrance requirements does not guarantee acceptance as class size is limited. Priority will be given to students in the Composition stream.*

**Course outline:**

This course aims to familiarise students with selected compositional procedures in modern Western classical music, including alternative harmonic structures, modalism, modular compounds, pandiatonicism, polytonality, polymetre and serialism. Students will be expected to apply the knowledge acquired in the lectures in creative assignments which will include genres such as folk song arrangement, the madrigal, the art song, character pieces for piano and chamber works for winds and strings.

**DP requirements:** Due submission of all assigned work; 100% attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Assignments and coursework 50%; examination 50%.

---

**MUZ3333H** ENSEMBLE III

*This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms, i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** B Phillips

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Ensemble II or by audition (transferring students). Placement in Ensemble will be at the discretion of the Course Convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for both Ensemble III and an Ensemble Additional course (i.e. MUZ1368H – 3368H). However, Ensemble Additional courses may not be used as a substitute for Ensemble III. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, students must do the required number of years. Registration for non-music majors is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop ensemble skills for instrumentalists, including ability to play with each other and under a conductor, as preparation for both working as a professional instrumentalist, and for teaching ensembles at primary or secondary level. The course will also strengthen intonation and reading skills necessary for ensemble work. Students in Ensemble III will start taking parts involving more responsibility than in Ensemble II, e.g. Principal parts and/or taking sectionals. Activities include rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

### **MUZ3339H JAZZ IN CONTEXT III**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** N Xaluva

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz in Context II.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to impart critical skills and approaches to new research, perspectives and credible knowledge creation around evolving Jazz cultures. A contextual approach is taken to refine investigations into a range of topics, including cultures, genres, geographical regions, forms or styles, improvisational and structured approaches to techniques, or conducting explorations and analysis into emerging creative research areas. Lectures will include archival investigations, epistemic foundations, new media directions, the analysis of creative works, interactions as well as seminars, to foster interpretative analytical methodologies with creative research outcomes. This course should also stimulate cross-collaborative research practices between music research areas beyond the jazz tradition, such as African Music or Music Technology.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of lectures and completion of all prescribed coursework and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework (essays, projects, tests and assignments) counts 100%.

---

### **MUZ3340H MUSIC IN HISTORY AND SOCIETY III**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor R Sandmeier

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in History of Western Music II.

**Course outline:**

This course will use a diachronic approach to investigate specific topics, ranging from genres, forms, compositional techniques, to institutions, methods and practices. Lectures and seminars will be aimed to develop analytical, methodological, interpretative and integrative skills in the study of Western music in relation to primary sources, secondary literature and the music itself.

**DP requirements:** Due submission of all assigned work; 80% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) 100%.

---

### **MUZ3342H JAZZ ENSEMBLE III**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz Ensemble II or audition (for transferring students or particular performance groups). Placement in Jazz Ensemble will be at the discretion of the course

convener. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, the student must complete the required number of years. Registration for non-music majors is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop jazz ensemble skills both as a professional performance and teaching skill. Performances are conducted in groups characteristic of the jazz idiom and related musical styles, ranging from 3- to 9-piece combo, to full big band format including vocalists depending on the selected repertoire material. The jazz vocal section conducts a full choir and small vocal ensemble under this course heading. Both vocalists and instrumentalists may be placed in groups that require interaction with a variety of instruments and styles. Ensembles rehearse under the guidance of staff members, and undertake public performances or recordings organised on and off campus by the ensemble directors in conjunction with the SACM Concerts Committee. The course codes I – IV align with the students' year of registration, and do not indicate graded levels of proficiency.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark: assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals, recordings and concerts.

---

**MUZ3343H JAZZ IMPROVISATION III**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** J Bellairs

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz Improvisation II of at least 65%.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to further develop and promote skills in jazz improvisation, making students familiar with the common practice as developed in the bebop style period. Lectures and practicals will be aimed at developing interpretative and integrative skills built during previous courses (e.g. MUZ1343H; MUZ2343H) which cover large amounts of more basic information.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and tutorials and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests. Projects will be prepared for performance under supervision from a staff member, without which they will not be acceptable for examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%, performance of repertoire 50%.

---

**MUZ3349H MUSIC EDUCATION II**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Education I.

**Course outline:**

In comparison to Music Education I, the course covers more advanced group teaching strategies and introduces philosophies that underpin music education, aiming to make students aware of different and/or opposing philosophical perspectives and music psychological learning theories. Oral-based teaching receives special attention in that students will be required to play selected African music instruments. The application of the theoretical and philosophical underpinnings of the course finds a practical application in the required production of a mini-musical with a school or community group by the students.

**DP requirements:** The completion of all assignments and projects, and at least 80% attendance.

**Assessment:** Projects and assignments 50%; final examination 50%.

---

**MUZ3351H MUSIC THEORY AND ANALYSIS III**

27 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Theory and Analysis II.

**Course outline:**

A survey of certain harmonic procedures, contrapuntal devices, compositional techniques and formal structures characteristic of musical idiom from the late-Romantic period onwards. These will include

Wagnerian harmony, expanded tonality, atonality and serialism. In the latter part of the course a selection of works by South African composers will be analysed.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at lectures and tutorials. 50% year mark for prescribed course work, tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Assignments and coursework 50%; examinations 50%.

---

### **MUZ3355H** ORCHESTRATION I

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** A 75% pass for Music Theory and Analysis II and proficiency in the use of the *Sibelius* or *Finale* notation program. *Please note that meeting the entrance requirements does not guarantee acceptance as class size is limited. Priority will be given to students in the Composition stream.*

**Course outline:**

This orchestration course is largely project based and it will serve as an introduction to the basics of instrumentation and arrangement for the string, woodwind and brass sections (including timpani) of the standard symphony orchestra. Students will first orchestrate for the individual families of the orchestra. This will lead to the orchestration of existing piano works for the combined symphonic forces, typically used during the Classical and early Romantic eras. The following topics (including, but not limited to) will be discussed: notational conventions in an orchestral score, ranges of instruments and associated tone qualities, transposition, idiomatic writing, combination and balancing of instruments, scoring for combinations of various smaller ensembles, special effects where appropriate, scoring for full orchestra and analyses of relevant examples from the literature.

**DP requirements:** Due submission of all assigned work; 100% attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Projects 50%; examination 50%.

---

### **MUZ3360H** TEACHING METHOD

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** B Phillips

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Instrument B2 or A2.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to train students to teach his or her instrument up to Grade 12 and beyond. The course includes instrument teaching, didactics and educational repertoire. Students may be required to undertake individual practical teaching of their instrument, under supervision. The course is instrument specific and lecturers for the various instruments will provide the students with specific course outlines.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, due submission of all assignments and projects.

**Assessment:** As per individual instrumental teaching method course requirements hand-out. Projects and/or exams set by individual lecturers.

---

### **MUZ3365H** TEACHING METHOD & REPERTOIRE II

9 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor P Tikolo

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Teaching Method & Repertoire I.

**Course outline:**

This course is intended as a supplement to a classical singer's practical lessons. Instruction and information are offered concerning the rudiments of the technique of a healthy singing voice, through reading, lectures, listening and through one-on-one student teaching (in the second year of the course only). The basic conducting patterns and elementary lessons in diction are also addressed. Together, and with the guidance of the lecturer, the class also listens to a prescribed list of vocal repertoire and discusses its vocal challenges. One-on-one teaching, under supervision, is undertaken in this year.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Tests 75%; final examination 25%.

---

**MUZ3366H** WORLD MUSIC ENSEMBLE III

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R Deja

**Course entry requirements:** By audition.

**Course outline:**

Continuing the practical study of one of the World Music ensembles through the introduction of more challenging repertoire, World Music Ensemble III will build on the standards achieved in the previous years. This course continues to develop performing skills in World Music through ensemble playing and sessions will be aimed at further developing students' interpretative abilities of the different World Musics. Activities include mandatory participation in rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

**MUZ3368H** ENSEMBLE ADDITIONAL III

*(May not be offered in 2025). This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms, i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** B Phillips

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Ensemble Additional II or by audition (transferring students). Placement in Ensemble Additional will be at the discretion of the Course Convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for both the normal Ensemble course (i.e. MUZ1333H - 4333H) and Ensemble Additional III. However, Ensemble Additional III may not be used as a substitute for any other Ensemble course. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, students must do the required number of years. No pre-requisite for BMus students; registration for other students is at the discretion of the Course Convener.

**Course outline:**

This course is an adjunct to the Ensemble course, i.e. students selected for two ensembles may register for both Ensemble and Ensemble Additional. The course aims to develop additional ensemble skills for instrumentalists, as preparation for both working as a professional instrumentalist, and for teaching ensembles at primary or secondary level. Activities include rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

**MUZ3369H** JAZZ ENSEMBLE ADDITIONAL III

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** Enrollment in a degree or diploma. Placement in Jazz Ensemble Additional III is at the discretion of the course convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for another Ensemble course (i.e. MUZ3342H) and Jazz Ensemble Additional III. However, Jazz Ensemble Additional III may not be used as a substitute for any other Ensemble course.

**Course outline:**

For additional credit. This course aims to develop jazz ensemble skills both as a professional performance and teaching skill. Performances are conducted in groups characteristic of the jazz idiom and related musical styles, ranging from 3- to 9-piece combo, to full big band format including vocalists depending on the selected repertoire material. The jazz vocal section conducts a full choir and small vocal ensemble under this course heading. Both vocalists and instrumentalists may be placed in groups that require interaction with a variety of instruments and styles. Ensembles rehearse

under the guidance of staff members, and undertake public performances or recordings organised on and off campus by the ensemble directors in conjunction with the SACM Concerts Committee. The course codes I – IV align with the students' year of registration, and do not indicate graded levels of proficiency.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals, recordings and concerts.

---

### **MUZ3371H** MUSIC TECHNOLOGY IIIA

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** T Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Technology IIA.

**Course outline:**

This course is the culmination of the introduction to and exploration of the practical aspects of the field of Music Technology covered in MUZ1381H Music Technology IA and MUZ2372H Music Technology IIA. As such, it is aimed at musically proficient students who possess advanced skills in the use of technology for MIDI sequencing and audio recording. Students use digital audio workstations, located in a music technology laboratory with adjacent audio recording booth, to hone and demonstrate their practical skills in the field of live musical performance and audio recording. The methodology that is followed revolves around the setting of creative tasks and assignments for students to complete and perform. The course primarily fosters and develops practical skills. However, sufficient time is devoted to introducing the theoretical fundamentals on which these skills rest.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 60%; examination 40%.

---

### **MUZ3372H** MUSIC TECHNOLOGY IIIB

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** T Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Technology IIA and IIB.

**Co-requisites:** Music Technology IIIA.

**Course outline:**

This course is a continuation of the exploration of the field of Music Technology initiated in MUZ1381H Music Technology IA and developed further in MUZ2372H Music Technology IIB. It is intended for musically proficient students with advanced skills in using technology to create and record music. The course is taken concurrently with MUZ3371H Music Technology IIIA. Students use a digital audio workstation and peripheral equipment, located in a project recording studio, to develop practical skills in two focus areas. The two focus areas introduce fundamental principles and concepts in the field of audio mastering and audio production. In addition, students' creative abilities are developed by the advanced use of patcher-based audio software for musical composition. A compulsory theoretical component continues the initial study of a considerable body of core literature and research covering the broader audio technology field. Topics that are studied include the formulation of units, standards and specifications pertaining to sound wave generation and propagation, acoustics, psychoacoustics, psychophysics and critical listening.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 40%; examination 60%.

---

### **MUZ3375H** AFRICAN MUSIC THEORY III

27 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in African Music Theory II.

**Course outline:**



This course consists of more in-depth analysis of the dynamics of composition and improvisation in African musical practice. Case studies will be used as point of departure for reflection on the following core-questions:

1. what cognitive frameworks contribute to the shaping of any specific musical realisation?
2. what is the relationship between articulated or implicit 'theory' and actual 'practice' in a given musical tradition?
3. what attitudes and perceptions feed into the dynamics of performance in contemporary African musical practice?

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures, and completion of all assigned work.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 50%, examination 50%.

---

### **MUZ3377H LYRIC DICTION III**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor J Silver

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Lyric Diction II.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to introduce students to the basic rules of French pronunciation for the stage, in both operatic and art song repertoire. The use of IPA (International Phonetic Alphabet) is continued and expanded to apply to the French language, and issues such as proper vocal execution of the French nasal vowels, liaison and elision, and correct execution of the "mute" vowel are examined, always with the twin goals of clarity and vocal efficacy used as the standard by which results are judged.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Tests, quizzes and participation 50%; performance of diction excerpts 50%.

---

### **MUZ3379H JAZZ STYLES & ANALYSIS**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Tiffin

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Theory of Jazz I and History of Jazz II.

**Co-requisites:** Theory of Jazz II (for students who did not complete the course in their second year of study).

**Course outline:**

An in-depth study of jazz styles from the 1920s to the present, focusing on significant recordings by major artists representing the definitive style periods. Core material includes analysis of jazz improvisation transcribed from such recordings in order to identify stylistic traits and technical approaches, and the development of aural recognition of contemporary harmonic and linear vocabularies.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and the timeous completion of all assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; examination 50%.

---

### **MUZ3380H JAZZ PEDAGOGY**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Tiffin

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the 4<sup>th</sup> year of the TLD and BMus curricula in Jazz Studies.

**Course outline:**

A comprehensive course that equips students with a range of jazz related disciplines for the teaching of jazz at junior and high school levels. Weekly meetings plus 2 observations of 3 different jazz ensembles. 1) Auditions, 2) Rehearsal techniques, 3) Teaching techniques, 4) Score study & the jazz combo in education, 5) Arrangements and compositions-sources and evaluation, 6) Transcription & analysis, 7) Assistance for prospective band directors, 8) Examination of existing programs, 9) Myths that affect jazz education, 10) Problems in jazz related to academia, 11) Bibliographic resources: arranging & composition, journals, improvisation & theory, history, biographies & autobiographies,

12) Formation of a jazz degree program: philosophy, admin, faculty, content, 13) Jazz in high school & the future of jazz education.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance and completion of all prescribed coursework and assignments. Projects will be prepared for performance under supervision from a staff member, without which they will not be acceptable for examination.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%, examination 50%.

---

### **MUZ3381H JAZZ MASTERCLASS**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** N Xaluva

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the 3<sup>rd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup> year of the DMP or BMus curricula in Jazz Studies.

**Course outline:**

A required class for all jazz students. A comprehensive course that aims to prepare the jazz student for entry into the professional music industry. The course covers professional development, essential music business skills, intellectual property considerations for the jazz composer and related professional skills required for the professional musician as entrepreneur.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at classes.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, projects, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **MUZ3384H JAZZ ARRANGING A**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** A 70% pass in Theory of Jazz II and proficiency in the use of an accepted music notation programme. *Please note that meeting the entrance requirements does not guarantee acceptance, as class size is limited.*

**Course outline:**

The study of arrangements and orchestration for larger instrumental groups in the Jazz style, encompassing variants within the Jazz Tradition and vocal feature arrangements. Emphasis is on the standard stage band format, identifying procedures developed through common practice in the formative style periods. Projects will be prepared for performance under supervision from a staff member, without which they will not be acceptable for examination.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and tutorials and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests. Projects will be prepared for performance under supervision from a staff member, without which they will not be acceptable for examination.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, projects, etc.) 100%.

---

### **MUZ3404H OPERA TRAINING III**

*NOTE: This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms; i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

48 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor J Silver

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Opera Training II.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces the students to the integrated preparation of linguistic, physical, theatrical and vocal elements of performing complete operatic roles. Lectures will focus masterclass style preparation of audition arias for the season as well as introducing students to the realities of putting the work in front of the public, whether performed with piano or in fully staged productions. Part of the course will train students in physical awareness, relaxation and creative movement. Students will increase their movement capabilities, and deepen their understanding of their own bodies.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance.

**Assessment:** Course work 25%; operatic performance 75%.

---

**MUZ3702H** ADVANCED VOCAL STUDIES

*(Not offered in 2025)*

48 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor P Tikolo

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the Advanced Diploma in Opera.

**Course outline:**

The course prepares with students the vocal parts of two operatic performances per year. One of them will be a major role in a SACM opera production. The second performance may consist of a programme of staged extracts in completed scenes. Both performances will demonstrate high proficiency in operatic singing.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lessons and (where applicable), studio classes.

**Assessment:** Performance to be examined by a panel appointed by Senate. The candidate's performance time must total 25-30 minutes including at least 8 minutes of singing. The programmes must be submitted to and approved by the departmental Higher Degrees Committee (HDC), and the performance must take place at a time and venue decided by the HDC. No item sung in an earlier performance may be repeated in any other examination performance.

---

**MUZ3704W** ADVANCED OPERA WORKSHOP

*(May not be offered in 2025). This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms, i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

60 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor J Silver

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the Advanced Diploma in Opera.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop skills and promote confidence in the performance of principal roles in both the standard and the contemporary operatic repertoire, whether performed with piano or in fully staged productions.

Part of the course will introduce students to choreographic techniques. By engaging creatively and choreographically with movement, students will expand their body awareness and their physical abilities in performance.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at rehearsals, coachings and performances.

**Assessment:** Assignments 25%; operatic performances 75%.

---

**MUZ3707H** ADVANCED TRANSCRIPTION METHODS (AFRICAN MUSIC)

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the Advanced Diploma in Music. A pass in MUZ3375H African Music Theory III.

**Course outline:**

A course designed to develop skills in practical transcription relevant to the study and notation of African Music. Course-work consists of guided hands-on transcription practice through case studies, both of archival footage and live performances. The course will highlight the challenges of transcribing various genres of African Music and develop the proficiencies of research students specialising in African music studies as well as students in African performance.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance and completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** 60% coursework; 40% exam.

---

**MUZ3708H** ADVANCED REPERTOIRE STUDIES (JAZZ)

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Tiffin

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in MUZ3379H Jazz Styles and Analysis, or equivalent course from another university.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop and promote skills focusing on an in-depth study of selected topics relating to the repertoire of the student's specific instrument. The course will involve applied research as well as practice-based research intended to broaden students' knowledge at an advanced level. Course work will include seminars on repertoire in the jazz and jazz-influenced styles, not covered in History of Jazz I and II.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance and completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, essays, projects, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**MUZ3709H ADVANCED REPERTOIRE (WESTERN CLASSICAL)**

*(Not offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor F du Toit

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to the Advanced Diploma in Music.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop and promote skills focusing on an in-depth study of selected topics relating to the repertoire of the student's specific instrument. The course will involve applied research as well as practice-based research intended to broaden students' knowledge at an advanced level. Course work will include seminars on repertoire not covered in Repertoire I and II and will aim to equip the students with the skills and knowledge necessary to compile programmes for the purposes of presenting balanced and informed concerts. Course conveners for various instruments will provide students with study guidelines.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance and completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** 60% coursework; 40% exam.

---

**MUZ4323H AFRICAN MUSIC ENSEMBLE IV**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Dr B Clacherty

**Course entry requirements:** By audition.

**Course outline:**

Through the introduction of ensemble repertoire that will require a very high degree of musical skill, African Music Ensemble IV will build on the standards achieved in African Music Ensemble III. This course continues to develop performing skills in African music through large-group practical work. As in African Ensemble I, II and III, sessions will be aimed at further developing the interpretative and performance skills built in African Instrument courses, enhancing the micro-work done in one-to-one practical study classes through participation in large scale performances for the stage under the guidance and tutorship of professional performers and directors. Activities include lectures and mandatory participation in rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

**MUZ4324S ADVANCED TOPICS IN AFRICAN AND WORLD MUSICS 4**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Bruinders

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in MUZ3324F Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3.

**Course outline:**

This course builds on the knowledge of world music cultures gained in the previous course, Advanced Topics in African and World Musics 3. It takes the form of a seminar and promotes critical approaches to researching, representing and interpreting the world's musics through engaging with readings,

sound recordings, films, videos, new media, archival investigation and attending live performances. The focus is on recent and emerging research, including reading and responding to the archive in which traces of the musics pasts are curated

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance and completion of all coursework.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, projects, etc.) 100%.

---

### **MUZ4328H CHAMBER MUSIC III**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor F du Toit

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Chamber Music II.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to give the student a broad overview of the chamber music for his or her instrument or vocal range. The “broad overview” pertains to both style/period and to instrumental groupings. This course requires a high degree of individual organisation, since professionals play chamber music almost entirely on a freelance basis, on the side of other full-time orchestral or solo jobs. In Chamber Music IV, the student will work on more advanced chamber repertoire.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lectures, 100% attendance at all concerts and coaching sessions where the student is due to play, and compliance will all other DP requirements as set out in the course requirements hand-out.

**Assessment:** Four projects, chosen and marked according to the guidelines in the course requirements hand-out, and assessed at concerts or other sessions as approved by the course convener 95%; mark for general organization and professionalism 5%.

---

### **MUZ4330H COMPOSITION III**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** At least 65% for Composition II and 65% for Orchestration I. *Please note that meeting the entrance requirements does not guarantee acceptance as class size is limited. Priority will be given to students in the Composition stream.*

**Course outline:**

This course continues the process initiated in Composition II of familiarising students with selected compositional procedures in modern Western classical music. The areas to be investigated include instrumental virtuosity and extended techniques, contemporary choral writing, modern applications of sonata form, operatic vocality and orchestral writing. Students will be expected to apply the knowledge acquired in the lectures in creative assignments which will include genres such as works for solo instruments, for solo instrument and piano, for choir, for voice and chamber orchestra and for full orchestra.

**DP requirements:** Due submission of all assigned work; 100% attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Portfolio of compositions 100%.

---

### **MUZ4333H ENSEMBLE IV**

*This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms, i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** B Phillips

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Ensemble III or by audition (transferring students). Placement in Ensemble will be at the discretion of the Course Convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for both Ensemble IV and an Ensemble Additional course (i.e. MUZ1368H – 4368H). However, Ensemble Additional courses may not be used as a substitute for Ensemble IV. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, students must do the required number of years. Registration for non-music majors is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop ensemble skills for instrumentalists, including ability to play with each other and under a conductor, as preparation for both working as a professional instrumentalist, and for teaching ensembles at primary or secondary level. The course will also strengthen intonation and reading skills necessary for ensemble work. Students in Ensemble IV will start taking parts involving more responsibility than in Ensemble III, e.g. Concertmaster role. Activities include rehearsals and performances.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals and concerts.

---

**MUZ4340H MUSIC IN HISTORY AND SOCIETY IV**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Professor R Sandmeier

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in MUZ3340H Music in History and Society III.

**Course outline:**

This course will use a diachronic approach to investigate specific topics, ranging from genres, forms, compositional techniques, to institutions, methods and practices. Lectures and seminars will be aimed to develop analytical, methodological, interpretative and integrative skills in the study of Western music in relation to primary sources, secondary literature and the music itself.

**DP requirements:** Due submission of all assigned work; 80% attendance at lectures.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) 100%.

---

**MUZ4342H JAZZ ENSEMBLE IV**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz Ensemble III or audition (for transferring students or particular performance groups). Placement in Jazz Ensemble will be at the discretion of the course convener. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, the student must complete the required number of years. Registration for non-music majors is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop jazz ensemble skills both as a professional performance and teaching skill. Performances are conducted in groups characteristic of the jazz idiom and related musical styles, ranging from 3- to 9-piece combo, to full big band format including vocalists depending on the selected repertoire material. The jazz vocal section conducts a full choir and small vocal ensemble under this course heading. Both vocalists and instrumentalists may be placed in groups that require interaction with a variety of instruments and styles. Ensembles rehearse under the guidance of staff members, and undertake public performances or recordings organised on and off campus by the ensemble directors in conjunction with the SACM Concerts Committee. The course codes I – IV align with the students' year of registration, and do not indicate graded levels of proficiency.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals, recordings and concerts.

---

**MUZ4351H MUSIC THEORY AND ANALYSIS IV**

36 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Theory and Analysis III.

**Course outline:**

The objectives of the course are to provide the student with an in-depth knowledge of certain stylistic features and compositional techniques of music from the late-Romantic era and the twentieth century. Areas to be investigated include ambiguous and symbolic harmonic usage, modalism and its

integration with chromaticism, stratification, alternative chord structures, interval collections, modular compounds, total serialism and Post-Modernism.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance; due submission of all assigned work.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 75%; examination 25%.

---

### **MUZ4355H** ORCHESTRATION II

24 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor M Watt

**Course entry requirements:** A 70% pass in Orchestration I. *Please note that meeting the entrance requirements does not guarantee acceptance as class size is limited. Priority will be given to students in the Composition stream.*

**Course outline:**

This course expands on the work done in Orchestration I through a survey of selected instrumental usages and orchestral techniques in Western classical music from the Romantic era to the present. Styles to be investigated include the Romantic, late-Romantic, Impressionist, neo-Classical, Primitivist and Modernist. Students will be expected to apply in the assignments the knowledge acquired in the lectures.

**DP requirements:** Due submission of all assigned work; 100% attendance at lectures and tutorials.

**Assessment:** Projects 50%; examination 50%.

---

### **MUZ4368H** ENSEMBLE ADDITIONAL IV

*(May not be offered in 2025). This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms, i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** B Phillips

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz Ensemble III or audition (for transferring students or particular performance groups). Placement in Jazz Ensemble will be at the discretion of the course convener. If the degree (or diploma) requires four (or three) years of ensemble, the student must complete the required number of years. Registration for non-music majors is at the discretion of the course convener.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop jazz ensemble skills both as a professional performance and teaching skill. Performances are conducted in groups characteristic of the jazz idiom and related musical styles, ranging from 3- to 9-piece combo, to full big band format including vocalists depending on the selected repertoire material. The jazz vocal section conducts a full choir and small vocal ensemble under this course heading. Both vocalists and instrumentalists may be placed in groups that require interaction with a variety of instruments and styles. Ensembles rehearse under the guidance of staff members, and undertake public performances or recordings organised on and off campus by the ensemble directors in conjunction with the SACM Concerts Committee. The course codes I – IV align with the students' year of registration, and do not indicate graded levels of proficiency.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark; assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals, recordings and concerts.

---

### **MUZ4369H** JAZZ ENSEMBLE ADDITIONAL IV

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** M van Noie

**Course entry requirements:** Enrollment in a degree or diploma. Placement in Jazz Ensemble Additional IV is at the discretion of the course convener. Students selected for two ensembles may register for another Ensemble course (i.e. MUZ4342H) and Jazz Ensemble Additional IV. However, Jazz Ensemble Additional IV may not be used as a substitute for any other Ensemble course.

**Course outline:**

For additional credit. This course aims to develop jazz ensemble skills both as a professional performance and teaching skill. Performances are conducted in groups characteristic of the jazz idiom and related musical styles, ranging from 3- to 9-piece combo, to full big band format including vocalists depending on the selected repertoire material. The jazz vocal section conducts a full choir and small vocal ensemble under this course heading. Both vocalists and instrumentalists may be placed in groups that require interaction with a variety of instruments and styles. Ensembles rehearse under the guidance of staff members, and undertake public performances or recordings organised on and off campus by the ensemble directors in conjunction with the SACM Concerts Committee. The course codes I – IV align with the students' year of registration, and do not indicate graded levels of proficiency.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at rehearsals; 100% attendance at performances.

**Assessment:** Students receive a percentage mark: assessment is based on attendance, conduct, and the quality of performance as assessed during rehearsals, recordings and concerts.

---

**MUZ4371H MUSIC TECHNOLOGY IV**

72 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** T Herbst

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Music Technology IIIA and IIIB.

**Course outline:**

Music Technology IV expands and refines the music technology practical and theoretical course content with the aim of preparing students for postgraduate research or entry into the audio technology industry. Course material covers 1) advanced studies of computer-based music systems; 2) the mathematical formulation of units, standards and specifications pertaining to sound wave generation and propagation; 3) acoustics, audio programming, audio technology, critical listening, psychoacoustics and -physics, and creative work.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests and assignments 40%; examination 60%.

---

**MUZ4372W MUSICOLOGY**

60 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Professor R Sandmeier

**Course entry requirements:** At least 70% in MUZ3340H Music in History and Society III or MUZ3324F Advanced Topics in African and World Musics III.

**Course outline:**

This course offers an introduction to the nature and disciplines of musicology (the scholarly study of music) that equips students for the advanced study of music at postgraduate level. Topics covered include historical, systematic and “new” musicology, theory and analysis, textural scholarship, organology, lexicography, gender studies, sociomusicology, criticism and performing practice. In addition, it develops the research and writing skills in musicology. As part of the assessment, students submit a 7000-word treatise on an approved topic.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at lectures and due submission of all assigned work.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (projects, assignments, treatise, weekly reports, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**MUZ4382W JAZZ IMPROVISATION IV**

48 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Professor A Lilley

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz Improvisation III of at least 65%.

**Course outline:**

Advanced level of study following on from Jazz Improvisation III, continuing the development of improvisation skills in a tonal domain reflecting common practice of the Bop Era, moving on to modal and more chromatic styles of the 1950s and beyond. Emphasis is given to the understanding of work



by the Post-Bop masters such as John Coltrane as well as development of individuality and style within the language and tradition in context of repertoire.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at classes and the completion of all tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 40%, performance of repertoire 60%.

---

### **MUZ4384H JAZZ ARRANGING B**

48 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Tiffin

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Jazz Theory 2, and a pass with 70% or more in Jazz Arranging A. Please note that meeting the entrance requirements does not guarantee acceptance, as class size is limited.

**Course outline:**

The study of arrangement and orchestration for larger instrumental groups in the Jazz style, encompassing variants with the Jazz Tradition and vocal feature arrangements. Emphasis is on the standard stage band format, identifying procedures developed through common practice in the formative type periods. Projects will be prepared for performance under supervision from a staff member, without which they will not be acceptable for examination.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures and tutorials and the completion of all assignments, projects and tests. Projects will be prepared for performance under supervision from a staff member, without which they will not be acceptable for examination.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (tests, quizzes, assignments, projects, etc.) 100%.

---

### **MUZ4404H OPERA TRAINING IV**

*NOTE: This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside the usual university teaching terms; i.e. from the beginning of February to the end of December each year.*

60 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Professor J Silver

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in Opera Training III.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop skills and promote confidence in the performance of principal roles in both the standard and contemporary operatic repertoire, whether performed with piano or in fully staged productions. Part of the course will introduce students to choreographic techniques. By engaging creatively and choreographically with movement, students will expand their body awareness and their physical abilities in performance.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance.

**Assessment:** Assignments 25%; operatic performance 75%.

---

## **Languages for musicians:**

---

### **SLL1091H FRENCH FOR MUSICIANS A**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course outline:**

This course is specifically designed for singers, with special emphasis being placed on three components relevant to song and opera: phonetics and pronunciation, development of translation skills (French to English) and knowledge of selected French songs and operas. In the teaching of the course, particular attention is given to the speaking and reading of French, in addition to concentrating on particular libretti in both semesters. Attention is particularly reserved for any French opera currently in production. The course will thus function as an introduction to the French language and culture.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at classes; completion of tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests 40%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 40%; oral examination 20%.

---

**SLL1092H** GERMAN FOR MUSICIANS A

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course outline:**

This course is specifically designed for singers, with special emphasis being placed on three components relevant to song and opera: phonetics and pronunciation, development of translation skills (German to English) and knowledge of selected German songs and operas. In the teaching of the course, particular attention is given to the speaking and reading of German, in addition to concentrating on particular libretti in both semesters. Attention is particularly reserved for any German opera currently in production. The course will thus function as an introduction to the German language and culture.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at classes; completion of tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests 40%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 40%; oral examination 20%.

---

**SLL1093H** ITALIAN FOR MUSICIANS A

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course outline:**

This course is specifically designed for singers with special emphasis placed on components relevant to song and opera: phonetics and pronunciation, development of translation skills (Italian to English) and knowledge of selected Italian songs and operas. In the teaching of the course, particular attention is given to the speaking and reading of Italian, in addition to concentrating on particular libretti in both semesters. Attention is particularly reserved for any Italian opera currently in production. The course will thus function as an introduction to the Italian language and culture.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at classes; completion of tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests 40%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 40%; oral examination 20%.

---

**SLL1094H** FRENCH FOR MUSICIANS B

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course outline:**

This course builds on material learnt in the A version course and is specifically designed for singers, with special emphasis being placed on three components relevant to song and opera: phonetics and pronunciation, development of translation skills (French to English) and knowledge of selected French songs and operas. In the teaching of the course, particular attention is given to the speaking and reading of French, in addition to concentrating on particular libretti in both semesters. Attention is particularly reserved for any French opera currently in production. The course will thus function as an introduction to the French language and culture.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at classes; completion of tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests 40%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 40%; oral examination 20%.

---

**SLL1095H** GERMAN FOR MUSICIANS B

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course outline:**

This course builds on material learnt in the A version course and is specifically designed for singers, with special emphasis being placed on three components relevant to song and opera: phonetics and pronunciation, development of translation skills (German to English) and knowledge of selected German songs and operas. In the teaching of the course, particular attention is given to the speaking and reading of German, in addition to concentrating on particular libretti in both semesters. Attention

is particularly reserved for any German opera currently in production. The course will thus function as an introduction to the German language and culture.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at classes; completion of tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests 40%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 40%; oral examination 20%.

**SLL1096H ITALIAN FOR MUSICIANS B**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Singer

**Course outline:**

This course builds on material learnt in the A version course and is specifically designed for singers, with special emphasis being placed on components relevant to song and opera: phonetics and pronunciation, development of translation skills (Italian to English) and knowledge of selected Italian songs and operas. In the teaching of the course, particular attention is given to the speaking and reading of Italian, in addition to concentrating on particular libretti in both semesters. Attention is particularly reserved for any Italian opera currently in production. The course will thus function as an introduction to the Italian language and culture.

**DP requirements:** At least 75% attendance at classes; completion of tests and assignments.

**Assessment:** Tests 40%; 2-hour written examination in October/November 40%; oral examination 20%.

**Instrumental and Vocal Studies**

*[Course codes at the end of this entry]*

	A		B		C		D	
	NQF Credits	HEQSF level	NQF Credits	HEQSF level	NQF Credits	HEQSF level	NQF Credits	HEQSF level
1			30	5			12	5
2	36	6	30	6	24	6	24	6
3	48	7	36	7	24	7	24	7
4	60	8	48	8	24	8	24	8

**Course co-ordinators:**

African Instruments:	Professor D Plaatjies
Brass:	W Haubrich
Conducting:	B Phillips
Guitar:	J Grace
Jazz Studies:	Associate Professor A Tiffin
Keyboard Studies:	Associate Professor F du Toit
Percussion:	F Mallows
Secondary Piano:	Associate Professor F du Toit
Strings:	Associate Professor F Bacharova
Vocal Studies:	Associate Professor P Tikolo
Woodwind:	B Phillips

**Course entry requirements:** For B-level instrumental study, the entrance requirement is Grade VII practical (Unisa or equivalent). For D-level instrumental study, the entrance requirement is Grade V practical (Unisa or equivalent). Auditions are required. All students registered for A- and B-level studies (including BA students) are obliged to play in the UCT ensembles and symphony orchestra. Students registered for C- and D-level studies may be obliged to play in the UCT ensembles and symphony orchestra at the discretion of the director, in consultation with the course conveners. Students who are not music majors (*i.e.* BA students) may not register for instrumental or vocal studies on the D level, or as a Practical Studies subject. Students must enrol in and pass instrument B1/C1/D1 before they may enrol in instrument A2/B2/C2/D2. The entrance requirement for A-level study is at least 75% in the B1 practical course, and evidence of having participated in solo performances UCT

concerts and competitions throughout the B1 year. For subsequent years, students must enrol in and pass instrument A2/B2/C2/D2 before they may enrol in instrument A3/B3/C3/D3, and must enrol in and pass instrument A3/B3/C3/D3 before they may enrol in instrument A4/B4/C4/D4.

**Course outline:** The Instrumental and Vocal Studies courses are at four different levels: the student must consult the curriculum rules for a particular degree or diploma in order to ascertain which levels apply. In addition to individual practical tuition, Jazz Singing B1, B2 and B3 incorporate modules on Jazz Vocal Techniques of one lecture per week.

**DP requirements:** 80% attendance at lessons and (where applicable), studio classes, and compliance with all other DP requirements as set out in the SACM course requirements. In addition every student must attend 26 performances of the SACM during the academic year. This is a DP requirement for A- and B-level Instrument and Vocal Studies courses. Students may count attendances at lunchtime concerts and official SACM concerts.

**Non-music courses**

If a student's choice of non-music subject results in a timetable clash with a music subject, the music subject will take precedence.

INSTRUMENT	1	2	3	4
AFRICAN INSTRUMENT A		MUZ2200H	MUZ3200H	MUZ4200W
AFRICAN INSTRUMENT B	MUZ1201H	MUZ2201H	MUZ3201H	MUZ4201W
AFRICAN INSTRUMENT C		MUZ2202H	MUZ3202H	MUZ4202H
AFRICAN INSTRUMENT D	MUZ1203H	MUZ2203H	MUZ3203H	MUZ4203H
ACCORDION A		MUZ22308H	MUZ3308H	MUZ4308W
ACCORDION B	MUZ1309H	MUZ22309H	MUZ3309H	MUZ4309W
BASS GUITAR B	MUZ1204H	MUZ2204H	MUZ3204H	MUZ4204W
BASS GUITAR D	MUZ1205H	MUZ2205H	MUZ3205H	MUZ4205H
BASSOON A		MUZ2206H	MUZ3206H	MUZ4206W
BASSOON B	MUZ1207H	MUZ2207H	MUZ3207H	MUZ4207W
BASSOON C		MUZ2208H	MUZ3208H	MUZ4208H
BASSOON D	MUZ1209H	MUZ2209H	MUZ3209H	MUZ4209H
CELLO A		MUZ2210H	MUZ3210H	MUZ4210W
CELLO B	MUZ1211H	MUZ2211H	MUZ3211H	MUZ4211W
CELLO C		MUZ2212H	MUZ3212H	MUZ4212H
CELLO D	MUZ1213H	MUZ2213H	MUZ3213H	MUZ4213H
CLARINET A		MUZ2214H	MUZ3214H	MUZ4214W
CLARINET B	MUZ1215H	MUZ2215H	MUZ3215H	MUZ4215W
CLARINET C		MUZ2216H	MUZ3216H	MUZ4216H
CLARINET D	MUZ1217H	MUZ2217H	MUZ3217H	MUZ4217H
CLASSICAL SAXOPHONE A		MUZ2385H	MUZ3385H	MUZ4385W
CLASSICAL SAXOPHONE B	MUZ1386H	MUZ2386H	MUZ3386H	MUZ4386H
CLASSICAL SAXOPHONE C		MUZ2387H	MUZ3387H	MUZ4387H
CLASSICAL SAXOPHONE D	MUZ1388H	MUZ2388H	MUZ3388H	MUZ4388H
CONDUCTING A		MUZ2218H	MUZ3218H	MUZ4218W
CONDUCTING B	MUZ1219H	MUZ2219H	MUZ3219H	MUZ4219W
CONDUCTING D	MUZ1220H	MUZ2220H	MUZ3220H	MUZ4220H
DOUBLE BASS A		MUZ2222H	MUZ3222H	MUZ4222W

MUSIC, SOUTH AFRICAN COLLEGE OF 356

DOUBLE BASS B	MUZ1223H	MUZ2223H	MUZ3223H	MUZ4223W
DOUBLE BASS C		MUZ2224H	MUZ3224H	MUZ4224H
DOUBLE BASS D	MUZ1225H	MUZ2225H	MUZ3225H	MUZ4225H
DRUM SET B	MUZ1226H	MUZ2226H	MUZ3226H	MUZ4226W
DRUM SET D	MUZ1227H	MUZ2227H	MUZ3227H	MUZ4227H
EUPHONIUM A		MUZ2228H	MUZ3228H	MUZ4228W
EUPHONIUM B	MUZ1229H	MUZ2229H	MUZ3229H	MUZ4229W
EUPHONIUM C		MUZ2230H	MUZ3230H	MUZ4230H
EUPHONIUM D	MUZ1231H	MUZ2231H	MUZ3231H	MUZ4231H
FLUTE A		MUZ2232H	MUZ3232H	MUZ4232W
FLUTE B	MUZ1233H	MUZ2233H	MUZ3233H	MUZ4233W
FLUTE C		MUZ2234H	MUZ3234H	MUZ4234H
FLUTE D	MUZ1235H	MUZ2235H	MUZ3235H	MUZ4235H
GUITAR A		MUZ2236H	MUZ3236H	MUZ4236W
GUITAR B	MUZ1237H	MUZ2237H	MUZ3237H	MUZ4237W
GUITAR C		MUZ2238H	MUZ3238H	MUZ4238H
GUITAR D	MUZ1239H	MUZ2239H	MUZ3239H	MUZ4239H
HARP A		MUZ2240H	MUZ3240H	MUZ4240W
HARP B	MUZ1241H	MUZ2241H	MUZ3241H	MUZ4241W
HARP C		MUZ2242H	MUZ3242H	MUZ4242H
HARP D	MUZ1243H	MUZ2243H	MUZ3243H	MUZ4243H
HARPSICHORD A		MUZ2244H	MUZ3244H	MUZ4244W
HARPSICHORD B	MUZ1245H	MUZ2245H	MUZ3245H	MUZ4245W
HARPSICHORD C		MUZ2246H	MUZ3246H	MUZ4246H
HARPSICHORD D	MUZ1247H	MUZ2247H	MUZ3247H	MUZ4247H
HORN A		MUZ2248H	MUZ3248H	MUZ4248W
HORN B	MUZ1249H	MUZ2249H	MUZ3249H	MUZ4249W
HORN C		MUZ2250H	MUZ3250H	MUZ4250H
HORN D	MUZ1251H	MUZ2251H	MUZ3251H	MUZ4251H
JAZZ BASS B	MUZ1389H	MUZ2389H	MUZ3389H	MUZ4389W
JAZZ BASS D	MUZ1390H	MUZ2390H	MUZ3390H	MUZ4390H
JAZZ CLARINET B	MUZ1391H	MUZ2391H	MUZ3391H	MUZ4391W
JAZZ CLARINET D	MUZ1392H	MUZ2392H	MUZ3392H	MUZ4392H
JAZZ FLUTE B	MUZ1393H	MUZ2393H	MUZ3393H	MUZ4394W
JAZZ FLUTE D	MUZ1394H	MUZ2394H	MUZ3394H	MUZ4394H
JAZZ GUITAR B	MUZ1252H	MUZ2252H	MUZ3252H	MUZ4252W
JAZZ GUITAR D	MUZ1253H	MUZ2253H	MUZ3253H	MUZ4253H
INSTRUMENT	<b>1</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>
JAZZ PIANO B	MUZ1254H	MUZ2254H	MUZ3254H	MUZ4254W
JAZZ PIANO D	MUZ1255H	MUZ2255H	MUZ3255H	MUZ4255H
JAZZ SINGING B	MUZ1306H	MUZ2306H	MUZ3306H	MUZ4306W
JAZZ SINGING D	MUZ1307H	MUZ2307H	MUZ3307H	MUZ4307H
JAZZ TROMBONE B	MUZ1395H	MUZ2395H	MUZ3395H	MUZ4395W
JAZZ TROMBONE D	MUZ1396H	MUZ2396H	MUZ3396H	MUZ4396H
JAZZ TRUMPET B	MUZ1397H	MUZ2397H	MUZ3397H	MUZ4397W
JAZZ TRUMPET D	MUZ1398H	MUZ2398H	MUZ3398H	MUZ4398H
OBOE A		MUZ2256H	MUZ3256H	MUZ4256W
OBOE B	MUZ1257H	MUZ2257H	MUZ3257H	MUZ4257W
OBOE C		MUZ2258H	MUZ3258H	MUZ4258H
OBOE D	MUZ1259H	MUZ2259H	MUZ3259H	MUZ4259H
ORGAN A		MUZ2260H	MUZ3260H	MUZ4260W
ORGAN B	MUZ1261H	MUZ2261H	MUZ3261H	MUZ4261W
ORGAN C		MUZ2262H	MUZ3262H	MUZ4262H
ORGAN D	MUZ1263H	MUZ2263H	MUZ3263H	MUZ4263H

MUSIC, SOUTH AFRICAN COLLEGE OF 357

PERCUSSION A		MUZ2264H	MUZ3264H	MUZ4264W
PERCUSSION B	MUZ1265H	MUZ2265H	MUZ3265H	MUZ4265W
PERCUSSION C		MUZ2266H	MUZ3266H	MUZ4266H
PERCUSSION D	MUZ1267H	MUZ2267H	MUZ3267H	MUZ4267H
PIANO A		MUZ2268H	MUZ3268H	MUZ4268W
PIANO B	MUZ1269H	MUZ2269H	MUZ3269H	MUZ4269W
PIANO C		MUZ2270H	MUZ3270H	MUZ4270H
PIANO D	MUZ1271H	MUZ2271H	MUZ3271H	MUZ4271H
PRACTICAL STUDIES AM	MUZ1399H			
PRACTICAL STUDIES WCM	MUZ1401H			
RECORDER A		MUZ2273H	MUZ3273H	MUZ4273W
RECORDER B	MUZ1274H	MUZ2274H	MUZ3274H	MUZ4274W
RECORDER C		MUZ2275H	MUZ3275H	MUZ4275H
RECORDER D	MUZ1276H	MUZ2276H	MUZ3276H	MUZ4276H
SAXOPHONE A		MUZ2277H	MUZ3277H	MUZ4277W
SAXOPHONE B	MUZ1278H	MUZ2278H	MUZ3278H	MUZ4278W
SAXOPHONE C		MUZ2279H	MUZ3279H	MUZ4279H
SAXOPHONE D	MUZ1280H	MUZ2280H	MUZ3280H	MUZ4280H
SECONDARY MARIMBA	MUZ1374H	MUZ2374H		
SECONDARY PIANO	MUZ1281H	MUZ2281H		
SINGING A		MUZ2282H	MUZ3282H	MUZ4282W
SINGING B	MUZ1283H	MUZ2283H	MUZ3283H	MUZ4283W
SINGING C		MUZ2284H	MUZ3284H	MUZ4284H
SINGING D	MUZ1285H	MUZ2285H	MUZ3285H	MUZ4285H
TROMBONE A		MUZ2286H	MUZ3286H	MUZ4286W
TROMBONE B	MUZ1287H	MUZ2287H	MUZ3287H	MUZ4287W
TROMBONE C		MUZ2288H	MUZ3288H	MUZ4288H
TROMBONE D	MUZ1289H	MUZ2289H	MUZ3289H	MUZ4289H
TRUMPET A		MUZ2290H	MUZ3290H	MUZ4290W
TRUMPET B	MUZ1291H	MUZ2291H	MUZ3291H	MUZ4291W
TRUMPET C		MUZ2292H	MUZ3292H	MUZ4292H
TRUMPET D	MUZ1293H	MUZ2293H	MUZ3293H	MUZ4293H
TUBA A		MUZ2402H	MUZ3402H	MUZ4402H
TUBA B	MUZ1294H	MUZ2294H	MUZ3294H	MUZ4294W
TUBA C		MUZ2295H	MUZ3295H	MUZ4295H
TUBA D	MUZ1296H	MUZ2296H	MUZ3296H	MUZ4296H
VIOLA A		MUZ2297H	MUZ3297H	MUZ4297W
VIOLA B	MUZ1298H	MUZ2298H	MUZ3298H	MUZ4298W
VIOLA C		MUZ2299H	MUZ3299H	MUZ4299H
VIOLA D	MUZ1300H	MUZ2300H	MUZ3300H	MUZ4300H
VIOLIN A		MUZ22301H	MUZ3301H	MUZ4301W
VIOLIN B	MUZ1302H	MUZ2302H	MUZ3302H	MUZ4302W
VIOLIN C		MUZ22303H	MUZ3303H	MUZ4303H
VIOLIN D	MUZ1304H	MUZ2304H	MUZ3304H	MUZ4304H
VOCAL STUDIES	MUZ1305H	MUZ2305H	MUZ3305H	MUZ4305W
WORLD MUSIC INSTRUMENT	MUZ1403H	MUZ2403H	MUZ3403H	

---

# PHILOSOPHY

The Department is housed on the third floor of the Humanities Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [philosophy@uct.ac.za](mailto:philosophy@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 3316.

The letter code for the Department is PHI.

Departmental website: [www.humanities.uct.ac.za/departement-philosophy](http://www.humanities.uct.ac.za/departement-philosophy)

## Professor and Head of Department:

B Weiss, BSc(Hons) *Dunelm* PGCE *London* PhD *St Andrews*

## Professor:

R Nefdt, BA(Hons) MSocSc *Cape Town* MSc *Amsterdam* PhD *St Andrews*

## Emeritus Professor:

D Benatar, BSocSc(Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

## Associate Professors:

T Angier, MA *Cantab* MPhil *UCL* Dipl *Oxon* PhD *Cantab* PhD *Toronto*

E Galgut, BA(Hons) MA *Witwatersrand* MA *Cape Town* PhD *Rutgers*

G Hull, BA(Hons) *Cantab* MPhil PhD *London*

J Ritchie, BA(Hons) *Oxon* MPhil PhD *London*

## Assistant Lecturer:

O Mogomotsi, BA(Hons) MSocSc *Cape Town* MPhil *Cantab*

## Administrative Officer:

M Erasmus

## Administrative Assistant:

E Gubb

## Senior Secretary:

N Haneville

## Requirements for a major in Philosophy

### [PHI01]

Note: *PHI2043FS Business Ethics* does not form part of the major in Philosophy.

#### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
PHI1024F	Introduction to Philosophy
PHI1010S	Ethics

#### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
PHI2041S	Great Philosophers
<b>And ONE of the following:</b>	
PHI2012F	Philosophy of Psychology & Mind
PHI2016S	Philosophy of Art & Literature
PHI2037F	Applied Ethics ( <i>May not be offered in 2025</i> )
PHI2040S	Philosophy of Science
PHI2042F	Political Philosophy
PHI2044F	Philosophy of Mathematics
PHI2045S	Philosophy of Race

**Third Year courses**


---

Code	Title
PHI3023F	Logic and Language
PHI3024S	Metaphysics and Epistemology

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **PHI2041S**: At least second year status. The successful completion of any PHI course. However, completing PHI1024F before attempting PHI2041S is strongly encouraged
- (ii) For **PHI2044F**: Second year status and at least 50% for Matric mathematics, or a pass for a MAM course, or a lower intermediate score for NBT in Quantitative Literacy
- (iii) For any other 2000-level PHI course except **PHI2041S** or **PHI2044F**: at least second year status
- (iv) For **PHI3023F**: PHI2041S, *and* one of the other second year PHI courses that count towards the major
- (v) For **PHI3024S**: PHI2041S, *and* one of the other second year PHI courses that count towards the major, *and* PHI3023F

*Please note that in accordance with Faculty Rule F19.1, Philosophy will not award supplementary examinations.*

**Course outlines:****PHI1010S ETHICS**

*This course may also be offered in Summer/ Winter Term for limited numbers of students - please consult the department.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** O Mogomotsi

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to moral philosophy and to the questions it asks. These may include: What makes an action right? Is morality relative (to one's own views or to one's culture) or is it objective? What is the relationship between religion and ethics? What is it to be a good person?

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.

---

**PHI1011S ETHICS +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Objective:** In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: PHI1010S Ethics. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.



---

**PHI1024F INTRODUCTION TO PHILOSOPHY**

*This course may also be offered in Summer/ Winter Term for limited numbers of students - please consult the department.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course is an introduction to philosophy that aims to make students more conscious, creative and critical in thinking about their own fundamental beliefs and values. Fundamental issues investigated include: the nature and possibility of knowledge, self-knowledge, the relationship between the mind and the body, the knowledge of other minds, whether we have free will, and whether life has a meaning. These issues are explored with the help of classical and contemporary philosophers, including Plato, Aristotle, Aquinas, Descartes, Hume, Biko, Appiah, Menkiti, Haslanger and others. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' lifeworlds and is cognizant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

---

**PHI1025F CRITICAL THINKING**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor E Galgut

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

Why do we value our beliefs? We value them because we take them to be true and, as true, they are good guides. But how can we tell when a belief is true? Our only handle here is whether or not the belief is justified. So we aim to have beliefs that are justified. The course concentrates on the practical business of appraising justifications. Of course, we all routinely attempt to justify our beliefs and arrive at new beliefs on the basis of supposed justifications. But almost as routinely we are hoodwinked. The course aims to make students better believers by making them more aware of the nature of justification, of the different sorts of justification and the pitfalls of each. At the end of it they will be less gullible and more able to explain just why a particular argument does or doesn't convince them. As an Introductory course we employ teaching and delivery methods that allow for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; one 2-hour examination in June counts 50%.

---

**PHI2012F PHILOSOPHY OF PSYCHOLOGY AND MIND**

*This course may also be offered in Summer/ Winter Term for limited numbers of students - please consult the department.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor E Galgut

**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status.

**Course outline:**

The question of the nature of the mind and its relation to the body (e.g. the brain) is discussed at length, with attention given to dualism, behaviourism, physicalism and functionalism. Other topics which may be dealt with are the nature of action, free will and determinism and the problem of personal identity.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

### **PHI2016S** PHILOSOPHY OF ART AND LITERATURE

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status.

**Course outline:**

This course will consider a variety of issues in contemporary philosophy of art and literature - a subject area also sometimes referred to as aesthetics. Among the issues that will be discussed are: the ontology of art (comparing literature, music, painting, etc); interpreting literary and other art works; the nature of metaphor; the relationship between art and morality; truth and sincerity as criteria of literary and artistic value; the definition (or general nature) of art and literature.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.

### **PHI2037F** APPLIED ETHICS

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status.

**Course outline:**

The course involves the application of philosophical reasoning to real life practical and moral issues. It will be shown how rational argument can be brought to bear on the resolution of ethical dilemmas and difficult questions about what ought to be done. These may include issues concerning health care, business, the professions, the environment, or everyday life.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

### **PHI2040S** PHILOSOPHY OF SCIENCE

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor J Ritchie

**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to introduce the students to the epistemological, metaphysical and ethical issues that arise when science is considered from a philosophical perspective. Through the study of philosophers such as Popper, Kuhn and Feyerabend, among others, the following sorts of questions will be discussed: Do scientists employ a special method which sets them apart from non-scientists and gives their claims greater authority? Do electrons, genes and other entities that we can't see or touch really exist? Are scientists inevitably influenced by political and moral agendas or can pure science be value free?

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; November examination 3 hours 60%.

---

**PHI2041S GREAT PHILOSOPHERS**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor T Angier**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status and the successful completion of any PHI course. However, completing PHI1024F before attempting PHI2041S is strongly encouraged.**Course outline:**

This course will introduce students to a selection of philosophy's major figures. The figures chosen may vary from year to year but they will be selected on the basis of their originality, profundity, influence and on the degree to which their works speak to one another. Philosophy often proceeds through an engagement with its past and engaging with one's philosophical inheritance is one of the most rewarding aspects of studying philosophy. This course will ask students to try to understand a set of historical thinkers and writers not as contemporaries who can be presumed to share our philosophical concerns nor yet as merely historical figures; rather we shall try to appreciate the thinker's writings in the context of his own concerns, which may differ significantly from ours. We shall discover that, when properly understood in this way, these thinkers still have relevance.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> period.**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.

---

**PHI2042F POLITICAL PHILOSOPHY***This course may also be offered in Summer/ Winter Term for limited numbers of students - please consult the department.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor T Angier**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status.**Course outline:**

What should our government do for us? Do the rich owe anything to the poor? Should society accept all cultures, or are there limits to tolerance? Is democracy really a good system? What is a just war, and can terrorism be justified? These are some of the questions asked in political philosophy. This course approaches the field in two ways. We choose several great political philosophers from ancient times to the twentieth century, and discuss their aims and arguments. Then we select some areas from contemporary political philosophy, and assess solutions to perpetual or recent problems in these areas.

**Lecture times:** Wednesday, Thursday, Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

---

**PHI2043FS BUSINESS ETHICS***Please note that this course DOES NOT count towards the Philosophy major. This course may also be offered in Summer/ Winter Term for limited numbers of students - please consult the department.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Hull**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status or be registered for an ACC04/ACC08 programme.**Course outline:**

Ethical choices are unavoidable in business. This course aims to help students to articulate their options when confronted with an ethical dilemma in business, and to make well-informed judgements about the right thing to do. The course will consider a range of problems, from issues that could arise in a student's first job to questions of business regulation that they may one day face as a leader in commerce or government. In each case, the course will challenge and assist students to recognise ethical problems in practical situations, understand the possible solutions, and make reasoned decisions.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 3<sup>rd</sup> or 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June or October/November counts 60%.

### **PHI2044F** PHILOSOPHY OF MATHEMATICS

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor B Weiss

**Course entry requirements:** Second year status and at least 50% for Matric mathematics, or a pass for a MAM course, or a lower intermediate score for the NBT in Quantitative Literacy.

**Course outline:**

Mathematics – the paradigm of a successful intellectual practice, with highly secure results and many important applications – raises deep philosophical questions. For instance, if mathematical objects (like numbers) are not in time or space, then how can we know anything about these objects, and how can mathematics be of any use in understanding the physical world? Some other questions: Does mathematics have a foundation? What is a good mathematical explanation? In what ways does the discipline of mathematics develop? This course discusses and evaluates major contributions, both historical and current, to the philosophy of mathematics. The intended audience includes students who enjoy more abstract areas of philosophy in general as well as those interested in the significance of mathematics in particular.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%, one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

### **PHI2045S** PHILOSOPHY OF RACE

*(May not be offered in 2025)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Hull

**Course entry requirements:** At least second year status.

**Course outline:**

Many of the topics of public debate in contemporary South Africa raise intriguing philosophical questions: Morally speaking, does most of the Western Cape actually belong to the Khoisan? Does being indigenous (if that concept makes sense) give one certain moral rights? Has the achievement of legal equality liberated black people, or would true liberation require the rediscovery of a distinctive identity? What special responsibilities (if any) do formerly advantaged groups have today? This course brings the tools of philosophical argument and analysis to bear on such problems, making use of, e.g., contemporary theories of moral ownership rights and the phenomenon of “epistemic injustice”. In addition, it traces the intellectual ancestry of ideas such as those of Black Consciousness, critically examining the attempts of theorists such as Hegel, Fanon, Césaire and Biko to theorise about oppression, identity, empowerment and the predicament of colonised peoples.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one three-hour examination in October/November counts 60%.

### **PHI3023F** LOGIC AND LANGUAGE

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor B Weiss

**Course entry requirements:** PHI2041S and any one of the other second year PHI courses that count towards the major.

**Course outline:**

The philosophical investigation of linguistic meaning came to occupy a pivotal role in philosophy a little over a hundred years ago. The investigation became pivotal because the notion seems deeply perplexing — what sort of relation does a linguistic sign bear to what it represents? how do we form the ability to understand a potential infinity of sentences? — and because, more controversially, it came to seem that we could pursue many other questions in philosophy by looking at how language works. The philosophical focus on language was facilitated by developments in logical theory. The course begins by equipping the student with the technical basis in logic and then builds on this to explore the workings of language.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in June counts 60%.

**PHI3024S METAPHYSICS AND EPISTEMOLOGY**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor J Ritchie

**Course entry requirements:** PHI2041S and any one of the other second year PHI courses that count toward the major, and PHI3023F.

**Course outline:**

On one widespread conception, metaphysics is a first-order inquiry into “what there is”, whilst epistemology is second-order inquiry reflecting on “what it takes to know what there is.” But the pursuit of epistemology raises metaphysical questions too: what do our ways of knowing tell us about human nature, and the nature of the world? This course explores some core contemporary issues in both areas of inquiry, and considers the relationship between them. Topics in metaphysics may include contemporary investigations into the nature of the mind, its relations to the body and the external world, as well as the nature of causation, space and time. The course may also include some reflection on how, if at all, metaphysical knowledge is possible. Topics in epistemology may include exploring contemporary debates regarding the conception of knowledge, the structure and nature of epistemic justification, the relationship between reasons and beliefs and the value (if any) of scepticism.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Regular attendance at lectures and tutorials; completion of all tests, submission of all essays and assignments by due dates, and an average mark of at least 35% for the coursework.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 40%; one 3-hour examination in October / November counts 60%.

---

## POLITICAL STUDIES

The Department is housed on the 5th Floor of the Robert Leslie Social Sciences Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [politicsundergrad@uct.ac.za](mailto:politicsundergrad@uct.ac.za), or telephone 021 650 3381.

The Departmental letter code is POL.

Website: [www.politics.uct.ac.za](http://www.politics.uct.ac.za)

### Associate Professor and Head of Department:

Z Jolobe, MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

### Professor:

A Butler, MA *Oxon* PhD *Cantab*

### Associate Professors:

V Naidoo, BA *Saskatchewan* MA *Rhodes* PhD *Cape Town*

L Paremoer, BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town* PhD *NSSR New York*

T Reddy, BSocSc(Hons) *Natal* MA PhD *Washington*

H Scanlon, BA(Hons) *Manchester* MA PhD *London*

### Senior Lecturers:

G M Maluleke, BSocSc *Cape Town* MA *Jyväskylä* PhD *Johannes Gutenberg University of Mainz*

G M Maxaulane, BSc(Hons) *Zimbabwe* BA(Hons) MA PhD *Witwatersrand*

X A Ndlovu, BA(Hons) MA PhD *Witwatersrand*

### Lecturers:

Z Lategan, BSocSc BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town*

L Lushaba, BA(Hons) *Transkei* MA *Ibadan* MPhil *Kolkata* PhD *Witwatersrand*

Z T Zondi, MPA PhD *UKZN*

### Senior Administrative Officer:

N Hlalukana, BAdmin *UWC* PGDip *Cape Town*

### Administrative Assistants:

V Sinden

T Mthalane, BCom *Cape Town* PGDip *Unisa*

## Requirements for a major in Politics & Governance

### [POL10]

#### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
POL1004F	Introduction to Politics
<b>AND</b>	
POL1005S	Introduction to Politics B

#### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
<b>Any TWO of the following:</b>	
POL2002F	Political Theory
POL2038F	Comparative Politics
POL2039F	International Political Economy
POL2042S	Comparative Public Institutions
POL2043S	South African Politics

**Third Year courses**

Code	Title
<b>Any TWO of the following:</b>	
POL3029F	Politics of Africa and the Global South (was Third World Politics)
POL3030F	Conflict in World Politics
POL3045S	Global Governance
POL3037F	South African Public Policy Analysis
POL3038S	Urban Politics and Administration
POL3046S	South African Political Thought

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **POL1005S**: POL1004F or with special permission from the HoD
- (ii) For **POL2002F**: POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the HoD
- (iii) For **POL2038F**: POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the HoD
- (iv) For **POL2039F**: POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the HoD
- (v) For **POL2042S**: POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the HoD
- (vi) For **POL2043S**: POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the HoD
- (vii) For **POL3029F**: Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the HoD
- (viii) For **POL3045S**: Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the HoD
- (xi) For **POL3037F**: Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the HoD
- (x) For **POL3046S**: Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the HoD
- (xi) For **POL3038S**: Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the HoD

**Note on sub-minima:**

Students should note the following:

The following sub-minima for examinations apply to all courses offered by the Department:

A student must obtain a minimum of 45% in the final examination to qualify for an overall pass (50%).

**Note on re-examination procedures:**

At the discretion of the head of department, opportunities for further examinations in the case of borderline failures may be provided before the results are finalised.

**Course Outlines:****POL1004F INTRODUCTION TO POLITICS**

*This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term – please consult the Department.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr G M Maxaulane

**Course entry requirements:** Faculty admission. Admission to this course is restricted to students registered for the major in Politics and Governance, or to students in the PPE programme or the 4-year version of the general bachelor's degree.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to provide an introduction to key concepts in Political Studies in particular political theory and public policy and administration. Under political theory, key concepts such as power, authority and legitimacy are discussed. Similarly, basic concepts in Public Policy and Administration are introduced to students. These concepts are applied to the study of politics. The case study of South African politics constitutes an application of the conceptual and theoretical material to contemporary politics. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' life worlds and is cognisant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests is a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; final two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

### **POL1005S INTRODUCTION TO POLITICS B**

*This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term – please consult the Department.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor A Butler

**Course entry requirements:** DP for POL1004F or with special permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course is an introduction to two related fields of Political Studies – Comparative Politics and International Relations. Comparative Politics involves the use of comparative approaches to study political institutions and processes within states. International Relations examines power relations across state borders. The course provides an introduction to the systematic study of both fields, with an emphasis on some of the leading theories and questions.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; final two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

### **POL1010S INTRODUCTION TO POLITICS B +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** S Seti

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** POL1005S.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: POL1005S Introduction to Politics B. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### **POL2002F POLITICAL THEORY**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr G M Maxaulane

**Course entry requirements:** POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course examines the social theories of modernity or the role of the post-Enlightenment Scientific Revolution in the formation of the theory of the subject. Against this backdrop, we examine how Descartes goes about establishing the existence of the subject and then we will examine some of the



different forms assumed by the new subject (including colonial, democratic, fascist, and totalitarian forms). When it comes to colonial modernity, we will consider the effects of the modern episteme in the history of colonialism and the modes of resistance assumed by the anti-colonial subject and the 'post'-colonial subject.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 8<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; final two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

### **POL2038F** COMPARATIVE POLITICS

*This course may also be offered in Summer/Winter Term – please consult the Department.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Z Lategan

**Course entry requirements:** POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to the major concepts, approaches, themes and topics of inquiry in the field of comparative politics. The course is designed to relate specific theories and relevant case studies and/or empirical evidence. The first part of the course focuses on the broad theme of comparative government and the second on violent processes of political change.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; final two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

### **POL2039F** INTERNATIONAL POLITICAL ECONOMY

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor Z Jolobe

**Course entry requirements:** POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the Head of the Department.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to familiarize students with the theoretical concepts and analytical tools central to the study of International Political Economy (IPE) as it relates to Africa. IPE focuses on the intersection between economics and politics in the global environment. In this course, students will analyse how international and domestic political factors interact with economic factors to determine outcomes in areas such as international trade, finance, aid, natural resources, international growth and development, as well as the interaction between business and governments. The course is intended not only to prepare students for further study in IPE, but also to make sense of current events, especially the challenges countries like South Africa face in the international arena.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%; final two-hour examination counts 40%.

---

**POL2042S** COMPARATIVE PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor V Naidoo**Course entry requirements:** POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the Head of Department.**Course outline:**

Public administration represents the most visible, and in many ways, the most active part of government. It is also that aspect of government that we probably know the least about, because it is comprised of a large army of non-elected officials working behind the scenes to implement legislation and policy. In this course, we will survey the history and contemporary practice of public administration (or public bureaucracies) around the world. Some of the key questions that we will aim to answer are: what is the proper place and role of public administration in a democracy? What are the benefits and potential risks of public administration in democratic government? What impact does public administration have on our lives as citizens? How can we construct effective working relationships between elected politicians and unelected administrators. And finally, what role can public administration play in responding to global policy crisis? Although this course adopts a comparative perspective, we will pay particular attention to the role that public administration has played in democratic transitions in South and Southern Africa.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 8<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; final two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

**POL2043S** SOUTH AFRICAN POLITICS

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr G Maluleke**Course entry requirements:** POL1004F and POL1005S or with special permission from the Head of Department.**Co-requisites:** None**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to the academic study of South African politics. It explores the country's recent political history, the political legacies of segregation and apartheid, and the relationships between politics and broader social life. It goes on to explore the character and significance of the country's 'democratic transition'. The course also investigates the country's constitution, electoral systems, political parties, party system, and associational politics. Students learn key academic approaches to the study of domestic politics and apply these to the study of South Africa.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 5th period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; final exam 50%.

---

**POL3029F** POLITICS OF AFRICA AND THE GLOBAL SOUTH

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor L Paremoer**Course entry requirements:** Any 2000-level POL course, or with special permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course reviews the theories and approaches that are typically used to analyse the political economies and political regimes of countries in the global South. The reliability, validity and normative implications of these theories will be evaluated with reference to key case studies -- in many cases drawn from the African Continent – in order to illustrate or problematise their claims. Though this is a political science course, our study of the politics of the South will be informed by debates that span a number of disciplines, including history, economics, law, anthropology and sociology.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; final two-hour examination counts 50%.

**POL3030F CONFLICT IN WORLD POLITICS**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor H Scanlon

**Course entry requirements:** Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

In this course we examine conflict in world politics. We focus on: the analysis of conflict; causes of conflict; actors in conflict; behaviour during conflict; consequences of conflict; and moral evaluation of conflict. In each dimension, we ask questions. To each of these questions, there are different, even opposing, answers. We examine these answers, illustrating them with cases and/or empirical material.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; final two-hour examination counts 50%.

**POL3037F SOUTH AFRICAN PUBLIC POLICY ANALYSIS**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor A Butler

**Course entry requirements:** Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to the analysis of public policy. We first explore public institutions in which policy is analysed, developed and implemented, including the cabinet system, treasury and the presidency. We then consider some models that scholars have used to make sense of complex policy processes. The course then explores specific public policy challenges in areas such as energy security, school system reform, and HIV/AIDS policy. This course will be especially useful for students wanting to understand contemporary government in SA, and the relationships between public policy and politics.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; final two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

**POL3038S** URBAN POLITICS AND ADMINISTRATION

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr T Zondi**Course entry requirements:** Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the Head of Department.**Course outline:**

The first section of the course locates South African local level politics and administration in the context of national and provincial state reform, and examines the significance of local implementation and service delivery for policy outputs and for the policy process as a whole. A theoretical framework for understanding local government reorganisation is developed and a comparative analysis undertaken of local government reorganisation with particular reference to metropolitan areas. There is in addition a focus on contemporary reforms which have affected South Africa's contemporary urban governance, such as the new megacities, politics-administration interface and developmental local government. The second section of the course introduces students to an overview of contemporary urban political and administrative challenges and opportunities. These challenges and opportunities occur in a context of global and local conditions. The course examines and compares good solutions to urban problems in third and first world cities. In its focus on delivery-level administration and politics, the course provides both intellectual and practical closure to the major sequence of courses on public administration, management and the policy process.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP purposes MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; final two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

**POL3045S** GLOBAL GOVERNANCE

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor Z Jolobe**Course entry requirements:** Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the Head of Department.**Co-requisites:** None**Course outline:**

Global governance refers to the way in which global affairs are managed in the absence of a global government, and involves a broad range of actors including states, international and regional organisations. This course provides an overview of the existing architecture of global governance, explores the management of selected global issues, and considers debates and new trends in global governance.

**Lecture times:** 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; final exam 50%.

---

**POL3046S** SOUTH AFRICAN POLITICAL THOUGHT

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor T Reddy**Course entry requirements:** Any 2000-level POL course or with special permission from the Head of Department.**Course outline:**

This course helps students to understand the complex relationships between Western, African, and South African Political Thought. The course introduces students to some of the key ideas in these traditions of political theory and explores some of the interactions between them. In particular, students will investigate the development of ideas concerning colonial rule and the nationalist responses to that rule, which together constitute a rich and complex literature. The themes addressed over the course will include the Western enlightenment, colonial modernity, nationalism and democracy.

**Lecture times:** 4th period.

**DP requirements:** Tutorial attendance is compulsory and students who attend fewer than 85% of the tutorials will not be allowed to write the final examination. In addition, completion of all written assignments, essays and tests are a requirement for a DP. Should students fail to hand in written assignments by due date, they will be penalised according to the grading formula of the Department. All required work for DP MUST be submitted by the last day of the course.

**Assessment:** Coursework 50%; final exam 50%.

---

## PSYCHOLOGY

The Department is housed on levels 1, 2 and 3 of the PD Hahn Building, Chemistry Mall, Cissy Gool Avenue, Upper Campus. Contact us by e-mail ([aayesha.patel@uct.ac.za](mailto:aayesha.patel@uct.ac.za)) or by telephone (021 650 3435/3438).

The letter code for the department is PSY.

Departmental website: <http://www.psychology.uct.ac.za>

**Professor and Head of Department:**

W Long, PhD *Cape Town*

**Professors:**

F Boonzaier, PhD *Cape Town*

M L de G Solms, PhD *Witwatersrand*

S Kessi, PhD *LSE*

S Malcolm-Smith, PhD *Cape Town*

C G Tredoux, PhD *Cape Town*

C L Ward, PhD *South Carolina*

**Emeritus Professors:**

D H Foster, PhD *Cantab*

J Louw, PhD *Amsterdam*

**Associate Professors:**

G Lipinska, PhD *Cape Town*

L E Schrieff-Brown, PhD *Cape Town*

L Wild, PhD *Cantab*

**Emeritus Associate Professor:**

A Dawes, MSc *Cape Town*

**Senior Lecturers:**

R Makama, PhD *Unisa*

M Malinga, PhD *Unisa*

P Njomboro, PhD *Birmingham*

**Lecturer:**

B U Christ, MA *Cape Town*

**Assistant Lecturer:**

H Diara, MA *Cape Town*

**Senior Administrative Officer:**

A Patel

**Senior Clinical Coordinator:**

E Pantelis, PhD *Cape Town*

**Administrative Assistant:**

M Karriem

**Senior Secretaries:**

M Harris

TBA

## Child Guidance Clinic

The Child Guidance Clinic is housed in the Isaac Albow Building, Chapel Road, Rosebank. Contact us by e-mail ([judith.adriaanse@uct.ac.za](mailto:judith.adriaanse@uct.ac.za) or [susanna.manley@uct.ac.za](mailto:susanna.manley@uct.ac.za)) or by telephone (021 650 3900/3902).

Website: <http://www.childguidanceclinic.uct.ac.za>

### Senior Lecturer and Director of Child Guidance Clinic Jan – June 2025:

M Spedding, PhD *Cape Town*

### Professor and Director of Child Guidance Clinic June – Dec 2025:

D Kaminer, PhD *Cape Town*

### Professor:

W Long, PhD *Cape Town*

### Emeritus Associate Professor:

S G Swartz, PhD *Cape Town*

### Senior Lecturers:

A Maw, PhD *Cape Town*

S Mkabile, PhD *Stell*

### Administrative Assistants:

J Adriaanse

S Manley

## Requirements for a major in Psychology

### [PSY01]

#### First Year courses

Code	Title
PSY1004F	Introduction to Psychology Part 1* <b>and</b>
PSY1005S	Introduction to Psychology Part 2*

\* **OR** PSY1006F & PSY1007F if taken in 2015 or earlier

#### Second Year courses

Code	Title
PSY2015F	Research in Psychology I
PSY2013F	Social and Developmental Psychology
PSY2014S	Cognitive Neuroscience and Abnormal Psychology

#### Third Year courses

Code	Title
PSY3007S	Research in Psychology II

### TWO of the following:

PSY3005F	Critical Psychology
PSY3009F	Applied Cognitive Science
PSY3010S	Introduction to Clinical Neuropsychology
PSY3011S	Clinical Psychology II

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **PSY1005S**: PSY1004F
- (ii) For **PSY2015F**: students must have passed PSY1004F and PSY1005S and have attained a score of at least 70% on the NBT Quantitative Literacy Test, or at least a D for Mathematics HG (SC) or a 4 rating (NSC)
- (iii) For **PSY2013F** and **PSY2014S**: PSY1004F and PSY1005S
- (iv) For **PSY3005F**: PSY1004F and PSY1005S and at least one 2000-level social science courses
- (v) For **PSY3007S**: PSY2015F
- (vi) For **PSY3011S**: PSY2014S
- (vii) For **PSY3009F** and **PSY3010S**: PSY2015F and PSY2014S

**Notes:**

1. *Students who wish to take PSY3011S and/or PSY3010S and who have not previously passed PSY2014S may be admitted at the discretion of the Head of Department.*
2. *Extended programme students must register for both PSY1004F and PSY1006F and for both PSY1005S and PSY1007S.*
3. *Extended programme students must register for both PSY2012F and PSY2015F.*

**Requirements for distinction in Psychology:**

A distinction in Psychology may be awarded to students who obtain, at a first attempt, a first-class pass in the following four courses:

PSY2015F and one other second-year Psychology course;

PSY3007S and one other third-year Psychology course.

**Entrance requirements for Introduction to Psychology Part 1 (PSY1004F):**

1. **First-time entry students** (students who have not previously attended a tertiary institution)

- 1.1 **Students in named degrees/programmes**

The Department of Psychology will admit first-time entry students to PSY1004F who are registered for named degrees in the Faculties of Humanities, Commerce, Science, and Health Sciences, provided the subject is required for that named degree/programme. Students admitted to PSY1004F in this category will not necessarily have access to all PSY courses. Students who do not meet the criteria stipulated in the table under 1.2 may not major in Psychology.

- 1.2 **Students in general degrees**

Only students who have scored 70% on the NBT QL or 50% on Maths (NSC) (not Maths Literacy) have unconditional access to PSY1004F.

Students on the extended programmes are strongly encouraged to take PSY1004F and PSY1006F only in their second year of study, after completing the required Maths course.

Students who do not meet these requirements may be allowed into PSY1004F via the routes set out in the table below.

**NBT QL****Score**

70%

&lt;70%

**Access to PSY1004F**Registration for **PSY1004F**Registration for MAM1014F (or MAM1022F for EDU students) AND MAM1016S concurrent with **PSY1004F** and **PSY1005S**

\*Entry of candidates who have achieved a D (or higher) on Maths HG (SC) or 4 (or higher) on Maths NSC is not subject to the NBT QL criterion, but only to APS. Students who have completed Maths Literacy (NSC) are subject to the NBT QL criterion.



2. **Returning students:**

Humanities students who were unable to gain admission to PSY1004F in a previous year of study will be admitted to PSY1004F only if they (a) passed six semester courses in the immediately preceding year of study, and (b) meet the mathematics requirements set out in the table above. Returning students from other faculties will not be admitted, unless PSY1004F is required for programme or major purposes.

EDU students must complete MAM1022F and MAM1016S in the first year of study. These students are strongly encouraged to only register for PSY1004F (and PSY1006F) in their second year of study.

3. **Transferring students:**

Transferring students must satisfy the mathematics entrance requirement set out above, as well as the requirement for UCT returning students (i.e., they must have passed at least the equivalent of 6 semester courses in the most recent prior year of study at the institution they are transferring from).

4. The Head of the Department of Psychology may admit students who do not satisfy the conditions above.

### Professional Registration

To become a Psychologist in one of the recognised areas of Psychology, namely Clinical, Counselling, Educational, Organisational, Neuropsychology, or Research Psychology, a student must complete a recognised Master's degree in Psychology and an appropriate internship at a recognised training institution. The duration of an internship is 12 months. Persons registered from 1 January 2002 have to write an examination set by the Professional Board for Psychology. In addition, to register with the Professional Board for Psychology as a Clinical Psychologist, a one-year period of community service must be completed.

The Department of Psychology at the University of Cape Town provides training leading towards registration in Clinical Psychology or in Neuropsychology. The School of Management Studies in the Faculty of Commerce provides training leading towards registration in the field of Organisational Psychology.

### Course Outlines:

---

#### PSY1004F INTRODUCTION TO PSYCHOLOGY PART 1

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** Faculty admission. Admission to this course is restricted to students (a) registered for the major in Psychology, (b) for which the completion of this course is a degree-specific requirement (e.g., Social Work, Physiotherapy, Occupational Therapy, Speech and Communication Disorders [Speech Therapy and Audiology], or any other approved Health Sciences service programme), and (c) majoring in Organisational Psychology.

**Course outline:**

The course aims to introduce the student to some of the areas of specialisation within psychology. These include history of psychology, biopsychology and neuropsychology, memory, developmental psychology, psychopathology and psychotherapy, and learning and conditioning. Students are taught a great deal about plagiarism and develop skills necessary to write essays and prepare other submissions to the Department of Psychology.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 1<sup>st</sup> or 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory completion of all assignments by due date, attend at least 80% of tutorials, complete both class tests. In addition, obtain one Student Research Participation Programme (SRPP) point or equivalent.

**Assessment:** Coursework (term assignments and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in June counts 50%. Students are expected to complete the June examination as well as all coursework before being awarded a pass in this class.

---

### **PSY1005S INTRODUCTION TO PSYCHOLOGY PART 2**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** PSY1004F

**Course outline:**

This course builds on the content covered in Introduction to Psychology Part 1. There is emphasis on research methods, both quantitative and qualitative methods. The student is also introduced to other areas of specialisation, including intelligence, attention, emotion and motivation, personality and social psychology. With a focus on research methods, students develop skills necessary to write a research report and prepare other submissions to the Department of Psychology and to carry out conceptual analyses of research materials and results.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 1<sup>st</sup> or 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory completion of all assignments by due date, attend at least 80% of classroom tutorials, submit all statistics lab-based exercises, complete both class tests. In addition, obtain two Student Research Participation Programme (SRPP) points or equivalent.

**Assessment:** Coursework (term assignments and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in November counts 50%. Students are expected to complete the November examination as well as all coursework before being awarded a pass in this class.

---

### **PSY1006F INTRODUCTION TO PSYCHOLOGY PART 1 +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M Koloko

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** PSY1004F.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: PSY1004F INTRO TO PSYCHOLOGY PART 1. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** There are no DP requirements for this course. Pass or fail grade will be awarded.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work. 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments required to pass this course.

---

### **PSY1007S INTRODUCTION TO PSYCHOLOGY PART 2 +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M Koloko

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** PSY1005S.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: PSY1005S INTRO TO PSYCHOLOGY PART 2. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides

additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** There are no DP requirements for this course. Pass or fail grade will be awarded.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work. 100% attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments required to pass this course.

**PSY2012F RESEARCH IN PSYCHOLOGY I+**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M Koloko

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** PSY2015F

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: PSY2015F RESEARCH IN PSYCHOLOGY I. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

**PSY2013F SOCIAL AND DEVELOPMENTAL PSYCHOLOGY**

*Was previously PSY2003S (Social Psychology and Intergroup Relations) and PSY2009F (Developmental Psychology)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** PSY1004F and PSY1005S or equivalent.

**Co-requisites:** None

**Course outline:**

This course provides an introduction to two major areas of psychological research and theory. Social Psychology is taught in one half of the course. The social psychology module introduces students to some basic concepts and theories in social psychology, exposes students to current research within the field, and provides an opportunity for students to engage critically with existing theories and their relevance to the South African context. Some of the major topics covered will include race and racism, social identity and social change, intergroup contact, and social influence. Developmental psychology is taught in the other half of the course. The developmental psychology module focuses on understanding the changes and continuities that occur in children from conception through adolescence. The sessions will cover central theoretical issues and research strategies in developmental psychology, prenatal development, cognitive and language development, social and emotional development, and contexts of development.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday, 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework, and 80% attendance at tutorials.

**Assessment:** Coursework will be weighted at 50%, and will include completion of tutorial assignments, essays and tests as required. An exam at the end of the semester will be weighted 50%.

---

**PSY2014S COGNITIVE NEUROSCIENCE AND ABNORMAL PSYCHOLOGY**

*Was previously PSY2010S (Cognition and Neuroscience) and PSY2011F (Clinical Psychology I)*  
24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Lipinska

**Course entry requirements:** PSY1004F and PSY1005S

**Course outline:**

This course aims to introduce students to a variety of topics relevant to normal cognitive functioning as well as psychopathology. While one half of the course takes a neuroscientific approach, the other half of the course draws on psychological, sociocultural, cognitive and biological perspectives.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday, 7<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework, attendance at all tutorials, and obtaining 3 points through the Student Research Participation Programme (SRPP).

**Assessment:** Coursework: 70% (*assignment submissions = 40% and class test = 30%*) Exam: 30%.

---

**PSY2015F RESEARCH IN PSYCHOLOGY I**

*Was previously PSY2006F (Research in Psychology I)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor C Ward

**Course entry requirements:** PSY1004F, PSY1005S; and meeting mathematics criterion for entrance into PSY1004F.

**Co-requisites:** None

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to research in Psychology. We will cover four major approaches to research in Psychology, namely quantitative research methods, qualitative research methods, statistical analysis of data, and psychometrics.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday, Meridian.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework, 80% attendance at tutorials, and obtaining 3 points through the Student Research Participation Programme (SRPP).

**Assessment:** Coursework will be weighted at 50%, and will include completion of tutorial assignments, and tests as required. An exam at the end of the semester will be weighted 50%.

---

**PSY3005F CRITICAL PSYCHOLOGY**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R Makama

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed PSY1004F and PSY1005S and at least one 2000-level social science course.

**Course outline:**

This course has a central focus on the psychology of identities. It engages students to explore the role of psychology in examining issues of race, class, gender, sexuality, ethnicity, etc. Theoretical concepts from liberation psychology, postcolonial psychology and feminist psychology will be taught and discussed in relation to current debates in South Africa, and the African diaspora around identity differences. Tutorials may include practical exercises and case presentations.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework and attendance at tutorials as required.

**Assessment:** Coursework (Tutorial assignments, group projects and individual written assignments) counts 100%

---

**PSY3007S RESEARCH IN PSYCHOLOGY II**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor C Tredoux

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed PSY2015F.

**Course outline:**

This course deepens and strengthens the introduction to research in PSY2006F. There are four central components: (a) research methods in psychology; (b) statistical analysis in psychology; (c) qualitative methods in psychology, and (d) psychological measurement. On completion of this course, students would have covered the following: analysis of group comparisons (including t-tests and analysis of variance); data modelling techniques (including table analysis and regression); psychometrics and psychological assessment (including item analysis, measurement of intelligence and neuropsychological assessment); qualitative techniques (including narrative and discourse analysis).

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework, at least 70% attendance at tutorials, as well as completion of 90 minutes in the Student Research Participation Programme (SRPP) or equivalent.

**Assessment:** Coursework (projects and tests) counts 50%; one two-hour examination at the end of the semester counts 50% towards the final mark.

### **PSY3009F APPLIED COGNITIVE SCIENCE**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr P Njomboro

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed PSY2015F and PSY2014S.

**Course outline:**

This course deals with various applications of cognitive science to practical and theoretical problems in psychology. Lectures and research projects offered in the course are aimed at developing students' appreciation and understanding of the research methodologies and real world applications of cognitive science. Topics covered include connectionist architectures (neural networks), influences of biological cycles, drugs, and hormones on cognitive performance, the cognitive psychology of decision making, memory in the forensic arena, face recognition and reconstruction, clinical cognition, and evolutionary cognitive psychology among others.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday Meridian.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework, as well as completion of 90 minutes in the Student Research Participation Programme (SRPP) or equivalent and attendance of at least 5 tutorials.

**Assessment:** *Coursework:* counts a total of 50%. This coursework is broken down into weekly tests (25%), and a group field project (25%). *Examination:* the two-hour examination in June counts 50% towards the final mark.

### **PSY3010S INTRODUCTION TO CLINICAL NEUROPSYCHOLOGY**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor S Malcolm-Smith

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed PSY2015F and PSY2014S.

**Course outline:**

This course is designed to provide a broad general introduction to the field of clinical neuropsychology. Although the general focus of the course is on brain-behaviour relationships and ways in which cognition and behaviour are controlled by neural systems, we will take an approach that concentrates on the clinical presentation of human neurological dysfunction.

**Lecture times:** Monday to Thursday Meridian.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework, attendance at a minimum of 5 tutorials, as well as completion of 90 minutes in the Student Research Participation Programme (SRPP) or equivalent.

**Assessment:** Coursework (tests and tutorial response papers) counts 45%; one two-hour examination in November counts 55% towards the final mark.

### **PSY3011S CLINICAL PSYCHOLOGY II**

*Was previously PSY3004S (Clinical Psychology II)*

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor D Kaminer

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have passed PSY2014S.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to a number of critical debates shaping research and practice in the field of clinical psychology in South Africa. It provides an overview of the local mental health context, while exploring the problematics of diagnosis and intervention in respect of 'race', class, language, culture and gender. Particular attention is given to the debate around the 'relevance' of clinical psychology in South Africa. Additional topics include psychodynamic psychotherapy, community psychology and evidence-based practice.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all coursework and attendance at tutorials as required.

**Assessment:** Coursework (an essay, a test and tutorial assignments) counts 50%; one two-hour examination in November counts 50% towards the final mark. *NOTE: Students who have passed PSY3004S will not be permitted to register for PSY3011S.*

---

## SOCIAL WORK AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

The Department is housed on the 5<sup>th</sup> floor in the Robert Leslie Social Science Building, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [socialdevelopment@uct.ac.za](mailto:socialdevelopment@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 3483.

The letter code for the Department is SWK.

Departmental website: [www.socialdevelopment.uct.ac.za](http://www.socialdevelopment.uct.ac.za)

### Associate Professor and Head of Department:

L Holtzhausen, BSocSc(SW) *North West* MSocSc PhD *UJ* (On sabbatical)

### Associate Professors:

S Abdullah, BA(SW) *UWC* BA(Hons) *Unisa* MA PhD *Cape Town*

E T Gxubane, BA(SW) *Witwatersrand* MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

### Emeritus Associate Professors:

A de V Smit, BSocSc(SW) BCom(Hons) MPubAd *Cape Town* DPhil *Stell*

V Taylor, BA(SW) *UDW* BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc *Cape Town*

### Senior Lecturers:

A M Kubeka, BSocSc *Cape Town* MPhil *Stell* MA PhD *Ohio State*

S Hoosain, BA(SW) *Western Cape* Mdiac (Play therapy) *Unisa* PhD *UWC*

### Lecturers:

R Addinall, BA(SW) *Stell* BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc *Cape Town*

C Bruyns, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc *Cape Town*

E Campbell, BSocSc(SW) BSocSc(Hons) PhD *Cape Town*

A Manqoyi-Ouamba, BSocSc(SW) BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc *Cape Town*

M Munodawafa, BSocSc(SW) BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

L van Niekerk, BSocSc(SW) BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc *Cape Town*

F Williams, BSocSc(SW) BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc PhD *Cape Town*

### Administrative Officer:

S Valley

### Administrative Assistant:

TBA

### Major and Programme offered:

- **SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT MAJOR**
- **SOCIAL WORK PROGRAMME** (see entry under Rules and Curricula for Qualifications and Programmes of Study)

### NOTES:

- *The Social Development Major does not lead to professional registration with the South African Council for Social Service Professions.*

## Requirements for a major in Social Development

### [SWK03]

#### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
SWK1006S	Basic Professional Interaction
SWK1013F	Community Connections

**Second Year courses**

Code	Title
SWK2001F	Introduction to Social Development
SWK2013S	Community & Youth Development

**Third Year courses**

Code	Title
SWK3001F	Principles and Application of Social Development
SWK3066S	Contemporary Social Work Issues

*NOTE: These are the only SWK courses which count towards a general BA or BSocSc degree (as per rule FB 6.3 no other courses and no field practicum courses will count for credit).*

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For **SWK1006S, SWK1013F**: None
- (ii) For **SWK2001F, SWK2013S**: At least second-year status.
- (iii) For **SWK3001F**: SWK2001F.
- (iv) For **SWK3066S**: At least 3rd year status or by discretion of the HOD.

**Requirements for a Bachelor of Social Work Degree****[HB063]****Professional registration and conduct**

Practice in the field of Social Work is regulated by the South African Council for Social Service Professions, with which all Social Workers must register. The Council lays down the minimum standards of both academic and practical training requisite for professional registration, and the Department of Social Work and Social Development provides training according to these standards. The University offered a 3-year BSocSc degree in Social Work for students who first registered before 2007. These students were required to complete an appropriate Honours degree offered by the Department of Social Work and Social Development in order to obtain professional registration with the South African Council for Social Service Professions. From 2007, students registered for a 4-year Bachelor of Social Work (BSW) degree in order to obtain professional registration with the South African Council for Social Service Professions.

Students registered for the professional degrees in social work are required by statute to register from their second year of study with the South African Council for Social Service Professions as a student social worker. As such they are bound by the Council's professional code of conduct. Students who do not adhere to this code of conduct may be required to terminate their registration in the Faculty. Should a student in the course of his/her studies or who qualifies for the award of the degree that allows for professional registration with the said Council be deemed unfit to practise as a social worker following a professional assessment, the Dean will report the outcome of such professional assessment to the Council and inform the student accordingly.

**Lecture times of classes for BSocSc curriculum:**

Social Work 1000-level courses Tuesday to Friday, second semester  
 Social Work 2000-level courses Tuesday to Friday  
 Social Work 3000-level courses: Tuesday to Friday

**Lecture times of classes for BSW curriculum:**

Social Work 1000-level courses: Tuesday to Friday, second semester  
 Social Work 2000-level courses: Tuesday to Friday  
 Social Work 3000-level courses: Tuesday to Friday  
 Social Work 4000-level courses: Monday and Tuesday



**Times of field practica:**

Social Work 1000-level course: One afternoon per week, second semester, arranged departmentally

Social Work 2000-level courses: Monday all day, both semesters

Social Work 3000-level courses: Monday all day, both semesters

Social Work 4000-level courses: Wednesday and Thursday all day, Friday morning

Students are strongly urged to have a driver's licence and be computer literate.

**Practicum travel cost:**

Students are responsible for the travel costs incurred during practicum placements. Students will receive partial contribution for these costs. The amount will be determined by the allocation from the Field Work and Field Stations Committee of the University. The contribution will be paid at the end of the semester and students are required to fund their weekly transport costs.

*NOTES:*

Three cognate streams are offered through the Social Work Programme (see details in the section **Rules and Curricula for Qualifications and Programmes of Study** in this handbook):

1. Psychological Studies
2. Sociological Studies
3. Industrial Sociology

The Department of Social Work and Social Development reserves the right to recommend that students not continue with the undergraduate programmes should it become evident that they are not suited to the profession.

**Course Outlines:**

---

**SWK1005S FIELD PRACTICE I**

*This course is restricted to Bachelor of Social Work [HB063] students only.*

0 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr F Williams

**Course entry requirements:** Acceptance for the Bachelor of Social Work [HB063] degree. This course is a co-requisite for SWK1006S for Bachelor of Social Work [HB063] degree students ONLY.

**Course outline:**

This course is located in the second semester of the first year of the undergraduate degree. The course affords those students studying for the Bachelor of Social Work degree the foundation they require to prepare them for working within the profession. This is the first field practice course of the programme and is constructed to offer students a “hands on” approach to the theoretical material. Thus, the lecture component of the SWK1006S course provides the theoretical knowledge, skills and value base of professional interaction.

**Lecture times:** Wednesdays and Thursdays, 7<sup>th</sup> and 8<sup>th</sup> periods.

**DP requirements:** Attendance of at least 80% of the workshops.

**Assessment:** The course will be examined through a practical examination where students will have to demonstrate that they have achieved competency in using the skills taught in the workshops.

---

**SWK1006S BASIC PROFESSIONAL INTERACTION**

*NOTE: This course is open to any student in the Faculty of Humanities.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr E Campbell

**Course entry requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**

This course provides introductory theoretical constructs regarding society, organisations, groups, families and individuals which enable human service professionals to understand and to interact professionally within the context in which professionals work. The content is anchored around the South African Constitution and uses a human rights approach as the overarching theoretical framework.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour November examination counts 50%.

---

### **SWK1013F** COMMUNITY CONNECTIONS

*NOTE: This course is open to any student in the Faculty of Humanities.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr S Hoosain

**Course entry requirements:** None.

**Course outline:**

This course aims to develop students' understanding of the interactions between different social systems in the context of selected contemporary social issues and the impact of these on individuals, households and communities and the range of resources that target these challenges. The course creates an opportunity for students to develop their professional relationship and communication skills while developing their skills in data gathering and recording for assessment purposes. Students are introduced to selected intervention strategies.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials, and other required written work by the due date. Field trips where required, are compulsory. Attendance of lectures or seminars as indicated by the department.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour examination counts 50%.

---

### **SWK1014F** COMMUNITY CONNECTIONS +

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** SWK1013F

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: SWK1013F COMMUNITY CONNECTIONS. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of Plus Tuts, and online support in the form of exercises and consultations. In these tutorials and online forums, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**DP requirements:** 80% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessment, other written work and participation.

---

### **SWK2001F** INTRODUCTION TO SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

*NOTE: This course is open to any student in the Faculty of Humanities.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr M Munodawafa

**Course entry requirements:** At least second-year status.

**Course outline:**

The course introduces students to the evolution of social service professions in South Africa and the global, national and regional contexts within which they work. It focuses on the socio-political context created by pre- and post-democratic social policies within which social services in South Africa are

now delivered. The course provides an introduction to the main policies, legislation and programmes that shape the developmental context in which social service professions now work in South Africa. It also introduces students to global and national trends that impact on social service provisions in the South. In addition it enables students to understand the specific roles of social service professionals in promoting human wellbeing.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date. Attendance of lectures or seminars as indicated by the department.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour June examination counts 50%.

---

### **SWK2002F INTRODUCTION TO SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** At least second-year status (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** SWK2001F

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: SWK2001F INTRODUCTION TO SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of Plus Tuts, and online support in the form of exercises and consultations. In these tutorials and online forums, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**DP requirements:** 80% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessment, other written work and participation.

---

### **SWK2013S COMMUNITY AND YOUTH DEVELOPMENT**

*NOTE: This course is open to any student in the Faculty of Humanities, except BSW students.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr K Kubeka

**Course entry requirements:** At least second-year status.

**Course outline:**

Building on the theoretical constructs and skills of earlier courses, students are introduced to Community Development from a political economy of welfare perspective. This course uses youth development and contemporary issues as a lens for learning about community assessment and intervention strategies. The course provides students with the basic concepts, theory, processes and skills required for culturally appropriate assessment of systems and situations at community level, and community development as a strategy of interaction within a framework of youth and youth development in South and Southern Africa.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date. Attendance of lectures or seminars as indicated by the department.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour November examination counts 50%.

---

### **SWK2014S COMMUNITY AND YOUTH DEVELOPMENT +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** At least second-year status (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** SWK2013S

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: SWK2013S COMMUNITY AND YOUTH DEVELOPMENT. It aims to improve students' performance by

enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of Plus Tuts, and online support in the form of exercises and consultations. In these tutorials and online forums, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**DP requirements:** 80% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessment, other written work and participation.

### **SWK2060F SOCIAL WORK ASSESSMENT**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** R Addinall

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW. At least second year status, or with permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course provides students with the basic concepts, theory, processes and skills required for culturally appropriate assessment of systems and situations, based on which interventions may be designed. It builds on the introductory theoretical constructs and skills developed in previous courses. The course consists of three modules – assessment of individuals and families, assessment of groups and assessment of communities. While students are encouraged to conceptualise intervention holistically, particular knowledge and skills are relevant to the different levels of intervention

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour June examination counts 50%.

### **SWK2065S SOCIAL WORK INTERVENTION**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** R Addinall

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW and student must have completed SWK2060F, or with permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course builds on SWK2060F which examines the assessment phase of working with client systems. This course introduces students to a range of theories, concepts, processes and skills underpinning different strategies of intervention at the level of individuals, families, groups and communities. It is designed to enable students to facilitate appropriate processes of change at micro, mezzo and macro levels.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour November examination counts 50%.

### **SWK2070FS FIELD PRACTICE II**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr F Williams

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW. At least second year and student must have completed SWK 2060F, or must be registered for SWK 2060F concurrently, or with permission from the Head of Department. All field practice courses can only be attempted twice as per the norms and standards for social work training and under no circumstances can a concession be granted for a student to attempt the course for a third time.

**Course outline:**

This course provides students with the opportunity to develop competence in the assessment phase of intervention through the application of principles, concepts and theories related to this phase. This

takes place through experiential workshops and field placements in human service settings. The course aims to introduce students to a range of appropriate assessment frameworks and approaches and encourages students to adopt an experiential, reflective approach to professional practice and use of self.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at and completion of the field practice programme and participation in lectures/workshops, seminars and supervision/tutorials; submission of all essays, project reports, field reports, seminar material and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Examination by written assignments, structured evaluation of field practice and by oral examination.

---

### SWK2075FS FIELD PRACTICE III

*NOTE: Students are expected to undertake an Orientation Programme prior to the commencement of the course. This period falls outside the usual teaching term and is usually the week before the second semester commences.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr F Williams

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW. The student must have completed SWK 2060F and 2070FS, or with permission from the Head of Department. All field practice courses can only be attempted twice as per the norms and standards for social work training and under no circumstances can a concession be granted for a student to attempt the course for a third time.

**Course outline:**

This course builds on earlier courses and introduces students to professional practice. It provides students with the opportunity to integrate theory and practice with focus on intervention with individuals and families within their community context. In this semester students concentrate on direct service practice, developing generic skills and specific casework skills. An ecosystems and eclectic approach is adopted.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at and completion of the field practice programme and participation in lectures/workshops, seminars and supervision/tutorials; submission of all essays, project reports, field reports, seminar material and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Examination by written assignments, structured evaluation of field practice and by oral examination.

---

### SWK3001F PRINCIPLES AND APPLICATION OF SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

*NOTE: This course is open to any student in the Faculty of Humanities.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Abdullah

**Course entry requirements:** SWK2001F.

**Course outline:**

The course builds on students' knowledge and understanding of the history of the social service professions and the socio-political economy that frames various government and non-governmental responses to social challenges, particularly at a regional and local level. It critically engages the student with regional social policy issues, structures and processes in order to better understand evolving professional social development practice. In addition, the course exposes students to contemporary debates on social welfare, the social service professions and social security, within a framework of human rights and human development.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date. Attendance of lectures or seminars as indicated by the department.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour June examination counts 50%.

---

**SWK3061F** SOCIAL WORK RESEARCH

18 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr K Kubeka**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW and must have at least third year status.**Course outline:**

This course provides the student with a theoretical understanding of the key stages/related concepts in the research process. At the same time central themes/issues that are linked to the knowledge, skills and value base of research in the broad field of human services are explored. Students will also be required to design and execute a small research project.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour June examination counts 50%.

---

**SWK3066S** CONTEMPORARY SOCIAL WORK ISSUES*NOTE: This course is open to any student in the Faculty of Humanities.*

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Abdullah**Course entry requirements:** At least 3<sup>rd</sup> year status or by discretion of the HOD.**Course outline:**

The course is intended to introduce students to selected contemporary issues and the response of social service professions to them in the South African context. A major focus is on youth in general, as they have become one of the most vulnerable population groups. The course consists of three modules and each module focuses on a specific contemporary issue.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 4<sup>th</sup> period.**DP requirements:** Submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date. Attendance of lectures or seminars as indicated by the department.**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; two-hour November examination counts 50%.

---

**SWK3070FS** FIELD PRACTICE IV*NOTE: Students are expected to undertake an Orientation Programme prior to the commencement of the course. This period falls outside the usual teaching term and is usually immediately prior to the commencement of the first semester teaching term.*

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr F Williams**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW who have completed SWK 2065S and SWK 2075FS, or with permission from the Head of Department. All field practice courses can only be attempted twice as per the norms and standards for social work training and under no circumstances can a concession be granted for a student to attempt the course for a third time.**Course outline:**

This course builds on earlier theory and practice courses. It provides the opportunity for students to develop competence in integrated practice with individuals and communities within an organisational setting and in a social development paradigm. In this year, students concentrate on direct service practice, developing generic skills and specific community, group work and casework skills. A developmental approach is used to integrate knowledge and skills in all methods.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at and completion of the field practice programme and participation in lectures/workshops, seminars and supervision/tutorials; submission of all essays, project reports, field reports, seminar material and other required written work by the due date.**Assessment:** Examination by written assignments, structured evaluation of field practice and by oral examination.

**SWK3075FS** FIELD PRACTICE V

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr F Williams

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW who have completed SWK3070FS, or with permission from the Head of Department. All field practice courses can only be attempted twice as per the norms and standards for social work training and under no circumstances can a concession be granted for a student to attempt the course for a third time.

**Course outline:**

This course builds on earlier theory and practice courses. It provides the opportunity for students to develop competence in integrated practice with groups within an organisational setting and in a social development paradigm. In this semester students concentrate on direct service practice, developing generic skills and specific community and group work skills. A developmental approach is used to integrate knowledge and skills in all methods.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at and completion of the field practice programme and participation in lectures/workshops, seminars and supervision/tutorials; submission of all essays, project reports, field reports, seminar material and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Examination by written assignments, structured evaluation of field practice and by oral examination.

---

**SWK4015F** SOCIAL WORK RESEARCH II

22 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Dr E Campbell

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW. Students must have completed SWK 3061F, or with permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This research course builds on the knowledge, values and skills of social work students enabling them to do applied research with individuals, families, groups and organisations in the South African social services context. Particular emphasis will be given to interrogating the philosophical assumptions that underpin research (epistemologies) as well as participatory action research, policy research and programme evaluation.

**Lecture times:** Monday & Tuesday, 8<sup>th</sup> and 9<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; June examination counts 50%.

---

**SWK4016S** SOCIAL WORK RESEARCH PROJECT PAPER

16 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Dr E Campbell

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW. The student must have completed SWK 4015F or with permission from the head of department.

**Course outline:**

Students are required to conduct a limited research project under supervision. The research undertaken could be a collaborative exercise focusing on a particular social problem/condition. The various components of the report will be handed in as assignments. The final report will not exceed 10,000 words (excluding references and appendices) and should be a typed, edited, and properly bound document.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of supervision and research seminars; submission of all written assignments by the due dates.

**Assessment:** Students will be assessed continuously and graded in line with incremental learning appropriate to outcomes-based education.

---

**SWK4030F** CONTEMPORARY FAMILIES IN A CHANGING SOCIETY

22 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Dr M Munodawafa

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW and must have fourth year status, or with permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course is designed to equip students with a conceptual understanding of families and the developmental needs of children in a changing South African context. It includes an overview of selected theoretical and intervention approaches and practice models in working with families and children, and explores the role of caregivers.

**Lecture times:** Monday and Tuesday, 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> periods.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars, submission of all essays, projects, seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; June examination counts 50%.

---

**SWK4031S** PSYCHOSOCIAL FUNCTIONING & EMPOWERMENT

22 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor L Holtzhausen

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW and must have fourth year status, or with permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course examines the social, environmental determinants of mental health. Risk factors are presented and the process of developing protective factors are explored and examined. The course is designed inter alia to present the South African demographics regarding the social, environmental and economic determinants of mental health and focusses on selected risk populations.

**Lecture times:** Monday and Tuesday 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> periods.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars and submission of all essays/projects/seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; November examination counts 50%.

---

**SWK4032S** SOCIAL POLICY & MANAGEMENT

22 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Dr E Campbell

**Course entry requirements:** Unless otherwise approved, for BSW students and must have fourth year status, or with permission from the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces the students to structures, frameworks and basic tools for policy formulation and analysis. It introduces inter alia an introduction to organisational life and management through concepts of planning, decision making, organising and staffing, leadership, supervision and consultation, motivation and management control, funding strategies and financial and information management.

**Lecture times:** Monday and Tuesday 8<sup>th</sup> and 9<sup>th</sup> periods.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance at lectures/seminars and submission of all essays/projects/seminar materials and other required written work by the due date.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50%; November examination counts 50%.

---

**SWK4033FS** FIELD PRACTICE VI

22 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Dr F Williams

**Course entry requirements:** This course is only for students doing the BSW. The student must have completed SWK 3075FS, or with permission from the Head of Department. All field practice courses can only be attempted twice as per the norms and standards for social work training and under no circumstances can a concession be granted for a student to attempt the course for a third time.



## SOCIAL WORK AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT 392

### **Course outline:**

In this year, students concentrate on direct service practice, developing generic skills in two methods of social work. A developmental approach is used to integrate knowledge and skills in all methods. This course builds is designed to facilitate the student's learning to engage critically and reflectively with diverse client systems, selectively implement actions strategies and evaluate the effectiveness thereof.

**DP requirements:** At least 80% attendance of field practicum; submission of all written assignments by the due dates and an oral examination.

**Assessment:** Students will be assessed continuously and graded in line with incremental learning appropriate to outcomes-based education. This will include individual and/or group assignments and oral examination.

---

## SOCIOLOGY

The Department is housed in the Robert Leslie Social Science Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [soc-sociology@uct.ac.za](mailto:soc-sociology@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 3501.

The letter code for the Department is SOC.

Departmental website: [www.sociology.uct.ac.za](http://www.sociology.uct.ac.za)

### Associate Professor and Head of Department:

N Gama, PhD *Cape Town*

### Professor and Acting Director of the Institute for Democracy, Citizenship and Public Policy in Africa:

J Seekings, BA(Hons) *Oxon* BA(Hons) *Witwatersrand* DPhil *Oxon*

### Professors:

E Moore, MSc PhD *Trinity College Dublin*

A Pande, BA *Delhi* MA *Delhi School of Economics* MA PhD *Massachusetts*

### Emeritus Professors:

J Maree, BSc(Hons) *Rhodes* BA *Oxon* MA *Sussex* PhD *Cape Town*

A Sitas, BA(Hons) PhD *Witwatersrand*

### Associate Professors:

A Benya, BSocSc(Hons) MSocSc PhD *Witwatersrand*

R Chaturvedi, MA *Delhi* PhD *Columbia*

F Garba Muhammed, BA(Hons) *Ghana* MA *Freiburg* PhD *Cape Town*

F Matose, BA *Zimbabwe* MSc *Alberta* DPhil *Sussex*

### Emeritus Associate Professors:

D M Cooper, BSc(Eng) *Cape Town* MSocSc PhD *Birmingham*

K Jubber, MA *Witwatersrand* PhD *Cape Town*

M D Lincoln, BA(Hons) *KwaZulu-Natal* MA *Wilfrid Laurier* PhD *Cape Town*

### Adjunct Professor:

S Damodaran, BA *Delhi* PhD *JNU Delhi*

### Senior Lecturers:

J de Wet, MA PhD *Cape Town*

B Tame, BSocSc MA *Freiburg & KwaZulu-Natal* PhD *Cape Town*

### Lecturers:

N Mabandla, MSocSc *Cape Town*

T Meyer, BSocSc (Hons), MPhil *Cape Town*, PhD *Stellenbosch*.

N Vally, BSc(Hons) MA PhD *Witwatersrand*

### Administrative Officer:

T Stoffels

### Administrative Assistants:

J Stoffels

S Walker

## Requirements for a major in Industrial Sociology [SOC02]

### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
<b>At least ONE of the following:</b>	
SOC1001F	Introduction to Sociology
SOC1005S	Individual and Society

### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
SOC2015S	Comparative Industrial & Labour Studies
<b>AND at least ONE of the following:</b>	
PBL2800F	Crime and Deviance in South African Cities
SOC2004S	Race, Class, Gender & Sexuality
SOC2019S	Social Theory
SOC2030F	Poverty, Development & Globalisation
SOC2032F	Culture and Social Life
SOC2036F	Power and Society ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )

### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
SOC3027F	Social Research (Industrial Sociology)
SOC3029S	Industrial Society & Change

NOTE: Students may not register for both SOC3007F and SOC3027F.

### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **any 2000-level SOC course**: SOC1001F or SOC1005S or at least three 1000-level social science courses, and be in the second or subsequent year of study
- (ii) For **PBL2800F**: SOC1001F or SOC1005S or any 1000-level social science course
- (iii) For **SOC3027F** and **SOC3029S**: SOC2015S and any other 2000-level course in Sociology and be in the third or subsequent year of study.

## Requirements for a major in Sociology [SOC01]

### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
<b>At least ONE of the following:</b>	
SOC1001F	Introduction to Sociology
SOC1005S	Individual and Society

### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
<b>At least TWO of the following:</b>	
PBL2800F	Crime and Deviance in South African Cities
SOC2004S	Race, Class, Gender & Sexuality
SOC2015S	Comparative Industrial & Labour Studies
SOC2019S	Social Theory
SOC2030F	Poverty, Development & Globalisation
SOC2032F	Culture and Social Life
SOC2036F	Power and Society ( <i>Not offered in 2025</i> )

**Third Year courses**

Code	Title
SOC3007F	Social Research
SOC3031S	Social Justice and Inequality

**Prerequisites:**

- (i) For any **2000-level SOC course**: SOC1001F or SOC1005S or at least three 1000-level social science courses, and be in the second or subsequent year of study
- (ii) For **PBL2800F**: SOC1001F or SOC1005S or any 1000-level social science course
- (iii) For **SOC3007F** and **SOC3031S**: any two 2000-level SOC courses and be in the third or subsequent year of study.

*NOTE:* Students may not register for both SOC3007F and SOC3027F.

The Department of Sociology regards the following as appropriate disciplines for social science courses: a major in African Studies, Anthropology, Archaeology, Economic History, Economics, Environmental and Geographical Science, Film and Media Studies, Gender Studies, Historical Studies, Law, Media and Writing, Philosophy, Politics, Psychology and Organisational Psychology, Public Administration, Social Development/Social Work, and the Study of Religions. Courses from other disciplines may be considered on motivation.

Students who do not meet the prerequisites for admission to a course may be admitted to a particular course by permission of the Head of Department.

**Development Sociology**

The following courses (or their SOC + versions) are recommended for students wishing to concentrate on Development Sociology:

SOC1001F	Introduction to Sociology
SOC1005S	Individual and Society
SOC2015S	Comparative Industrial and Labour Studies
SOC2030F	Poverty, Development & Globalisation
SOC3007F	Social Research (with an appropriate project) and
SOC3031S	Social Justice and Inequality or
SOC3027F	Social Research (Industrial Sociology) (with an appropriate project) and
SOC3029S	Industrial Society & Change

**Written work and examinations:**

The Department of Sociology requires students in undergraduate courses to attend all lectures and tutorials, submit all written work, to complete class tests, and to write an examination for each course in June and/or November each year. A pass mark for any course in Sociology is a minimum of 50%.

**Course Outlines:****SOC1001F INTRODUCTION TO SOCIOLOGY**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor J Seekings

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

People move through life in a set of socially structured institutions like the family, education, work and eldership. How are we shaped by the society around us? What part can we play in shaping our society? How have sociologists tried to make sense of the society around us in which our everyday experience is located? What is the sociological imagination? How does it help us to go beneath surface appearances to better understand what is happening? The course introduces students to major ways in which sociologists have grappled to make sense of historically dynamic society in an increasingly globalised context.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 4<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **SOC1005S INDIVIDUAL AND SOCIETY**

*(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer Term - please consult the department.)*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor R Chaturvedi

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This is an introductory course, designed to explore key issues and activities in South African society today. It aims to assist the student to search for and identify accurate information and relevant ideas, situate these in social context, and to outline and begin to probe views around key social issues. We live in a society with deeply structured social inequalities and a range of issues and problems which people confront every day. What is actually happening to people positioned differently in society? What is changing and what is continuing? How do ordinary people deal with these issues? What forms of organisation and action do they turn to as they try to meet their needs and build lives which are fulfilling and dignified? The course examines selected social processes, structures, institutions and behaviours which help us understand these issues and ways of dealing with them.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 4<sup>th</sup> or 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments as set.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **SOC1006F INTRODUCTION TO SOCIOLOGY +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Professor J Seekings

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** SOC1001F.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: SOC1001F INTRODUCTION TO SOCIOLOGY. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### **SOC1007S INDIVIDUAL AND SOCIETY +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor R Chaturvedi

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** SOC1005S.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: SOC1005S INDIVIDUAL AND SOCIETY. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### **PBL2800F** CRIME AND DEVIANCE IN SOUTH AFRICAN CITIES

*NOTE: This course is offered through Sociology by the Department of Public Law.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** SOC1001F or SOC1005S or any 1000-level social science course.

**Course outline:**

There are two objectives in the course. In the first place, we consider the nature of deviance, crime and criminality in South Africa, from both historical and current viewpoints. We consider questions such as: How much crime is there in South Africa? Who are the victims of crime and who are the offenders? Why is crime in South Africa so violent? This discussion will draw freely from international, criminological debate and locate those debates within a developing context. The second objective of the course aims at exploring responses to crime in the South African context. We consider questions such as: What has and is being done by the state and non-state to engage with crime? What is the thinking behind (violent) crime control and prevention programmes and initiatives? How effective have these initiatives been? This discussion will, for instance, focus on crime policies that have been developed as well as community and private sector initiatives to address issues of crime and violence.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 50% and one two-hour examination counts 50% of the final mark.

---

### **SOC2004S** RACE, CLASS, GENDER & SEXUALITY

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor A Pande

**Course entry requirements:** SOC1001F or SOC1005S or at least three 1000-level social science courses, and be in the second or subsequent year of study.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces and critically examines various understandings of the social categories race, class, gender and sexuality, among others. Instead of assuming these categories to be biological, ahistorical and/or static, we use theories of social constructionism to analyse these categories as relational and contingent – depending on the historical, political, socio-cultural, economic and national contexts. Finally the class explores ways in which these categories intersect to shape experiences of inequalities in South Africa and outside, both historically and in the present.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Thursday, 7<sup>th</sup> and 8<sup>th</sup> periods.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 70%; an examination counts 30% of the final mark.

---

### **SOC2015S** COMPARATIVE INDUSTRIAL & LABOUR STUDIES

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr B Tame

**Course entry requirements:** SOC1001F or SOC1005S or at least three 1000-level social science courses, and be in the second or subsequent year of study.

**Course outline:**

This course focuses on change in industrial and labour practices internationally. The following could be included: paths of industrialisation followed by selected countries; the international division of labour; the implications of these and other global economic trends for labour and industrial relations. The countries and regions selected for close study will usually lie in East Asia, Latin America and Africa.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 1<sup>st</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 70%; an examination counts 30% of the final mark.

### **SOC2019S** SOCIAL THEORY

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor F Garba Muhammed

**Course entry requirements:** SOC1001F or SOC1005S or at least three 1000-level social science courses, and be in the second or subsequent year of study.

**Course outline:**

This course deals with a wide range of social theories - ranging from classical to contemporary. The purpose of the course is to provide an introduction to social theory and to demonstrate the value of theory in guiding research, aiding understanding and challenging conventional ways of seeing and interpreting the world. The theories dealt with include those focused on modernity, late modernity and African modernity.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%; an examination counts 40% of the final mark.

### **SOC2030F** POVERTY, DEVELOPMENT & GLOBALISATION

*(NOTE: This course may also be offered in Summer Term - please consult the department.)*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor F Matose

**Course entry requirements:** SOC1001F or SOC1005S or at least three 1000-level social science courses, and be in the second or subsequent year of study.

**Course outline:**

This course examines the great contemporary problems of poverty and inequality within the context of a globalising world. Sources and selected empirical cases of poverty and inequality are explored and related development theories and policies are examined. The geographical scope of the course ranges from the local to the international. One or more African languages may accompany English in some lectures or reading material.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 1<sup>st</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%; an examination counts 40% of the final mark.

### **SOC2032F** CULTURE AND SOCIAL LIFE

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor E Moore

**Course entry requirements:** SOC1001F or SOC1005S or at least three 1000-level social science courses, and be in the second or subsequent year of study.

**Course outline:**

This course proceeds from the view that in order to understand the relationship between culture and society in contemporary times, we need to understand the workings of power. The ways in which power organises our domestic spheres, everyday disposition, and performances of selves and identities have gone through rapid changes in the 20th and 21st centuries. This course maps the ways in which different modes of power have historically shaped our gender roles, our understanding of authority, tradition, and adversarial relationships between different ethnicised and racialised groups. At a time when issues of gender-based inequalities as well as civil strife demand our attention, this course examines the ways in which personal relationships and ethnicised communities have become sites of intimate and public violence in contemporary Africa and South Africa. It seeks to offer a historically grounded account of the role that culture has played in this context, and its relationship with our contentious and violent present.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 2<sup>nd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 60%; an examination counts 40% of the final mark.

---

**SOC2034F POVERTY, DEVELOPMENT & GLOBALISATION +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor F Matose

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** SOC2030F.

**Course outline:**

This course examines the great contemporary global problems of poverty and inequality. Sources and selected empirical cases of poverty and inequality are explored and related development theories and policies are examined. The geographical scope of the course ranges from the local to the international. This course is an augmented version of its host course: Poverty, Development & Globalisation, SOC2030F. The content covered and assessments are identical but it offers additional tutoring and writing support.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

**SOC2035S COMPARATIVE INDUSTRIAL & LABOUR STUDY +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr B Tame

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** SOC2015S.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: SOC2015S COMPARATIVE INDUSTRIALISATION & LABOUR STUDY. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

**SOC3007F SOCIAL RESEARCH**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr T Meyer

**Course entry requirements:** Any two 2000-level SOC courses and be in the third or subsequent year of study.

**Course outline:**

This course consists of two components: (1) lectures on qualitative and quantitative research methods and (2) research groups (tutorials) in which students get to engage in research exercises (from developing a research proposal to conducting pilot and/or main studies). The options vary from year to year and focus on a variety of contemporary South African themes which are linked to substantive topics covered in the second semester. The lectures provide an introductory course in research methods to equip students to conduct their research exercises. The research group meetings deal with substantive, methodological and theoretical issues related to the research proposal and offer personal supervision for research exercises.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday – 7<sup>th</sup> period. Research group meetings: Time and day to be announced.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all tests, assignments and exercises.



**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%. *NOTE: Credit will not be given for both SOC3007F and SOC3027F. This course is only offered for the major in Sociology and for students requiring the course for a named programme.*

**SOC3027F SOCIAL RESEARCH (INDUSTRIAL SOCIOLOGY)**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr T Meyer

**Course entry requirements:** SOC2015S and any other 2000-level course in Sociology, and be in the third or subsequent year of study.

**Course outline:**

This course consists of two components: (1) lectures on qualitative and quantitative research methods and (2) research groups (tutorials) in which students get to engage in research exercises (from developing a research proposal to conducting pilot and/or main studies). The options vary from year to year and focus on a variety of contemporary South African themes which are linked to substantive topics covered in research methods to equip students to conduct their research exercises. The research group meetings deal with substantive, methodological and theoretical issues related to the research proposal and offer personal supervision for research exercises.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday –7<sup>th</sup> period. Research group meetings: Time and day to be announced.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all tests, assignments and exercises.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%. *NOTE: Credit will not be given for both SOC3007F and SOC3027F. This course is only offered for the major in Industrial Sociology and for students requiring the course for a named programme.*

**SOC3029S INDUSTRIAL SOCIETY & SOCIAL CHANGE**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor A Benya

**Course entry requirements:** SOC2015S and any other 2000-level course in Sociology, and be in the third or subsequent year of study.

**Course outline:**

South Africa post 1994 has become an integral part of the globalised economy. This course examines socio-economic issues with a particular focus on the world of work, exploring change and continuity in terms of theory, policy and the lived experience of everyday life. It asks, what is changing? Where is change coming from? Who is driving change? Who benefits from change? What challenges stand in the way of development towards a more just society? Against the background of questions such as these, industrial society, broader political economy questions and popular traditions of mobilising and organising form the backbone of the course. We thus look at the world of work broadly, inequality, citizenship, social welfare and services, governance, education, alienation, migration and mobility, health and others. The course explores these issues in the context of globalisation, using specific illustrative case study material primarily from South African post-1994 industrial society, while drawing illuminating material from other national and transnational contexts.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 70%; an examination counts 30% of the final mark.

**SOC3031S SOCIAL JUSTICE AND INEQUALITY**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor N Gama

**Course entry requirements:** Any two 2000-level SOC courses and be in the third or subsequent year of study

**Course outline:**

This course examines contemporary international debates on the social discourses and practices that perpetuate injustice and inequality and their relevance to understanding South African society. The

literature may include debates on the way discourses create centres and margins, resulting in social differences which, in turn, have a significant impact on people's life chances. The literature may also include debates on the changing patterns of urban and rural inequality. Who are the winners and losers in today's society? What are the causes of new patterns of social injustice and inequality? In reading a wide literature, students will be provided with comparative concepts with which they can begin to interpret the emerging patterns of social justice and inequality in South Africa.

**Lecture times:** Tuesday to Friday 6<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Completion of all written tests, essays and assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts 70%; an examination counts 30% of the final mark.

## STATISTICAL SCIENCES

The Department is housed in the PD Hahn Building, Chemistry Mall, Cissy Gool Avenue, Upper Campus and can be contacted by email at: [beverley.king@uct.ac.za](mailto:beverley.king@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 3219.

The Departmental code for Statistics is STA.

Departmental website: [www.stats.uct.ac.za](http://www.stats.uct.ac.za)

### Requirements for a major in Applied Statistics

#### [STA01]

##### First Year courses

Code	Title
MAM1031F	Mathematics 1031
	<b>AND</b>
MAM1032S	Mathematics 1032
	<b>OR</b>
MAM1004F	Mathematics 1004 <b>AND</b>
MAM1008S	Introduction to Discreet Mathematics
STA1007S	Introductory Statistics for Scientists <b>OR</b>
STA1000FSPL	Introductory Statistics

##### Second Year courses

Code	Title
STA2007H	Study Design and Data Analysis for Scientists <b>OR</b>
STA2020FS	Applied Statistics
STA2030S	Statistical Theory

##### Third Year courses

Code	Title
STA3030F	Statistical Inference & Modelling
STA3036S	Operational Research Techniques

### Requirements for a major in Mathematical Statistics

#### [STA02]

##### First Year courses

Code	Title
<i>First semester</i>	
MAM1031F	Mathematics 1031
<i>Second semester</i>	
MAM1032S	Mathematics 1032
STA1006S	Mathematical Statistics I

##### Second Year courses\*

Code	Title
<i>First semester</i>	
STA2004F	Statistical Theory & Inference
<i>Second semester</i>	
STA2005S	Linear Models

##### Third Year courses

Code	Title
<i>First semester</i>	
STA3041F	Stochastic Processes & Time Series

---

Second semester

STA3043S Statistical Modelling, Machine Learning & Bayesian analysis

*\*Note: MAM2000W (or MAM2010F, MAM2011F, MAM2013S and MAM2014S) is highly recommended in second year. Please discuss with a curriculum advisor.*

### Course outlines:

**NB:** *Statistical Science courses may NOT be taken by Humanities students in their first year of study. Statistical Science courses do NOT count towards the 12 Humanities courses required by a general BA or BSocSc.*

### Undergraduate Courses

**NOTE:** *Students who intend to specialise in Statistics are strongly advised to include Computer Science in their curriculum.*

A student cannot obtain credits for more than one of STA1000F/S/P/L, STA1007S, STA1006S, STA1008F/S, STA1100S, STA1106H

A student cannot obtain credits for more than one of STA2020F/S, STA2007F/H/S, STA2005S.

A student cannot obtain credits for both STA2004F and STA2030S.

A student cannot obtain credits for both STA3030F and STA3041F.

A student cannot obtain credits for both STA3043S and (STA3047S+STA3048S)

### First-Year Courses

---

#### STA1000F INTRODUCTORY STATISTICS

*(No first year students) STA1000F and STA1000S are identical courses offered in first and second semesters. Owing to the mathematics prerequisites, first-year students can only register for STA1000S in the second semester and STA1000F on completion of the mathematics prerequisite. One lecture per week, one workshop per week and one tutorial per week. A student cannot obtain credits for more than one of STA1000F/S/P/L, STA1007S, STA1006S, STA1008F/S.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** N Watson

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in any of MAM1004F/S or MAM1005H or MAM1031F or MAM1033F or MAM1020F/S or MAM1010F/S or MAM1110F/H.

**Course outline:**

This is an introductory statistics course aimed at exposing students to principles and tools to support appropriate quantitative analysis. The aim is to produce students with a functional sense of statistics. We introduce students to statistical modelling and also cover exploratory data analysis. Appropriate tools for display, analysis and interpretation of data are discussed. This course is offered predominantly, but not exclusively, to Commerce students. The aim is to give a foundation to students who will encounter and apply statistics in their other courses and professions. Topics covered include: exploratory data analysis and summary statistics; probability theory; random variables; probability mass and density functions; Binomial, Poisson, Exponential, Normal and Uniform distributions; sampling distributions; confidence intervals; introduction to hypothesis testing (including tests on means; tabular data and bivariate data); determining sample sizes; simple linear regression and measures of correlation. Students are assessed on their knowledge of the topics covered and their ability to perform simple and appropriate statistical analyses using spreadsheet functions.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, tutorials, practicals and tests and completion of assignments and/or exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 40% and a 2-hour exam counting 60%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

---

**STA1000S INTRODUCTORY STATISTICS**

*STA1000F and STA1000S are identical courses offered in first and second semesters. Owing to the mathematics prerequisites, first-year students can only register for STA1000S in the second semester and STA1000F on completion of the mathematics prerequisite. One lecture per week, one workshop per week, and one tutorial per week. A student cannot obtain credits for more than one of STA1000F/S/P/L, STA1007S, STA1100S, STA1006S, STA1106H, STA1008F/S.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** N Watson

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in any of MAM1004F/S or MAM1005H or MAM1031F or MAM1033F or MAM1020F/S or MAM1010F/S or MAM1110F/H or at least 45% for MAM1010F or MAM1004F or MAM1020F or MAM1031F or MAM1033F in the current year.

**Course outline:**

This is an introductory statistics course aimed at exposing students to principles and tools to support appropriate quantitative analysis. The aim is to produce students with a functional sense of statistics. We introduce students to statistical modelling and also cover exploratory data analysis. Appropriate tools for display, analysis and interpretation of data are discussed. This course is offered predominantly, but not exclusively, to Commerce students. The aim is to give a foundation to students who will encounter and apply statistics in their other courses and professions. Topics covered include: exploratory data analysis and summary statistics; probability theory; random variables; probability mass and density functions; Binomial, Poisson, Exponential, Normal and Uniform distributions; sampling distributions; confidence intervals; introduction to hypothesis testing (including tests on means, tabular data and bivariate data); determining sample sizes; simple linear regression and measures of correlation. Students are assessed on their knowledge of the topics covered and their ability to perform simple and appropriate statistical analyses using spreadsheet functions.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, tutorials, practicals and tests and completion of assignments and/or exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 40% and a 2-hour exam counting 60%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

---

**STA1000P/L INTRODUCTORY STATISTICS**

*(offered during summer and winter terms)*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** N Watson

**Course entry requirements:** Students should have obtained a DP for either STA1000F/S.

**Course outline:**

This is an introductory statistics course aimed at exposing students to principles and tools to support appropriate quantitative analysis. The aim is to produce students with a functional sense of statistics. We introduce students to statistical modelling and also cover exploratory data analysis. Appropriate tools for display, analysis and interpretation of data are discussed. This course is offered predominantly, but not exclusively, to Commerce students. The aim is to give a foundation to students who will encounter and apply statistics in their other courses and professions. Topics covered include: exploratory data analysis and summary statistics; probability theory; random variables; probability mass and density functions; Binomial, Poisson, Exponential, Normal and Uniform distributions; sampling distributions; confidence intervals; introduction to hypothesis testing (including tests on means, tabular data and bivariate data); determining sample sizes; simple linear regression and measures of correlation. Students are assessed on their knowledge of the topics covered and their ability to perform simple and appropriate statistical analyses using spreadsheet functions.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of tests and completion of assignments and/or exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 40% and a 2-hour exam counting 60%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

---

**STA1006S MATHEMATICAL STATISTICS I**

*A student cannot obtain credits for more than one of STA1000F/S/P/L, STA1007S, STA1006S, STA1008F/S.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** S Salau

**Course entry requirements:** At least 60% in MAM1031F or MAM1033F or MAM1005H or MAM1020F/S or at least 70% in MAM1010F/S or MAM1004F and concurrent registration for MAM1032S or MAM1034S, or MAM1006H or MAM1012F/S or MAM1021S **OR** an average of at least 60% for both (MAM1031F & MAM1032S) or (MAM1033F & MAM1034S) or (MAM1020F/S & MAM1021S) or (MAM1005H & MAM1006H) or an average of least 70% for both (MAM1010F/S & MAM1012F/S).

**Course outline:**

This is an introduction to statistics: the study of collecting, analysing, and interpreting data. It is the key entry-point into a Mathematical Statistics major and hence it is compulsory for students intending to major in Mathematical Statistics. This course provides foundation knowledge in statistical theory, and is useful for any student who wishes for an introduction to the fundamentals of statistics, from a mathematical perspective. Topics covered include: Types of data variables. Exploratory data analysis. Grouping and graphing of data. Set theory and counting rules. Probability: conditional probabilities, independence. Bayes theorem. Random variables and values, probability mass and density functions, cumulative distribution functions. Population models and parameters: binomial, Poisson, geometric, negative binomial, hypergeometric. Uniform, exponential, Gaussian, expectation. Coefficient of variation. Sampling: sampling distribution t, Chi-square, F and their tables. Point and interval estimation. Sample size estimation. Hypotheses testing: Z-test and T-test (proportions, difference between two proportions, means, difference between two (means, difference between means: for independent samples and dependent samples). F-test (ratio of two independent variances). Chi-squared-test. Meaning of p-values. Bivariate data: scatterplot, simple linear regression and correlation.

**Lecture times:** Five lectures per week, Monday - Friday, 4<sup>th</sup> period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, tutorials, practicals and tests and completion of assignments and/or class exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 30% and a 3-hour exam counting 70%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

## Second-Year Courses

---

**STA2004F STATISTICAL THEORY & INFERENCE**

*A student cannot obtain credits for both STA2004F and STA2030S.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M Mavuso

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in (MAM1000W or MAM1032S or MAM1034S or MAM1012S or MAM1006H) and STA1006S or STA1106H.

**Course outline:**

STA2004F is a rigorous introduction to the foundation of the mathematical statistics and aims to provide students with a deeper understanding of the statistical concepts covered in STA1006S. The course is intended for students studying Mathematical Statistics or Actuarial Science. STA2004F is divided into two broad sections: (1) Distribution theory and (2) Statistical Inference. During the first part of the course, students will learn to derive the distributions of random variables and their transformations, and explore the limiting behaviour of sequences of random variables. The last part of the course covers the estimation of population parameters and hypothesis testing based on a sample of data.

**Lecture times:** Five lectures per week, Monday to Friday, 1st period.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, tutorials, practicals and tests and completion of assignments and/or class exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 30% and a 3-hour exam counting 70%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

### STA2005S LINEAR MODELS

*A student cannot obtain credits for more than one of STA2020F/S, STA2007F/H/S, STA2005S.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr B Erni

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in STA2004F. MAM2011F - Linear Algebra (2LA) is strongly recommended.

**Course outline:**

This course gives an introduction to statistical modelling and the theory of linear statistical models. The material is presented from a parametric and non-parametric perspective. The course has two sections:

Regression: The multivariate normal distribution; quadratic forms; the linear model; maximum likelihood; estimates of parameters in the linear model; the Gauss-Markov theorem; variable selection procedures; analysis of residuals, bootstrap sampling; principal component analysis for dimension reduction and for regression.

Design and analysis of experiments: Introduction to the basic design principles, basic experimental designs (completely randomised design, the randomised block design, Latin square design) factorial experiments, analysis of variance, the problem of multiple comparisons, power and sample size calculations, introduction to random effects and repeated measures, permutation/randomization tests, nonparametric tests, bootstrapping.

The students are introduced to relevant statistical software and practical data analysis through weekly computer practicals and the exposure to many datasets.

**Lecture times:** Five lectures per week, Monday - Friday, 1st period.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, tutorials, practicals and tests and completion of assignments and/or class exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 30% and a 3-hour exam counting 70%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

### STA2020F APPLIED STATISTICS

*A student cannot obtain credits for more than one of STA2020F/S, STA2007F/H/S, STA2005S.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** N Watson

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in STA1000F/S/P/L or STA1006S or STA1106H or STA1100S or STA1007S or STA1008F/S and MAM1000W or MAM1031F or MAM1033F or MAM1004F/S or MAM1010F/S or MAM1020F/S or MAM1110F/H or MAM1005H.

**Course outline:**

This course is designed to extend the student's basic knowledge acquired in STA1000F/S/P/L. The emphasis of the course is on applying statistical methods and modelling techniques to data rather than focusing on the mathematical rigour underpinning these methods. Topics covered include: Analysis of variance and experimental design; revision and extension of simple linear regression; multiple regression; logistic regression; model building; time series analysis; and non-parametric statistics. Students will analyse data using R.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 1st or 5th period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, lab practicals and tests and completion of weekly quizzes and lab practicals as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35% and at least 35% for Practical test.

**Assessment:** Class record 40% and a 3-hour exam counting 60%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

**STA2020S APPLIED STATISTICS**

*A student cannot obtain credits for more than one of STA2020F/S, STA2007F/H/S, STA2005S.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** N Watson

**Course entry requirements:** A pass in STA1000F/S/P/L or STA1006S or STA1106H or STA1100S or STA1007S or STA1008F/S and MAM1000W or MAM1031F or MAM1033F or MAM1004F/S or MAM1010F/S or MAM1020F/S or MAM1110F/H or MAM1005H.

**Course outline:**

This course is designed to extend the student’s basic knowledge, acquired in STA1000F/S/P/L. The emphasis of the course is on applying statistical methods and modelling techniques to data rather than focusing on the mathematical rigour underpinning these methods. Topics covered include: Analysis of variance and experimental design; revision and extension of simple linear regression; multiple regression; logistic regression; time series analysis; and non-parametric statistics. Students will analyse data using R.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 7th period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, lab practicals and tests and completion of weekly quizzes and lab practicals as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35% and at least 35% for Practical test.

**Assessment:** Class record 40% and a 3-hour exam counting 60%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

**STA2030S STATISTICAL THEORY**

*A student cannot obtain credits for both STA2004F and STA2030S.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** M Ngwenya

**Course entry requirements:** At least 45% for STA2020F/S or STA2007F/S/H or STA2005S.

**Co-requisites:** Concurrent registration for MAM1032S or MAM1034S or MAM1012S or MAM1021F/S. Note: A student may not register concurrently for STA2030S and MAM1006H.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to Statistical Theory and Inference. It explores aspects of probability theory that are particularly relevant to statistics, including the notions of random variables, joint probability distributions, expected values and moment generating functions. The course content includes univariate distributions and moments of univariate distributions, moments of bivariate distributions, distributions of sample statistics and parameter estimation and inference.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 1<sup>st</sup> period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, tutorials, practicals and tests and completion of assignments and/or class exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 30% and a 3-hour exam counting 70%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

**Third-Year Courses**

**STA3030F STATISTICAL INFERENCE & MODELLING**

*A student cannot obtain credits for both STA3030F and STA3041F.*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Distiller

**Course entry requirements:** STA2020F/S (or concurrent registration), STA2030S, MAM1032 or MAM1034S or MAM1006S or MAM1012F/S or MAM1021F/S or MAM1112S.

**Course outline:**

This course forms part of the third-year major in Applied Statistics. The aim of the course is to provide students with the main intellectual and practical skills required in the use of inferential statistics and statistical modelling. The course consists of 4 modules: The simulation module introduces students to the use of computer simulation and data re-sampling techniques (bootstrap) to investigate the



following problems: one and two sample tests of means and variances; one way analysis of variance; moments and other properties of distributions. The generalized linear models module introduces students to the exponential family of distributions and extends linear regression models to models for non-normal response variables, including logistic regression. The machine learning module covers a basic introduction to statistical learning paradigms, applications of regression and classification trees, and a primer on feedforward neural networks and backpropagation. The Bayesian module introduces students to decision theory and Bayesian inference. Students will use the R programming language.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 1st period

**DP requirements:** Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 30% and a 3-hour exam counting 70%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

### STA3036S OPERATIONAL RESEARCH TECHNIQUES

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr R G Rakotonirainy

**Course entry requirements:** STA2030S or STA2005S; STA3030F is recommended

**Course outline:**

This course forms part of the third-year major in Applied Statistics. It is an introduction to the study of Operational Research (OR) and explores fundamental quantitative techniques in the OR armamentarium with a strong focus on computer-based application. The course is intended for students in the applied statistics stream but may be taken as an elective by students in the mathematical statistics stream. Topics covered include linear and non-linear programming where students will learn to find optimal solutions by characterising problems in terms of objectives, decision variables and constraints, decision making under uncertainty through decision trees, decision rules and scenario planning, Queueing Theory simulation through modelling the operation of real world systems as they evolve over time.

**Lecture times:** Monday - Thursday, 3rd period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, tutorials, practicals and tests and completion of assignments and/or class exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 30% and a 3-hour exam counting 70%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

### STA3041F STOCHASTIC PROCESSES & TIME SERIES

*A student cannot obtain credits for both STA3030F and STA3041F.*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** D Katshunga

**Course entry requirements:** STA2004F and STA2005S; MAM2000W or MAM2004H is strongly recommended. Recommended MAM2000W modules: MAM2011F - Linear Algebra (2LA), MAM2010F - Advanced Calculus (2AC), MAM2012S - Differential Equations (2DE) and MAM2014S - Real Analysis (2RA).

**Course outline:**

This course forms part of the third-year major in Mathematical Statistics. It consists of two modules namely Stochastic Processes and Time Series Analysis. The Stochastic Processes module is aimed at providing introductory theory and basic applications of stochastic processes in financial modelling whilst the Time Series module introduces students to the foundations of the Box-Jenkins methodology with the intention of applying the methodology using statistical software. Details of the module content are as follows:

Stochastic processes: The module covers the general theory underlying stochastic processes and their classifications, definitions and applications of discrete Markov chains. Branching processes are examined with an emphasis on analysing probability of extinction/survival. The module also covers both discrete and continuous time counting processes for purposes constructing forecasts and backcasts. Finally, a detailed introduction to homogeneous and non-homogeneous Poisson processes is given.

Time series analysis: The module covers various topics including global and local models of dependence, stationary ARMA processes, unit root processes as well as a brief introduction to univariate Volatility models as well as cointegration.

**Lecture times:** Five lectures per week, Monday - Friday, 1st period

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, tutorials, practicals and tests and completion of assignments and/or class exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 30% and a 3-hour exam counting 70%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

### **STA3043S STATISTICAL MODELLING, MACHINE LEARNING & BAYESIAN ANALYSIS**

*A student cannot obtain credits for both STA3043S and (STA3047S+STA3048S)*

36 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr E Pienaar

**Course entry requirements:** STA2004F and STA2005S; MAM2000W or MAM2004H is strongly recommended. Recommended MAM2000W modules: MAM2011F - Linear Algebra (2LA), MAM 2010F - Advanced Calculus (2AC), MAM2012S - Differential Equations (2DE) and MAM2014S - Real Analysis (2RA).

**Course outline:**

This course forms part of the third-year major in Mathematical Statistics. It consists of three modules: The first, Generalised Linear Models, introduces students to the theory and application of fitting linear models to various types of response variables with different underlying distributions. Subsequently, elementary concepts and methods in machine learning within the framework of statistical learning are explored. Finally, the Introduction to Bayesian Analysis module is dedicated to the Bayesian paradigm of statistical inference, analysis, and risk theory. The contents of the respective modules are outlined as follows:

**Generalized linear models:** Topics covered include: The exponential family of distributions, the GLM formulation, estimation and inference, models for continuous responses with skew distributions, logistic regression, log-linear models and Poisson regression.

**Machine learning:** Topics covered include: A basic introduction to statistical learning paradigms, applications of regression and classification trees, and a primer on feedforward neural networks and backpropagation.

**Introduction to Bayesian Analysis:** Topics covered include: use of Bayes' theorem; Bayesian statistical analysis for Bernoulli and normal sampling; empirical Bayes and credibility theory; loss and extreme value distributions; Monte Carlo methods.

Students are assessed through formal written exam plus computer assignments done under exam conditions.

**Lecture times:** Five lectures per week, Monday - Friday, 1st period.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance of lectures, tutorials, practicals and tests and completion of assignments and/or class exercises as set out in course outline. Class record of at least 35%.

**Assessment:** Class record 30% and a 3-hour exam counting 70%. Weights will be adjusted in the case of missed assessments, as detailed in the course outline.

---

## THEATRE, DANCE AND PERFORMANCE STUDIES

Theatre, Dance and Performance Studies includes a Theatre Section based on Hiddingh Campus and a Dance Section based on Lower Campus.

The letter code for Theatre, Dance and Performance Studies is TDP.

Departmental website: [www.ctdps.uct.ac.za](http://www.ctdps.uct.ac.za)

The Little Theatre is the production house of the Centre for Theatre, Dance and Performance Studies. The Little Theatre is located on the Hiddingh Campus.

### Academic and professional undergraduate courses

The Centre offers the programme in Theatre and Performance, which equips students with the necessary skills to enable them to pursue professional careers in the fields of theatre and dance, and related fields such as film, television, advertising and teaching. Qualifications within this programme are (a) a four-year BA in Theatre and Performance and, (b) a three-year Diploma in Theatre and Performance. Students may study in one of 6 streams: Acting; Dance Performance; Performance Making (Choreography and Theatre Making); Applied Performance and Pedagogy (Education); Scenography (Design and Technical Theatre); Research.

For students who want to study Theatre and Dance as an academic subject as part of a general BA programme, the centre offers an undergraduate major in Theatre & Dance Studies at first-, second- and third-year levels.

---

## THEATRE SECTION

The Theatre Section is housed in the Rosedale Building, Hiddingh Campus, Orange Street, Cape Town, and can be contacted by e-mail at: [ctdps@uct.ac.za](mailto:ctdps@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 7121.

### Senior Lecturer and Director of the Centre for Theatre, Dance and Performance Studies:

M Mtshali, BA(Hons) MA *Pietermaritzburg* PhD *Northwestern*

### Senior Lecturer and Head of Section:

M Kabwe, MA PhD *Cape Town*

### Professors:

M Fleishman, BA Performer's Diploma in Speech and Drama MA PhD *Cape Town*

J Pather, ATCL BA(Drama Hons) BA(English Hons) *UDW* MA *New York*

### Associate Professors:

V Baxter, BA(Hons) MA *Natal* PhD *Winchester/Southampton*

S Matchett, BA Performer's Diploma in Speech and Drama MA PhD *Cape Town*

### Emeritus Associate Professors:

G Hyland, BA *UOVS* HDE BA(Hons) *Cape Town* MFA *York*

G Morris, BA Post Graduate Specialist Teacher's Diploma *Cape Town* ADB *London* MA PhD *Cape Town*

C B Weare, BA(Hons) UED *Rhodes*

### Senior Lecturers:

J Crewe, BA (Hons) *Rhodes* MFA *Tulane*

M Mbothwe, Performer's Diploma in Speech and Drama BA(Hons) MA *Cape Town*

### Lecturers:

M Steyn, NDip BTech *Tshwane* MA *Pret*  
W Seane, MA(Dramaturgy) *Cape Town*  
M Tshazibane, BA MA *Cape Town*  
P Nqelenga, BJourn BA(Hons) MA *Rhodes*

**Senior Administrative Officer:**

R Keith, BBA *Unisa*

**Administrative Officer:**

S Pansari

---

## LITTLE THEATRE

**Production Manager:**

R Jordaan, BTech *Tshwane* MA *Cape Town*

**Senior Stage Manager:**

N Blou

**Head of Wardrobe:**

L Bishop, NDip in Fine Art *Witwatersrand Technikon*

**Senior Costume Assistant:**

D Jack

**Resident Theatre Technician:**

S Abrahams

**Technical Assistant:**

S van Rheede

**Workshop Manager:**

L Cindi, BSc *Pretoria*

**Workshop Assistants:**

J Jacobs

M Miller

**Administrative Assistant:**

TBA

## Requirements for a major in Theatre and Dance Studies

### [TDP09]

#### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
<b>ONE of the following:</b>	
TDP1027F	Introduction to Theatre and Performance A
TDP1045S	South African Performance Genealogies

#### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
TDP2010F	Global performances: Mutations and Migrations
TDP2014S	Introduction to Theatre in Education

### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
TDP3010F	Contemporary Performance
TDP3018S	Production Processes

### Prerequisites:

- (i) For **TDP1027F** and **TDP1045S**: None
- (ii) For **TDP2010F** and **TDP2014S**: TDP1027F or TDP1045S, or with the permission of the Head of Department
- (iii) For **TDP3010F**: TDP2014S or TDP2010F, or with permission of the Head of Department
- (iv) For **TDP3018S**: TDP3010F, or with the permission of the Head of Department

### Entry into teaching careers:

General BA students wishing to teach Drama, Theatre and/or Arts and Culture should major in Theatre and Dance Studies and another teaching subject. Courses in dance, music, film and media and/or the fine arts and art history are a strong recommendation. This should be followed by the PGCE in the School of Education.

### Transferring from the Diploma to the BA in Theatre and Performance:

Under certain conditions it is possible for candidates who meet the degree entrance requirements to swop from the Diploma to the BA in Theatre and Performance degree.

*NOTE: In all courses modification may be made to the syllabus within the general framework set out here.*

---

## DANCE SECTION

The Dance Section is located in Woosack Drive, Rosebank (Lower Campus) and can be contacted by e-mail at: [ctdps@uct.ac.za](mailto:ctdps@uct.ac.za), or telephone: 021 650 2399.

### Associate Professor and Head of Section:

L Wilson, BSc *West Indies* BFA *Wesley Institute* MEd *Exeter*

### Associate Professors:

J Job, MMus PhD *Cape Town*

G Samuel, Dip in Ballet *Cape Town* MA *KwaZulu-Natal* PhD *Cape Town*

### Senior Lecturer:

M Xolani Rani, BMus(Dance) MMus *Cape Town*

### Lecturer:

J Manyapelo, MA *Cape Town*

### Administrative Assistant:

T Jacobs

### Course Outlines:

---

#### **TDP1017H** THEATRICAL PRODUCTION & STAGECRAFT A

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

Convener: J-L Crewe

**Course entry requirements:** This course is compulsory for all students enrolled for the BA Theatre and Performance and the Diploma in Theatre and Performance. Students from the general degrees will be admitted subject to Head of Department's approval, and subject to capacity.

**Course outline:**

This hands-on, intensely practical course introduces students to selected aspects of theatre production including stage management, properties, costume, lighting and sound. The role and functions of the FOH personnel, stage-manager, props ASM, lighting and sound operator/technicians will be explored and practised in workshops and by assignment on production.

**Lecture times:** Lectures and practicals scheduled departmentally. Students will also be assigned to between one and three productions for their apprenticeship practicums and attendance will be compulsory at all times stipulated by the nature of the job. This could encompass attendance at rehearsals, performances and in the Little Theatre office, wardrobe and workshops. Participation will generally last for the duration of one production and will therefore be sporadic through the year. Students should note that this course requires a considerable commitment of time as the learning situation is provided by the work circumstances. Fieldwork components may be included in the course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all rehearsals/performances/office experience slots as assigned. In order to obtain a DP certificate, students must earn the required number of apprenticeship 'credits' by completing sufficient apprenticeship practicums as determined by the course co-ordinator in any particular year. In addition students are required to complete any Front of House assignments set for them by the course co-ordinator.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 40% of final mark; examination counts for 60%. A sub-minimum of 40% must be achieved in coursework and the examination.

---

### TDP1018H STAGECRAFT B

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Matchett

**Course entry requirements:** Students must have completed TDP1017H. This course is compulsory for all students enrolled for the BA Theatre and Performance and the Diploma in Theatre and Performance. Students from the general degrees will be admitted subject to Head of Department's approval, and subject to capacity.

**Course outline:**

Students are introduced to the notion of a production concept, its importance in relation to the staging of a performance piece and the manner in which it permeates every aspect of creating a production/performance, from design particularly (scenery, lighting, costume and make-up) through to acting style. Strategies for establishing a production concept will be presented and students will be given the opportunity to work with a prescribed play. Through this experience students will begin their understanding of how concept is integral to every aspect of a work of art.

**Lecture times:** Lectures scheduled departmentally. Attendance at rehearsals, performances and in the Little Theatre office, wardrobe and workshops as required. Students should note that extensive time is required to complete this course. Fieldwork components may be included in the course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all lectures, practicals and all rehearsals/performances/ office experience slots as assigned. In order to obtain a DP certificate, students must have earned the required number of apprenticeship 'credits' by completing sufficient apprenticeship practicums over two years of study as determined by the course co-ordinator.

**Assessment:** Coursework counts for 40% of final mark; examination counts for 60%. A sub-minimum of 40% must be achieved in coursework and the examination.

---

### TDP1027F INTRODUCTION TO THEATRE AND PERFORMANCE A

*This course is capped at 120 students.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M Steyn

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to this course is prioritised for students (a) registered for the Diploma and BA in Theatre & Performance (b) majoring in Theatre & Dance Studies.

**Course outline:**

This course offers students an introduction to the key conceptual frames of performance: ACTOR/CHARACTER, SPACE, AUDIENCE, STORY. These conceptual frames are applied to a series of weekly case studies of different performance practices across select countries on the African continent. Students are also tutored through practical projects that explore these fundamental concepts in practice. A fieldwork component is included as part of this course.

**Lecture times:** Wednesday and Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> period. Tutorial Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period. Practical on Tuesday afternoon.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at 80% of lectures and 100% of tutorials, practicals and theatre visits, and satisfactory presentation of assignments are compulsory for DP certificate purposes.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, practical tasks, class tests) counts 100%.

---

### **TDP1029F INTRODUCTION TO THEATRE AND PERFORMANCE A+: DISCOVERING THEATRE**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme and diploma students only).

**Co-requisites:** TDP1027F

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: TDP1027F INTRODUCTION TO THEATRE & PERFORMANCE A. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Fridays 5<sup>th</sup> and meridian.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### **TDP1045S SOUTH AFRICAN PERFORMANCE GENEALOGIES**

*This course is capped at 120 students.*

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M Rani

**Course entry requirements:** Admission to this course is prioritised for students (a) registered for the Diploma and BA in Theatre & Performance (b) majoring in Theatre & Dance Studies.

**Course outline:**

This course explores the genealogies of South African performance practice (theatre and dance) up until the end of formal apartheid and the introduction of a constitutional democracy in the country in 1994. The course aims to introduce students to the origins and historical developments of this performance practice and the critical analytical tools with which to understand these complex developments. The course is divided into two parts: one part focusing on theatre practice and one part focusing on dance practice, but emphasis will be placed on the inevitable overlaps between the two as they manifest in an African context. The course includes a fieldwork component in the form of compulsory group theatre visits. As an introductory course, we use content that engages the diversity of students' lifeworlds and is cognizant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading and writing skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Wednesday and Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> period. Tutorial Friday 3<sup>rd</sup> period. Practical on Tuesday afternoon.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at 80% of lectures and 100% of tutorials, practicals and theatre visits and satisfactory presentation of all assignments is compulsory for DP certificate purposes.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, practical tasks, class tests) counts 100%.

### **TDP1046W T&P STUDIOWORK 1**

54 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** M Steyn and J Manyapelo

**Course entry requirements:** Students registered for the BA in Theatre and Performance and Diploma in Theatre and Performance.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to the foundational skills of performance as actors and/or dancers, and makers. This includes:

**THEATRE:**

- Voice
- Movement
- Improvisation
- Approaches to textual interpretation
- States of being
- Characterisation
- Scene Study

Work is undertaken in English and/or Afrikaans and isiXhosa

**DANCE:**

- Fundamental principles of dance techniques
- Body Conditioning
- Improvisation
- Voice
- Repertory Study

Fieldwork components may be included in the course.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at all practical classes, rehearsals, tutorials and performances; and completion of all written and practical assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework and classwork tasks count 50% of the final mark; practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass students must obtain at least 50% in each of the above.

---

### **TDP2010F GLOBAL PERFORMANCES: MUTATIONS AND MIGRATIONS**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Matchett

**Course entry requirements:** TDP1027F, TDP1028S, or with the approval of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course widens the African frame established in first year to examine performance globally with a particular focus on the ways in which performance concepts migrate between continents and mutate in the process. Through lectures, essays, class tasks and practical applications, students learn about the relationship between performance and society, and how meaning is constructed in performance. Students will be introduced to various tools for performance analysis.

A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**Lecture times:** Lectures Tuesday and Wednesday 3rd period; Tutorial Thursday 3rd period, Practical Thursday afternoon.

**DP requirements:** Submission of all written assignments and presentation of all performance tasks; and attendance at all practical classes. Students in the Theatre and Performance programme may not attend the Thursday practical classes when they attend professional training practical classes, which are deemed equivalent.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, practical tasks, class tests) counts 100%.



**TDP2011S ANALYSIS AND CRITICISM**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor L Wilson

**Course entry requirements:** Students registered for the BA and Diploma in Theatre and Performance degree.

**Course outline:**

This course covers methods of analysis for the study of Theatre and/or Dance and approaches to Theatre and/or Dance criticism. In lectures students will be introduced to the skills required to conduct close readings of Theatre and/or Dance works in performance and for producing critical writing for various media. In addition students will be required to attend one session per week in which elements of the lecture content will be engaged with practically. Fieldwork components may be included in the course.

**Lecture times:** Lectures Tuesday and Wednesday 3rd period Tutorial Thursday 3rd period, Practical Thursday afternoon.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at all practical classes, rehearsals, tutorials and performances; and completion of all written and practical assignments.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, practical tasks, class tests) counts 100%.

---

**TDP2013S ANALYSIS AND CRITICISM +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme and diploma students only).

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: ANALYSIS AND CRITICISM. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of core concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tutorials that extend into writing exercises. Students may also arrange additional consultations with their tutors in order to further assist them in areas where they may still be struggling. Students will receive explicit support around the corequisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Fridays 2<sup>nd</sup> and 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** No DP requirements.

**Assessment:** This course will be assessed on a Pass/Fail basis. In order to receive a pass grade, students will be required to complete at least 80% of all course requirements (attendance at tutorials, submission of written exercises, etc.)

---

**TDP2014S AN INTRODUCTION TO THEATRE IN EDUCATION**

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** TDP1027F, or TDP1045S and TDP2010F.

**Course outline:**

This course introduces students to concepts and techniques of theatre in educational contexts. Students will be required to attend one practical session per week and engage in performance projects as an integral part of the course.

**DP requirements:** 100% attendance at all practical classes, rehearsals, tutorials and performances; and completion of all written and practical assignments.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, practical tasks, class tests) counts 100%.

---

**TDP2040W T&P STUDIOWORK 2**

72 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Matchett and Associate Professor J Job

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 1.

**Course outline:**

This is an intermediate course that expands and extends the foundational skills in theatre and dance established in year one. The year-long course explores varying aspects of theatre and dance including applied performance and pedagogy and emphasizes application of skills. Fieldwork components may be included in the course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

### **TDP2042F** GLOBAL PERFORMANCES: MUTATIONS AND MIGRATIONS+

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme and diploma students only).

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: GLOBAL PERFORMANCES: MUTATIONS AND MIGRATIONS. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides

additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the corequisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### **TDP3010F** CONTEMPORARY PERFORMANCE

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr M Mtshali

**Course entry requirements:** TDP2010F or TDP2011S or with permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

The course will explore major theatrical groups who have "broken the rules"; and who have contributed to the creation of contemporary theatre performances in South Africa and elsewhere. The course will combine theoretical and practical approaches to Theatre Making. A fieldwork component is included as part of this course.

**Lecture times:** 5<sup>th</sup>, M and 6<sup>th</sup> periods.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance and participation at all scheduled course meetings and practical classes, and submission of all written or practical work by the due dates is compulsory for DP certificate purposes.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, practical tasks, class tests) counts 100%.

---

### **TDP3018S** PRODUCTION PROCESSES

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr M Mtshali

**Course entry requirements:** TDP3010F or by permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course examines various production processes that lead to the staging of theatre and/or dance events. It introduces students to the work of the director of scripted plays; the choreographer of dance performances; and the facilitator of collaboratively created works and/or interactive, participatory projects in non-theatrical contexts. Process elements including: research, analysis, concept, design and process strategies/methods will be explored through lectures, workshops and practical sessions. In addition, students will work on an essay that explores more closely an aspect of the work of the director, the choreographer or the facilitator.

**Lecture times:** 5<sup>th</sup> period and M.

**DP requirements:** Satisfactory attendance at and participation in all scheduled course meetings and practical classes, and submission of all written and/or practical work by the due dates is compulsory for DP certificate purposes.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, practical tasks, class tests) counts 100%.

---

**TDP3040W T&P STUDIOWORK 3E: PERFORMANCE MAKING**

72 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** J-L Crewe

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 2A or 2B and placement in the Theatre Making stream.

**Course outline:**

This advanced course is project-based. Through a series of projects the course will introduce students to various methodologies for the creation of new work and provide opportunities for conceptualising and creating new work as part of an ensemble. The focus of the work will be on developing directorial and staging skills with a specific focus on space and rhythm, light and sound and movement, composition and picturisation with a view to developing spatial intelligence and its relation to meaning and increasing technical theatre skills. The continued development of technical performance skill will support the work on productions and/or projects. A fieldwork component may be included in this course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

**TDP3041W T&P STUDIOWORK 3F: PERFORMANCE MAKING PRAC**

96 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** J-L Crewe

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 2A or 2B and placement in the Theatre Making stream.

**Course outline:**

This advanced course is project-based. Through a series of projects the course will introduce students to various methodologies for the creation of new work and provide opportunities for conceptualising and creating new work as part of an ensemble. The focus of the work will be on developing directorial and staging skills with a specific focus on space and rhythm, light and sound and movement, composition and picturisation with a view to developing spatial intelligence and its relation to meaning and increasing technical theatre skills. The continued development of technical performance skill will support the work on productions and/or projects. A fieldwork component may be included in this course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

**TDP3042W T&P STUDIOWORK 3A: ACTING**

72 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Matchett

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 2A or 2B and placement in the Acting stream.

**Course outline:**

This advanced course is project-based. Through a series of projects and operating as an ensemble, students focus on the exploration of style supported by the secondary skills of voice and movement.

The consolidation of individual acting strengths is a priority. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

### **TDP3043W T&P STUDIOWORK 3B: ACTING PRAC**

96 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor S Matchett

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 2A or 2B and placement in the Acting stream.

**Course outline:**

This advanced course is project-based. Through a series of projects and operating as an ensemble, students focus on the exploration of style supported by the secondary skills of voice and movement. The consolidation of individual acting strengths is a priority. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

### **TDP3044H PROFESSIONAL PRACTICE A**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr M Kabwe

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 2A or 2B

**Course outline:**

This course, together with its companion course TDP3045H, is comprised of seminars in which aspects of arts organisation and management, and of career management, is explored in relation to the theatre and performance industry in South Africa today. The course aims to familiarise students with the practicalities, legalities and logistics they will encounter as theatre practitioners within the South African industry. Pertinent arts and culture policies will be introduced and an understanding of professional ethics and conduct fostered. On completion of the course students will be better prepared and empowered to face the demands of operating within the contemporary South African Arts Industry.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all designated seminars, workshops, lectures or tutorials. Completion of all oral and written assignments and projects.

**Assessment:** Assignments count 75% and final project counts 25% of the final mark.

---

### **TDP3045H PROFESSIONAL PRACTICE B**

12 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr M Kabwe

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 2A or 2B, completion of, or concurrent registration of TDP3044H

**Course outline:**

This course, together with its companion course TDP3044H, is comprised of seminars in which aspects of arts organisation and management, and of career management, is explored in relation to the theatre and performance industry in South Africa today. The course aims to familiarise students with the practicalities, legalities and logistics they will encounter as theatre practitioners within the South African industry. Student's writing skills for the theatre industry will be refined in terms of funding proposals, funding reporting, marketing strategies, professional CV's, etc. On completion of the course students will be better prepared and empowered to face the demands of operating within the contemporary South African Arts Industry.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all designated seminars, workshops, lectures or tutorials. Completion of all oral and written assignments and projects.

**Assessment:** Assignments count 75% and final project counts 25% of the final mark.

---

**TDP3046W T&P STUDIOWORK 3C: DANCE PERFORMANCE**

72 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** M Rani

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of TDP2043W T&P Studiowork 2C Dance Performance

**Course outline:**

This advanced course builds on the earlier broad exploration of dance performance in the first and second years and is project and production-based. Students refine their technical skills through classes and focus on contemporary dance forms and styles in Africa which are applied to small ensembles and duet works. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork, in house performances count 50% of final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

**TDP3047W T&P STUDIOWORK 3D: DANCE PERFORMANCE PRAC**

96 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** M Rani

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of TDP2043W T&P Studiowork 2C: Dance Performance

**Course outline:**

This advanced course builds on the earlier broad exploration of dance performance in the first and second years and is project and production-based. Students refine their technical skills through classes and focus on contemporary dance forms and styles in Africa which are applied to small ensembles and duet works. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork, in house performances count 50% of final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

**TDP3048W T&P STUDIOWORK 3G: SCENOGRAPHY**

72 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** J-L Crewe

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of TDP2045W T&P Studiowork 2G Scenography

**Course outline:**

This course pivots around the idea of scenography as an intervention into found spaces to promote innovative and relevant performance. While students continue to develop their understanding of scenographic practice, research and visual communicative skills, the course promotes the manipulation of material, visual metaphor and body as a live performance catalyst. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork, in house performances count 50% of final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

**TDP3049W T&P STUDIOWORK 3H: APPLIED/ PEDAGOGY**

42 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor L Wilson

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of TDP2046W T&P Studiowork 2H: Applied/Pedagogy

**Course outline:**

## THEATRE, DANCE AND PERFORMANCE STUDIES 421

This advanced course will develop the skills from second year through fieldwork focusing on the areas of social health and wellbeing. Weekly practical studios and seminars, as well as written assignments, will enhance the understanding of applied performance across different sites.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork, in house performances count 50% of final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

### **TDP3050W T&P STUDIOWORK 3I APPLIED/PEDAGOGY PRAC**

96 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Associate Professor L Wilson

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of TDP2046W T&P Studiowork 2H Applied/Pedagogy

#### **Course outline:**

This advanced course will develop the skills from second year through fieldwork focusing on the areas of social health and wellbeing. Weekly practical studios and seminars, as well as written assignments, will enhance the understanding of applied performance across different sites.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork, in house performances count 50% of final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

### **TDP3051W T&P STUDIOWORK 3G: SCENOGRAPHY PRAC**

96 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** J-L Crewe

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of TDP2045W T&P Studiowork 2G Scenography

#### **Course outline:**

This course pivots around the idea of scenography as an intervention into found spaces to promote innovative and relevant performance. While students continue to develop their understanding of scenographic practice, research and visual communicative skills, the course promotes the manipulation of material, visual metaphor and body as a live performance catalyst. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

---

### **TDP4000H THEATRE AND DANCE RESEARCH**

30 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor G Samuel

**Course entry requirements:** At least TDP2011S and TDP2010F and concurrent registration in TDP3010F and TDP3018S (or the equivalent) if these have not already been passed, as well as T&P Studiowork 3A Acting or T&P Studiowork 3A Theatre Making, or acceptance for an honours programme.

**Co-requisites:** Students will be required to attend designated seminars, lectures and workshops and complete at least two assignments. All students will complete a research essay on a topic to be decided on in consultation with the lecturer.

#### **Course outline:**

This course, consisting of weekly seminars, lectures or workshops will investigate undertaking a research project on a topic related to some aspect of theatre, dance and/or performance. In the course of the year, students will complete a research essay or project under supervision. Throughout the year there will be stipulated dates for submission of chapters or showings of work in progress. This project must be completed (submitted or shown) by 31 October. Seminars will be timetabled departmentally each year.

**Lecture times:** Seminars will be timetabled departmentally each year. All meetings will be on the Hiddingh Campus

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all designated seminars, workshops, lectures or tutorials. Completion of all oral or written assignments.

**Assessment:** Research proposal, draft submissions and interaction with tutor counts 40%. Final Essay counts 60%.

---

**TDP4040W T&P STUDIOWORK 4A: ACTING**

*This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside of the usual university teaching terms i.e. from the first Monday in February to the end of the first week in December each year including during vacation periods.*

96 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Dr M Kabwe

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 3A Acting.

**Course outline:**

This advanced course is project and production-based. Through a series of productions or projects and operating as an ensemble, students continue the development of the craft and of their own individual acting strengths supported by the secondary skills of voice and movement and in relation to practice in the industry. Acting for the Camera is introduced and focuses upon building a 'relationship' with the 'eye' of the camera. Technique is developed through monologue and dialogue studies for camera. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**Lecture times:** All day on Hiddingh Campus, timetabled departmentally each year. Rehearsals by appointment.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

**TDP4041W T&P STUDIOWORK 4E: PERFORMANCE MAKING**

*This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside of the usual university teaching terms i.e. from the first Monday in February to the end of the first week in December each year including during vacation periods.*

96 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** TBA

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 3A: TM

**Course outline:**

This advanced course is project and production-based. Through a series of productions and/or projects the course will consolidate learning from the first three years whilst introducing various methodologies for the creation of new work and directing skills in relation to self-created dramatic text. Opportunities are provided for conceptualising and creating own work and for beginning to develop a unique style and voice. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**Lecture times:** All day on Hiddingh Campus, timetabled departmentally each year. Rehearsals by appointment.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

**TDP4045W T&P STUDIOWORK 4C: DANCE PERFORMANCE**

*This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside of the usual university teaching terms i.e. from the first Monday in February to the end of the first week in December each year including during vacation periods.*

96 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** M Rani

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 3C: Dance Performance

**Course outline:**

This advanced course is project-based. Through a series of practical classes and repertory works, technical skills are further refined and the demands of more risk-taking, diverse speeds and control of movement are made. Students are expected to engage with solo performance works and apply a range of Dance knowledge including kinaesthetic, music and spatial negotiation. Emphasis is placed on the development of students' personal artistry and individual style. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**Lecture times:** All day on Hiddingh Campus, timetabled departmentally each year. Rehearsals by appointment.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

### **TDP4046W T&P STUDIOWORK 4G: SCENOGRAPHY**

*This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside of the usual university teaching terms i.e. from the first Monday in February to the end of the first week in December each year including during vacation periods.*

96 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** J-L Crewe

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 3G: Scenography

#### **Course outline:**

This course focuses on refining scenographic practice and skills and explores the design process from concept to execution. Students are expected to have a thorough understanding of the various aspects of scenography, including set, costume and object design as well as choreographic and compositional qualities. It foregrounds the modes and functions of the scenography in creating effective theatrical statements and allows the student to develop a signature approach to realised productions. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**Lecture times:** All day on Hiddingh and Dance Campus, timetabled departmentally each year. Rehearsals by appointment.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.

---

### **TDP4047W T&P STUDIOWORK 4H: APPLIED/PEDAGOGY**

*This course requires that the entire class or selected students be available for rehearsals and performances outside of the usual university teaching terms i.e. from the first Monday in February to the end of the first week in December each year including during vacation periods.*

96 NQF credits at NQF level 8

**Convener:** Associate Professor L Wilson

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of T&P Studiowork 3H: Applied/Pedagogy

#### **Course outline:**

The course will focus on various projects that will implement the facilitation skills and pedagogical approaches gained in previous years. Projects may include, for example: internships, touring performances, placements or site-based work. A fieldwork component may be included as part of this course.

**Lecture times:** All day on Hiddingh Campus, timetabled departmentally each year. Rehearsals by appointment.

**DP requirements:** Attendance at all classes, performances and rehearsals. Completion of all projects.

**Assessment:** Coursework, classwork and in-house performances count 50% of the final mark; final practical examination counts 50% of the final mark. In order to pass, students must obtain at least 50% in both of the above.



---

## THE STUDY OF RELIGIONS, DEPARTMENT FOR

The Department is housed on the 5<sup>th</sup> floor of the Robert Leslie Social Science Building, University Avenue, Upper Campus, and can be contacted by e-mail at [Tasneem.Wise@uct.ac.za](mailto:Tasneem.Wise@uct.ac.za) or telephone: 021 650 3452.

The letter code for the Department is REL.

Departmental website: [www.religion.uct.ac.za](http://www.religion.uct.ac.za)

### **Associate Professor and Head of Department:**

E Porcu, Laurea MA *Cagliari* PhD *Marburg*

### **Professor and Chair for the Study of Religions:**

A Ukah, BA(Hons) MA MSc *Ibadan* Dr. Phil. Dr. Habil. *Bayreuth*

### **Professor:**

S Shaikh, BA *Unisa* BA(Hons) *UND* MA *Cape Town* PhD *Temple*

### **Robert Selby-Taylor Professor of Christian Studies:**

TBA

### **Emeritus Professors:**

D S Chidester, BA *Calif State* PhD *California*

J R Cochrane, BSc PhD *Cape Town* MDiv *Chicago*

J W De Gruchy, BA BD DLitt h.c. *Rhodes* MTh DLitt h.c. *Chicago* DTh *Unisa* DSocSc *Cape Town* DTh h.c. *Stell* DD h.c. *Knox Toronto*

A I Tayob, BA *UDW* BA(Hons) *Cape Town* PhD *Temple*

C A Wanamaker, BA *Lincoln* MA *Illinois* MCS *Regent* PhD *Dunelm*

### **Honorary Associate Professor:**

U Dessì, PhD *Marburg*

### **Senior Lecturers:**

A Alhourani, BA *Hebron* BA(Hons) MA PhD *UWC*

L P Blond, BA(Hons) *Sheffield* MA *Lancaster* PhD *Edinburgh*

### **Honorary Research Associates:**

K Chandler, PhD *Cape Town*

F England, PhD *Cape Town*

M Picchi, PhD *University of Naples* "l'Orientale"

M A Mascenghe, PhD *Cape Town*

### **Administrative Assistant:**

T Wise, BSocSc *Cape Town*

### **Senior Secretary:**

TBA

### **Mission Statement**

The Department for the Study of Religions is committed to the study of religions which will contribute to public life in our local, regional, national and continental contexts. It is dedicated to:

- the open, plural, intercultural, and interdisciplinary study of religion in all its forms;
- the in-depth study of African religious traditions;
- the creative and critical analysis of religion as a force in personal, social, economic and political life;

- the promotion of quality education and research in the study of religion as a vital contribution to the transformation and development of South Africa.

The mission statement is implemented through degree specialisations that focus on the broad themes of religion, culture, identity and ethics. The Department offers a systematic study of religion in public life, its meaning and significance in South Africa in particular and Africa in general. These themes are explored in core courses team-taught by faculty members and also reflected in various research projects and institutes presently housed in the Department.

Core courses provide the thematic, methodological and theoretical foundations for all students who choose to pursue degrees in this department. Additional courses continue this focus within the established areas of specialisation: African Studies, Christian Studies, Comparative Studies, Islamic Studies, Jewish Studies, Buddhism and Japanese Religions, and Critical Theory.

## Requirements for a major in the Study of Religions

### [REL02]

#### First Year courses

---

Code	Title
<b>At least ONE of the following:</b>	
REL1002F	Religions Past and Present
REL1006S	Judaism, Christianity and Islam
REL1017S	African Religious Traditions

#### Second Year courses

---

Code	Title
<b>Any TWO of the following THREE:</b>	
REL2040F	Religion and Society
REL2047F	Religion, Sexuality and Gender
REL2048S	Psychology of Religion

#### Third Year courses

---

Code	Title
REL3037F	Religion and Politics
REL3042S	Religion and Media

#### Prerequisites:

- For **any 2000-level REL course**: Second-year status or permission of the Head of Department.
- For **REL3037F**: completion of any two REL 2000-level courses; second- or third-year status; or permission of the Head of Department (second year students who are majoring in Politics would be given standard HOD allowance to take this course).
- For **REL3042S**: completion of any two REL 2000-level courses; second- or third-year status; or permission of the Head of Department (second year students who are majoring in FAM would be given standard HOD allowance to take this course).

#### Centre for Contemporary Islam (CCI)

The CCI is located in the Department for the Study of Religions, Leslie Social Science Building, Upper Campus.

Website: [www.cci.uct.ac.za](http://www.cci.uct.ac.za)

Director and Co-Director: Professor S Shaikh (Study of Religions) and Associate Professor Fatima Seedat (African Feminist Studies).

The CCI was founded in 1995 to bring attention to the scholarly study of Islam and Muslim societies and communities. From Oct 2021, under the new leadership of Prof Shaikh and A/Prof Seedat, the CCI functions as feminist, decolonial research and teaching hub for the study of Islam, gender and sexuality in Africa and globally. The CCI has housed numerous research projects over the last 26 years including Muslim Scholars in the History of the Lake Chad Area (Dr Andrea Brigaglia); Islam and Public Life in Africa and Biographies of Religious Engagement (Prof Abdulkader Tayob); South African Muslim Women: Sexuality, Marriage and Reproductive Choices and Theorizing Experience Subjectivity and Narrative in Studies of Gender and Islam (Prof Shaikh). The CCI provides a place for established and emerging researchers, as well as the general public to share ideas and develop insights about Islam and Muslim societies. Over the next five years CCI will develop research, teaching and advocacy on contemporary Muslim feminist approaches to ethics and law, to expand the pistemological foundations for gender justice and social transformation in Muslim communities.

#### **African Centre for Religion, Ethics and Society (ACRES)**

African Centre for Religions, Ethics and Society (ACRES) is headed by Professor Asonzeh Ukah as director and Professor Abdulkader Tayob as deputy director. Based in the Department for the Study of Religions. ACRES was established in 2021 as an amalgam of two pre-existing research units. These units were the Research Institute for Christianity and Society in Africa (RICSA) and a research project pioneered and Chaired by Professor Abdulkader Tayob on Islam, African Publics and Religious Values. The latter project is a core enterprise of the NRF Chair in the Department for the Study of Religions. After several years of working in silos, the coming together of these research strands was to give force and impetus to the place of African religions (Indigenous religions, Christianities and Islam) as a transforming and transformative force in African societies. ACRES is a pluridisciplinary think tank of eminent scholars from varying academic disciplines with the mandate to conduct empirical research on the changing character and the transformative potential of religion in contemporary African societies and elsewhere around the world. The undergirding philosophy of practice of ACRES is the rarely acknowledged historical understanding that in the past hundred and fifty years, the greatest, most pervasive, and most far-reaching socio-cultural transformation in Africa has been religious in character. Understanding the multi-faceted implications of this historical fact would shed light on different aspects of social, economic, cultural and political life in Africa and how these are connected to the global arena. The intellectual mandate of ACRES is the mapping out of the modes of religious epistemologies as an engine of socioethical transformation and a (potential) driver of social change in Africa and elsewhere. To this end, ACRES provides a platform for the development of research on the intersection of African religions, projects of development and transformation, moralities in the making and other aspects of social life. Scholars working in the centre investigate how religious knowledge and ethics intersect with other spheres of social experience and life, and further the collaboration and network among researchers in Africa, and at the international level on the critical study of African religions and their ethical doctrines and practices in contemporary society.

#### **The Centre for the Study of Asian Religions (CSAR)**

The Centre for the Study of Asian Religions (CSAR) is headed by Associate Professor Elisabetta Porcu and aims to promote and systematize both the study of religious aspects of Asian culture in historical and contemporary perspective, and the interactions of Asian religions with South African culture and society. The CSAR coordinates the research of scholars and postgraduate research students based at the University of Cape Town, with the aim to foster the academic study of Asian religions and their interplay with society and culture within South Africa and beyond; foster collaborations and networks among colleagues within South Africa and at the international level for the study of this topic, among other objectives.

## Course Outlines:

---

### **REL1002F** RELIGIONS PAST AND PRESENT

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor E Porcu

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course provides an introduction to the study of religion and various religious traditions. Students are introduced to the analysis of religious symbols, myths, rituals, teachings, and practices. Special attention is given to African indigenous religious traditions, Asian religions (including e.g. Hinduism, Buddhism, Confucianism and Japanese religions) and New Religious Movements that have emerged as alternative sources of religious identity and meaning in the world.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday and Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> period plus one tutorial.

**DP requirements:** Mandatory attendance at lectures and tutorials in all sections of the course. Submission of all coursework by due dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **REL1006S** JUDAISM, CHRISTIANITY AND ISLAM

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr L P Blond

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Course outline:**

This course begins by introducing the religions of the Ancient Near East (Egypt, Mesopotamia and Persia). Students then explore the historical foundations of Judaism, Christianity and Islam through examining the formation and development of sacred texts, techniques of interpretation, and religious practices within these three important religious traditions. By studying these religions, the course reflects on the continuity and diversity of historical traditions, social formations and religious identities in the world.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday and Thursday 2<sup>nd</sup> period plus one tutorial.

**DP requirements:** Mandatory attendance at lectures and tutorials in all sections of the course. Submission of all work by due dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **REL1015F** RELIGIONS PAST AND PRESENT +

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor E Porcu

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** REL1002F.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: REL1002F RELIGIONS PAST AND PRESENT. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### **REL1016S** JUDAISM, CHRISTIANITY AND ISLAM+

10 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Dr L P Blond

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** REL1006S.

**Course outline:**

The purpose of this course is to augment and support its co-requisite course: REL1006S JUDAISM, CHRISTIANITY AND ISLAM. It aims to improve students' performance by enhancing their grasp of key ideas and concepts, and by developing their mastery of the disciplinary discourse. It provides additional pedagogic enrichment in the form of regular Plus Tuts that extend into Writing Hub exercises and consultations. In these tutorials, students will receive explicit support around the co-requisite course assignments and detailed feedback on their written work.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### **REL1017S AFRICAN RELIGIOUS TRADITIONS**

18 NQF credits at NQF level 5

**Convener:** Associate Professor E Porcu

**Course entry requirements:** None

**Co-requisites:** None

**Course outline:**

Africa is religiously pluralistic, having three major religious traditions. These are African indigenous religions, Christianity and Islam. Each of these is internally diverse and multifaceted, creating a mosaic of religious cultures, rituals, communities, ethics and worldviews. This course intends to investigate the histories, rituals and discourses of the traditions where they interact, differ and display common elements. As an introductory course to Religious Studies, we use content that engages the diversity of students' lifeworlds and is cognizant of our African location. We employ innovative teaching and delivery methods, including multilingual pedagogies and digital literacy, that allow more time for active engagement and the development of critical reading, writing and analytical skills in the Humanities.

**Lecture times:** Monday and Thursday 6<sup>th</sup> period plus two tutorials.

**DP requirements:** Mandatory attendance of lectures and participation in tutorials. Submission of all work by due dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### **REL2040F RELIGION AND SOCIETY**

*This course may also be offered in Winter Term – please consult the Department.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Dr A Alhourani

**Course entry requirements:** Second-year status or permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course offers an in-depth and critical understanding of the influential role of religion in contemporary society. The course unpacks classic and contemporary sociological and anthropological theorisations of religion. We will relate these theories of religion to the functioning and structure of society. The course explores the multifaceted interplay of religion with society against the backdrop of secularism. Through our discussion of various case studies — mainly but not exclusively drawn from the African context — we will explore the dialectical processes by which religion influences and changes societies and society transforms religion. The case studies unpack the entanglements of religion in social, cultural, economic, and political spheres of community life. The course will explore the following themes: 1) religion, alienation, and social solidarity; 2) religion in the secular age 3) religious piety and everyday lived experiences 4) the material culture of lived religion 5) religion in times of crises 6) civil religion and the public spheres 7) Religion and violence.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday and Thursday 6<sup>th</sup> period plus one tutorial.

**DP requirements:** Mandatory attendance at lectures and tutorials in all sections of the course. Submission of all work by due dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**REL2047F RELIGION, SEXUALITY AND GENDER**

*This course may also be offered in Winter Term – please consult the Department.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor S Shaikh

**Course entry requirements:** Second-year status or permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course explores ideologies of gender and sexuality in the history of religious traditions, focusing particularly on the role of women in religion. Special attention will be given to how gender is symbolised in religious myth and ritual practices, exploring how this relates to women's lived experiences. Connections between sexuality, embodiment and spirituality will be addressed through case studies in 'Abrahamic,' African and Asian religions. Drawing on examples from the beliefs and practices of different religious traditions, the course aims to engage with cross-cultural and interdisciplinary scholarship in religious studies, gender studies, women's studies and feminist theory. Theoretical reflections on gender in religious traditions will be addressed throughout the course.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> period plus one tutorial.

**DP requirements:** Mandatory attendance at lectures and tutorials in all sections of the course. Submission of all work by due dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**REL2048S PSYCHOLOGY OF RELIGION**

*This course may also be offered in Summer Term – please consult the Department.*

24 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor S Shaikh

**Course entry requirements:** Second-year status or permission of the Head of Department.

**Course outline:**

This course pays special attention to issues of theory and method in the psychology of religion, in order to develop an understanding of personal identity, as well as mental and spiritual health in religious contexts. While recognising the importance of gender, class, race, ethnicity and other social forms of identity, the course focuses on religious dynamics of personal identity and the formation of selfhood through case studies in consciousness, mysticism, embodiment, intertextual reading practices and cultural resources for being human. The course explores the various ways in which religion might inform personal, social and intersubjective notions of self, while providing conception of the good/the good life.

**Lecture times:** Monday, Tuesday, Thursday, 5<sup>th</sup> period plus one tutorial.

**DP requirements:** Mandatory attendance at lectures and tutorials in all sections of the course. Submission of all work by due dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

**REL2054F RELIGION, SEXUALITY AND GENDER +**

10 NQF credits at NQF level 6

**Convener:** Professor S Shaikh

**Course entry requirements:** None (extended programme students only).

**Co-requisites:** REL2047F.

**Course outline:**

This course explores ideologies of gender and sexuality in the history of religious traditions, focusing particularly on the role of women in religion. Special attention will be given to how gender is symbolised in religious myth and ritual practices, exploring how this relates to women's lived experiences. Connections between sexuality, embodiment and spirituality will be addressed through case studies in 'Abrahamic,' African and Asian religions. Drawing on examples from the beliefs and practices of different religious traditions, the course aims to engage with cross-cultural and

## THE STUDY OF RELIGIONS, DEPARTMENT FOR 430

interdisciplinary scholarship in religious studies, gender studies, women's studies and feminist theory. Theoretical reflections on gender in religious traditions will be addressed throughout the course.

**Lecture times:** Tutorial times by sign-up with the department.

**DP requirements:** 100% tutorial attendance plus successful completion of all coursework assignments.

**Assessment:** Coursework 100% comprising of tutorial assessments and other written work.

---

### REL3037F RELIGION AND POLITICS

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Dr L P Blond

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of any two REL 2000-level courses; second- or third-year status; or by permission of the Head of Department (second year students who are majoring in Politics would be given standard HOD allowance to take this course).

**Course outline:**

This course discusses the configuration of religious and secular spaces in the modern nation state and examines the role of religion in social and political conflict in local, national and global contexts. The course develops a selection of case studies, which may include religion, politics and conflict in South Africa; religion and the state in Asian countries; Judaism, modernity and the Holocaust; religion, nationhood and conflict in Israel/Palestine.

**Lecture times:** 3 contact hours per week. Monday, Tuesday and Thursday 3<sup>rd</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Mandatory attendance at lectures and tutorials in all sections of the course. Submission of all work by due dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

---

### REL3042S RELIGION AND MEDIA

30 NQF credits at NQF level 7

**Convener:** Professor A Ukah

**Course entry requirements:** Completion of any two REL 2000-level courses; second- or third-year status; or permission of the Head of Department (second year students who are majoring in FAM would be given standard HOD allowance to take this course).

**Course outline:**

Religion's relationship with media begins with the voice and the text – the written word and the oral tradition of storytelling – as well as with accompanying visual signs. The investment of these means of communication with a sacred power is foundational to both religion and myth. This course will examine some of the foundational elements of oral, written and visual traditions and how the sacred power inherent in media are interpreted and amplified across cultures into new technological forms such as the printing press, radio, film, television and the internet. Religion has become increasingly textual, densely visual, intensely mediated. We will, for example, analyse religion in its connection with films, videos, and music both within and outside Africa; Japanese popular culture (manga and animated movies, or anime); as well as other instances of religion in and through the media worldwide. Further, we will investigate the diverse and complex relationships between religious theory, practice and media and the technologies that enable their transference. Students taking this course are expected to engage with the different ways in which religion is theorised, interpreted and practiced as a medium of communication and the ways religion is publicised, textualised, mediated and visualised.

**Lecture times:** Monday 5<sup>th</sup> period and meridian, Tuesday, 5<sup>th</sup> period.

**DP requirements:** Mandatory attendance at lectures and tutorials in all sections of the course. Submission of all work by due dates.

**Assessment:** Continuous assessment (essays, projects, tests, etc.) counts 100%.

## ADDITIONAL INFORMATION

### Fellows in the Faculty

The Council of the University has established Fellowships for members of the permanent academic staff in recognition of original distinguished academic work of such quality as to merit special recognition. The following are current members of staff of the Faculty of Humanities who have received Fellowships:

Professor J Alexander	Emeritus Professor R G Lass
Professor D Chidester	Professor P Skotnes
Professor J-L Cornille	Professor M Solms
Professor J Higgins	Professor N A Worden
Emeritus Professor P J L Klatzow	

### Distinguished Teachers in the Faculty

The University has instituted a Distinguished Teacher Award in recognition of the importance of excellence in teaching at all levels in the University. The following members of staff of the Faculty of Humanities have received the award:

Mr N Bakker (School of Education)	1988
Associate Professor L Marx (English Language and Literature)	1992
Professor N Worden (Historical Studies)	1992
Mrs G Symington (School of Languages and Literatures)	1993
Associate Professor C Weare (Drama)	1993
Associate Professor M Adhikari (Historical Studies)	1995
Associate Professor R Mendelsohn (Historical Studies)	1996
Professor D H Foster (Psychology)	1999
Professor D Benatar (Philosophy)	1999
Professor V Bickford-Smith (Historical Studies)	2000
Associate Professor R S Edgecombe (English Language and Literature)	2001
Professor H Phillips (Historical Studies)	2001
Professor A Mager (Historical Studies)	2002
Associate Professor B Liebl (South African College of Music)	2003
Dr P Anderson (English Language and Literature)	2005
Associate Professor J Bennett (African Gender Institute)	2007
Associate Professor V Everson (School of Languages and Literatures)	2008
Associate Professor C Clarkson (English Language and Literature)	2009
Associate Professor M Campbell (South African College of Music)	2011
Associate Professor S Levine (Social Anthropology)	2011
Professor J Higgins (English Language and Literatures)	2012
Dr J Wanderer (Philosophy)	2012
Dr H Macdonald (Anthropology)	2013
Dr I-M Rijsdijk (Film and Media Studies)	2013
Dr H Twidle (English Language and Literatures)	2013
Dr A Reisenberger (School of Languages and Literatures)	2015
Associate Professor J Hardman (School of Education)	2015
Dr T Dowling (School of Languages and Literatures)	2019
Associate Professor A Pande (Sociology)	2019
Dr B Kar (Historical Studies)	2020
Dr M Swai (Anthropology)	2020
Dr G Hull (Philosophy)	2023
Dr B Tame (Sociology)	2023
Dr Y Omar (School of Education)	2023



**UCT Book Award**

The University Book Award recognises the publication of books, written by University staff, that brings credit to the University. The following are members of staff of the Faculty of Humanities who have received the award:

Associate Professor R Mendelsohn	<i>Sammy Marks, "The Uncrowned King of the Transvaal"</i>	1991
Professors P Skotnes, S P Watson, J Parkington and N G Penn	<i>Sound from the Thinking Strings</i>	1992
Professor D Chidester	<i>Shots in the Street</i>	1993
Professor M Shain	<i>The Roots of Antisemitism in South Africa</i>	1996
Professor V Bickford-Smith	<i>Ethnic Pride and Racial Prejudice in Victorian Cape Town: Group Identity and Social Practice, 1875-1902</i>	1998
Professor J Higgins	<i>Raymond Williams. Literature, Marxism and Cultural Materialism</i>	2000
Professor N G Penn	<i>Rogues, Rebels and Runaways</i>	2001
Professor N G Penn	<i>The Forgotten Frontier</i>	2009
Professor P Skotnes	<i>The Archive of Willem Bleek and Lucy Lloyd</i>	2009
Mrs S Loots	<i>Sirkusboere</i>	2013
Associate Professor S Shaikh	<i>Sufi Narratives of Intimacy: Ibn 'Arabi, Gender and Sexuality</i>	2015
Dr L Modisane	<i>South Africa's Renegade Reels: The Making and Public Lives of Black-Centred Films</i>	2016
Professor D Chidester	<i>Empire of Religion: Imperialism and Comparative Religion</i>	2017
Professor D Wardle	<i>Suetonius: Life of Augustus</i>	2018
Mrs A Tietze	<i>A History of the Iziko South African National Gallery: Reflections on Art and National Identity</i>	2019

**Scholarships and Prizes**

The Faculty administers the following undergraduate and postgraduate scholarships, bursaries and prizes which have been established through the generosity of past and present donors. Details of undergraduate and postgraduate scholarships and bursaries can be found in Handbook 13: *Bursary and Loan Opportunities for Undergraduate Study* and in Handbook 14: *Financial Assistance for Postgraduate Students*. Details of the prizes can be obtained from the Departments concerned.

**INTER-FACULTY PRIZES**

*In the field of social/political relations in the South African context*

Arnold Wynne Prize

*Philosophy and Politics*

Mayschel Ticktin Award

**AFRICAN STUDIES AND LINGUISTICS**

*Linguistics*

Dorothy Cavers Essay Prize

HOI Scholarship and Jack Simons Bursary

**EDUCATION, SCHOOL OF**

Director of the School of Education Prizes  
Whitton Award

**ENGLISH LITERARY STUDIES**

The Bertha Isobel Epstein Endowment  
English Honours Book Award  
Lehlohonolo Maruping Prize  
Thelma Tyfield Prize

**FILM AND MEDIA STUDIES, CENTRE FOR**

Jane Stadler Book Prize  
Robin Cohen Prize

**FINE ART, MICHAELIS SCHOOL OF**

Carolyn Gad Memorial Arts Prize  
Judy Steinberg Prize  
Matthew Somers Memorial Prize  
The Michaelis Prize  
Simon Gerson Prize

**HISTORICAL STUDIES**

Annie & Lazarus Hoffman Prize  
The Diocesan College UCT 150 Memorial Book Prize  
Eric Axelson African History Book Prize  
Mandelbrote Book Prize  
Marie Maud Memorial Book Prize

**KNOWLEDGE AND INFORMATION STEWARDSHIP**

Hilda Buyskes Bursary  
Patricia Ashby Spilhaus Memorial Bursary

**LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES, SCHOOL OF**

*Classics*

Douallier Prize  
Mary Renault Memorial PEN Prize  
Laurence Prize  
William Rollo Prize

*French Language and Literature*

French Embassy Scholarships  
VC Future Leaders Book Prizes and Scholarships

*German Language and Literature*

German Consulate General Book Prize

*Hebrew Language and Literature*

Bender Memorial Scholarship  
Ivor Lewin Prize

*Portuguese*

Brazilian Government Scholarships  
Institute Camões Scholarships

**MUSIC, SOUTH AFRICAN COLLEGE OF**

A Rupert Prize  
Alfred Libochowitz Prize

Chamber Music Prize  
Eric Chisholm Memorial Prize for Opera  
Gregorio Fiasconaro Prize  
Gunther Pulvermacher Essay Prize  
James De Villiers Prize for Piano  
Kenneth Jones Opera Prize  
Laura Searle Prize for Piano Concerto  
Leah Gamsa Sixpence Bursary  
Lesley Arnold Prize  
Lionel Bowman Piano Prize  
Leonard Hall Prize for African Music  
Leonard Hall Prize for Chamber Music  
Meyer Levinson Prize  
Nicholas Abbott Prize  
Paul Bothner Jazz Prize  
Percy Ould Prize  
Peter Klatzow Prize  
Priaulx Rainier Prize  
Professor WH Bell Prize  
Ralph Nussbaum Music Award  
Ruth Ormond Prize  
Schock Prize for Chamber Music  
Stephanie Garnett Memorial Prize  
Thea Estie Prize

**PHILOSOPHY**

Asha Barron Prize

**SOCIAL WORK AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT**

St Leger Prize  
John and Margaret Overbeek Bursary

**STUDY OF RELIGIONS**

UCT Elizabeth Clough Bursary

**THEATRE, DANCE AND PERFORMANCE STUDIES, CENTRE FOR**

Eli Wallendorf Prize  
Gretel Mills Book Prize  
School of Dance Prize  
Triegaardt Prize